

# Human Nutrition



# Human Nutrition

*DIANNA FISHER*

*Human Nutrition Copyright © by Dianna Fisher. All Rights Reserved.*

The CK-12 foundation defines a flexbook as a “free and open source textbook platform where one can build and edit collaborative textbooks!” The FNDH 400 (formerly the HN 400 flexbook, department changed its name from Human Nutrition to Food, Nutrition, Dietetics and Health) Flexbook fits this definition, but I feel the name is particularly accurate due to the flexibility of Google Docs. Students in addition to having access through Google Docs, can download the flexbook as an .odt, .pdf, .rtf, .doc, text, or html file giving them flexibility to use the document how they would like. Students can also choose whether they would like to read the flexbook digitally or print and read it on paper.

The flexbook is divided into 13 chapters with sections and subsections. These are numbered in such a way that the first number represents the chapter. A period separates the chapter from the section number, and another period is followed by the subsection number. The figures are non-copyrighted figures or I have made them myself in PowerPoint. The flexbook also contains links to articles, videos, and animations in Web Link boxes. These can be clicked to open the link, and urls for these resources are also provided at the end of the section or subsection.

I am happy to share the flexbook and PowerPoint slides that I use for class with other instructors teaching similar courses. Please email me and we can get something arranged. I hope eventually this flexbook, or something similar, will become a collaborative project.



Brian Lindshield allows others to distribute, remix, tweak, and build upon this work, even commercially, as long as attribute this resource.

Here's a citation to use for this purpose, but if this doesn't work for your purpose, please cite the url which is also provided below.

Citation:

Lindshield, B. L. Kansas State University Human Nutrition (FNDH 400) Flexbook. [goo.gl/vOAnR](http://goo.gl/vOAnR)

Shortened URL: [goo.gl/vOAnR](http://goo.gl/vOAnR)

The flexbook was a finalist for the 2012 Education-Portal.com People's Choice Award for the Most Open Resource (note Education-Portal.com is now Study.com).



## About the Course

FNDH 400 is a 3-hour, intermediate-level, nutrition course at Kansas State University taught on campus every spring semester, and all 3 semesters (fall, spring, summer) via the Division of Continuing Education. Ideally on-campus students take the course during the spring semester of their sophomore year. Most on-campus students in the class are majoring in Nutritional Sciences, Nutrition and Health (previously Public Health Nutrition), Nutrition and Kinesiology, Athletic Training, or Dietetics. There is an increasing number of Biology, Life Sciences and other majors taking the course. Online, more students are nontraditional and a little

more than half are distance dietetics students (K-State offers a distance dietetics degree).

### **About the Author/Instructor**

Brian Lindshield, Ph.D. is an Associate Professor in the Department of Food, Nutrition, Dietetics and Health. He received an A.S. from Pratt Community College in '01, a B.S. in Human Nutrition from Kansas State University in '03, and Ph.D. in Nutritional Sciences from the University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign in '08.

### **Peer-reviewed flexbook/OER journal articles**

Lindshield, B.L., Adhikari, K. Campus and Online U.S. College Students' Attitudes Toward an Open Educational Resource Course Fee. *Int J High Educ.* 2(4): 42-51, 2013. doi:10.5430/ijhe.v2n4p42  
<http://www.sciedu.ca/journal/index.php/ijhe/article/view/3312/2003>

Lindshield, B.L., Adhikari, K. Online and Campus College Students Like Using an Open Educational Resource Instead of a Traditional Textbook. *Journal of Online Learning and Teaching.* 9(1): 26-38, 2013.  
[http://jolt.merlot.org/vol9no1/lindshield\\_0313.htm](http://jolt.merlot.org/vol9no1/lindshield_0313.htm)

Lindshield, B.L., Adhikari, K. The Kansas State University Human Nutrition (HN 400) Flexbook. *Educause Quarterly.* 34(4), 2011.

<http://www.educause.edu/ero/article/kansas-state-university-human-nutrition-hn-400-flexbook>

### **Flexbook Presentations**

3/5/13 Innovations in Teaching & Learning Showcase

“Open Educational Resources, Textbook Replacements?”

3/4/13 Innovations in Teaching & Learning Workshop Panel

“Take 5: Teaching Technologies that Work”

9/27/12 IDT Roundtable

“E-textbooks and Beyond”

One of 3 speakers at session.

<http://id.ome.ksu.edu/roundtable/e-textbooks-and-beyond/> (inactive link as of 09/09/2020)

3/16/12 Teaching, Learning, and Technology Showcase 2012

“Using Flexbooks to Supplement/Replace the Traditional Textbook”

9/28/11 Axio Learning Conference 2011

Peer Showcase: "Using flexbooks to supplement/replace the traditional textbook"

7/25/11 Society for Nutrition Education and Behavior Oral Presentation

"Kansas State University Human Nutrition (HN 400) Flexbook"

9/29/10 Axio Learning Conference 2010

"Flexbooks"

1/12/10 7th annual K-State Teaching Retreat

"Flexbooks: Better than Textbooks?"

### **Media Stories about the Flexbook**

9/26/13 K-State Today

K-State faculty receive funding to develop open alternative textbooks

<http://www.k-state.edu/today/>

announcement.php?id=10136&category=kudos&referredBy=email

1/29/13 Kansas State Collegian

Open-sourced 'flexbook' earns K-State educator national acclaim

<http://www.kstatecollegian.com/2013/01/29/open-sourced-flexbook-earns-k-state-educator-national-acclaim/>

9/19/12 College Human Ecology Press Release

Lindshield's flexbook nominated for national people's choice award

<http://www.he.k-state.edu/news/2012/09/19/lindshields-flexbook-nominated-for-national-peoples-choice-award/>

9/12/12 Partnership for Technology Innovation

Providing an Open Resource, Lowering the Financial Burden

<http://partnership4techinnovation.org/providing-an-open-resource-lowering-the-financial-burden/>(inactive link as of 09/09/2020)

8/24/12 Kansas City Star

K-State professor develops textbook flexibility

<http://www.kansascity.com/2012/08/24/3777552/k-state-professor-develops-textbook.html>(inactive link as of 09/09/2020)

Other media outlets where article was published:

**Chicago Tribune:** <http://www.chicagotribune.com/business/>

[yourmoney/sns-201208271800-tms-kidmoneyctnsr-a20120827-20120827,0,77297.story](http://yourmoney.sns-201208271800-tms-kidmoneyctnsr-a20120827-20120827,0,77297.story)(inactive link as of 09/09/2020)

**McClatchy Wire**

**Sacramento Bee**

**Sun Herald (Biloxi-Gulfport and Mississippi Gulf Coast**

**Lexington Herald-Leader**

**The Telegraph (Georgia)**

**The South Carolina State**

**The Olympian (Olympia, Washington)**

**The Bradenton Herald (Florida)**

**Bellingham Herald (Washington)**

**News Observer (Raleigh, North Carolina)**

**The Modesto Bee (Modesto, California)**

**The Idaho Statesman (Boise, Idaho)**

**Civic Plus (Blog)**

**The Stockton Record (Stockton, California):**

**The Detroit News**

8/16/12 Up to Date KCUR 89.3 (Kansas City NPR station)

The 'Flexbook': A Textbook Replacement

<http://kcur.org/post/flexbook-textbook-replacement>

8/13/12 Kansas State University Press Release

From textbook to flexbook: Professor uses new collaborative tool in the classroom

<http://www.k-state.edu/media/newsreleases/aug12/flexbook81312.html>

Other media outlets that published the release:

**Campus Technology:** <http://campustechnology.com/articles/2012/08/13/ksu-professor-creates-flexbook.aspx>

**Phys.org:** <http://phys.org/news/2012-08-textbook-flexbook-professor-collaborative-tool.html>

**News Medical:** <http://www.news-medical.net/news/20120814/Flexbook-helps-students-save-money-on-course-materials.aspx>

**Kansas City infoZine:** <http://www.infozine.com/news/stories/op/storiesView/sid/52822/>

8/13/12 K-State Today

Professor's collaborative flexbook nominated for national people's choice award  
<http://www.k-state.edu/today/announcement.php?id=4284&category=kudos&referredBy=email>

2/22/12 Just In Blog

Lindshield flexes his flexbook muscle and tells how you can, too  
<http://updatejustin.wordpress.com/2012/02/22/lindshield-flexes-his-flexbook-muscle-and-tells-how-you-can-too/>

12/15/10 Issue 16 Axio Quarterly

Flexbooks: What Can They Do For You?

<http://axiolearning.org/news/2010/dec/15/flexbooks-what-can-they-do-you/> (inactive link as of 09/09/2020)

### **Contact Information**

Brian Lindshield Ph.D.

Associate Professor

Department of Food, Nutrition, Dietetics and Health

Kansas State University

208 Justin Hall

Manhattan, KS 66506-1407

[blindsh@k-state.edu](mailto:blindsh@k-state.edu)

Phone 785-532-7848 Fax 785-532-3132

[@brianlindshield](https://twitter.com/brianlindshield) on Twitter

### **Acknowledgement**

Thanks to former Kansas State University student Russ Wolters for his input and feedback on the flexbook design and revision. The feedback from FNDH 400 students has been extremely important in improving the flexbook.

### **Reference**

1. <http://creativecommons.org/weblog/entry/9378>

# MAIN BODY



The field of nutrition is dynamic. This means that our understanding and practices are constantly changing and being updated. Some of nutrition's dynamic nature may be due to the fact that nutrition, as a discipline, is relatively young (many vitamins weren't isolated until the 1930s) compared to many other scientific fields. New research is always being conducted and the findings are continuously being reported to the public. With so much information, discernment must be exercised. In order to interpret these new findings, you need to understand how the research was conducted and the nutrition research hierarchy. Everyone eats, so people are going to face nutrition choices and questions on a daily basis. This section will provide you with an integrated understanding of the different forms of nutrition research and how to evaluate them relative to one another.

## 1.1 The Basics

Nutrition can be defined as the science of the action of food, beverages, and their components in biological systems. A nutrient is a compound that provides a needed function in the body. Nutrients can be further classified based on the amount needed in the body.

Macronutrients: nutrients needed in larger amounts

Micronutrients: nutrients needed in smaller amounts (but still important)

The following table lists the different macronutrients and micronutrients.

Table 1.11 Macronutrients and Micronutrients

---

Macronutrients	Micronutrients
Carbohydrates	Vitamins
Proteins	Minerals
Lipids	
Water	

---

## Carbohydrates

The name carbohydrate means “hydrated carbon”, or carbon with water. Thus, it isn’t a surprise that carbohydrates are made up of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. Sucrose (table sugar) is an example of a commonly consumed carbohydrate. Some dietary examples of carbohydrates are whole-wheat bread, oatmeal, rice, sugary snacks/drinks, and pasta.



Figure 1.11 Pancakes, a food source of carbohydrates

## Proteins

Proteins are also made up of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, but they also contain nitrogen. Several dietary sources of proteins include nuts, beans/legumes, skim milk, egg whites, and meat.

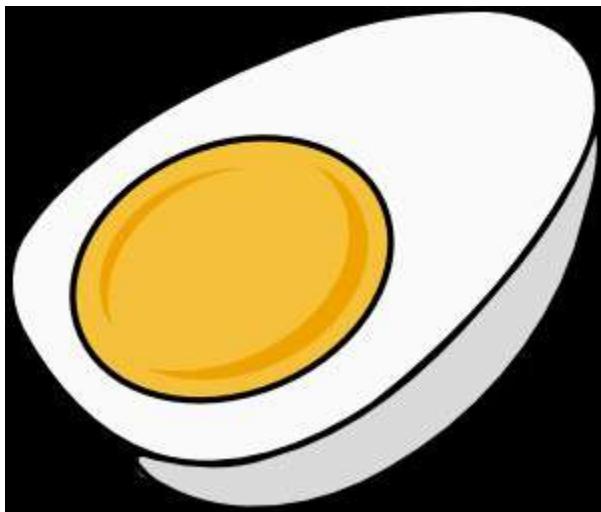


Figure 1.12 Eggs, a food source of protein and lipid

## Lipids

Lipids consist of fatty acids, triglycerides, phospholipids, and sterols (i.e. cholesterol). Lipids are also composed of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. Some dietary sources of lipids include oils, butter, and egg yolks.

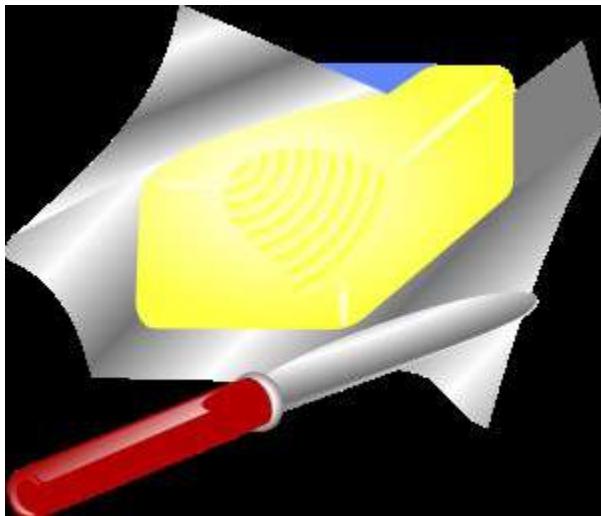


Figure 1.13 Butter, a food source of lipids

## Water

Water is made up of hydrogen and oxygen ( $H_2O$ ) and is the only macronutrient that doesn't provide energy.

## Vitamins

Compounds that are essential for normal physiologic processes in the body.

## Minerals

Elements (think periodic table) that are essential for normal physiological processes in the body.

## No References

## 1.11 Calories (Food Energy)

Food energy is measured in kilocalories (kcals), commonly referred to as calories by the general public. The general public “calorie”

term is incorrect (most do not know or understand the difference between the kilocalorie and calorie terms), but it is important to understand how what the term calorie represents when it is used in this way. A kilocalorie is the amount of energy needed to raise 1 kilogram of water 1 degree Celsius. A food's kilocalories are determined by putting the food into a bomb calorimeter and determining the energy output (energy = heat produced). The first link below is to an image of a bomb calorimeter and a link to a video showing how one is used.

---

#### **Web Links**

Bomb Calorimeter([inactive link as of 09/08/2020](#))  
Video: Bomb Calorimetry (2:19)

---

Among the nutrients, the amount of kilocalories per gram that each provide are shown below.

---

<b>Energy (kcal/g)</b>	<b>No Energy</b>
Carbohydrates (4)	Vitamins
Proteins (4)	Minerals
Lipids (9)	Water

---

As can be seen, only carbohydrates, proteins, and lipids provide energy. However, there is another energy source in the diet that is not a nutrient.....alcohol. Just to re-emphasize, alcohol is NOT a nutrient! But it does provide energy.



*Figure 1.112 Wine is a type of alcohol.*

The following table lists the energy sources in the diet from lowest calories per gram to the highest calories per gram. Knowing these numbers allows a person to calculate/estimate the amount of calories the food contains if you know the grams of the different energy sources.

**Energy Sources (kcal/g)**

Carbohydrates → 4

Protein → 4

Alcohol → 7

Lipids → 9

**Links**

Bomb Calorimeter – <https://www.learner.org/courses/chemistry/text/>

text.html?dis=U&num=Ym5WdElUQS9PQ289&sec=YzJWaklUQS9OeW89

Bomb Calorimetry - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ohyA9amFfsc>

## 1.12 Phytochemicals, Zoochemicals & Functional Foods

Beyond macronutrients and micronutrients, there is a lot of interest in non-nutritive compounds found in foods that may be either beneficial or detrimental to health.

### Phytochemicals



Figure 1.121 Tomatoes and other plants contain phytochemicals.

Phytochemicals are compounds in plants (phyto) that are believed to provide healthy benefits beyond the traditional nutrients. One example is lycopene in tomatoes, which is thought to potentially decrease the risk of some cancers (in particular prostate cancer). Diets rich in fruits and vegetables have been associated with decreased risk of chronic diseases. Many fruits and vegetables are rich in phytochemicals, leading some to hypothesize that phytochemicals are responsible for the decreased risk of chronic diseases. The role that phytochemicals play in health is still in the early stages of research, relative to other areas of nutrition such as micronutrients. The following 2 links contain good information on phytonutrients if you are interested in learning more about them.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Linus Pauling Institute: Phytochemicals](#)

---

#### **Zoochemicals**

Zoochemicals are the animal equivalent of phytochemicals in plants. They are compounds in animals that are believed to provide health benefits beyond the traditional nutrients that food contains. Hopefully the name is pretty easy to remember because you can find animals at a zoo. Some compounds can be both phytochemicals and zoochemicals. An example of compounds that can be classified as both are the yellow carotenoids lutein and zeaxanthin. Kale, spinach, and corn contain phytochemicals and are good sources of lutein and zeaxanthin. Whereas egg yolks contain zoochemicals and are also a good source of these carotenoids.

#### **Functional Foods**

There are a number of definitions of functional foods. Functional foods are generally understood to be a food, or a food ingredient, that may provide a health benefit beyond the traditional nutrients (macronutrients and micronutrients) it contains. Functional foods are often a rich source of a phytochemical or zoochemical, or contain more of a certain nutrient than a normal food.

#### **Links**

## 1.13 The Scientific Method

The basis of what we know about nutrition is derived from research and the scientific method underlies how research is conducted. The following figure shows the steps in the scientific method.

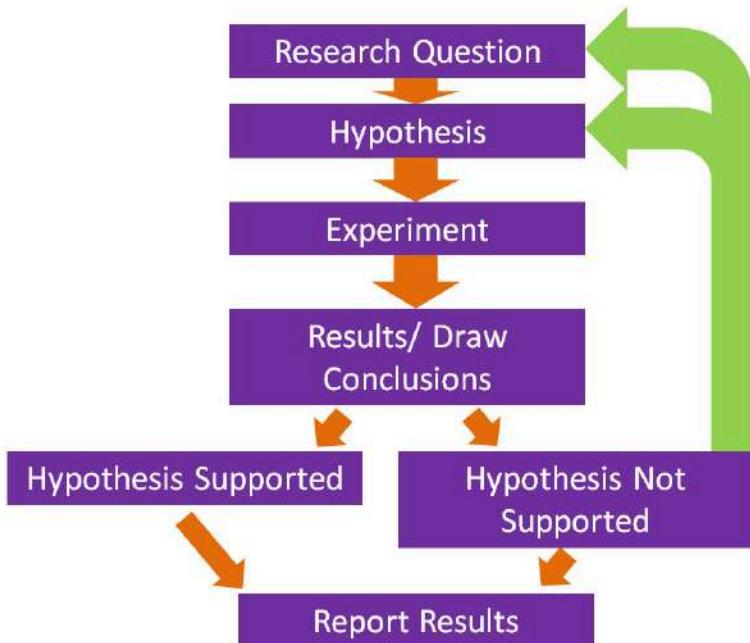


Figure 1.131 The scientific method

### Steps in the Scientific Method

1. The first step is to come up with a scientific or research question that you are interested in investigating.

2. Based on your research question, a hypothesis or an educated guess is formulated.
3. The next step is to design and conduct the experiment. A good design should take into account what has been done previously. Thus, a thorough review of methods and results published previously should be undertaken. This will help prevent making the same mistakes and save a lot of time conducting the research.
4. Perform the experiment/research and collect results and draw conclusions.
5. If the hypothesis is not supported, then a new hypothesis/research question should be created and a new experiment be conducted.
6. Ultimately, researchers hope to publish their research in peer-reviewed journals.

### **No References**

## **1.2 Epidemiology**

Epidemiology is defined as the study of human populations. These studies often investigate the relationship between dietary consumption and disease development. There are three main types of epidemiological studies: cross-sectional, case-control, and prospective cohort studies.

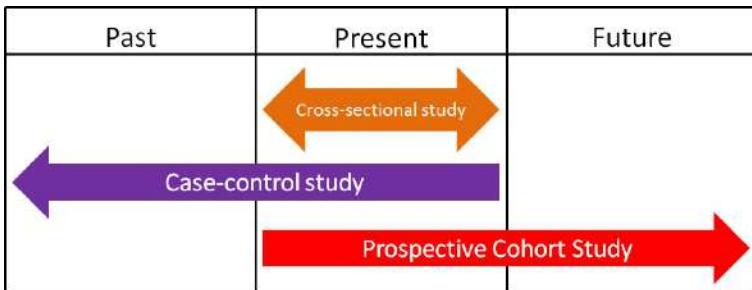
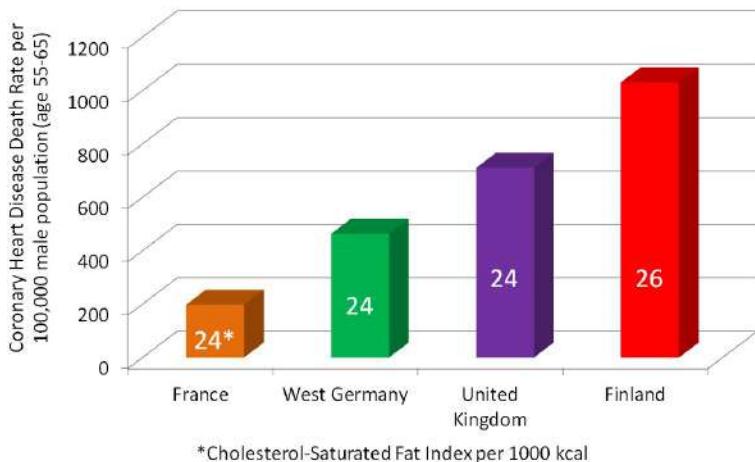


Figure 1.21 Types of epidemiology (Adapted from Levin[footnote]Levin K. (2006) Study design III: Cross-sectional studies. Evidence - Based Dentistry 7(1): 24.[/footnote])

### 1. Cross-Sectional Studies

Cross-sectional studies compare different populations at the same point in time. It is as if you take a snapshot of the two different populations to compare them to one another. An example of a cross-sectional study led to a phenomenon known as the “French Paradox.” Cholesterol and saturated fat intake were associated with increased risk of coronary heart disease across a wide variety of countries. However, within the study they noticed a surprising result. European countries with very similar cholesterol-saturated fat intakes had hugely different death rates from coronary heart disease deaths, as shown below.



\*Cholesterol-Saturated Fat Index per 1000 kcal

Figure 1.22 An example of a cross-sectional study, “The “French Paradox”. The x-axis shows four different European countries with similar cholesterol-saturated fat intakes[ footnote]Artaud-Wild SM, Connor SL, Sexton G, Connor WE. (1993) Differences in coronary mortality can be explained by differences in cholesterol and saturated fat intakes in 40 countries but not in france and finland. A paradox. Circulation 88(6): 2771.[\footnote] (the numbers shown within the bars), and the y-axis represents coronary heart disease rate.

The French had a 5-fold lower risk of dying from coronary heart disease than the Finns, despite having similar cholesterol-saturated fat intakes<sup>1</sup>.

1. Artaud-Wild SM, Connor SL, Sexton G, Connor WE. (1993) Differences in coronary mortality can be explained by differences in cholesterol and saturated fat intakes in 40 countries but not in france and finland. A paradox. Circulation 88(6): 2771.[\footnote]. A paradox means something contradictory, which this finding seemed to be. The "French Paradox" has led to research

## **2. Case-Control Studies**

Case-control studies look at a group of cases (e.g. people with a disease) vs. controls (e.g. people without the disease). Most case-control studies are retrospective (looking back in time, or looking at the past). These studies try to determine if there were differences in the diets of the cases compared to controls in the past. Cases and controls are matched on characteristics such as age, sex, BMI, history of disease, and many others. This means researchers try to choose a control that has similar characteristics to the case. The researchers then compare the exposure levels between the cases and controls, as shown below. In this example a greater proportion of diseased (cases) individuals than disease-free individuals (controls) were exposed to something.

on red wine, and one of its active components, resveratrol, because the French consume a lot of this alcoholic beverage. Cross-sectional studies are considered the weakest type of epidemiology because they are based only on group outcomes. This may lead people to believe that members of the group have characteristics, which as individuals they do not. This is known as ecologic (another name that is used to refer to this type of study) fallacy, and is a limitation of cross-sectional studies[footnote]Gordis L. (2004) Epidemiology. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Saunders.

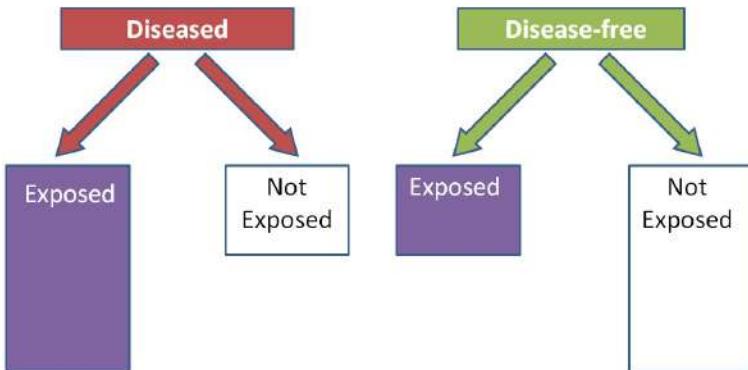


Figure 1.23 An example of a case-control study in which the diseased were more likely to have been exposed than those who were disease-free. Cases are represented by the red box on the left, and the controls are the green box on the right (Adapted from Gordis<sup>[footnote]</sup>Gordis L. (2004) Epidemiology. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Saunders.<sup>[/footnote]</sup>).

Using trans-fat intake as the exposure, and cardiovascular disease as the disease, the figure would be expected to look like this:

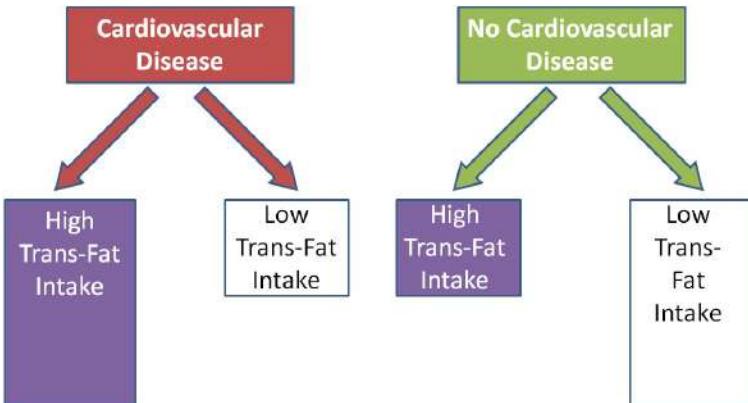


Figure 1.24 An example of a case-control study that indicates that more cases had high trans-fat intake compared to the controls.

To determine people's intakes of foods and food components, food frequency questionnaires are commonly used. As the name suggests, a food frequency questionnaire is a series of questions that determines how frequently you consume a certain food. An example of a question on a food frequency questionnaire is shown below:

"Over the past 12 months, how often did you drink milk?"

Never

1 time/month	less 1 time/day
2-3 times/month	2-3 times/day
1-2 times/week	4-5 times/day
3-4 times/week	6 or more times/day
5-6 times/week	

An example of a food frequency questionnaire is shown in the link below.

---

#### **Web Link**

[NHANES Food Frequency Questionnaire](#)

---

### **3. Prospective Cohort Studies**

A cohort is "a group of subjects." Most cohort studies are prospective. Initial information is collected (usually by food frequency questionnaires) on the intake of a cohort of people at baseline, or the beginning. This cohort is then followed over time (normally many years) to quantify health outcomes of the individual within it. Cohort studies are normally considered to be more robust than case-control studies, because these studies do not start with diseased people and normally do not require people to remember their dietary habits in the distant past or before they developed a disease. An example of a prospective cohort study would be if you filled out a questionnaire on your current dietary habits and are then followed into the future to see if you develop osteoporosis. As shown below, instead of separating based on disease versus disease-free, individuals are separated based on exposure. In this example,

those who are exposed are more likely to be diseased than those who were not exposed.

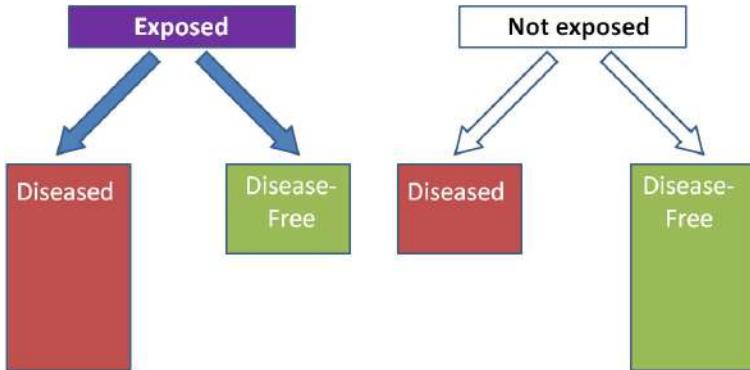


Figure 1.25 An example of cohort study in which those exposed are more likely to develop the disease. (Adapted from Gordis[footnote]Gordis L. (2004) Epidemiology. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Saunders.[/footnote])

Using trans-fat intake again as the exposure and cardiovascular disease as the disease, the figure would be expected to look like this:

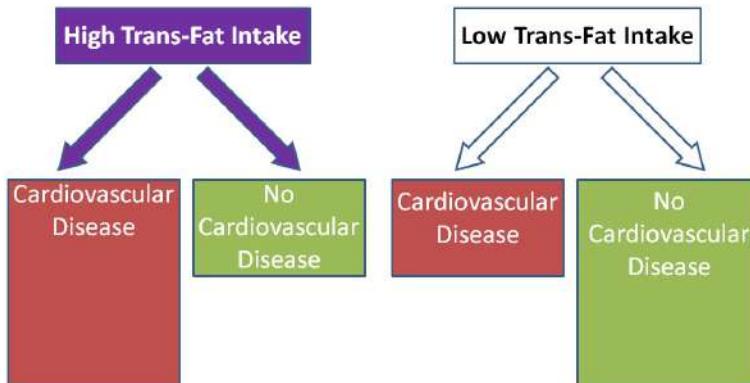


Figure 1.26 An example of a cohort study where higher trans-fat intake is associated with a higher incidence of cardiovascular disease

There are several well known examples of prospective cohorts' studies:

### **Framingham Heart Study**

The Framingham Heart Study started in 1948 and has been following the residents of Framingham, Massachusetts to identify risk factors for heart disease. This cohort has been very fruitful in finding a number of important factors associated with coronary heart disease. In 2002, a third generation of participants was enrolled to be followed. The following links show more about the Framingham Heart Study.

---

#### **Web Links**

[Framingham Heart Study History](#)(inactive link as of 09/08/2020)

[Framingham Heart Study Research Milestones](#)(inactive link as of 09/08/2020)

---

### **Nurses Health Study**

The Nurses' Health Study started in 1976 and enrolled 122,000 female nurses. Every 4 years they received a food frequency questionnaire to assess their dietary habits.

---

#### **Web Link**

[The Nurses' Health Study](#)

---

### **Health Professionals Follow-Up Study**

The Health Professionals Follow-Up Study started in 1986 and enrolled 51,529 male health professionals (dentists, pharmacists, optometrists, osteopathic physicians, podiatrists, and veterinarians). Every 4 years they received a food frequency questionnaire to assess their dietary habits.

---

#### **Web Link**

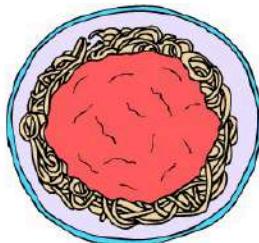
[Health Professionals Follow-up Study](#)

---

The Health Professionals Follow-Up Study is a good example for

how cohort studies can be important in nutrition research. We will consider one example in which the researchers administered food frequency questionnaires that contained 131 food and beverage items to determine whether their intake was associated with increased or decreased risk of developing prostate cancer. Of these items, intake of four foods (tomatoes, tomato sauce, pizza, and strawberries) were associated with decreased incidence of prostate cancer, as illustrated in the figure below<sup>2</sup>.

2. Giovannucci E, Ascherio A, Rimm EB, Stampfer MJ, Colditz GA, et al. (1995) Intake of carotenoids and retinol in relation to risk of prostate cancer. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 87(23):1767-1776.



Tomato Sauce



Tomatoes



Pizza



Strawberries

Figure 1.27 Four foods items associated with decreased risk of prostate cancer[footnote]Giovannucci E, Ascherio A, Rimm EB, Stampfer MJ, Colditz GA, et al. (1995) Intake of carotenoids and retinol in relation to risk of prostate cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 87(23):1767-1776.[/footnote]

The three tomato-based foods are red due to the presence of the carotenoid lycopene. Strawberries don't contain lycopene (their red color is due to anthocyanins). This finding has led to interest in the potential of tomatoes/lycopene to decrease the risk of prostate cancer.

#### Links

NHANES	Food	Frequency	Questionnaire	-
http://appliedresearch.cancer.gov/diet/usualintakes/ffq.html				
Framingham	Heart	Study	History	-
http://www.framinghamheartstudy.org/about-fhs/history.php				

Framingham Heart Study Research Milestones -  
<http://www.framinghamheartstudy.org/about-fhs/research-milestones.php>

The Nurses Health Study - [http://www.channing.harvard.edu/nhs/?page\\_id=70](http://www.channing.harvard.edu/nhs/?page_id=70)

Health Professionals Follow-Up Study -  
<http://www.hsph.harvard.edu/hfps/>

## 1.3 *In Vitro & Animal Studies*

The simplest form of nutrition research is an *in vitro* study. *In vitro* means "within glass", so these methods are performed within flasks, dishes, plates, and test tubes, although most of these are no longer glass (mostly plastic now). These studies are performed outside of a living organism, so the results need to be interpreted with this fact in mind.

One common form of *in vitro* research is cell culture. This involves growing cells in flasks and dishes. In order for cells to grow they need a nutrient source. For cell culture the nutrient source is referred to as media. Media supplies nutrients to the cells *in vitro* similarly to how blood performs this function within the body. Most cells adhere to the bottom of the flask and are so small that a microscope is needed to see them.

Cells are only handled inside a biosafety cabinet (aka cell culture hood). The hood is sterile and protects the cells from the outside environment. The cells need to be protected because they do not have human skin as a barrier to keep microorganisms, etc., from contaminating them.



Figure 1.32 Flask containing media and cells (left); biosafety cabinet (cell culture hood, right)

Cells are grown inside an incubator, which is a device that provides the optimal temperature, humidity, and carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) concentrations for cells and microorganisms. By imitating the body's temperature and CO<sub>2</sub> levels (37 degrees Celsius, 5% CO<sub>2</sub>), the incubator allows cells to grow even though they are outside the body.

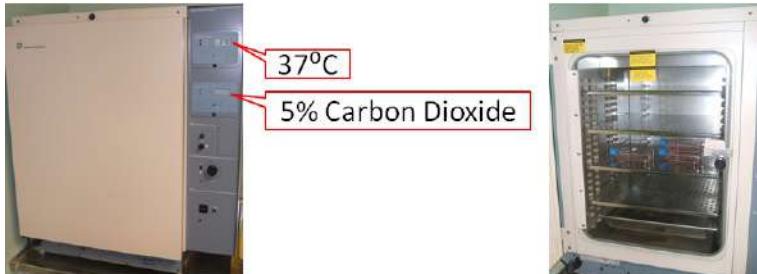


Figure 1.33 Outside and inside of an incubator

## Animal Studies

Animal studies are one form of *in vivo* research, which translates to "within the living". Rats and mice are the most common animals used in nutrition research.

### Why do animal research?

Animals can be used in research that would be unethical to conduct in humans. Researchers can make sure that a certain regimen is safe before it is researched in humans. One advantage of animal dietary studies is that researchers can control exactly what the animals eat. In human studies, researchers can tell subjects what to eat and provide them with the food, but that does not necessarily mean that they are going to consume exactly what they are supposed to. Also people are not great at estimating, recording, or reporting how much or what they eat/ate. Animal studies are also, normally, far less expensive than human studies.

There are some important factors to keep in mind when interpreting animal research. First, an animal's metabolism and physiology is different than humans. As a result, animals' absorption and bioavailability of compounds can differ from humans. Furthermore, animal models of disease (cancer, cardiovascular disease, etc.), although similar, are different from the human disease. So these factors have to be considered when interpreting results from this type of research. Nevertheless, animal studies have been, and continue to be, important for nutrition research.

### **No References**

## **1.4 Human Intervention Studies/Clinical Trials**

There are a variety of human intervention study designs in nutrition research, but the most common, especially in pharmaceutical/medical research, is the clinical trial. A clinical trial is a scientifically controlled study using consenting people to find the safety and effectiveness of different items/regimens. Clinical trials are the "gold standard" research method. Their findings carry the most weight when making decisions about a certain research area because they are the most rigorous scientific studies. Every

pharmaceutical must go through a series of clinical trials before being approved for the market by the FDA (specifically the randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled experiments). As shown in the figure below, human intervention studies/clinical trials are normally prospective. By the end of this section you should have an understanding of what randomized, double-blind, and placebo-controlled means.

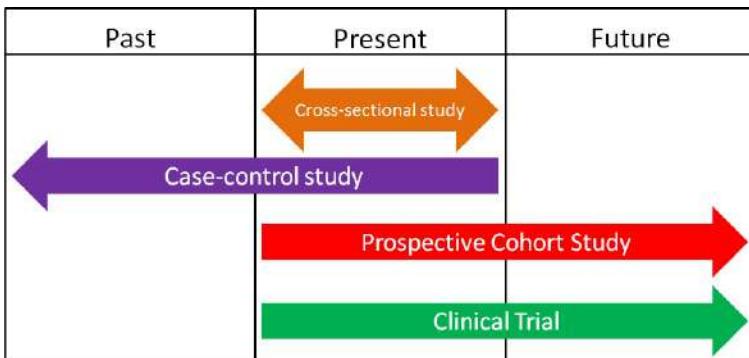


Figure 1.41 Clinical trials are prospective (Adapted from Levin[footnote]Levin K. (2006) Study design III: Cross-sectional studies. Evidence - Based Dentistry 7(1): 24.[/footnote])

### Placebo and The Placebo Effect

A placebo is a fake pill or treatment that serves as a comparison to an active treatment. An examples of placebos are shown below.



Figure 1.42 Placebo  
pills[footnote][http://en.wikipedia.org/  
wiki/File:Cebonap.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Cebonap.jpg)[/footnote]

The use of a placebo is necessary in medical research because of a phenomenon known as the "placebo effect". The placebo effect results from a subject's belief in a treatment, even though there is actually no treatment being administered. An example would be an athlete who consumes a sports drink a

nd runs the 100 meter dash in 11.00 seconds. The athlete then, under the exact same conditions, drinks what he is told is "Super Duper Sports Drink" and runs the 100 meter dash in 10.50 seconds. But what the athlete didn't know was that Super Duper Sports Drink was the Sports Drink + Food Coloring. There was nothing different between the drinks, but the athlete believed that the "Super Duper Sports Drink" was going to help him run faster, so he did. This improvement is due to the placebo effect.

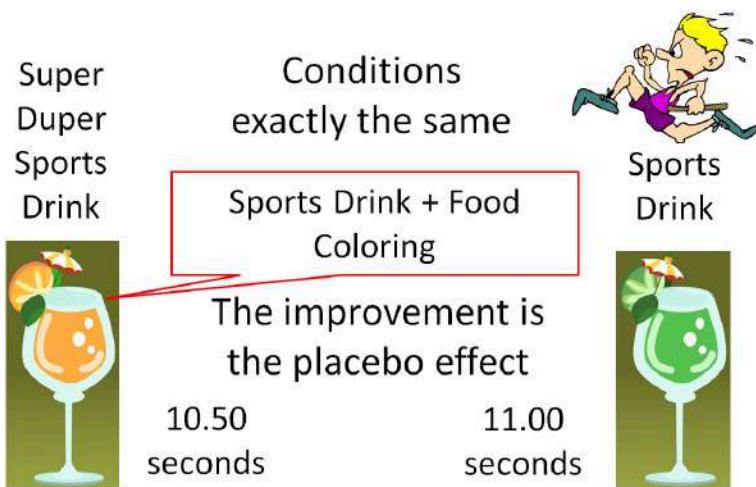


Figure 1.43 Placebo effect example

Ironically, a study similar to the example given above has been conducted and its results support that there is a “placebo effect.”

---

#### **Web Link**

[A Placebo Can Make You Run Faster](#)

---

#### **Randomization**

Randomization is the process of randomly assigning subjects to groups to decrease bias. Bias, according to the Merriam-Webster dictionary, is “a systematic error introduced into sampling or testing by selecting or encouraging one outcome or answer over others<sup>3</sup>”. Bias can occur in assigning subjects to groups in a way that will influence the results. An example of bias in a study of an antidepressant drug is shown below. In this nonrandomized

3. <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/bias>

antidepressant drug example, researchers (who know what the subjects are receiving) put depressed subjects into the placebo group, while "less depressed" subjects are put into the antidepressant drug group. As a result, even if the drug isn't effective, the group assignment may make the drug appear effective, thus biasing the results as shown below.

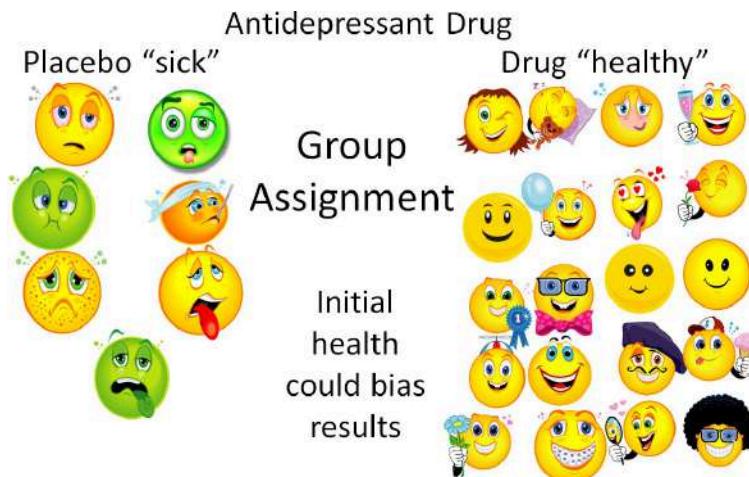


Figure 1.44 Non-randomized antidepressant drug example

This is a bit of an extreme example, but even if the researchers are trying to prevent bias, sometimes bias can still occur. However, if the subjects are randomized, the sick and the healthy people will ideally be equally distributed between the groups. Thus, the trial will be unbiased and a true test of whether or not the drug is effective.

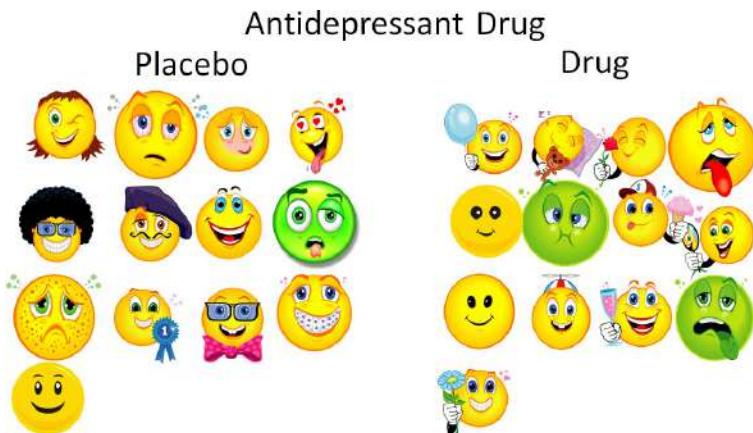


Figure 1.45 Randomized antidepressant drug example

### Blinding

Blinding is a technique to prevent bias in human intervention studies. A study without blinding is referred to as "open label" because both the subject and the researchers know what treatment the subject is receiving (i.e. placebo or drug). This can lead to bias, so these types of trials are used less frequently.

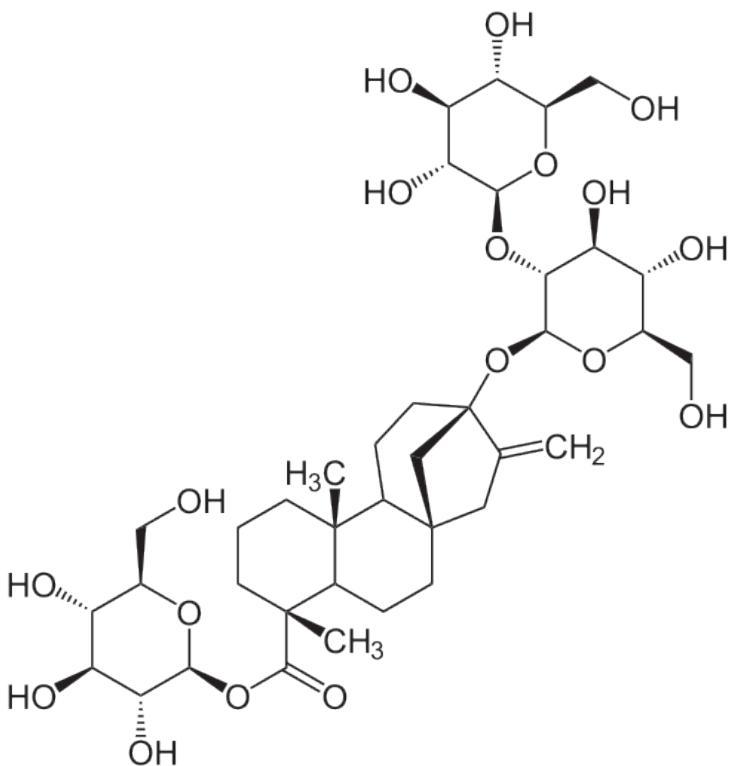


Figure 1.46 In an open-label study, both the subject and researcher know what treatment the subject is receiving.

In a single-blind study, the researcher knows what treatment the subject is receiving, but the subject does not. If the subjects are randomized, these types of trials should produce robust results, but it is still possible that the researcher can bias the results.



Subject



Researcher

*Figure 1.47 In a single-blind study, the researcher knows what treatment the subject is receiving, but the subject does not.*

Finally there is the double-blind study, where neither the researcher nor the subject know what treatment the subject is receiving. A separate board reviews the collected results and decides the fate of the trial. This is the "gold standard" because it prevents observer bias from occurring.



**Subject**



**Researcher**

*Figure 1.48 In a double-blind study, neither the subject nor the researcher know what treatment the subject is receiving.*

The following video does a nice job explaining and illustrating how double-blind randomized trials are performed.

---

**Web Link**

Video: Double-blind clinical trial (1:40)

---

**Link**

A placebo can make you run faster -  
<http://well.blogs.nytimes.com/2015/10/14/a-placebo-can-make-you-run-faster/>

**Video**

How double-blind randomized controlled trials are done -

[http://www.dailymotion.com/video/x12igoz\\_double-blind-clinical-trials\\_news](http://www.dailymotion.com/video/x12igoz_double-blind-clinical-trials_news)

## 1.5 Nutrition Research Statistics

One important aspect in being able to interpret research is to have a basic understanding of statistical significance. Statistical significance means that there is sufficient statistical evidence to suggest that the results are most likely not due to chance.

Statistical significance is represented by p-values in most research. The p-value is an estimate of whether the difference is a statistical accident or due to random chance. A p-value of less than 0.05 (commonly written p-value  $<0.05$  or  $p <0.05$ ) is used in most cases to indicate statistical significance. This value means that 5% of the time the statistical results are accidental or not true. Researchers accept this level of uncertainty.

Epidemiological research usually uses different statistics to analyze their results. Epidemiological results are commonly reported as odds ratios (ORs), relative risks (RRs), or hazard ratios (HRs). These values can be interpreted similarly regardless of which is used. For example, the odds ratio represents the odds of a certain event occurring (often a disease) in response to a certain exposure (in nutrition this is often a food or dietary compound). In a paper it is common to see one of these measures in this form:  $OR = 2.0$ . What does this mean? As shown below, an OR, RR, or HR of 1 means that exposure is associated with neither increased nor decreased risk (neutral). If an OR, RR or HR is less than 1, that exposure is associated with a decreased risk. If an OR, RR, or HR is greater than 1, that exposure is associated with an increased risk. An OR, RR, or HR of 2 means there is twice the risk, while an OR, RR, or HR of 0.5 means there is half the risk of the exposure versus the comparison group.

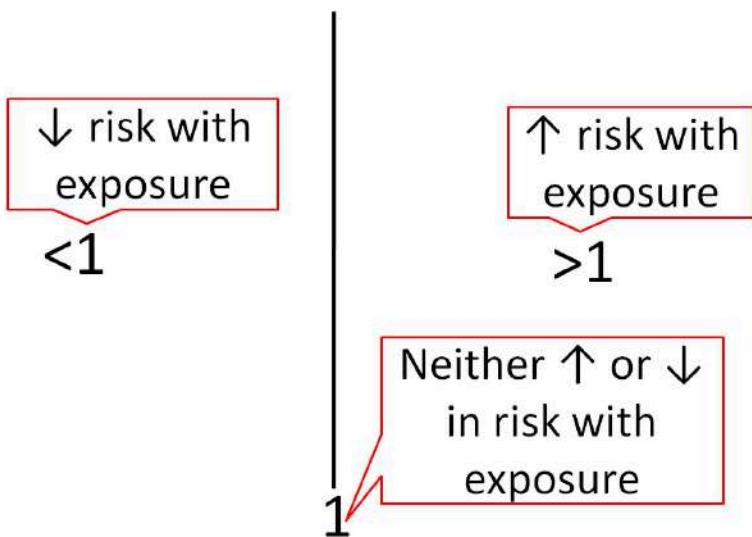


Figure 1.51 Risk in relation to exposure for OR, RR, or HR

To determine whether OR, RR, and HR are significantly different for a given exposure, most epidemiological research uses 95% confidence intervals. Confidence intervals indicate the estimated range that the measure is calculated to include. They go below and above the OR, RR, and HR itself. It is a calculation of how confident the researchers are that the OR, RR, and HR value is correct. Thus:

Large Confidence Intervals = Less Confidence in Value

Small Confidence Intervals = More Confidence in Value

Thus, 95% confidence intervals indicate that researchers are 95% confident that the true value is within the confidence intervals. A confidence interval is normally written in parenthesis following the OR, RR, or HR or represented as bars in a figure as shown below.

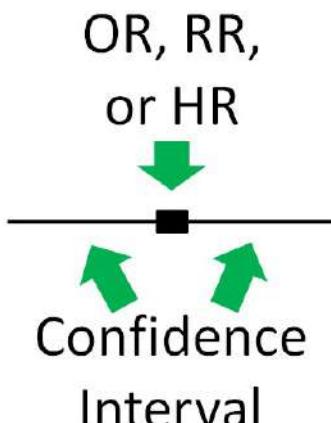
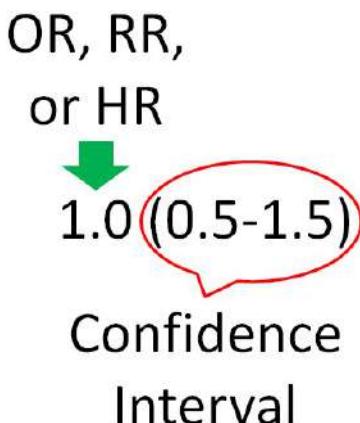


Figure 1.52 Confidence Intervals for OR, RR, or HRs in text form (left) and figure form (right)

Most of the time, the OR, RR, or HR will be found in the middle of the 95% confidence interval, but not necessarily all of the time. For instance, there could be much greater confidence that the value is not much lower than the OR, RR, or HR, but not much confidence that the value does not exceed the HR, RR, or HR. This could lead to confidence interval looking skewed above the OR, RR, or HR (more confidence interval above, than below, the OR, RR, or HR).

If the 95% confidence intervals of the OR, RR, or HR does not include or overlap 1, then the value is significant. If the 95% confidence intervals include or overlap 1, then the OR, RR, or HR is not significant, because it is possible the the true value is 1, which is neutral, and can not be significantly different than 1.

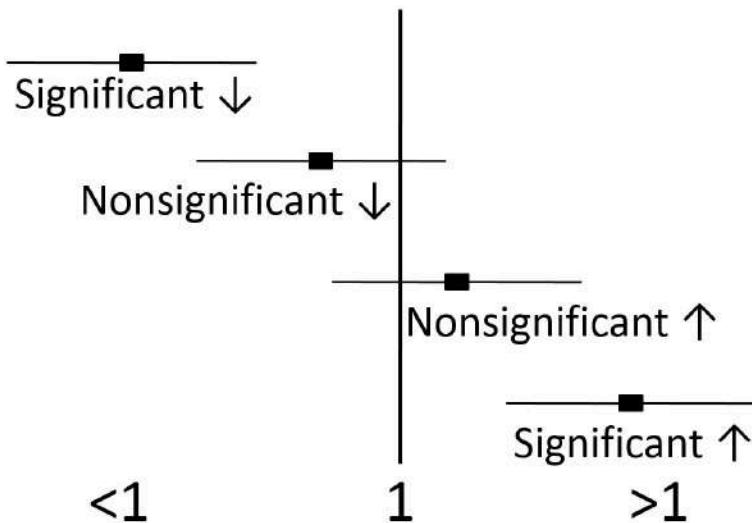


Figure 1.53 Confidence intervals (95%) that include 1 indicate that the value is not significantly different. Confidence intervals above or below 1 without including it indicate that the value is significantly different.

## 1.7 Interpreting Research

Now that you are familiar with the different forms of nutrition research, the next step is understanding how to interpret and synthesize the information. To synthesize information on a certain topic, the two most popular methods are meta-analyses and systematic literature reviews. While there are differences between these two methods, they are similar overall in that they aim to draw a conclusion from the body of research evidence rather than from one study. We will focus on systematic literature reviews because of their rising popularity in biomedical literature.

A systematic literature review does what the name implies, it systematically reviews the literature related to a certain research question. For example, the research question might be, "Does chocolate decrease blood pressure?" There is a method for

performing the review established ahead of time that details answers to questions such as:

How will journal articles be identified?

Using what databases?

What search terms will be used?

The end product is a conclusion based on the evidence in the identified journal articles. A person in the following video compares it to reading Consumer Reviews or a consumer report about something that you are going to buy. The Cochrane Collaboration performs many systematic reviews; the first link is to a video about the Cochrane Collaboration, the second is a link to the site itself.

---

### **Web Links**

Video: The Cochrane Collaboration - 1st 3 minutes (7:11)

[The Cochrane Collaboration](#)

---

Because they synthesize the findings from multiple trials, systematic literature reviews are considered the highest level of nutrition research evidence and are therefore shown at the top of the strength of nutrition research pyramid below. *In vitro* studies are shown at the bottom of the triangle because they are the weakest form of evidence overall. It should be pointed out that most systematic literature reviews only consider epidemiological studies and clinical trials and do not include animal studies or *in vitro* evidence. While these studies are of less strength, they should still be considered.

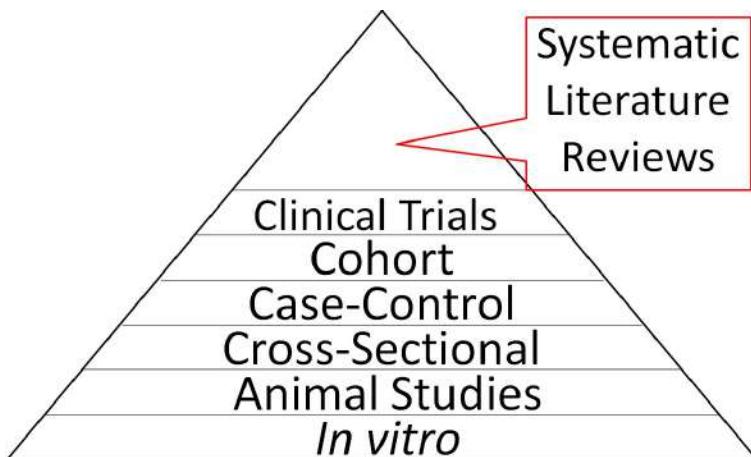


Figure 1.71 Strength of scientific research, a higher position on the pyramid mean greater strength of that form of evidence.

There are a couple of other factors to consider relating to the different forms of research. First, epidemiological studies cannot show causality (i.e. smoking causes lung cancer), but instead identify relationships or associations (i.e. smoking is associated with lung cancer occurrence). Clinical trials/human studies are the best form of primary research because their findings should be directly translatable to patients. So why use other forms of research? The description below should help explain why the other forms of research are also important.

In general, a certain sequence of studies in nutrition research is often followed as shown in the figure below.

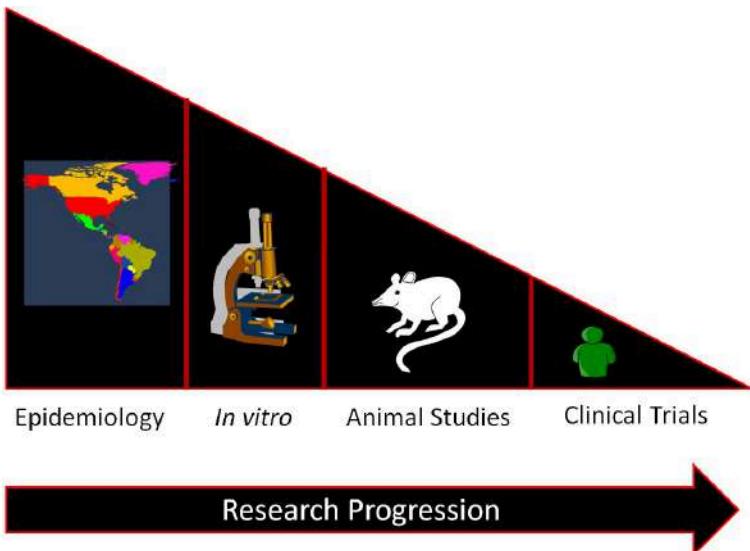


Figure 1.72 The progression of nutrition research. The shape indicates the selection of the most promising and safest hypotheses being moved to the next level. Thus, there is a decrease in the overall number of hypotheses represented by the height of the figure) being investigated by the next form of research.

Epidemiological studies find relationships between food/food components and a specific health outcome. This relationship is then investigated by *in vitro* studies and then, some of the most promising move to animal studies. Then the most promising and safe food/food components are moved into clinical trials/human studies. If it is an individual compound, there will be smaller trials designed to see if the compound is safe before it is moved into larger clinical trials to determine whether the food/food component results in beneficial health outcomes. The overall effect of this process is to select the most promising and safe food/food components for the clinical trials/human studies. This allows time and money to be used more efficiently, because while clinical trials/

human studies are the best form of research, they are also normally the most expensive and time-consuming.

Researchers nevertheless have been tempted to skip directly to clinical trials in the past rather than following the research progression. To illustrate what happens in these situations, the following describes a couple of examples when "normal" research progression hasn't been followed.

### **Beta-Carotene and Lung Cancer**

In the early 1980s there was a lot of excitement among researchers over the epidemiological evidence showing that higher dietary consumption of the carotenoid, beta-carotene, decreased lung cancer risk<sup>4</sup>. By the mid 1980's, two large, randomized, placebo-controlled trials began to determine whether high-dose β-carotene supplementation (far higher than dietary intake) could decrease lung cancer incidence in high-risk populations before *in vitro* or animal studies had investigated this relationship. The research community was shocked when these two studies were terminated early in the mid 1990s because of significant increases in lung cancer incidence among smokers receiving β-carotene supplements<sup>5,6</sup>. *In vitro* and animal studies completed after the

4. Peto R, Doll R, Buckley JD, Sporn MB. Can dietary beta-carotene materially reduce human cancer rates? *Nature* 290, 201-208, 1981.
5. The effect of vitamin E and beta carotene on the incidence of lung cancer and other cancers in male smokers. the alpha-tocopherol, beta carotene cancer prevention study group. *N Engl J Med.* 330, 1029-1035, 1994.
6. Goodman GE, Thornquist MD, Balmes J, Cullen MR, Meyskens FL,Jr., Omenn GS, et al. The beta-carotene and retinol efficacy trial: Incidence of lung cancer and

clinical trial found that as β-carotene intake shifts from normal dietary levels to high, supplement-type levels, the effect on lung cancer development also shifts from beneficial to detrimental in combination with smoke or carcinogen exposure<sup>7</sup>. Thus, if the normal research progression had been followed, it is likely that a lower dose of beta-carotene would have been used or trials wouldn't have been undertaken at all.

### **Selenium, Vitamin E, and Prostate Cancer**

Another example of when the research progression was not followed was the relationship between selenium, vitamin E, and prostate cancer. Two clinical trials had found secondary results that suggested that selenium and vitamin E supplementation may decrease prostate cancer risk<sup>8,9</sup>. A secondary result means it was

cardiovascular disease mortality during 6-year follow-up after stopping beta-carotene and retinol supplements. J Natl Cancer Inst 96, 1743-1750, 2004.

7. Lindshield BL, Erdman JW. (2006) Carotenoids. In: Bowman BA, Russell RM, editors. Present Knowledge in Nutrition. Washington, D.C.: International Life Sciences Institute. pp. 184-197.
8. Clark LC, Dalkin B, Krongrad A, Combs GF,Jr., Turnbull BW, Slate EH, et al. Decreased incidence of prostate cancer with selenium supplementation: Results of a double-blind cancer prevention trial. Br J Urol 81, 730-734, 1998.
9. Heinonen OP, Albanes D, Virtamo J, Taylor PR, Huttunen JK, Hartman AM, et al. Prostate cancer and supplementation with alpha-tocopherol and beta-carotene: Incidence and mortality in a controlled trial. J Natl Cancer Inst 90, 440-446, 1998.

not the primary outcome that the clinical trial was designed to find, thus they need to be interpreted with some caution. Rather than examining the relationship using *in vitro* and animal studies, a clinical trial was undertaken to determine if selenium and vitamin E supplementation alone, or in combination, could decrease the development of prostate cancer incidence<sup>10</sup>. This clinical trial was also terminated early because of a nonsignificant increase in prostate cancer in those receiving vitamin E<sup>11</sup>, and a nonsignificant increase in diabetes among those receiving selenium<sup>12</sup>. *In vitro* studies and animal models performed since the clinical trial was undertaken and after its termination suggest that vitamin E is not effective and that another form of selenium could have possibly been more effective<sup>13</sup>.

10. Lippman SM, Goodman PJ, Klein EA, Parnes HL, Thompson IM,Jr., Kristal AR, et al. Designing the selenium and vitamin E cancer prevention trial (SELECT). *J Natl Cancer Inst* 97, 94-102, 2005.
11. Klein EA, Thompson IM, Tangen CM, Crowley JJ, Lucia MS, Goodman PH, Minasian LM, Ford LG, Parnes HL, Gaziano JM, Karp DD, Lieber MM, Walther PJ, Klotz L, Parsons JK, Chin JL, Darke AK, Lippman SM, Goodman GE, Meysken FL, Baker LH. Vitamin E and the Risk of Prostate Cancer: The Selenium and Vitamin E Cancer Prevention Trial (SELECT). *JAMA* 306, 1549-1556, 2011.
12. Lippman SM, Klein EA, Goodman PJ, Lucia MS, Thompson IM, Ford LG, et al. Effect of selenium and vitamin E on risk of prostate cancer and other cancers: The selenium and vitamin E cancer prevention trial (SELECT). *JAMA* 301, 39-51, 2009.
13. Lindshield, B.L., Ford, N.A., Canene-Adams, K., Diamond

In addition to the lessons learned about the sequence of research in nutrition, these studies add to growing evidence that suggests that single-agent interventions, even in combination, may not be an effective strategy for improving health. The common nutrition research approach, after epidemiology finds an association or relationship, is to use *in vitro* and animal studies to identify the specific compound in a certain food that is responsible. This has been termed the reductionist approach because it takes something complex (food) and reduces it down to its simpler components. However, there is growing evidence that this may be a flawed approach. Some nutrition researchers feel that more focus should be on the food itself, rather than trying to discern exactly what is responsible for the beneficial health outcomes. Because it may not be one or 2 compounds alone that are responsible for the effect, it might be difficult to determine from the multitude of nutrients in foods which are responsible for the beneficial effect. This will mean changes in the overall research approach, especially at the human intervention studies/clinical trials level, because in most cases there is not a way to give a “placebo food”<sup>14 15</sup>.

### **Links**

A.M., Wallig, M.A., Erdman, J.W., Jr. Selenium, but not lycopene or vitamin E, decreases growth of transplantable Dunning R3327-H rat prostate tumors. PLoS One. 2010.

14. Gann PH, Khachik F. Tomatoes or lycopene versus prostate cancer: Is evolution anti-reductionist? J Natl Cancer Inst 95, 1563-1565, 2003.
15. Gann PH. Randomized trials of antioxidant supplementation for cancer prevention: First bias, now chance--next, cause. JAMA 301, 102-103, 2009.

Video: The Cochrane Collaboration - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=AhtchOL1ofc>

The Cochrane Colaboration - <http://www.cochrane.org/>

# Energy-Yielding Macronutrients

## 2 Energy

As you have learned, there are three energy-yielding macronutrients: carbohydrates, proteins, and lipids. This chapter goes more in depth about these major dietary components.

Sections:

2.1 Carbohydrates

2.2 Proteins

2.3 Lipids

### 2.1 Carbohydrates

Carbohydrates have become surprisingly divisive. Some people swear by them, others swear against them. But it is important to understand that carbohydrates are a diverse group of compounds that have a multitude of effects in the body. Thus, trying to make blanket statements about carbohydrates is probably not a good idea.

Carbohydrates are named because they are hydrated (as in water, H<sub>2</sub>O) carbon. Below is the formula showing how carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) and water (H<sub>2</sub>O) are used to make carbohydrates (CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>n</sub> and oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>). The “n” after the carbohydrate in the formula indicates that the chemical formula is repeated an unknown number of times, but that for every carbon and oxygen, there will always be two hydrogens.

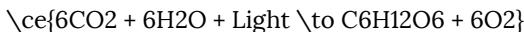
\begin{equation}



\end{equation}

Carbohydrates are produced by plants through a process known as photosynthesis. In this process, plants use the energy from photons of light to synthesize carbohydrates. The formula for this reaction looks like this:

\begin{equation}



\end{equation}

There are many different types of carbohydrates as shown in the figure below. The first way that carbohydrates can be divided is into simple, complex, and sugar alcohols. As the names imply, complex carbohydrates contain more sugar units, while simple carbohydrates contain either 1 or 2 sugars. In the next sections, you will learn more about the different forms of carbohydrates.

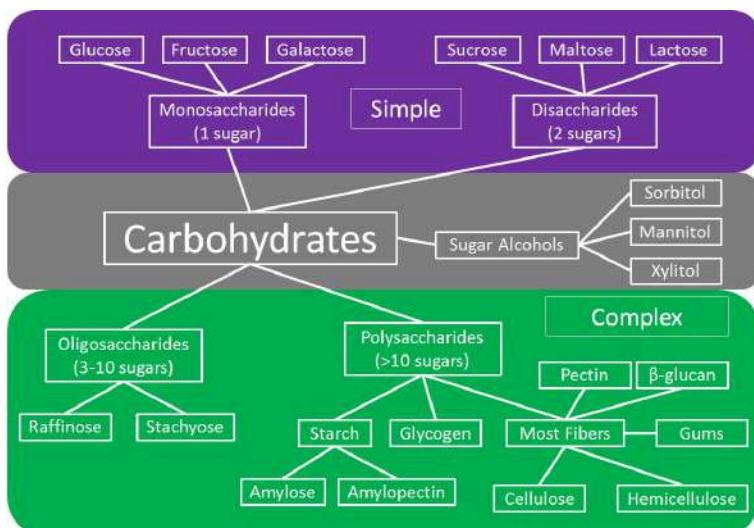


Figure 2.11 The different forms of carbohydrates

Subsections:

## 2.11 Simple Carbohydrates

## 2.12 Alternative Sweeteners

## 2.13 Oligosaccharides

## 2.14 Polysaccharides

### No References

## 2.11 Simple Carbohydrates

As shown in the figure below, simple carbohydrates can be further divided into monosaccharides and disaccharides. Mono- means one, thus monosaccharides contain one sugar. Di- means two, thus disaccharides contain 2 sugar units.

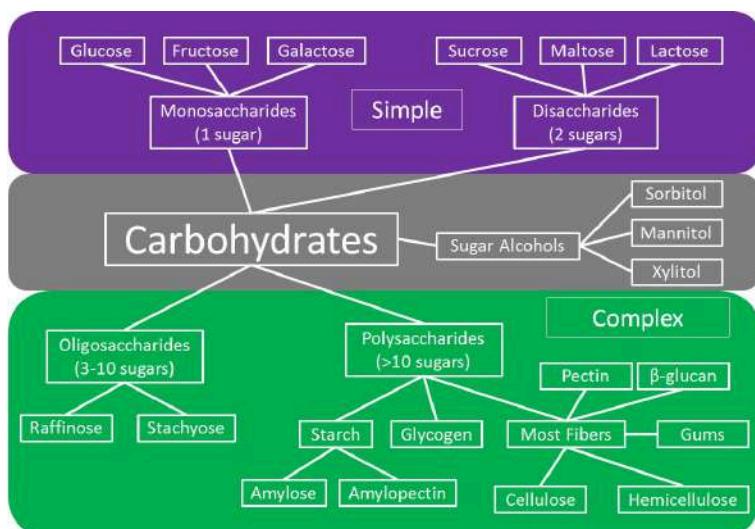


Figure 2.111 Overview of Carbohydrates

### Monosaccharides

The 3 monosaccharides are: glucose, fructose and galactose. Notice that all are 6-carbon sugars (hexoses). However, fructose has a five member ring, while glucose and galactose have 6 member

rings. Also notice that the only structural difference between glucose and galactose is the position of the alcohol (OH) group that is shown in red.

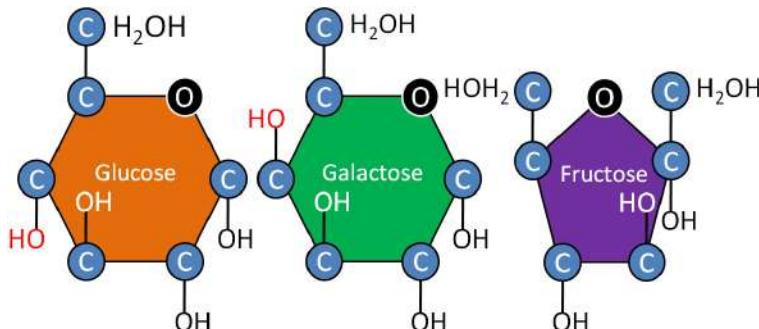


Figure 2.112 The 3 monosaccharides

Glucose – Product of photosynthesis, major source of energy in our bodies

Fructose – Commonly found in fruits and used commercially in many beverages

Galactose – Not normally found in nature alone, normally found in the disaccharide lactose

---

#### Web Link

Not familiar with ring structures, see how glucose forms a ring

---

#### Disaccharides

Disaccharides are produced from 2 monosaccharides. The commonly occurring disaccharides are:

Maltose (glucose + glucose, aka malt sugar) – seldom found in foods, present in alcoholic beverages and barley

Sucrose (glucose + fructose, aka table sugar) – only made by plants.

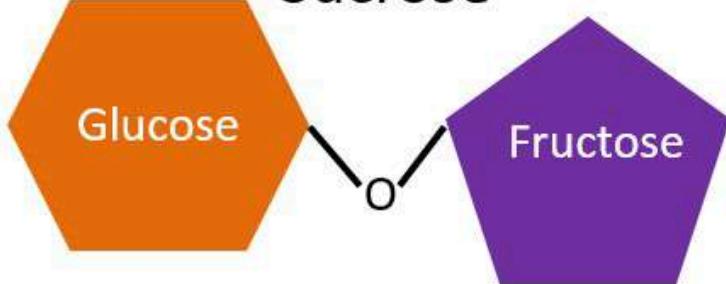
Lactose (galactose + glucose, aka milk sugar) – primary milk sugar

The different disaccharides and the monosaccharides components are illustrated below.

Maltose



Sucrose



Lactose

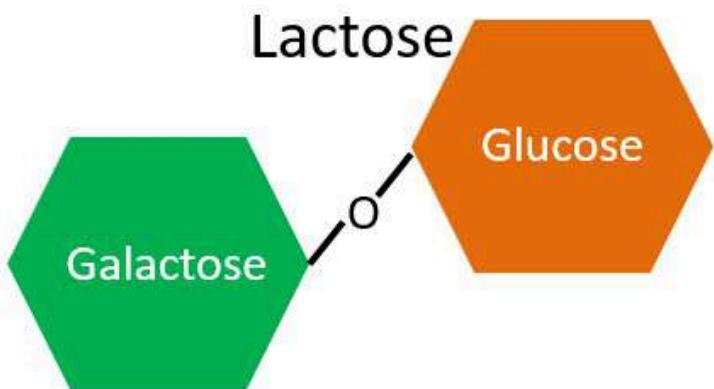


Figure 2.113 The 3 disaccharides

Each of these disaccharides contains glucose and all the reactions are dehydration reactions. Also notice the difference in the bond structures. Maltose and sucrose have alpha-bonds, which are depicted as v-shaped above. You might hear the term glycosidic used in some places to describe bonds between sugars. A glycoside is a sugar, so glycosidic is referring to a sugar bond. Lactose, on the other hand, contains a beta-bond. We need a special enzyme, lactase, to break this bond, and the absence of lactase activity leads to lactose intolerance.

### High-Fructose Corn Syrup

Food manufacturers are always searching for cheaper ways to produce their food. One method that has been popular is the use of high-fructose corn syrup as an alternative to sucrose. High-fructose corn syrup contains either 42 or 55% fructose, which is similar to sucrose<sup>1</sup>. Nevertheless, because an increase in high-fructose corn syrup consumption (see figure below) has coincided with the increase in obesity in the U.S., there is a lot of controversy surrounding its use.

U.S. per capita sweetener availability, 1966-2012

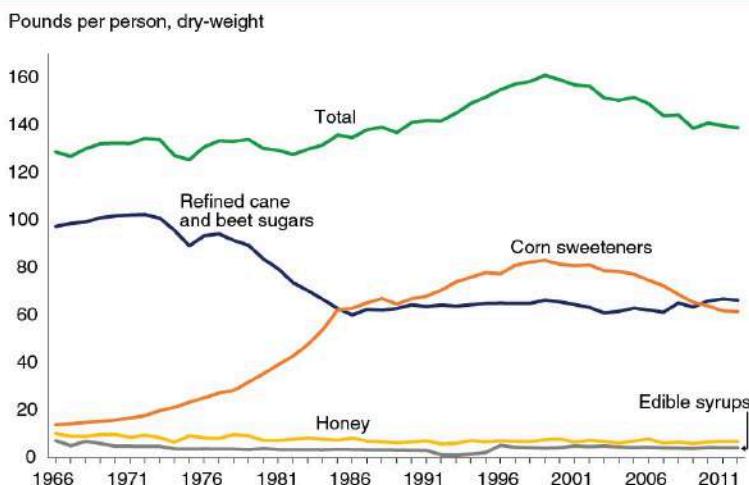


Figure 2.114 U.S. per capita sugar and sweetener consumption<sup>2</sup>

Opponents claim that high-fructose corn syrup is contributing to the rise in obesity rates. As a result, some manufacturers have started releasing products made with natural sugar. You can read about this trend in the following New York Times article in the link below. Also, manufacturers tried to rebrand high-fructose corn syrup as corn sugar to get around the negative perception of the name. But the FDA rejected the Corn Refiners Association request to change the name officially to corn sugar as described in the second link. The last link is a video made by the American Chemical Society that gives some background on how HFCS is produced and how it compares to sucrose.

---

### **Web Links**

Sugar is back on labels, this time as a selling point

No new name for high-fructose corn syrup

(Video): Sugar vs. High Fructose Corn Syrup – What's the Difference? (2:41)

---

### **References & Links**

1. <http://www.fda.gov/food/ingredientspackaginglabeling/foodadditivesingredients/ucm324856.htm>
  
2. <http://www.foodnavigator-usa.com/Markets/The-changing-American-diet-consumption-of-corn-based-sweeteners-drops>

### **Links**

Not familiar with Ring structures, see how glucose forms a ring – [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Glucose\\_Fisher\\_to\\_Haworth.gif](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Glucose_Fisher_to_Haworth.gif)

Sugar is back on labels, this time as a selling point – [http://www.nytimes.com/2009/03/21/dining/21sugar.html?\\_r=1&ref=nutrition](http://www.nytimes.com/2009/03/21/dining/21sugar.html?_r=1&ref=nutrition)

No new name for high-fructose corn syrup – [http://well.blogs.nytimes.com/2012/05/31/no-new-name-for-high-fructose-corn-syrup/?\\_r=0](http://well.blogs.nytimes.com/2012/05/31/no-new-name-for-high-fructose-corn-syrup/?_r=0)

### **Video**

Sugar vs. High Fructose Corn Syrup – What’s the Difference? –  
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fXMvregmU1g>

## 2.12 Sugar Alcohols (Polyols, Sugar Replacers)

Sugar(s) can provide a lot of calories and contribute to tooth decay. Thus there are many other compounds that are used as alternatives to sugar that have been developed or discovered. We will first consider sugar alcohols and then the alternative sweeteners in subsequent sections.

Below you can see the structure of three common sugar alcohols: xylitol, sorbitol, and mannitol.



Figure 2.121 Structure of three commonly used sugar alcohols: xylitol, sorbitol, and mannitol<sup>1-3</sup>

Remember that alcohol subgroups are (OH), and you can see many of them in these structures.

Sugar alcohols are also known as “sugar replacers”, because some in the public might get confused by the name sugar alcohol. Some might think a sugar alcohol is a sweet alcoholic beverage. Another name for them is nutritive sweeteners, which indicates that they do provide calories. Sugar alcohols are nearly as sweet as sucrose but only provide approximately half the calories as shown below. The name polyols also seems to be increasingly used to describe these compounds.

Table 2.121 Relative sweetness of monosaccharides, disaccharides, and sugar alcohols<sup>4,5</sup>

<b>Sweetener</b>	<b>Relative Sweetness</b>	<b>Energy (kcal/g)</b>
Lactose	0.2	4*
Maltose	0.4	4
Glucose	0.7	4
Sucrose	1.0	4
Fructose	1.2-1.8	4
Erythritol	0.7	0.4
Isomalt	0.5	2.0
Lactitol	0.4	2.0

\*Differs based on a person's lactase activity

Sugars are fermented by bacteria on the surfaces of teeth. This results in a decreased pH (higher acidity) that leads to tooth decay and, potentially, cavity formation. The major advantage of sugar alcohols over sugars is that sugar alcohols are not fermented by bacteria on the tooth surface. There is a nice picture of this process in the link below as well as a video explaining the process of tooth decay.

---

### **Web Links**

[Sugar and Dental Caries](#)  
[Video: Tooth Decay \(1:06\)](#)

---

While not a sugar alcohol, tagatose is very similar to sugar alcohols. Tagatose is an isomer of fructose, that provides a small amount of energy (1.5 kcal/g). 80% of tagatose reaches the large intestine, where it is fermented by bacteria, meaning it has a prebiotic-type effect<sup>4</sup>. Notice the similarity in structure of tagatose to sugar alcohols, the only difference being a ketone (=O) instead of an alcohol (OH) group.

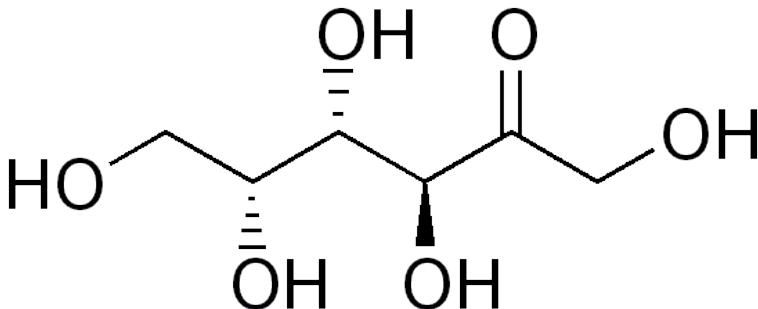


Figure 2.122 Structure of tagatose-1L

## References & Links

1. <https://pubchem.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/compound/xylitol#section=Top>
2. <https://pubchem.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/compound/D-Sorbitol#section=Top>
3. <https://pubchem.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/compound/D-mannitol#section=Top>
4. Wardlaw GM, Hampl J. (2006) Perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
5. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2008) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Thomson Wadsworth.
6. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Tagatose.png>

## Link

Sugar and Dental Caries – <http://www.asu.edu/courses/css335/caries.htm>

## Video

Tooth Decay – [http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=\\_ollv59bTL4](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_ollv59bTL4)

## **2.13 Alternative Sweeteners**

Alternative sweeteners are simply alternatives to sucrose and other mono- and disaccharides that provide sweetness. Many have been developed to provide zero-calorie or low calorie sweetening for foods and drinks.

Because many of these provide little to no calories, these sweeteners are also referred to as non-nutritive sweeteners (FDA is using high-intensity sweeteners to describe these products<sup>3</sup>). Aside from tagatose (described in sugar alcohol section), all of the sweeteners on the list below meet this criteria. Aspartame does provide calories, but because it is far sweeter than sugar, the small amount used does not contribute meaningful calories to a person's diet. Until the FDA allowed the use of stevia, this collection of sweeteners were commonly referred to as artificial sweeteners because they were synthetically or artificially produced. However, with stevia, the descriptor artificial can no longer be used to describe these sweeteners. More recently, Luo Han Guo Fruit extracts have also been allowed to be used as another high-intensity sweetener that is not synthesized or artificially produced. The table in the link below summarizes the characteristics of the FDA approved high-intensity sweeteners.

---

### **Web Link**

[FDA High-Intensity Sweeteners](#)

---

### **Saccharin**

Saccharin is the oldest of the artificial sweeteners. You do not want to use it in cooking or baking because it develops a bitter taste<sup>4</sup>.

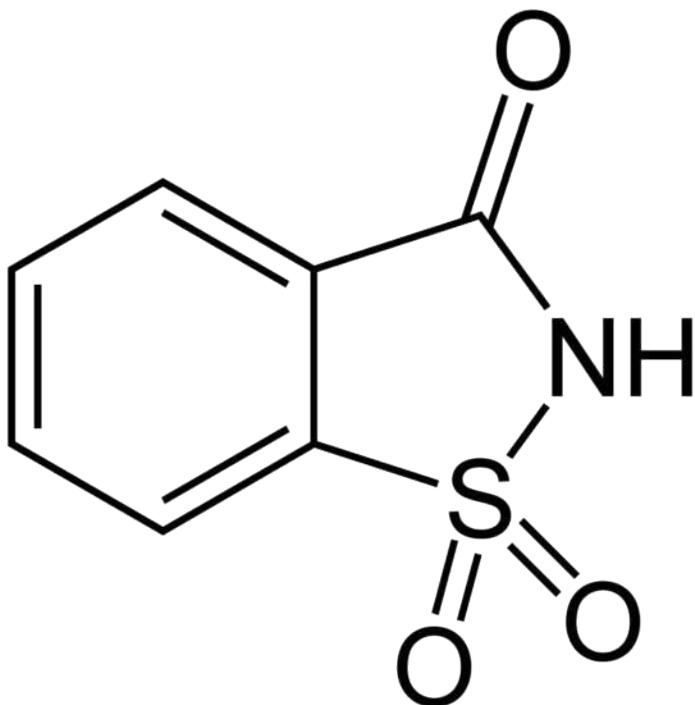


Figure 2.131 Structure of saccharin<sup>5</sup>

### Aspartame

Aspartame is made up of 2 amino acids (phenylalanine and aspartate) and a methyl ( $\text{CH}_3$ ) group. The compound is broken down during digestion into the individual amino acids. This is why it provides 4 kcal/g, just like protein<sup>4</sup>. Because it can be broken down to phenylalanine, products that contain aspartame contain the following message: "Phenylketonurics: Contains phenylalanine." Phenylketonuria (PKU) will be covered in greater detail in section 2.25. When heated, aspartame breaks down and loses its sweet flavor<sup>1</sup>.

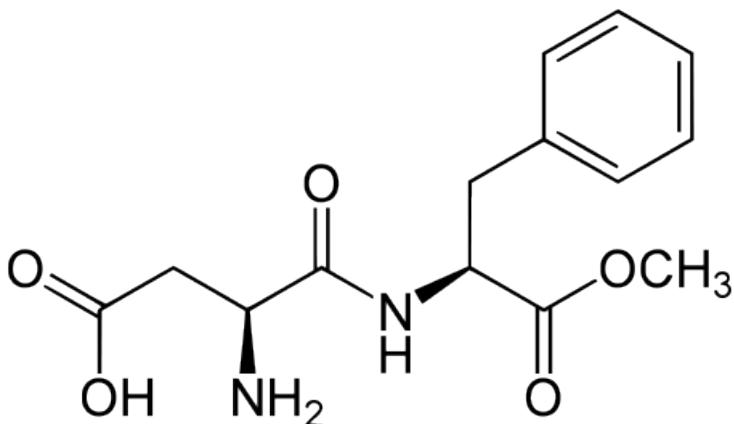


Figure 2.132 Structure of aspartame6

### Neotame

Neotame is like aspartame version 2.0. Neotame is structurally identical to aspartame except that it contains an additional side group (bottom of figure below, which is flipped backwards to make it easier to compare their structures). While this looks like a minor difference, it has profound effects on the properties of neotame. Neotame is much sweeter than aspartame and is heat-stable. It can still be broken down to phenylalanine, but such small amounts are used that it is not a concern for those with PKU.<sup>1,4</sup>

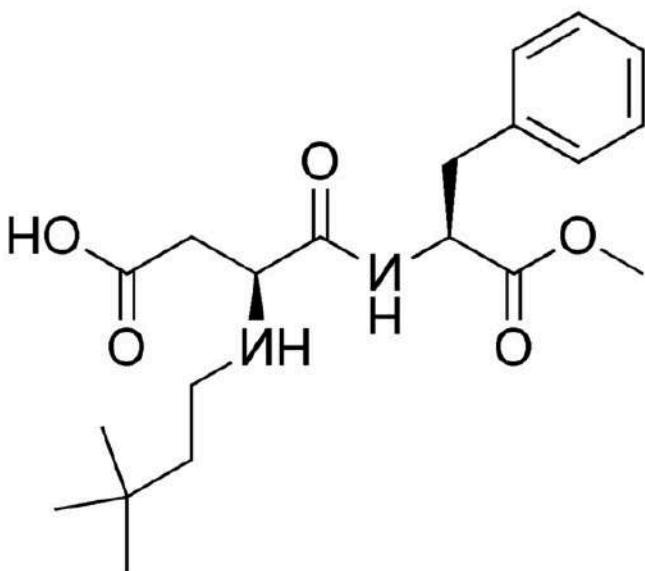


Figure 2.133 Structure of neotame<sup>7</sup>

### Advantame

The newest, sweetest alternative sweetener approved by the FDA in 2014 is advantame. It is heat-stable and does not have a trade name yet<sup>3</sup>. Notice it also has a similar structure to aspartame and neotame. Like Neotame it can be broken down to phenylalanine, but such small amounts are used that it is not a concern for those with PKU. However, it has a much higher acceptable daily intake than Neotame<sup>4</sup>, meaning there is less concern about adverse effects from consuming too much.

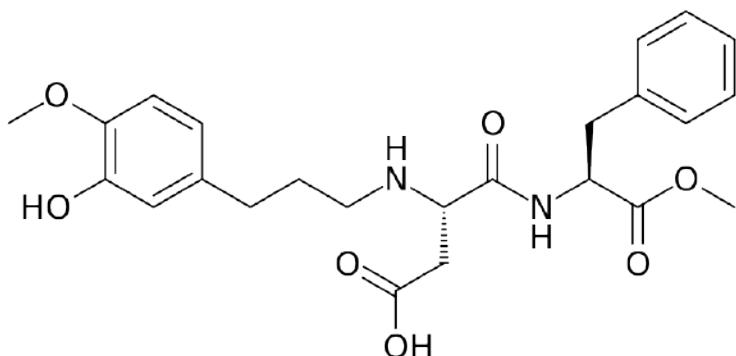


Figure 2.134 Structure of advantame8

### Acesulfame-Potassium (K)

Acesulfame-potassium (K) is not digested or absorbed, therefore it provides no energy or potassium to the body<sup>1</sup>. It is a heat-stable alternative sweetener.

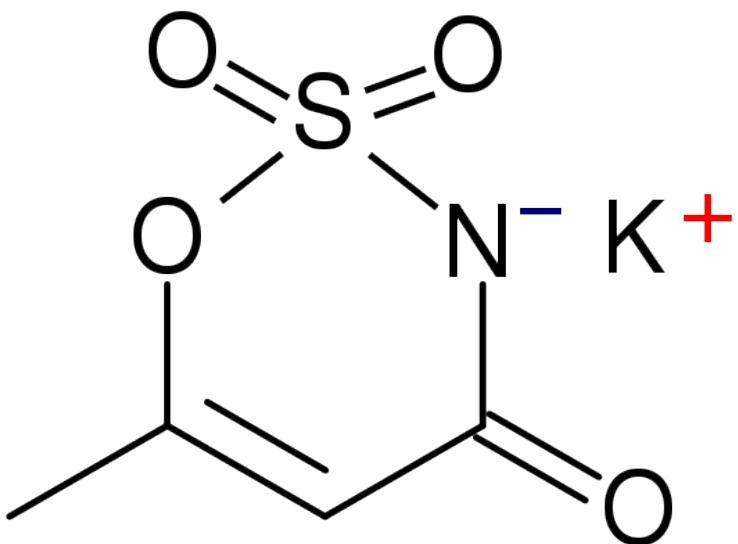


Figure 2.135 Structure of acesulfame-potassium (K9)

### Sucralose

Sucralose is structurally identical to sucrose except that 3 of the alcohol groups (OH) are replaced by chlorine molecules (Cl). This small change causes sucralose to not be digested and as such is excreted in feces<sup>1,4</sup>. It is a heat-stable alternative sweetener.

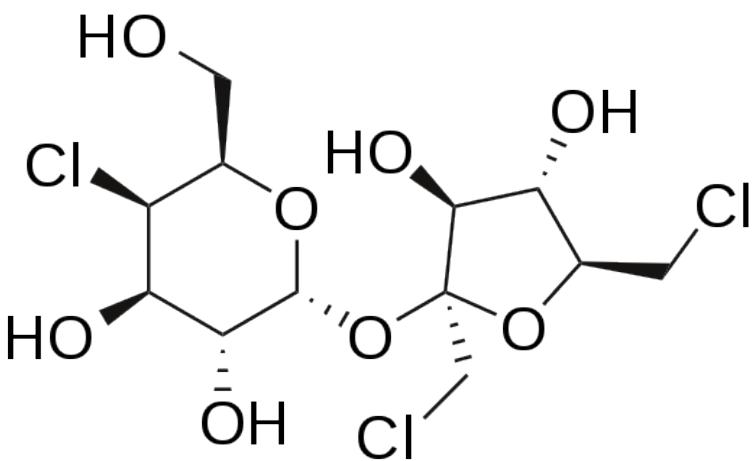


Figure 2.136 Structure of sucralose

### Stevia

Stevia is derived from a South American shrub, with the leaves being the sweet part. The components responsible for this sweet taste are a group of compounds known as steviol glycosides. The structure of steviol is shown below.

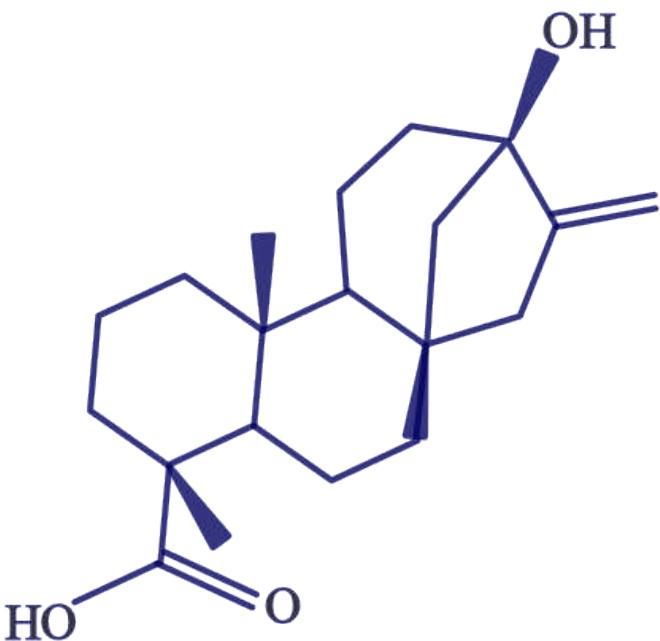


Figure 2.137 Structure of steviol<sup>12</sup>

The term glycoside means that there are sugar molecules bonded to steviol. The two predominant steviol glycosides are stevioside and rebaudioside A. The structure of these two steviol glycosides are very similar<sup>13</sup>. The structure of stevioside is shown below as an example.

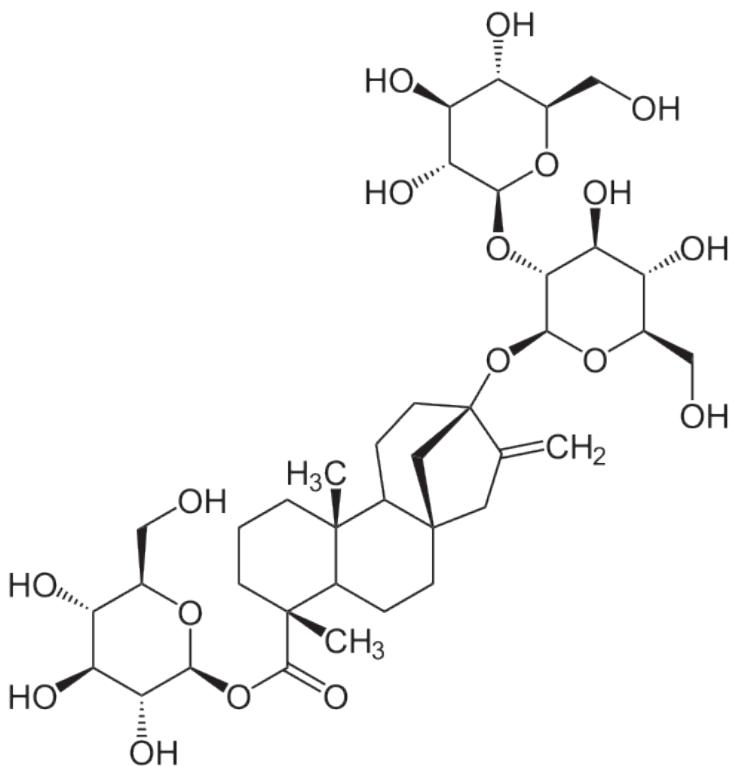


Figure 2.138 Structure of stevioside14

The common name for a sweetener containing primarily rebaudioside A is rebiana<sup>13</sup>. Stevia sweeteners had been marketed as a natural alternative sweeteners, something that has been stopped by lawsuits as described in the following link.

---

#### Web Link

[What is natural and who decides?](#)

---

Stevia is a heat-stable alternative sweetener.

## Luo Han Guo Fruit Extracts

Luo Han Guo (aka *Siraitia grosvenorii* Swingle, monk) fruit extracts are a newer, natural heat-stable alternative sweetener option derived from a native Chinese fruit. These extracts are sweet because of the mogrosides that they contain<sup>3</sup>. The structure of a mogroside is shown below.

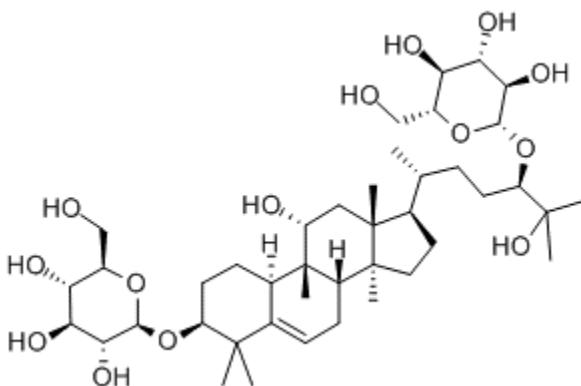


Figure 2.139 Structure of a mogroside<sup>15</sup>

## References & Links

1. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2008) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Thomson Wadsworth.
2. <http://www.fda.gov/AboutFDA/Transparency/Basics/ucm214865.htm>
3. <http://www.fda.gov/food/ingredientspackaginglabeling/foodadditivesingredients/ucm397725.htm>
4. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
5. <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Saccharin#/media/File:Saccharin.svg>
6. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Aspartame>

7. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Neotame.png>
8. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Advantame.svg>
9. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:AcesulfameK.svg>
10. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Sucratose2.svg>
11. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Steviol.svg>
12. Carakostas MC, Curry LL, Boileau AC, Brusick DJ. (2008) Overview: The history, technical function and safety of rebaudioside A, a naturally occurring steviol glycoside, for use in food and beverages. *Food and Chemical Toxicology* 46 Suppl 7: S1.
13. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Steviosid.svg>
14. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Mogroside\\_II\\_E.gif](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Mogroside_II_E.gif)

### Links

FDA High-Intensity sweeteners - <http://www.fda.gov/food/ingredientspackaginglabeling/foodadditivesingredients/ucm397725.htm>

What is natural and who decides? -  
<http://www.nutraingredients-usa.com/Markets/Pure-Via-to-settle-class-action-suit-over-natural-claims>

## 2.14 Oligosaccharides

Within complex carbohydrates, there are oligosaccharides and polysaccharides. Oligosaccharides (oligo means few) are composed of 3-10 sugar units and polysaccharides contain greater than 10 sugar units.

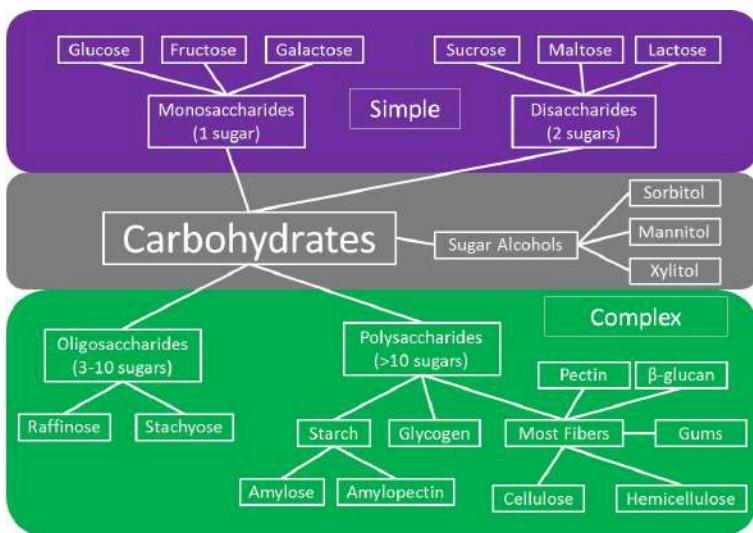


Figure 2.141 Overview of carbohydrates

Raffinose and stachyose are the most common oligosaccharides. They are found in legumes, onions, broccoli, cabbage, and whole wheat<sup>1</sup>. The link below shows the raffinose and stachyose content of some plant foods.

---

#### Web Link

[Raffinose and stachyose content of selected plant foods](#)

---

The structures of the two oligosaccharides are shown below.

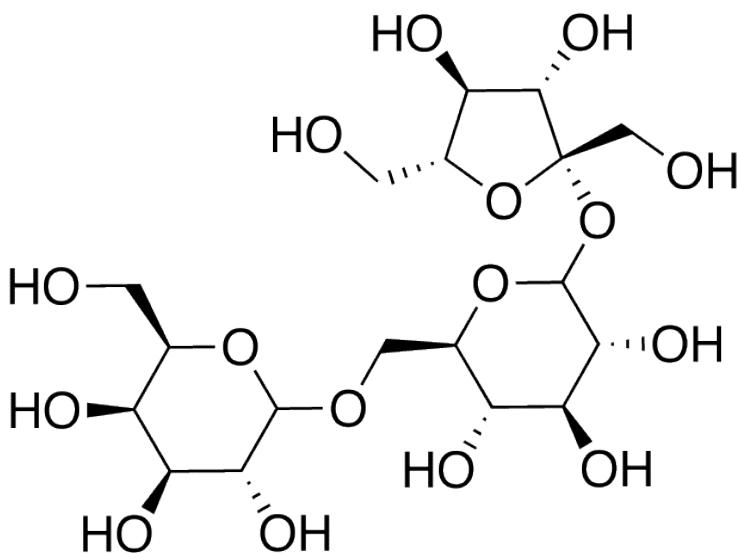


Figure 2.142 Structure of raffinose

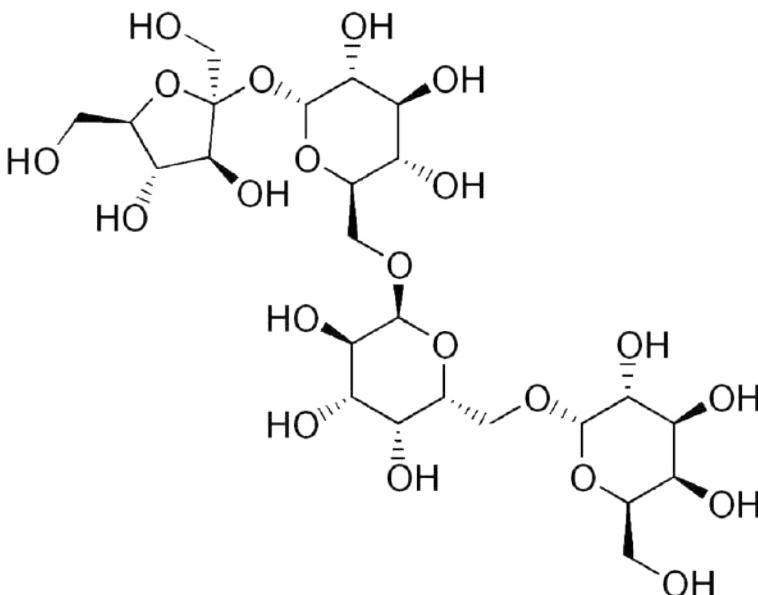


Figure 2.143 Structure of stachyose3

Our digestive system lacks the enzymes necessary to digest these alpha 1-6 glycosidic bonds found in oligosaccharides. As a result, the oligosaccharides are not digested and reach the colon where they are fermented by the bacteria there. Gas is produced as a byproduct of this bacteria fermentation that can lead to flatulence. To combat this problem, Beano® is a popular product that contains an enzyme (alpha-galactosidase) to break down oligosaccharides, thereby preventing them from being used to produce gas.

### References & Links

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Raffinose.png>
3. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Stachyose.png>

## Videos

Raffinose and stachyose content of foods -  
<http://books.google.com/>

books?id=LTGFV2NOySYC&pg=PA374&lpg=PA374&dq=raffinose+an  
d+stachyose+content+of+vegetables&source=bl&ots=X4Dr7jWmwL  
&sig=CJFvhAIysSZCP2SOy\_MqhfoVYQQ&hl=en&ei=TSRITdTfLNH0  
gAfB2MX\_BQ&sa=X&oi=book\_result&ct=result&resnum=6&ved=0  
CD0Q6AEwBQ#v=onepage&q=raffinose%20and%20stachyose%20  
content%20of%20vegetables&f=false

Beano's University of Gas - <http://beano.com.cn/university-of-gas#>

## 2.15 Polysaccharides

Poly means “many” and thus polysaccharides are made up of many monosaccharides (>10). There are 3 main classes of polysaccharides: starch, glycogen, and most fibers. The following sections will describe the structural similarities and differences between the 3 classes of polysaccharides that are divided in the figure below.

Subsections:

2.151 Starch

2.152 Glycogen

2.153 Fiber

### 2.151 Starch

Starch is the storage form of glucose in plants. There are two forms of starch: amylose and amylopectin. Structurally they differ in that amylose is a linear polysaccharide, whereas amylopectin is branched. The linear portion of both amylose and amylopectin

contains alpha 1-4 glycosidic bonds, while the branches of amylopectin are made up of alpha 1-6 glycosidic bonds.



Figure 2.1511 Structure of amylose



Figure 2.1512 Structure of amylopectin

Amylopectin is more common than amylose (4:1 ratio on average) in starch<sub>1,2</sub>. Some starchy foods include grains, root crops, tubers, and legumes.

### References & Links

1. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
2. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

## 2.152 Glycogen

Glycogen is similar to starch in that it is a storage form of glucose.

Glycogen, however, is the carbohydrate storage form in animals, rather than plants. It is even more highly branched than amylopectin, as shown below.



Figure 2.1521 Structure of glycogen

Like amylopectin, the branch points of glycogen are alpha 1-6 glycosidic bonds, while the linear bonds are alpha 1-4 bonds, as shown below.

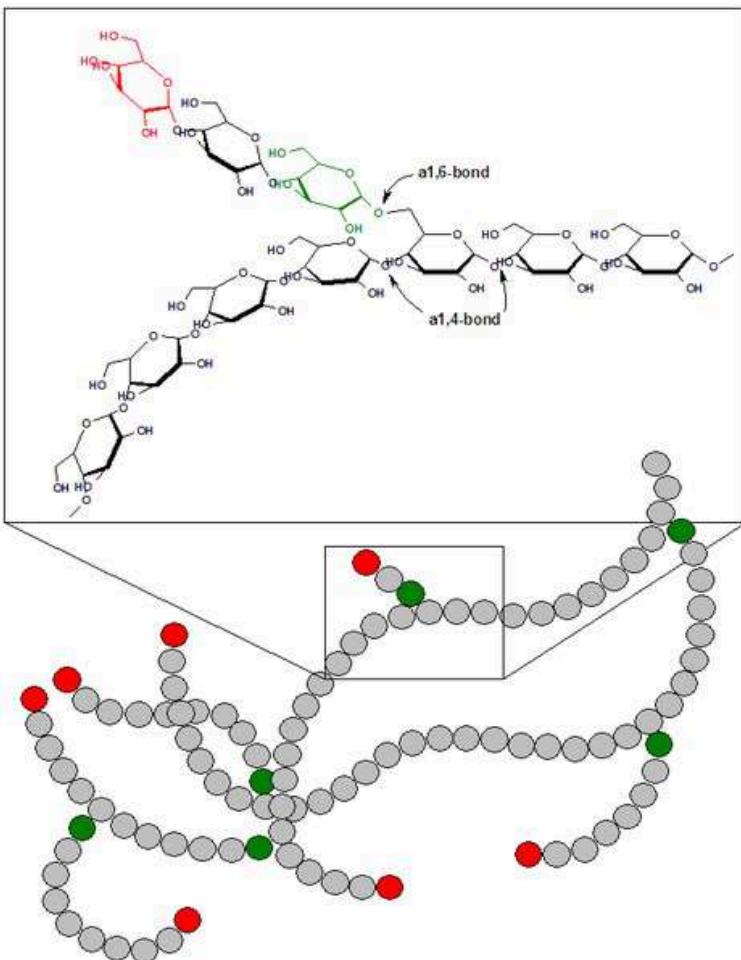


Figure 2.1522 Structure of glycogen1

The advantage of glycogen's highly branched structure is that the multiple ends (shown in red above) are where enzymes start to cleave off glucose molecules. As a result, with many ends available, it can provide glucose much more quickly to the body than it could if it was a linear molecule like amylose with only two ends. We

consume almost no glycogen, because it is rapidly broken down by enzymes in animals after slaughter<sup>2</sup>.

### References & Links

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Glycogen.png>
2. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2008) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Thomson Wadsworth.

## 2.153 Fiber

The simplest definition of fiber is indigestible matter. Indigestible means that it survives digestion in the small intestine and reaches the large intestine.

There are 3 major fiber classifications<sup>1</sup>:

Dietary Fiber – nondigestible carbohydrates and lignin that are intrinsic and intact in plants

Functional Fiber – isolated, nondigestible carbohydrates that have beneficial physiological effects in humans

Total Fiber – dietary fiber + functional fiber

The differences between dietary and functional fiber are compared in the table below:

Table 2.153<sup>1</sup> Differences between dietary fiber and functional fiber

Dietary Fiber	Functional Fiber
Intact in plants	Isolated, extracted, or synthesized
Carbohydrates + lignins	Only carbohydrates
Only from plants	From plants or animals
No proven benefit	Must prove benefit

Dietary fiber is always intact in plants, whereas functional fiber can be isolated, extracted or synthesized. Functional fiber is only carbohydrates, while dietary fiber also includes lignins. Functional fiber can be from plants or animals, while dietary fiber is only from

plants. Functional fiber must be proven to have a physiological benefit, while dietary fiber does not.

Polysaccharide fiber differs from other polysaccharides in that it contains beta-glycosidic bonds (as opposed to alpha-glycosidic bonds). To illustrate these differences, consider the structural differences between amylose and cellulose (type of fiber). Both are linear chains of glucose, the only difference is that amylose has alpha-glycosidic bonds, while cellulose has beta-glycosidic bonds as shown below.

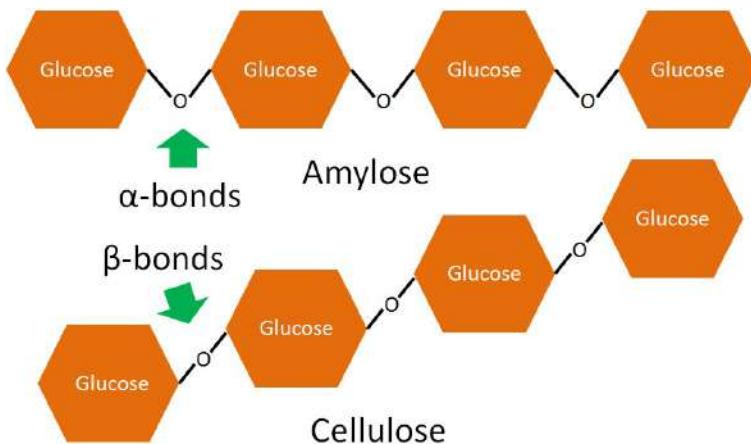


Figure 2.1531 Structures of amylose and cellulose

The beta-bonds in fiber cannot be broken down by the digestive enzymes in the small intestine so they continue into the large intestine.

Fiber can be classified by its physical properties. In the past, fibers were commonly referred to as soluble and insoluble. This classification distinguished whether the fiber was soluble in water. However, this classification is being phased out in the nutrition community. Instead, most fibers that would have been classified as insoluble fiber are now referred to as nonfermentable and/or nonviscous and soluble fiber as fermentable, and/or viscous

because these better describe the fiber's characteristics<sup>2</sup>. Fermentable refers to whether the bacteria in the colon can ferment or degrade the fiber into short chain fatty acids and gas. Viscous refers to the capacity of certain fibers to form a thick gel-like consistency. The following table lists some of the common types of fiber and provides a brief description about each.

Table 2.1532 Common types of nonfermentable, nonviscous (insoluble) fiber

Fiber	Description
Cellulose	Main component of plant cell walls
Hemicellulose	Surround cellulose in plant cell walls
Lignin	Noncarbohydrate found within "woody" plant cell walls

Table 2.1533 Common types of fermentable, viscous (soluble) fiber

Fiber	Description
Hemicellulose	Surround cellulose in plant cell walls
Pectin	Found in cell walls and intracellular tissues of fruits and berries
Beta-glucans	Found in cereal brans
Gums	Viscous, usually isolated from seeds

The following table gives the percentage of total dietary fiber in 5 foods.

Table 2.1534 Total dietary fiber (as percent of sample weight)<sup>3</sup>

Food	Total Dietary Fiber
Cereal, all bran	30.1
Blueberries, fresh	2.7
Broccoli, fresh, cooked	3.5
Pork and beans, canned	4.4
Almonds, with skin	8.8

The table below shows the amount of nonfermentable, nonviscous fiber in these same five foods.

Table 2.1535 Nonviscous fiber (as percent of sample weight)3

Food	Hemicellulose	Cellulose	Pectin	Lignin	Total
Cereal, all bran	15.3	7.5	0.9	4.3	28.0
Blueberries, fresh	0.7	0.4	0.4	0.9	2.4
Broccoli, fresh, cooked	0.9	1.2	0.7	0.3	3.1
Pork and beans, canned	0.9	1.6	0.3	0.2	3.0
Almonds, with skin	1.8	3.3	1.6	1.9	8.6

The table below shows the amount of fermentable, viscous fiber in these same five foods.

Table 2.1536 Viscous Fiber (as percent of sample weight)3

Food	Hemicellulose	Pectin	Total
Cereal, all bran	2.0	0.1	2.1
Blueberries, fresh	0.1	0.2	0.3
Broccoli, fresh, cooked	0.2	0.2	0.4
Pork and beans, canned	1.1	0.3	1.4
Almonds, with skin	0.2	tr	0.2

tr = trace amounts

Foods that are good sources of non fermentable, non viscous fiber include whole wheat, whole grain cereals, broccoli, and other vegetables. This type of fiber is believed to decrease the risk of constipation and colon cancer, because it increases stool bulk and reduces transit time4. This reduced transit time theoretically means shorter exposure to consumed carcinogens in the intestine, and thus lower cancer risk.

Fermentable, viscous fiber can be found in oats, rice, psyllium seeds, soy, and some fruits. This type of fiber is believed to decrease

blood cholesterol and sugar levels, thus also lowering the risk of heart disease and diabetes, respectively<sup>4</sup>. Its viscous nature slows the absorption of glucose preventing blood glucose from spiking after consuming carbohydrates. It lowers blood cholesterol levels primarily by binding bile acids, which are made from cholesterol, and causing them to be excreted. As such, more cholesterol is used to synthesize new bile acids.

### **References & Links**

1. DRI Book – [Anonymous]. (2005) Dietary reference intakes for energy, carbohydrate, fiber, fat, fatty acids, cholesterol, protein, and amino acids. Washington, D.C.: The National Academies Press. <https://www.nap.edu/read/10490/chapter/9>
2. Dietary Reference Intakes: Proposed Definition of Dietary Fiber Food and Nutrition Board. 2001 <https://www.nap.edu/read/10161/chapter/3>
3. Marlett JA. (1992) Content and composition of dietary fiber in 117 frequently consumed foods. *J Am Diet Assoc* 92: 175–186.
4. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

## **2.2 Protein**

Protein is another major macronutrient that, like carbohydrates, are made up of small repeating units. But instead of sugars, protein is made up of amino acids. In the following sections, you will learn more about how protein is synthesized and why it is important in the body.

Subsections:

2.21 Amino Acids

2.22 Protein Synthesis

- 2.23 Protein Structure
- 2.24 Protein Functions
- 2.25 Types of Amino Acids
- 2.26 Amino Acid Structures
- 2.27 Protein Quality
- 2.28 Protein-Energy Malnutrition

## 2.21 Amino Acids

Similar to carbohydrates, proteins contain carbon (C), hydrogen (H), and oxygen (O). However, unlike carbohydrates (and lipids) proteins also contain nitrogen (N). Proteins are made up of smaller units called amino acids. This name, amino acid, signifies that each contains an amino ( $\text{NH}_2$ ) and carboxylic acid ( $\text{COOH}$ ) groups. The only structural difference in the 20 amino acids is the side group represented by the R below.

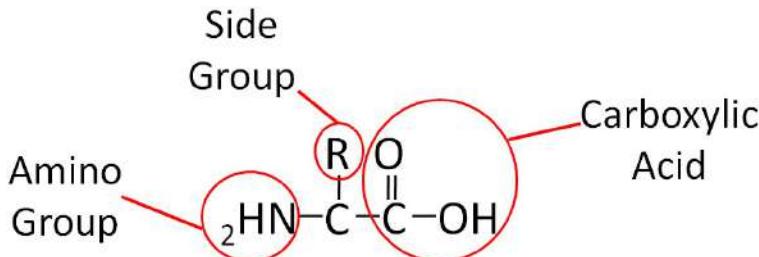


Fig 2.211 Structure of an amino acid

To illustrate the differences in the side group we will consider glycine and alanine, the two simplest amino acids. For glycine the R group is hydrogen (H), while in alanine the R group is a methyl ( $\text{CH}_3$ ). The structures of these two amino acids are shown below.

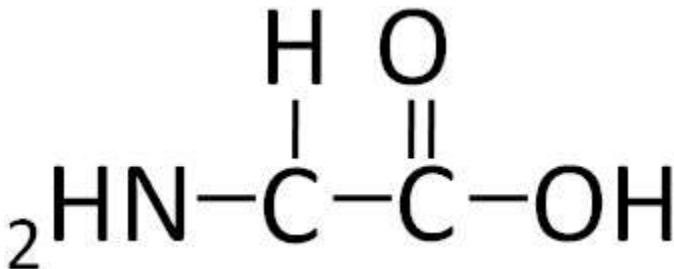


Figure 2.212 Structure of glycine

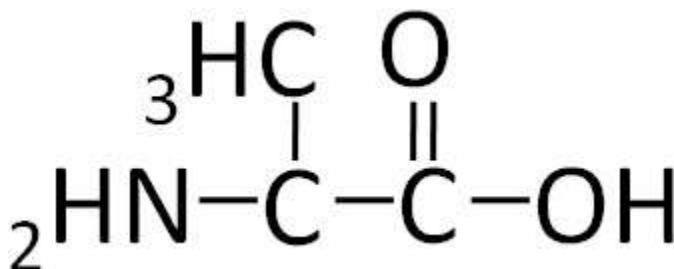


Figure 2.213 Structure of alanine

Individual amino acids are joined together using a peptide bond (green) and is shown in the figure below.

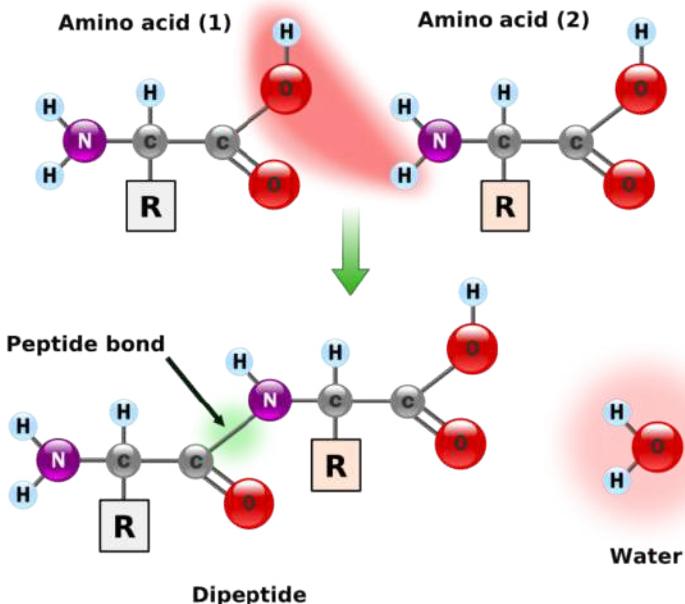


Figure 2.214 Peptide bond formation1

Amino acids can also come together to form tripeptides (three amino acids), oligopeptides (3–10 amino acids), and polypeptides (10 or more amino acids). A polypeptide is a chain of amino acids as shown below.

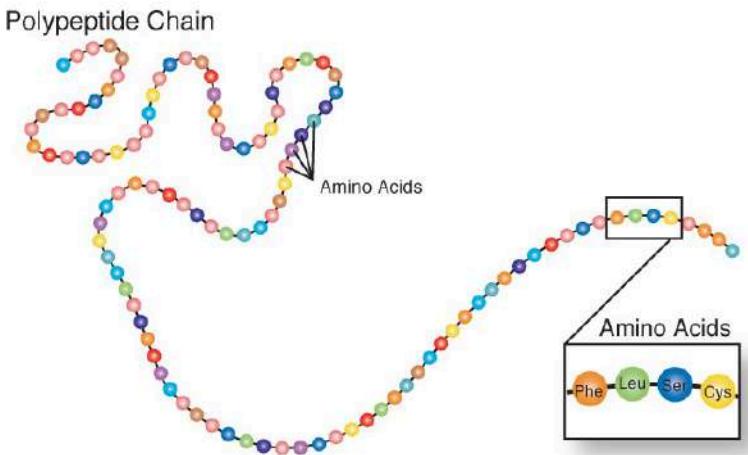


Figure 2.216 A polypeptide chain2

### References & Links

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Peptidformationball.svg>
2. <http://www.genome.gov/Glossary/index.cfm?id=149>

## 2.22 Protein Synthesis

The process of protein synthesis is not as simple as stringing together amino acids to form a polypeptide. As shown below, this is a fairly involved process. DNA contains the genetic code that is used as a template to create mRNA in a process known as transcription. The mRNA then moves out of the nucleus into the cytoplasm where it serves as the template for translation, where tRNAs bring in individual amino acids that are bonded together to form a polypeptide.

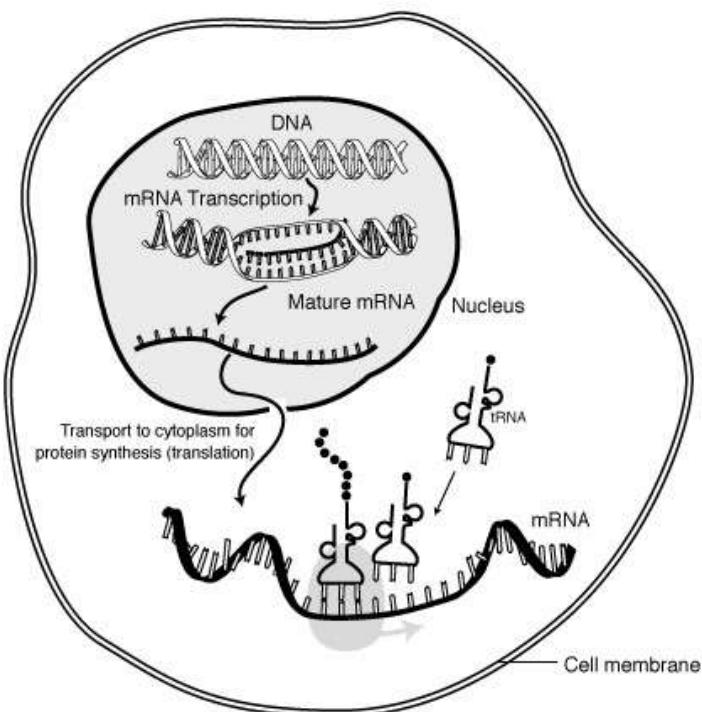


Figure 2.221 The process of creating a polypeptide1

Proteins, known as ribosomes, assist with translation. After translation, the polypeptide can be folded or gain structure as shown below and will be discussed in the next subsection (Protein Structure).

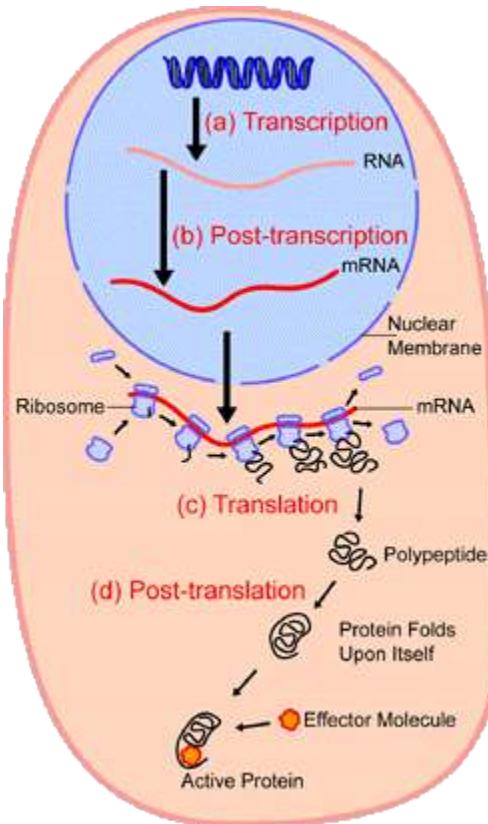


Figure 2.222 Protein synthesis and processing

These videos do an excellent job of showing and explaining how protein synthesis occurs.

---

#### Web Links

[Video: Transcription \(1:49\)](#)  
[Video: Translation \(2:05\)](#)

---

#### References & Links

1. <http://www.genome.gov/Pages/Hyperion/DIR/VIP/Glossary/Illustration/mrna.cfm?key=messenger%20RNA>
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Proteinsynthesis.png>

## Videos

Transcription – <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=5MfSYnItYvg>  
Translation – <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=8dsTvBaUMvw>

## 2.23 Protein Structure

There are four levels of protein structure. Primary structure is the linear polypeptide chain. Secondary structure occurs when hydrogen bonding between amino acids in the same polypeptide chain causes the formation of structures such as beta-pleated sheets and alpha-helices. Tertiary structure occurs as a result of an attraction between different amino acids of the polypeptide chain and interactions between the different secondary structures. Finally, certain proteins contain quaternary structure where multiple polypeptide chains are bonded together to form a larger molecule. Hemoglobin is an example of a protein with quaternary structure. The figure below illustrates the different levels of protein structure.

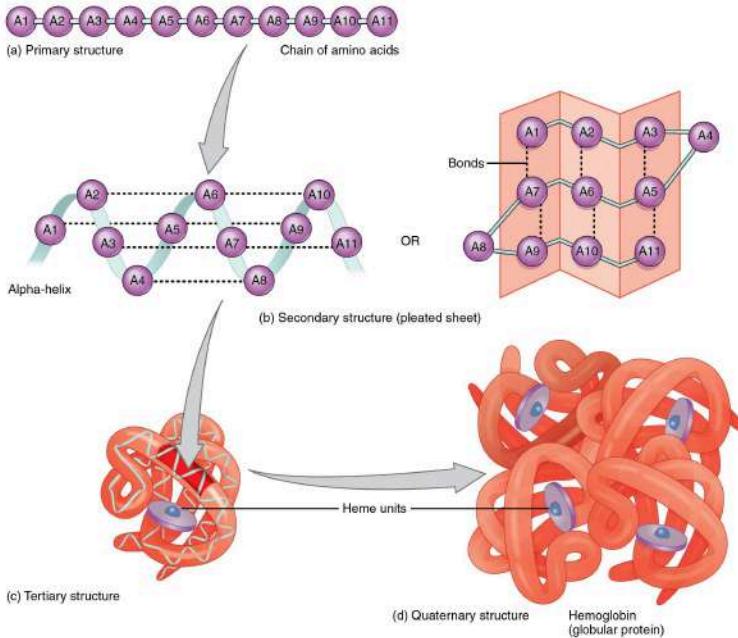


Figure 2.231 Different Protein Structures1

This video does a nice job of illustrating and explaining the different protein structures.

---

#### Web Link

[Video: Protein Structure \(0:52\)](#)

---

#### References & Links

1. “225 Peptide Bond-01” by OpenStax College – Anatomy & Physiology, Connexions Web site. <http://cnx.org/content/col11496/1.6/>, Jun 19, 2013.. Licensed under CC BY 3.0 via Commons – [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:225\\_Peptide\\_Bond-01.jpg#/media/File:225\\_Peptide\\_Bond-01.jpg](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:225_Peptide_Bond-01.jpg#/media/File:225_Peptide_Bond-01.jpg)

## Video

Protein Structure - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=lijQ3a8yUYQ>

## 2.24 Protein Functions

There are various functions of proteins in the body that are described below.

### Structural

Proteins, such as collagen, serve as the scaffolding of the body, and thus are important for the structure of tissues.

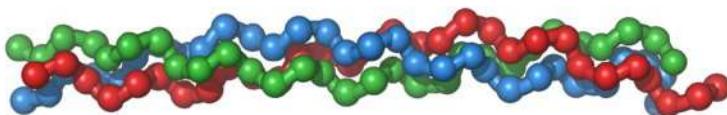


Figure 2.241 Triple-helix structure of collagen1

### Enzymes

We will discuss a number of enzymes throughout this class, and the vast majority are proteins. An enzyme catalyzes (enhances the rate) of a chemical reaction. The key part of an enzyme is its “active site”. The active site is where a compound to be acted on, known as a substrate, enters. Enzymes are specific for their substrates; they do not catalyze reactions on any random compounds floating by. You might have heard the “lock and key” analogy used for enzymes and substrates, respectively. After the substrate enters the active site and binds, the enzyme slightly changes shape (conformation). The enzyme then catalyzes a reaction that, in the example below, splits the substrate into two parts. The products of this reaction are released and the enzyme returns to its native or original shape. It is

then ready to catalyze another reaction. The figure and video below nicely illustrate the function of an enzyme.

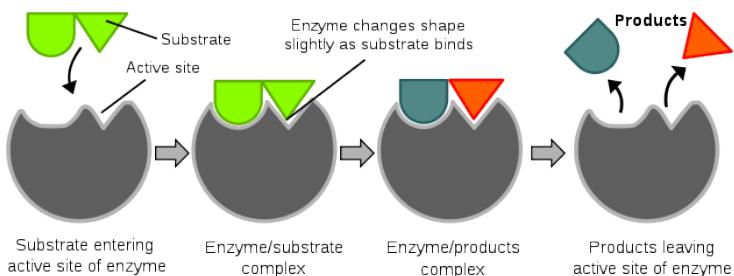


Figure 2.242 The function of enzymes2

---

### Web Link

[Video: Enzymes \(0:49\)](#)

---

Enzymes' names commonly end in -ase, and many are named for their substrate. For example the enzyme amylase cleaves bonds found in amylose and amylopectin.

### Hormones

Many hormones are proteins. A hormone is a compound that is produced in one tissue, released into circulation, then has an effect on a different organ. Most hormones are produced from several organs, collectively known as endocrine organs. Insulin is an example of a hormone that is a protein.

---

### Web Link

[Video: Hormones \(1:02\)](#)

---

### Fluid Balance

Proteins help to maintain the balance between fluids in the plasma and the interstitial fluid. Interstitial fluid is the fluid that surrounds cells. Interstitial fluid and plasma (fluid part of blood) are

the two components of extracellular fluid, or the fluid outside of cells. The following figure illustrates the exchange of fluid between interstitial fluid and plasma.

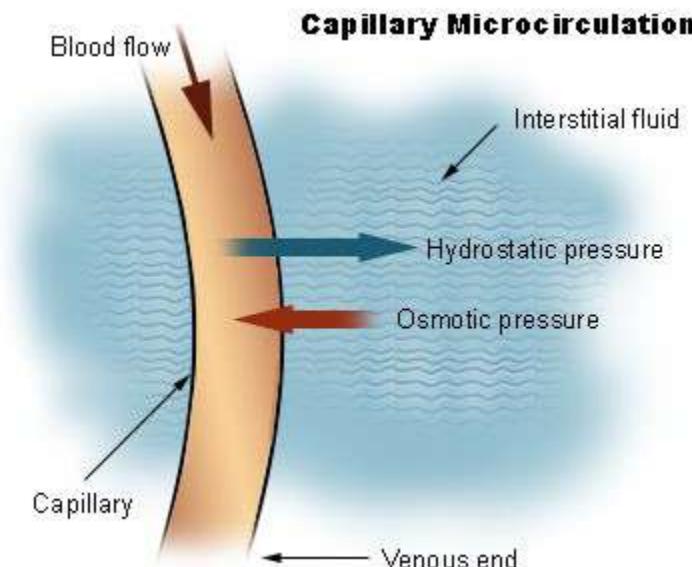


Figure 2.243 Interstitial Fluid and plasma3

### Acid-Base Balance

Proteins serve as buffers, meaning that they help to prevent the pH of the body from getting too high or too low.

### Transport

Transport proteins move molecules through circulation or across cell membranes. One example is hemoglobin that transports oxygen through the body. We will see a number of other examples as we move through class.

### Immune Function

Antibodies are proteins that recognize antigens (foreign substances that generate antibody or inflammatory response) and

bind to and inactivate them. Antibodies are important in our ability to ward off disease.

### **Other Functions**

Proteins can also serve as neurotransmitters and can be used for energy by forming glucose through gluconeogenesis.

### **References & Links**

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Collagentriplehelix.png>
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Induced\\_fit\\_diagram.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Induced_fit_diagram.svg)
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Illu\\_capillary\\_microcirculation.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Illu_capillary_microcirculation.jpg)

### **Videos**

Enzymes – <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=cbZsXjgPDLQ>

Hormones – <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=kIPYVV4aThM>

## **2.25 Types of Amino Acids**

There are 20 amino acids our body uses to synthesize proteins. These amino acids can be classified as essential, non-essential, or conditionally essential. The table below shows how the 20 amino acids are classified.

Table 2.251 Essential, conditionally essential, and nonessential amino acids<sup>1</sup>

---

<b>Essential</b>	<b>Conditionally Essential</b>	<b>Non-essential</b>
Histidine	Arginine	Alanine
Isoleucine	Cysteine	Asparagine
Leucine	Glutamine	Aspartic Acid or Aspartate
Lysine	Glycine	Glutamic Acid or Glutamate
Methionine	Proline	Serine
Phenylalanine	Tyrosine	
Threonine		
Tryptophan		
Valine		

---

The body cannot synthesize nine amino acids. Thus, it is essential that these are consumed in the diet. As a result these amino acids are known as essential, or indispensable, amino acids. As an example of how amino acids were determined to be essential, Dr. William C. Rose at the University of Illinois discovered that threonine was essential by feeding different diets to graduate students at the university as described in the following link.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Discovery of Threonine by William C. Rose](#)

---

Non-essential, or dispensable, amino acids can be made in our body, so we do not need to consume them. Conditionally essential amino acids become essential for individuals in certain situations. An example of a condition when an amino acid becomes essential is the disease phenylketonuria (PKU). Individuals with PKU have a mutation in the enzyme phenylalanine hydroxylase, which normally adds an alcohol group (OH) to the amino acid phenylalanine to form tyrosine as shown below.

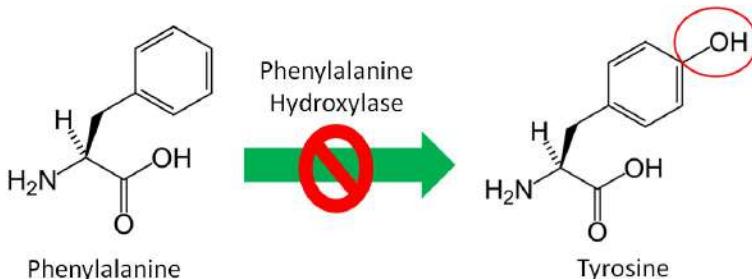


Figure 2.251 Phenylketonuria (PKU) results from a mutation in the enzyme phenylalanine hydroxylase<sup>2,3</sup>

Since tyrosine cannot be synthesized by people with PKU, it becomes essential for them. Thus, tyrosine is a conditionally essential amino acid. Individuals with PKU have to eat a very low protein diet and avoid the alternative sweetener aspartame, because it can be broken down to phenylalanine. If individuals with PKU consume too much phenylalanine, phenylalanine and its metabolites, can build up and cause brain damage and severe mental retardation. The drug Kuvan was approved for use with PKU patients in 2007 who have low phenylalanine hydroxylase activity levels. You can learn more about this drug using the link below.

---

#### **Web Link**

Kuvan

---

#### **References & Links**

1. Anonymous. Dietary Reference Intakes for Energy, Carbohydrate, Fiber, Fat, Fatty Acids, Cholesterol, Protein, and Amino Acids (Macronutrients). Protein and Amino Acids. Institute of Medicine, Food and Nutrition Board. 2005  
[http://books.nap.edu/  
openbook.php?record\\_id=10490&page=589](http://books.nap.edu/openbook.php?record_id=10490&page=589)
2. <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Phenylalanine#/media/File:L-Phenylalanine-and-L-Tyrosine-3D-ball-and-stick-models.pdbqt>

Phenylalanin\_-\_L-Phenylalanine.svg

3. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tyrosine#/media/File:L-Tyrosin\\_-\\_L-Tyrosine.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tyrosine#/media/File:L-Tyrosin_-_L-Tyrosine.svg)

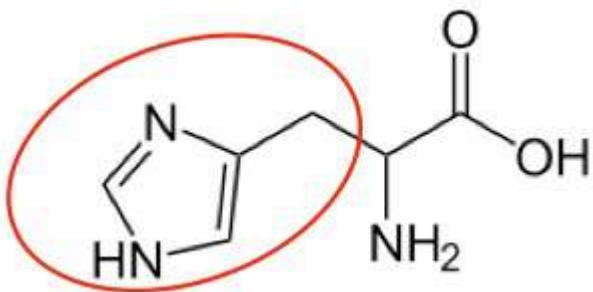
### Links

Discovery of Threonine by William C. Rose - <http://www.jbc.org/content/277/37/e25.full>

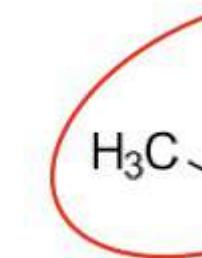
Kuvan - <http://www.kuvan.com/>

## 2.26 Amino Acid Structures

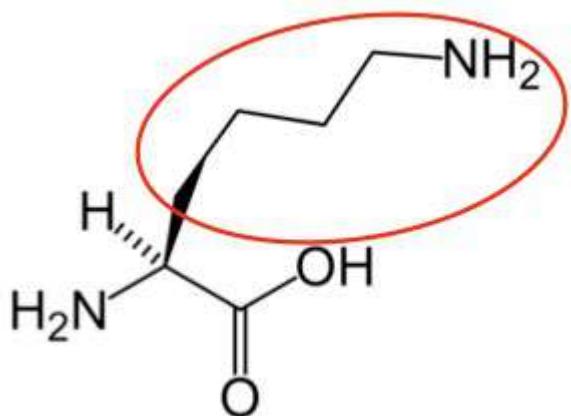
It is a good idea to have a general idea of the structure of the different amino acids and to be able to recognize them as amino acids. You are not expected to memorize these structures. Often I say the name of amino acids and not all students understand that I am talking about an amino acid. Each amino acid differs only by its side group, which is circled in red in each figure below. Also, the more familiar you become with chemical structures, the more prepared you will be for later classes.



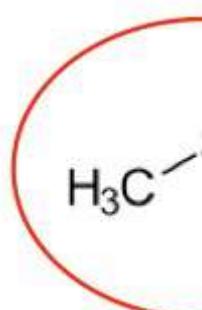
Histidine1



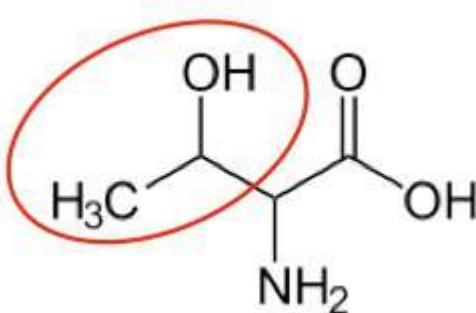
Isoleucine2



Lysine4



Methionine5



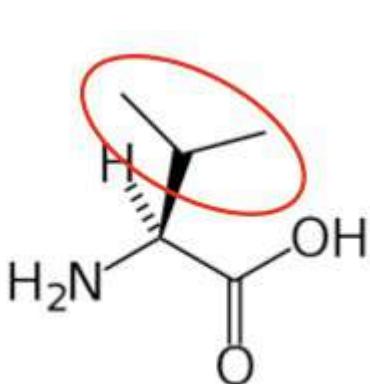
Threonine<sup>7</sup>



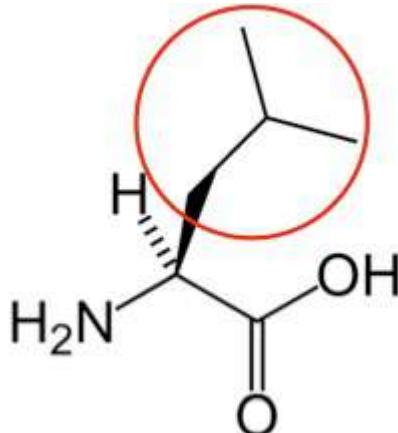
Tryptophan<sup>8</sup>

Figure 2.261 Essential amino acids

You may hear someone talk about the branch chain amino acids, which are all essential amino acids, but they are singled out in the figure below.



Valine<sup>9</sup>



Leucine<sup>3</sup>

Figure 2.262 Branched chain amino acids

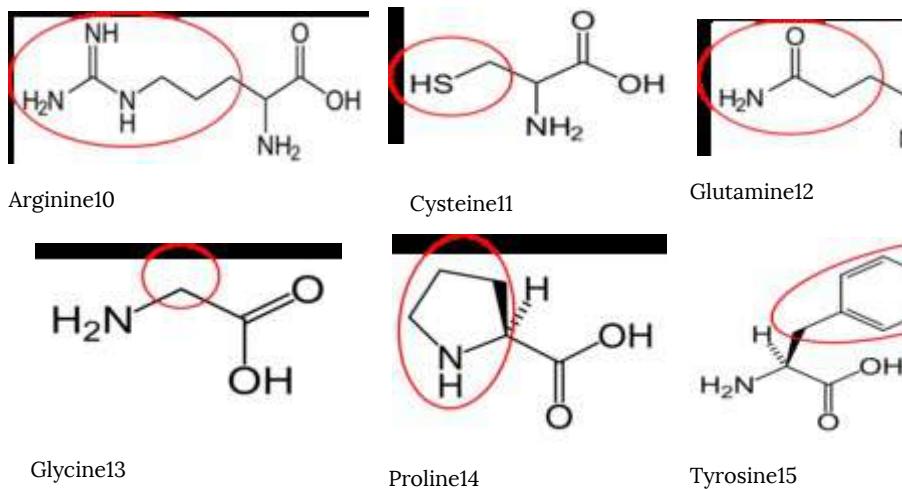


Figure 2.263 Conditionally essential amino acids

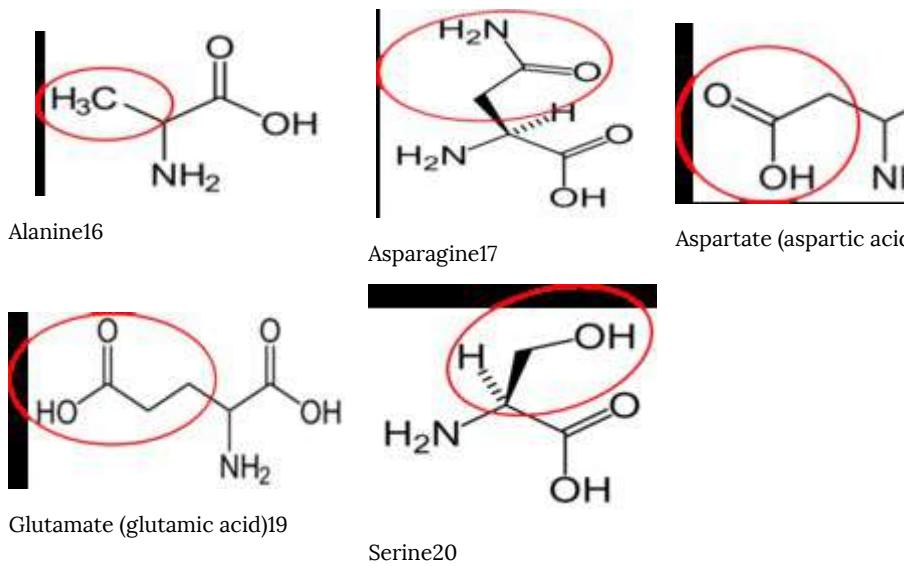


Figure 2.264 Nonessential amino acids

## References & Links

1. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Histidine#/media/File:Histidin\\_-\\_Histidine.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Histidine#/media/File:Histidin_-_Histidine.svg)
2. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isoleucine#/media/File:L-Isoleucin\\_-\\_L-Isoleucine.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isoleucine#/media/File:L-Isoleucin_-_L-Isoleucine.svg)
3. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Leucine#/media/File:Leucine\\_Nonionic.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Leucine#/media/File:Leucine_Nonionic.svg)
4. <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lysine#/media/File:L-lysine-monocation-2D-skeletal.png>
5. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Methionine#/media/File:Methionin\\_-\\_Methionine.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Methionine#/media/File:Methionin_-_Methionine.svg)
6. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Phenylalanine#/media/File:L-Phenylalanin\\_-\\_L-Phenylalanine.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Phenylalanine#/media/File:L-Phenylalanin_-_L-Phenylalanine.svg)
7. <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Threonine#/media/File:Threonineasdf.png>
8. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tryptophan#/media/File:L-Tryptophan\\_-\\_L-Tryptophan.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tryptophan#/media/File:L-Tryptophan_-_L-Tryptophan.svg)
9. <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Valine#/media/File:ValinenotatpH7.4.png>
10. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Arginine#/media/File:Arginin\\_-\\_Arginine.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Arginine#/media/File:Arginin_-_Arginine.svg)
11. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cysteine#/media/File:L-Cystein\\_-\\_L-Cysteine.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cysteine#/media/File:L-Cystein_-_L-Cysteine.svg)
12. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Glutamine#/media/File:L-Glutamin\\_-\\_L-Glutamine.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Glutamine#/media/File:L-Glutamin_-_L-Glutamine.svg)
13. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Glycine#/media/File:Glycin\\_-\\_Glycine.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Glycine#/media/File:Glycin_-_Glycine.svg)
14. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proline#/media/File:Prolin\\_-\\_Proline.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proline#/media/File:Prolin_-_Proline.svg)
15. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tyrosine#/media/File:L-Tyrosin\\_-\\_L-Tyrosine.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tyrosine#/media/File:L-Tyrosin_-_L-Tyrosine.svg)
16. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alanine#/media/File:L-Alanin\\_-\\_L-Alanine.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alanine#/media/File:L-Alanin_-_L-Alanine.svg)
17. <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Asparagine#/media/File:L-Asparagine.svg>

- Asparagin\_-\_L-Asparagine.svg
- 18. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Aspartic\\_acid#/media/File:Aspartic\\_Acidph.png](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Aspartic_acid#/media/File:Aspartic_Acidph.png)
  - 19. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Glutamic\\_acid#/media/File:Glutamic\\_Non-ionic.png](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Glutamic_acid#/media/File:Glutamic_Non-ionic.png)
  - 20. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Serine#/media/File:L-Serin\\_-\\_L-Serine.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Serine#/media/File:L-Serin_-_L-Serine.svg)

## 2.27 Protein Quality

Proteins can be classified as either complete or incomplete. Complete proteins provide adequate amounts of all nine essential amino acids. Animal proteins such as meat, fish, milk, and eggs are good examples of complete proteins. Incomplete proteins do not contain adequate amounts of one or more of the essential amino acids. For example, if a protein doesn't provide enough of the essential amino acid leucine it would be considered incomplete. Leucine would be referred to as the limiting amino acid, because there is not enough of it for the protein to be complete. Most plant foods are incomplete proteins, with a few exceptions such as soy. The table below shows the limiting amino acids in some common plant foods.

Table 2.271 Limiting amino acids in some common plant foods<sup>1</sup>

Food	Limiting Amino Acid(s)
Bean and Most Legumes	Methionine, Tryptophan
Tree Nuts and Seeds	Methionine, Lysine
Grains	Lysine
Vegetables	Methionine, Lysine

### Complementary Proteins

Even though most plant foods do not contain complete proteins, it does not mean that they should be sworn off as protein sources. It is possible to pair foods containing incomplete proteins with

different limiting amino acids to provide adequate amounts of the essential amino acids. These two proteins are called complementary proteins, because they supply the amino acid(s) missing in the other protein. A simple analogy would be that of a 4 piece puzzle. If one person has 2 pieces of a puzzle, and another person has 2 remaining pieces, neither of them have a complete puzzle. But when they are combined, the two individuals create a complete puzzle.

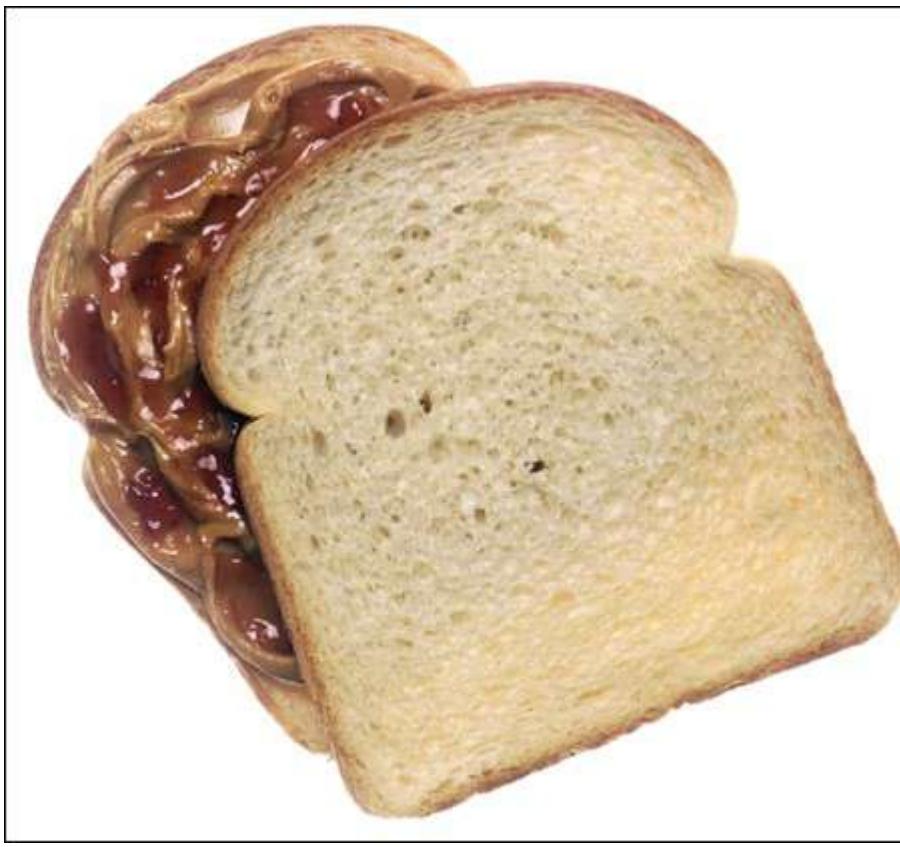


*Figure 2.271 Complementary proteins are kind of like puzzle pieces*

Two examples of complementary proteins are shown below.

---

### Peanut Butter and Jelly Sandwich



---

Figure 2.272 Two complementary protein examples<sup>2,3</sup>

It should be noted that complementary proteins do not need to be consumed at the same time or meal. It is currently recommended that essential amino acids be met on a daily basis, meaning that if a grain is consumed at one meal, a legume could be consumed at a later meal, and the proteins would still complement one another<sup>4</sup>.

#### **Measures of Protein Quality**

How do you know the quality of the protein in the foods you consume? The protein quality of most foods has been determined by one of the methods below.

Biological Value (BV) – (grams of nitrogen retained / grams of nitrogen absorbed) x 100

Protein Efficiency Ratio (PER) – (grams of weight gained / grams of protein consumed)

This method is commonly performed in growing rats.

Chemical or Amino Acid Score (AAS) – (Test food limiting essential amino acid (mg/g protein) / needs of same essential amino acid (mg/g protein))

Protein Digestibility Corrected Amino Acid Score (PDCAAS) – (Amino Acid Score x Digestibility)

This is the most widely used method and was preferred by the Food and Agriculture Organization and World Health Organization (WHO) until recently<sup>5,6</sup>.

The following table shows the protein quality measures for some common foods.

Table 2.272 Measures of protein quality<sup>5</sup>

Protein	PER	Digestibility	AAS (%)	PDCAAS
Egg	3.8	98	121	100*
Milk	3.1	95	127	100*
Beef	2.9	98	94	92
Soy	2.1	95	96	91
Wheat	1.5	91	47	42

\*PDCAAS scores are truncated (cut off) at 100. These egg and milk scores are actually 118 and 121 respectively.

The Food and Agricultural Organization (FAO) recently recommended that PDCAAS be replaced with a new measure of protein quality, the Digestible Indispensable Amino Acid Score (DIAAS). “DIAAS is defined as: DIAAS % = 100 x [(mg of digestible dietary indispensable amino acid in 1 g of the dietary protein) / (mg of the same dietary indispensable amino acid in 1g of the reference protein)].” Ileal digestibility should be utilized to determine the

digestibility in DIAAS; ideally in humans, but if not possible in growing pigs or rats<sup>6</sup>.

The main differences between DIAAS and PDCAAS are that DIAAS:

1. Takes into account individual amino acids digestibility rather than protein digestibility.
2. Focuses on ileal instead of fecal (total) digestibility.
3. Has 3 different reference patterns (different age groups, 0-6 months, 6 months- 3 years, 3-10 years old) instead of a single pattern
4. Are not truncated<sup>7</sup>

### **How do I find out the protein quality of what I'm eating and identify complementary proteins?**

Nutrition Data is a useful resource for determining protein quality and identifying complementary proteins. To use the site, go to [www.nutritiondata.com](http://www.nutritiondata.com), type in the name of the food you would like to know about in the search bar and hit 'Enter'. When you have selected your food from the list of possibilities, you will be given information about this food. Included in this information is the Protein Quality section. This will give you an amino acid score and a figure that illustrates which amino acid(s) is limiting. If your food is an incomplete protein, you can click "Find foods with a complementary profile". This will take you to a list of dietary choices that will provide complementary proteins for your food. You can read more about this option in the link below.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Nutrition Data: Protein Quality](http://www.nutritiondata.com/facts/protein-quality)

---

### **References & Links**

1. Wardlaw GM, Hampl J. (2006) Perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
2. <https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/>

- File:Peanut\_butter\_and\_jelly\_sandwich.jpg
- 3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Red\\_beans\\_and\\_rice.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Red_beans_and_rice.jpg)
  - 4. Young VR, Pellett PL. (1994) Plant proteins in relation to human protein and amino acid nutrition. Am J Clin Nutr. May; 59 (5 Suppl): 1203S-1212S.
  - 5. Schaafsma G. (2000) The protein digestibility-corrected amino acid score. J Nutr 130(7): 1865S-1867S.
  - 6. <http://www.fao.org/ag/humannutrition/35978-02317b979a686a57aa4593304ffc17f06.pdf>
  - 7. Rutherford SM, Fanning AC, Miller BJ, Moughan PJ. Protein Digestibility-Corrected Amino Acid Scores and Digestible Indispensable Amino Acid Scores Differentially Describe Protein Quality in Growing Male Rats. J Nutr. 145(2): 372-379.

### Links

NutritionData – <http://www.nutritiondata.com/>  
NutritionData: Protein Quality – <http://nutritiondata.self.com/help/analysis-help#protein-quality>

## 2.28 Protein-Energy Malnutrition

Protein deficiency rarely occurs alone. Instead it is often coupled with insufficient energy intake. As a result, the condition is called protein-energy malnutrition (PEM). This condition is not common in the U.S., but is more prevalent in less developed countries. Kwashiorkor and marasmus are the two forms of protein energy malnutrition. They differ in the severity of energy deficiency as shown in the figure below.

# Protein-Energy Malnutrition

Marginal energy,  
but insufficient  
protein intake

Insufficient protein  
and energy intake

Kwashiorkor

“the disease that  
the first child  
gets when the  
new child  
comes”

Marasmus

“to waste  
away” or  
“dying away”

Figure 2.281 The 2 types of protein-energy malnutrition

Kwashiorkor is a Ghanaian word that means “the disease that the first child gets when the new child comes.” The characteristic symptom of kwashiorkor is a swollen abdomen. Energy intake could be adequate, but protein consumption is too low.

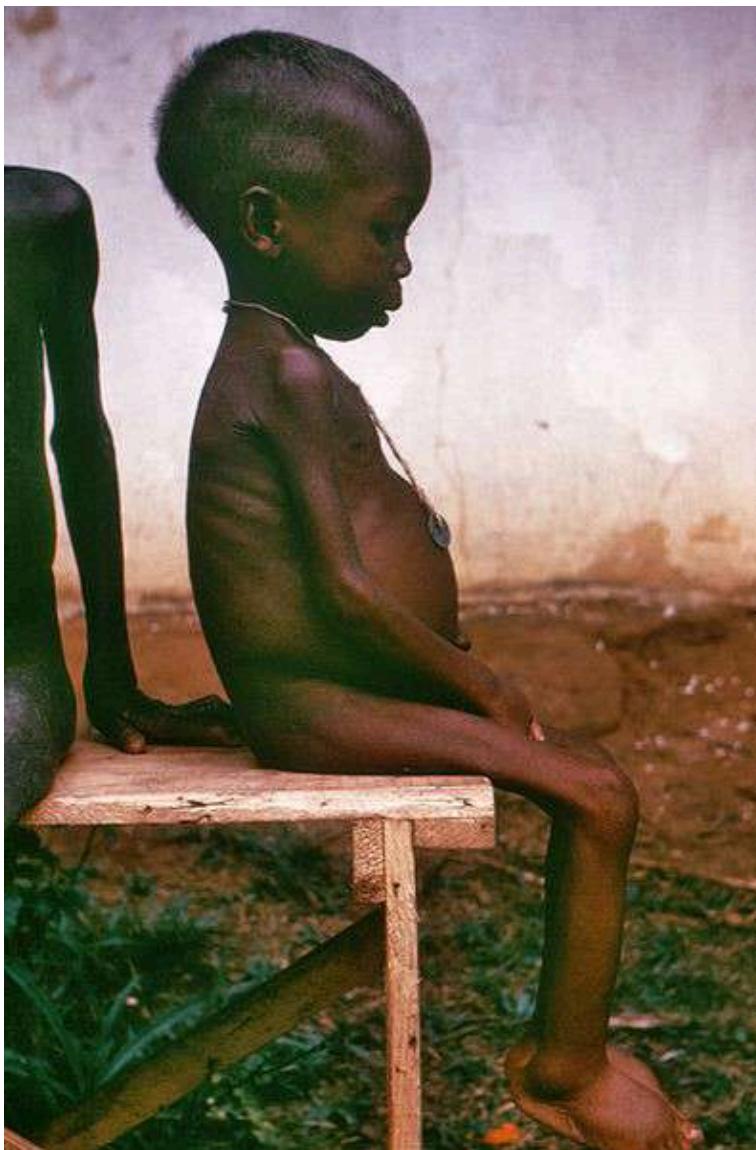


Figure 2.282 A child suffering from kwashiorkor2

The video below does a nice job showing the symptoms of the condition.

---

### **Web Link**

[Video: Kwashiorkor \(1:17\)](#)

---

Marasmus means “to waste away” or “dying away”, and thus occurs in individuals who have severely limited energy intakes.

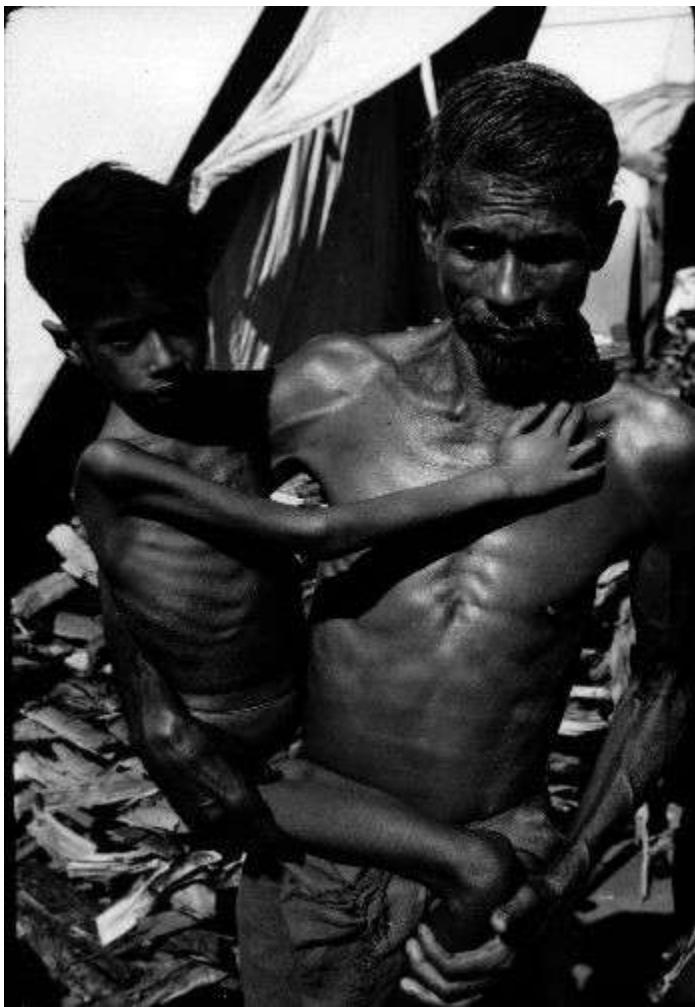


Figure 2.283 Two individuals suffering from marasmus3

The video below shows individuals suffering from this condition.

---

**Web Link**

---

Video: Marasmus (1:47)

---

## **References & Links**

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Starved\\_girl.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Starved_girl.jpg)
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Starved\\_child.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Starved_child.jpg)

## **Videos**

Kwashiorkor - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=eTU3iPWAWXg>  
Marasmus - <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=LDCi3eda4WM>

## **2.3 Lipids**

Lipids, commonly referred to as fats, have a poor reputation among some people, in that “fat free” is often synonymous with healthy. We do need to consume certain fats and we should try to incorporate some fats into our diets for their health benefits. However, consumption of certain fats is also associated with greater risk of developing chronic disease(s). In this section we will dive deeper into fats and why they do not need to be feared altogether.

Subsections:

- 2.31 How does fat differ from lipids?
- 2.32 Fatty Acids
- 2.33 Fatty Acid Naming & Food Sources
- 2.34 Essential Fatty Acids
- 2.35 Triglycerides
- 2.36 Phospholipids
- 2.37 Sterols

## 2.31 How Does Fat Differ From Lipids?

The answer you receive from this question will depend on who you ask, so it is important to have an understanding of lipids and fats from a chemical and nutritional perspective.

To a chemist, lipids consist of:

Triglycerides

Fatty Acids

Phospholipids

Sterols

These compounds are grouped together because of their structural and physical property similarities. For instance, all lipids have hydrophobic (water-fearing) properties. Chemists further separate lipids into fats and oils based on their physical properties at room temperature:

Fats are solid at room temperature

Oils are liquid at room temperature

From a nutritional perspective, the definition of lipids is the same. The definition of a fat differs, however, because nutrition-oriented people define fats based on their caloric contribution rather than whether they are solid at room temperature. Thus, from a nutrition perspective:

Fats are triglycerides, fatty acids, and phospholipids that provide 9 kcal/g.

The other difference is that from a caloric perspective, an oil is a fat. For example, let's consider olive oil. Clearly, it is an oil according to a chemist definition, but from a caloric standpoint it is a fat because it provides 9 kcal/g.

The following sections will discuss the different lipid classes introduced above in detail.

## 2.32 Fatty Acids

Fatty acids are lipids themselves, and they are also components of triglycerides and phospholipids. Like carbohydrates, fatty acids are made up of carbon (C), hydrogen (H), and oxygen (O).

On one end of a fatty acid is a methyl group ( $\text{CH}_3$ ) that is known as the methyl or omega end. On the opposite end of a fatty acid is a carboxylic acid ( $\text{COOH}$ ). This end is known as the acid or alpha end. The figure below shows the structure of fatty acids.

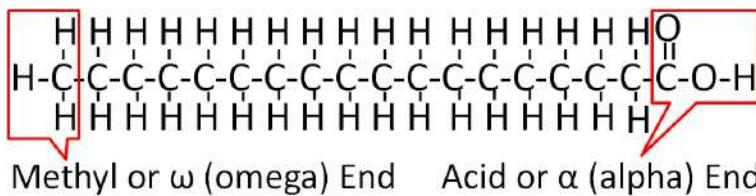


Figure 2.321 Structure of a saturated fatty acid

There are a number of fatty acids in nature that we consume that differ from one another in three ways:

1. Carbon chain length (i.e. 6 carbons, 18 carbons)
2. Saturation/unsaturation
3. Double bond configuration (cis, trans)

### 1. Carbon Chain Length

Fatty acids differ in their carbon chain length (number of carbons in the fatty acid). Most fatty acids contain somewhere between 4-24 carbons, with even numbers (i.e. 8, 18) of carbons occurring more frequently than odd numbers (i.e. 9, 19). Fatty acids are classified as short-chain fatty acids, medium-chain fatty acids, and long-chain fatty acids based on their carbon chain length using the criteria shown in the table below.

Table 2.321 Fatty acid classification

Classification	# of carbons
Short-Chain Fatty Acid	< 6
Medium-Chain Fatty Acid	6-12
Long-Chain Fatty Acid	≥12

Carbon chain length also impacts the physical properties of the fatty acid. As the number of carbons in a fatty acid chain increases, so does the melting point as illustrated in the figure below.

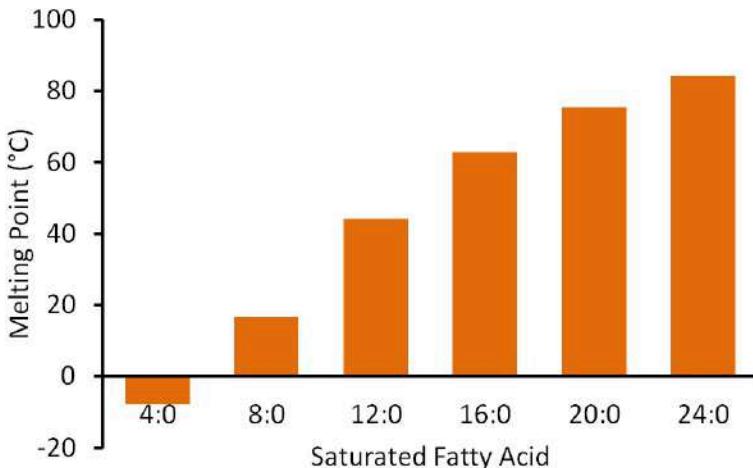


Figure 2.322 The melting point of saturated fatty acids of varied lengths<sup>1</sup>

Thus, shorter chain fatty acids are more likely to be liquid, while longer chain fatty acids are more likely to be solid at room temperature (20-25°C, 68-77°F).

## 2. Saturation/Unsaturation

A saturated fatty acid is one that contains the maximum number of hydrogens possible, and no carbon-carbon double bonds. Carbon normally has four bonds to it. Thus, a saturated fatty acid has hydrogens at every position except carbon-carbon single bonds and carbon-oxygen bonds on the acid end. Two examples of the same 18 carbon saturated fatty acid (stearic acid/stearate) are shown in

Figures 2.321 and 2.323. Figure 2.323 is the simplified view of the this fatty acid.

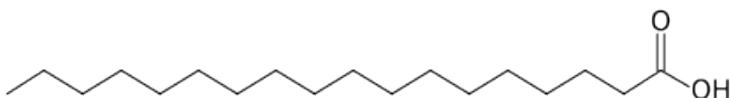


Figure 2.323 A simplified view of 18 carbon saturated fatty acid stearic acid. Each corner of the zigzag pattern represents a carbon, and the hydrogens are not shown to allow quicker recognition of the carbon chain

Unsaturation means the fatty acid doesn't contain the maximum number of hydrogens on each of its carbons. Instead, unsaturated fatty acids contain a carbon-carbon double bond and only 1 hydrogen off each carbon. The simplest example of unsaturation is a monounsaturated fatty acid. Mono means one, so these are fatty acids with one degree of unsaturation, or one double bond (shown below).

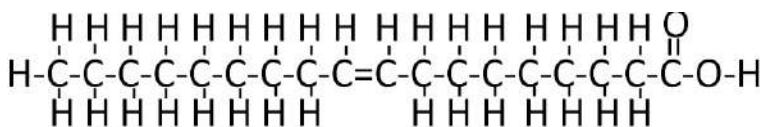


Figure 2.324 Structure of the monounsaturated fatty acid (oleic acid)

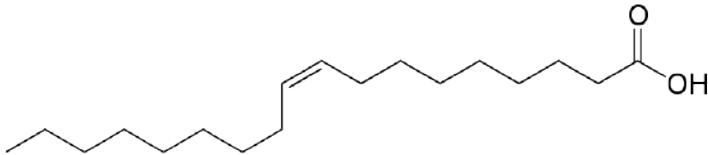


Figure 2.325 The simplified structure of the monounsaturated fatty acid (oleic acid)4

Any fatty acid that has two or more double bonds is considered a polyunsaturated fatty acid. As you may remember from the polysaccharide section, poly means many. A simple example of a polyunsaturated fatty acid is linoleic acid (shown below).

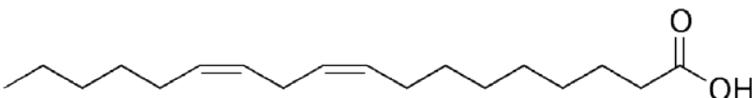


Figure 2.326 Structure of the polyunsaturated fatty acid linoleic acid, a polyunsaturated fatty acid with two carbon–carbon double bonds

### 3. Double Bond Configuration (Shape)

Double bonds in unsaturated fatty acids are in one of two structural orientations: cis or trans. In a trans orientation, the hydrogens on the carbons involved in the double bond are opposite of one another. In the cis orientation the hydrogens are on the same side of the bond. Steric hindrance in the cis orientation causes the chain to take on a more bent shape.

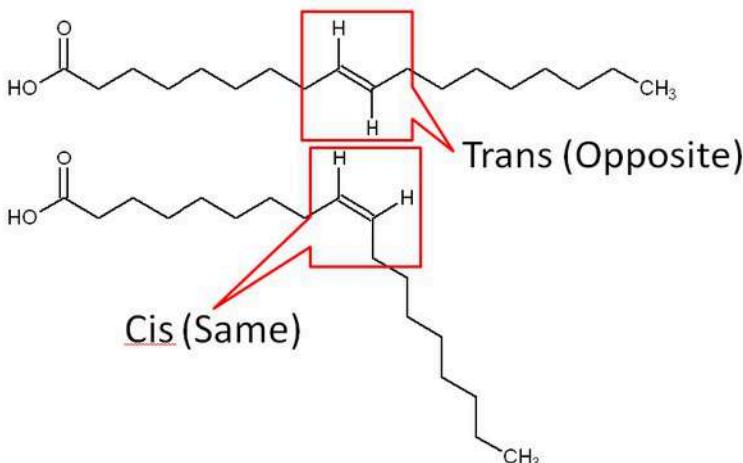


Figure 2.327 Cis and trans structural conformations of a monounsaturated fatty acid

Most natural unsaturated fatty acids are in the cis conformation. As can be seen in Figure 2.327, the cis fatty acids have a more of kinked shape, which means they do not pack together as well as the saturated or trans fatty acids. As a result, the melting point is much lower for cis fatty acids compared to trans and saturated fatty acids. To illustrate this difference, the figure below shows the difference in the melting points of saturated, trans-, and cis-monounsaturated 18 carbon fatty acids.

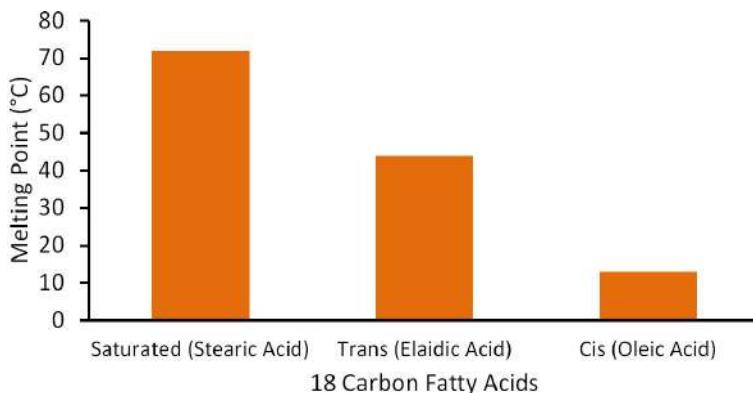


Figure 2.328 The melting point of saturated, trans, and cis 18 carbon monounsaturated fatty acids!

There are some naturally occurring trans fatty acids, such as conjugated linoleic acid (CLA), in dairy products. However, for the most part, trans fatty acids in our diets are not natural; instead, they have been produced synthetically. The primary source of trans fatty acids in our food supply is partially hydrogenated vegetable oil. The 'hydrogenated' means that the oil has gone through the process of hydrogenation. Hydrogenation, like the name implies, is the addition of hydrogen. If an unsaturated fatty acid is completely hydrogenated it would be converted to a saturated fatty acid as shown below.

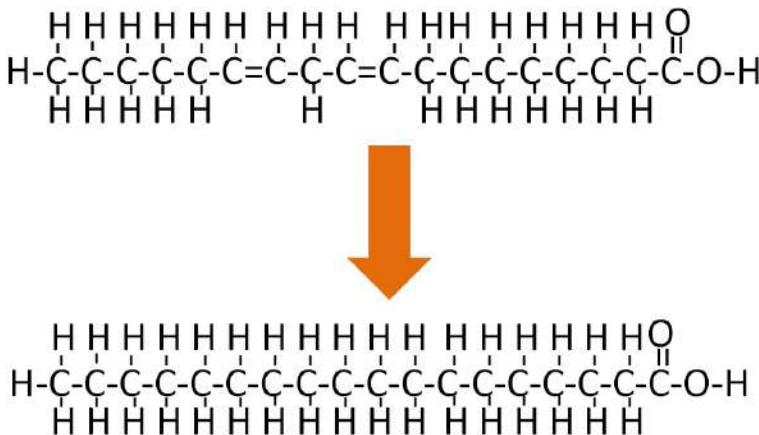


Figure 2.329 Fatty acid hydrogenation

However, this isn't/wasn't always desirable, thus partially hydrogenated vegetable oil became widely used. To visualize the difference in the amount of hydrogenation consider the difference between tub margarine and stick margarine.

Stick margarine is more fully hydrogenated leading it to have a much harder texture. This is one of the two reasons to hydrogenate, to get a more solid texture. The second reason is that it makes it more shelf-stable, because the double bond(s) of unsaturated fatty acids are susceptible to oxidation, which causes them to become rancid.

Partial hydrogenation causes the conversion of cis to trans fatty acids along with the formation of some saturated fatty acids. Originally, it was thought that trans fatty acids would be a better alternative to saturated fat (think margarine vs. butter). However, it turns out that trans fat is actually worse than saturated fat in altering biomarkers associated with cardiovascular disease. Trans fat increases LDL and decreases HDL levels, while saturated fat increased LDL without altering HDL levels. But this does not mean that butter is a better choice than margarine as described in the

first link. The FDA revoked Generally Recognized as Safe (GRAS) status of partially hydrogenated vegetable oil as described in the second link, and is requiring its use to be phased out by 2018. After that point, permission will need to be requested to use them in foods.

---

### **Web Links**

Butter vs. Margarine: Which is better for my heart?  
FDA to Limit Trans Fats in Foods

---

### **References & Links**

1. Beare-Rogers J, Dieffenbacher A, Holm JV. (2001) Lexicon of lipid nutrition. Pure Appl Chem 73(4): 685-744.
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Stearic\\_acid.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Stearic_acid.svg)
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Lauric\\_acid.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Lauric_acid.png)
4. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oleic\\_acid#/media/File:Oleic-acid-based-on-xtal-1997-2D-skeletal.png](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oleic_acid#/media/File:Oleic-acid-based-on-xtal-1997-2D-skeletal.png)
5. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Linoleic\\_acid.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Linoleic_acid.png)

### **Links**

Butter vs. Margarine: Which is better for my heart? -  
<http://www.mayoclinic.org/butter-vs-margarine/expert-answers/FAQ-20058152>

FDA to Limit Trans Fats in Foods - <http://www.nbcnews.com/health/health-news/fda-limit-trans-fats-food-n376266>

## **2.33 Fatty Acid Naming & Food Sources**

There are three naming systems used for fatty acids:

1. Delta nomenclature
2. Omega nomenclature

### 3. Common names

The omega nomenclature and common names are used more in the field of nutrition than the delta nomenclature when describing specific fatty acids.

#### 2. Delta Nomenclature

For delta nomenclature you need to know 3 things:

1. Number of carbons in the fatty acid
2. Number of double bonds
3. Number of carbons from the carboxylic acid (alpha) end to the first carbon in the double bond(s)

Let's consider the example in the figure below.

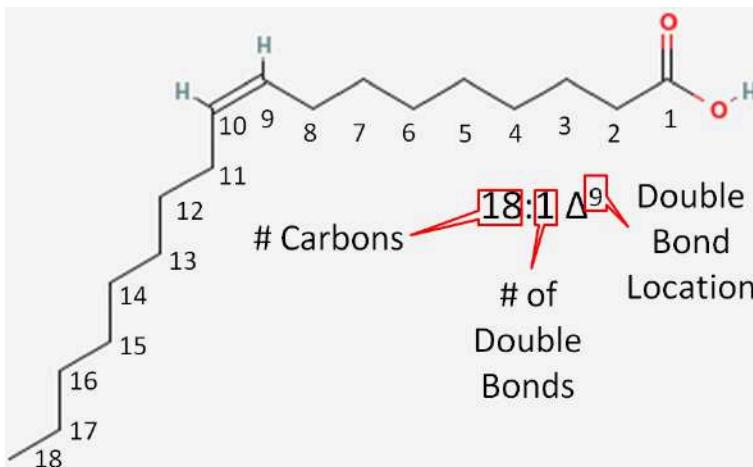


Figure 2.331 Delta Nomenclature

1. Number of carbons in the fatty acid = 18
2. Number of double bonds = 1
3. Number of carbons from the carboxylic acid end to the first carbon in the double bond = 9

This is then written as shown in Figure 2.331.

## 2. Omega Nomenclature

The omega nomenclature is almost exactly the same as the delta nomenclature, the only differences being:

1. Carbons are counted from the methyl (omega) end instead of the carboxylic acid end
2. The omega symbol is used instead of the delta symbol

For omega nomenclature you need to know 3 things:

1. Number of carbons in the fatty acid
2. Number of double bonds
3. Number of carbons from the methyl end (aka Omega end) to the first carbon in the double bond closest to the methyl end

We will again consider the same fatty acid.

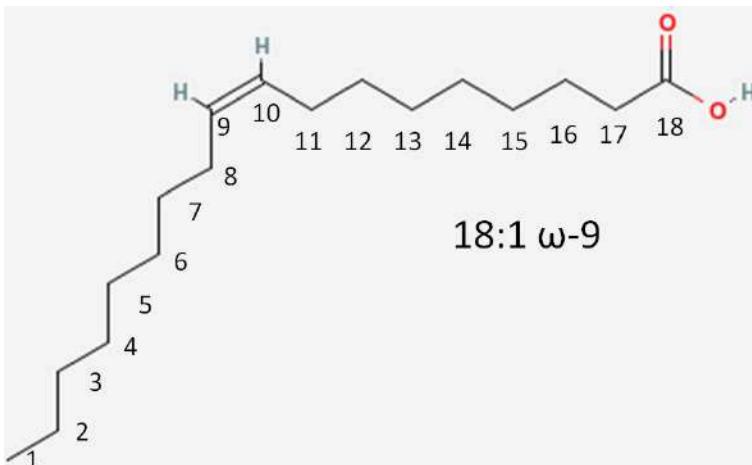


Figure 2.332 Omega Nomenclature

1. Number of carbons in the fatty acid = 18
2. Number of double bonds = 1

- Number of carbons from the methyl (aka omega) end to the first carbon in the double bond closest to the methyl end = 9

If it is a saturated fatty acid, then the omega nomenclature is not added to the end of the name. If it is an 18 carbon saturated fatty acid, then it would be named 18:0.

This is written as shown in figure 2.332. Instead of an omega prefix, the prefix n- (i.e. n-3) is also commonly used.

### 3. Common Names

The common names of fatty acids are something that, for the most part, have to be learned/memorized. The common name of the fatty acid we have been naming in this section is oleic acid.

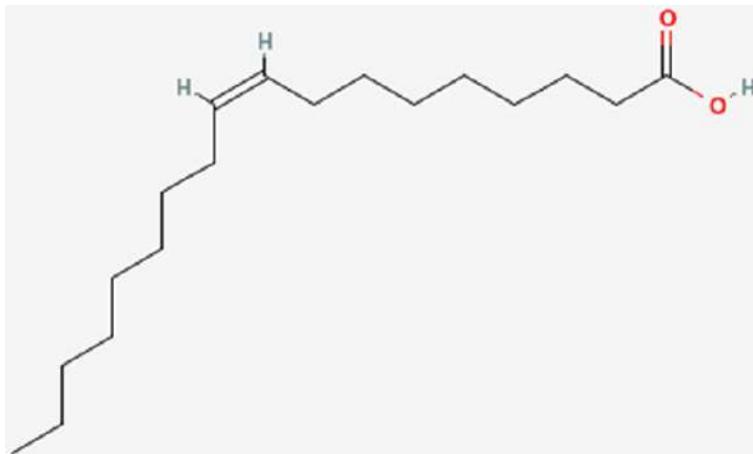


Figure 2.333 Oleic acid

However, it can also be called oleate. The only difference is that, instead of a carboxylic acid on the end of the fatty acid, it has been ionized to form a salt (shown below). This is what the -ate ending indicates and the two names are used interchangeably.

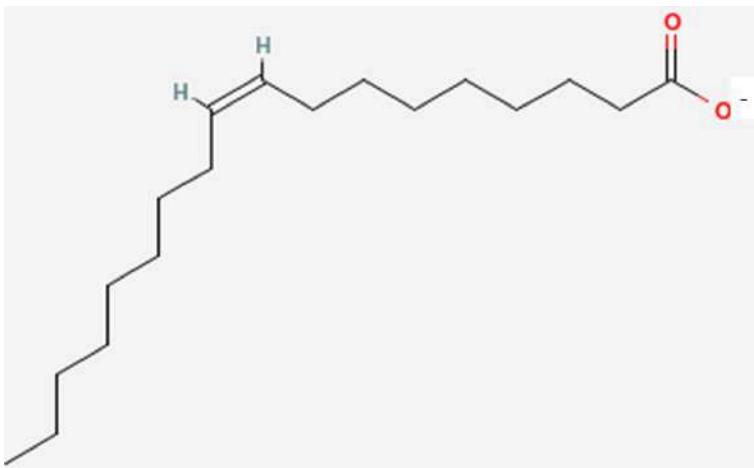


Figure 2.334 Oleate

The table below gives the common names and food sources of some common fatty acids.

Table 2.331 Common names of fatty acids2

---

<b>Omega Name</b>	<b>Common Name</b>
4:0	Butyric Acid
12:0	Lauric Acid
14:0	Myristic Acid
16:0	Palmitic acid
18:0	Stearic Acid
20:0	Arachidic Acid
24:0	Lignoceric Acid
18:1 (n-9)	Oleic Acid
18:2 (n-6)	Linoleic Acid
18:3 (n-3)	Alpha-linolenic Acid
20:4 (n-6)	Arachidonic Acid
20:5 (n-3)	Eicosapentanoic Acid
22:6 (n-3)	Docosahexanoic Acid

---

The NutritionData link below can help you identify foods that are high in a specific fatty acid.

---

#### **Web Link**

[NutritionData: Fatty Acids](#)

---

#### **Food Sources of Fatty Acids**

After going through this wide array of fatty acids, you may be wondering where they are found in nature. The figure below shows the fatty acid composition of certain oils and oil-based foods. As you can see, most foods contain a mixture of fatty acids. Stick margarine is the only product in the figure that contains an appreciable amount of trans fatty acids. Corn, walnut, and soybean are rich sources of n-6 polyunsaturated fatty acids, while flax seed is fairly unique among plants in that it is a good source of n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids. Canola and olive oil are rich sources of monounsaturated fatty acids. Lard, palm oil, butter and coconut oil all contain a significant amount of saturated fatty acids.

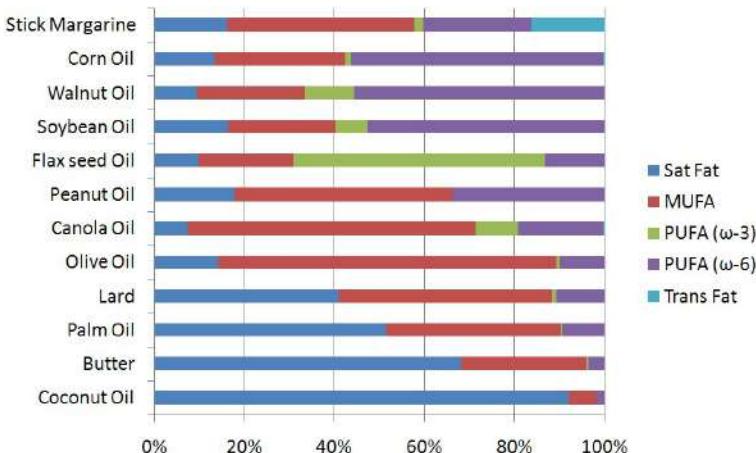


Figure 2.335 Fatty acid composition of foods and oils3

## References & Links

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Myristoleic\\_acid.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Myristoleic_acid.png)
2. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
3. [www.nutritiondata.com](http://www.nutritiondata.com)

## Links

Nutrition Data: Fatty Acids – <http://nutritiondata.self.com/topics/fatty-acids>

## 2.34 Essential Fatty Acids & Eicosanoids

The two essential fatty acids are:

1. linoleic acid (omega-6)
2. alpha-linolenic (omega-3)

These fatty acids are essential because we can not synthesize them. This is because we do not have an enzyme capable of adding a double bond (desaturating) beyond the omega-9 carbon counting from the alpha end (the omega-6 and 3 positions). The structures of the two essential fatty acids are shown below.

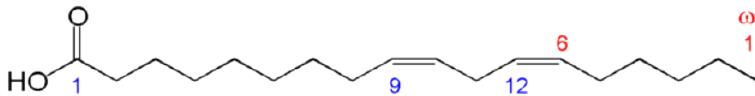


Figure 2.341 Linoleic acid1

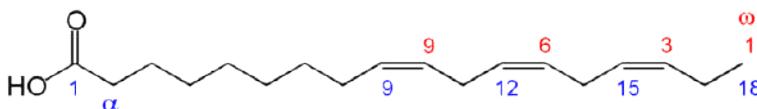


Figure 2.342 Alpha-linolenic acid2

However, we do possess enzymes that can take the essential fatty acids, elongate them (add two carbons to them), and then further desaturate them (add double bonds) to other omega-6 and omega-3 fatty acids. Thus, there are 2 families of fatty acids that the majority of polyunsaturated fatty acids fit into as shown below.

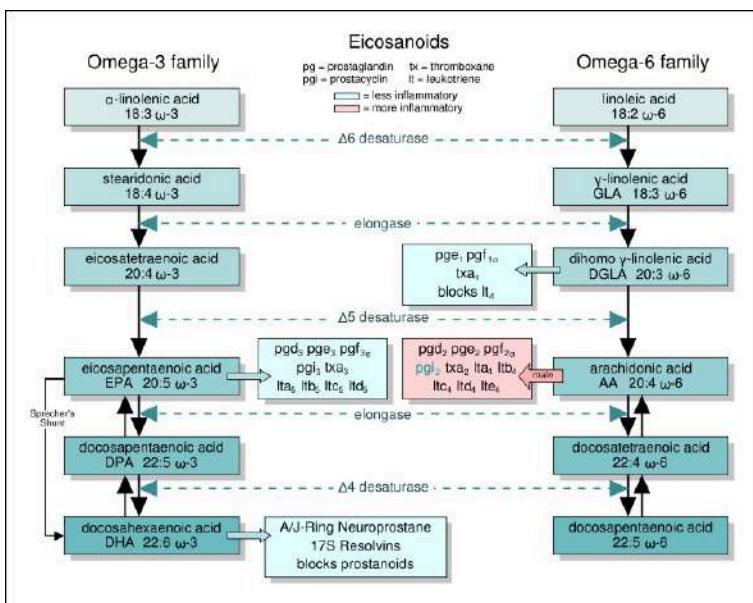
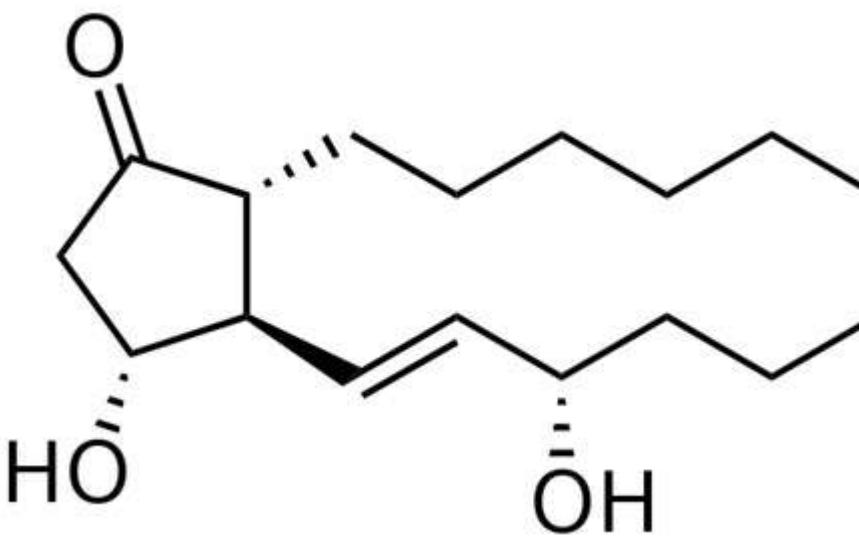


Figure 2.343 Omega-3 and omega-6 fatty acids and eicosanoid production3

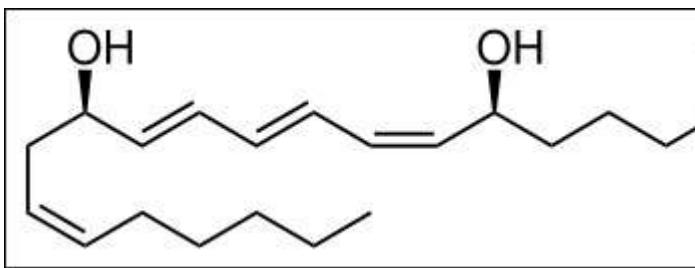
The same enzymes are used for both omega-6 and omega-3 fatty acids. However, we cannot convert omega-3 fatty acids to omega-6 fatty acids or omega-6 fatty acids to omega-3 fatty acids. Among these families, the omega-3 fatty acid, eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA), and the omega-6 fatty acids, dihomo gamma-linolenic acid and arachidonic acid (AA), are used to form compounds known as eicosanoids. These 20 carbon fatty acid derivatives are biologically active in the body (like hormones, but they act locally in the tissue they are produced). There are four classes of eicosanoids:

- Prostaglandins (PG)
- Prostacyclins (PC)
- Thromboxanes (TX)
- Leukotrienes (LT)

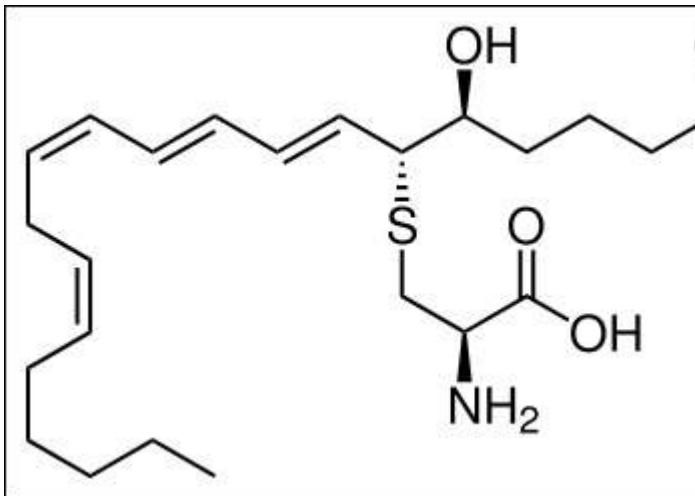
Some examples of eicosanoid structures are shown in the figure below:



Prostaglandin E1



Leukotriene B4



Leukotriene E4

Figure 2.344 Eicosanoid structures4-8

The difference in the effects and outcomes of omega-6 and omega-3 fatty acid intake is primarily a result of the eicosanoids produced from them. Omega-6 fatty acid derived eicosanoids are more inflammatory than omega-3 fatty acid derived eicosanoids. As a result, omega-3 fatty acids are considered anti-inflammatory because replacing the more inflammatory omega-6 fatty acid derived eicosanoids with omega-3 fatty acid derived eicosanoids will decrease inflammation. As an example of the action of eicosanoids, aspirin works by inhibiting the enzymes cyclooxygenase (Cox)-1 and Cox-2. These enzymes convert arachidonic acid into inflammatory prostaglandins as shown below.

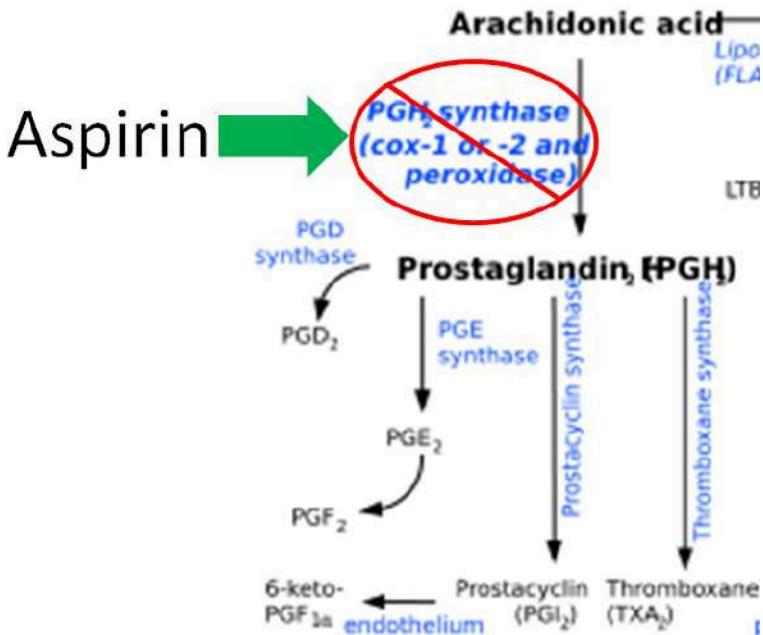


Figure 2.345 Aspirin inhibits Cox-1 and Cox-29

You have probably heard that you should get more omega-3s in your diet, and in general polyunsaturated fatty acids are considered healthy. However, since omega-3 fatty acids are competing for the same enzymes as omega-6 fatty acids, and because the omega-6 fatty acids are more inflammatory, consuming too many omega-6s is probably more detrimental than helpful. As a result, many people talk about the omega-3:omega-6 fatty acid ratio in people's diets. For most Americans, the ratio is believed to be too high, at almost 10-20 times more omega-6 fatty acids than omega-3 fatty acids<sup>10</sup>. The table below shows good food sources of some selected omega-3 and omega-6 fatty acids.

Table 2.341 Good food sources of selected omega-3 and omega-6 fatty acids

---

Fatty Acid	Good Food Sources
Linoleic Acid (LA, n-6)	Safflower Oil, Corn Oil, Sunflower Oil
Arachidonic Acid (AA, n-6)	Eggs, Meat
Alpha-Linolenic Acid (ALA, n-3)	Walnuts, Flaxseed (linseed), Canola (rapeseed), and Soybean Oils
Eicosapentaenoic Acid (EPA, n-3)	Fatty Fish & Fish Oils
Docosahexanoic Acid (DHA, n-3)	Fatty Fish & Fish Oils

---

Even though Figure 2.343 illustrates the conversion of alpha-linolenic acid to EPA and DHA, this conversion is actually quite limited; 0.2-8% of ALA is converted to EPA and 0-4% of ALA is converted to DHA<sup>11</sup>. Thus, dietary consumption is the most effective way to get the longer chain fatty acids (EPA and DHA) in our bodies. It is less clear whether ALA consumption is as beneficial as EPA and DHA, but a recent study found it to be equally effective in decreasing blood triglyceride concentrations. In that study, DHA had the added positive benefit of increasing HDL<sup>12</sup>. These are all positive outcomes that are expected to reduce the risk of developing cardiovascular disease. However, there is evidence accumulating that there is not much cardiovascular benefit from taking fish oil supplements as described in the article below.

---

#### Web Link

[Fish Oils Claims Not Supported By Research](#)

---

#### Essential Fatty Acid Deficiency

Essential fatty acid deficiency is rare and unlikely to occur, but the symptoms are:

- Growth retardation
- Reproductive problems
- Skin lesions
- Neurological and visual problems

## References & Links

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:LAnumbering.png>
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:ALAnumbering.png>
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:EFA\\_to\\_Eicosanoids.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:EFA_to_Eicosanoids.svg)
4. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Prostaglandin\\_E1.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Prostaglandin_E1.svg)
5. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Thromboxane\\_A2.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Thromboxane_A2.png)
6. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Leukotriene\\_B4.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Leukotriene_B4.svg)
7. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Prostaglandin\\_I2.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Prostaglandin_I2.png)
8. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Leukotriene\\_E4.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Leukotriene_E4.svg)
9. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Eicosanoid\\_synthesis.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Eicosanoid_synthesis.svg)
10. Simopoulos AP. (2008) The importance of the omega-6/omega-3 fatty acid ratio in cardiovascular disease and other chronic diseases. *Exp Biol Med* 233(6): 674.
11. Arterburn LM, Hall EB, Oken, H. (2006) Distribution, interconversion, and dose response of n-3 fatty acids in humans. *Am J Clin Nutr* 83(suppl) 1467.
12. Egert S, Kannenberg F, Somoza V, Erbersdobler H, Wahrburg U. (2009) Dietary alpha-linolenic acid, EPA, and DHA have differential effects on LDL fatty acid composition but similar effects on serum lipid profiles in normolipidemic humans. *J Nutr* 139(5): 861.

## Links

Fish Oil Claims Not Supported by Research –  
<http://well.blogs.nytimes.com/2015/03/30/fish-oil-claims-not-supported-by-research/>

## 2.35 Triglycerides

Triglycerides are the most common lipid in our bodies and in the foods we consume. Fatty acids are not typically found free in nature, instead they are found in triglycerides. Breaking down the name

triglyceride tells a lot about their structure. “Tri” refers to the three fatty acids, “glyceride” refers to the glycerol backbone that the three fatty acids are bonded to. Thus, a monoglyceride contains one fatty acid, a diglyceride contains two fatty acids. Triglycerides perform the following functions in our bodies:

Provide energy

Primary form of energy storage in the body

Insulate and protect

Aid in the absorption and transport of fat-soluble vitamins.

A triglyceride is formed by three fatty acids being bonded to glycerol as shown below.

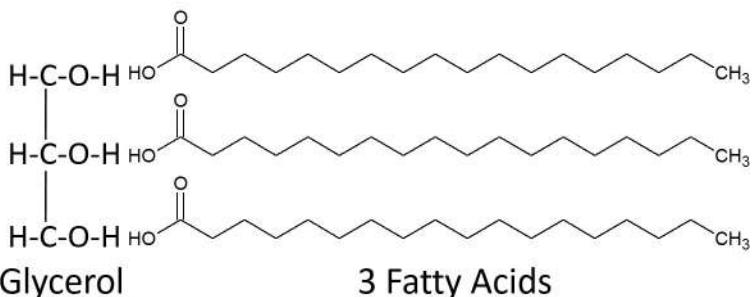


Figure 2.351 Triglyceride formation

When a fatty acid is added to the glycerol backbone, this process is called esterification. This process is so named, because it forms an ester bond between each fatty acid and the glycerol. Three molecules of water are also formed during this process as shown below.

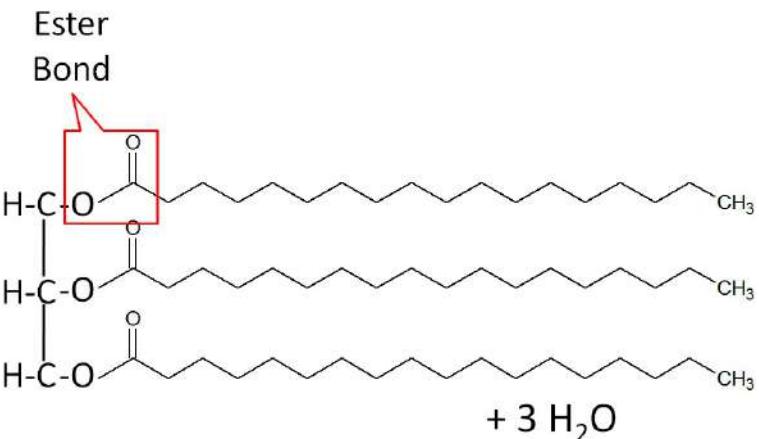


Figure 2.352 Esterification of three fatty acids to glycerol

A stereospecific numbering (sn) system is used to number the three fatty acids in a triglyceride sn-1, sn-2, and sn-3 respectively. A triglyceride can also be simply represented as a polar (hydrophilic) head, with 3 nonpolar (hydrophobic) tails, as shown below.

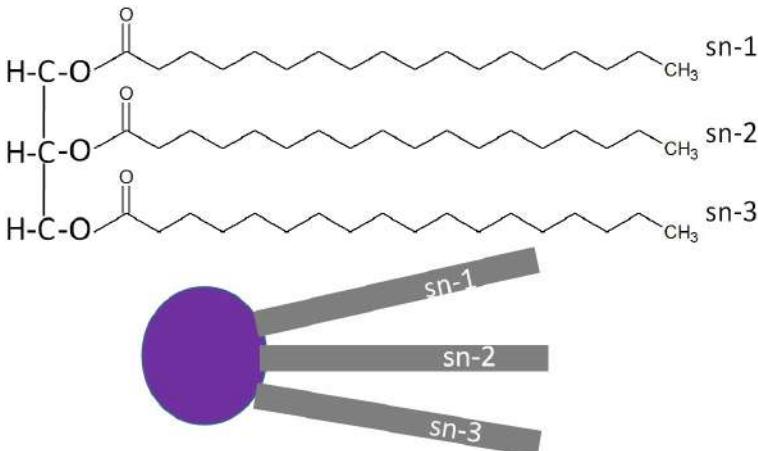


Figure 2.353 Stereospecific numbering (sn) of triglycerides

The three fatty acids in a triglyceride can be the same or can each be a different fatty acid. A triglyceride containing different fatty acids is known as a mixed triglyceride. An example of a mixed triglyceride is shown below.

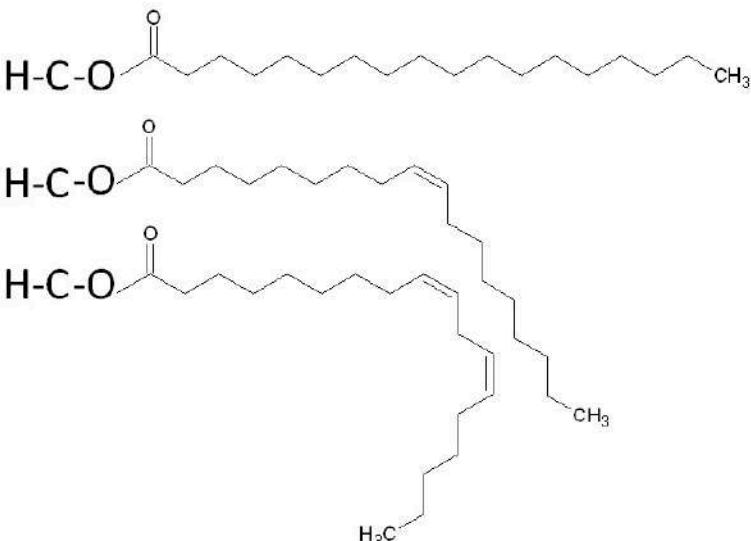


Figure 2.354 Structure of a mixed triglyceride

## No References

## 2.36 Phospholipids

Phospholipids are similar in structure to triglycerides, with the only difference being a phosphate group and nitrogen-containing compound in the place of a fatty acid.

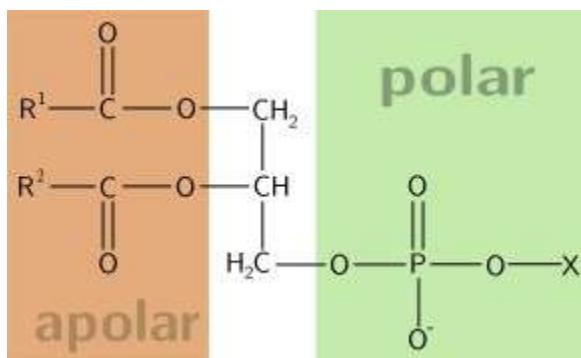


Figure 2.361 Structure of a phospholipid, R represents the different fatty acids, X represents the nitrogen-containing compound off of the phosphate group

The best known phospholipid is phosphatidylcholine (aka lecithin). As you can see in the structure below, it contains a choline off of the phosphate group.

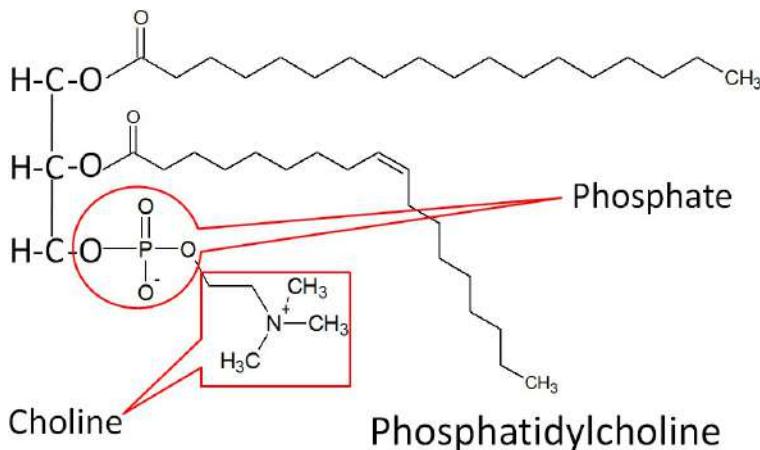


Figure 2.362 Structure of phosphatidylcholine (lecithin)

However, you will not normally find phospholipids arranged like a

triglyceride, with the 3 tails opposite of the glycerol head. This is because the phosphate/nitrogen tail of the phospholipid is polar. Thus, the structure will look like the 2 figures below.

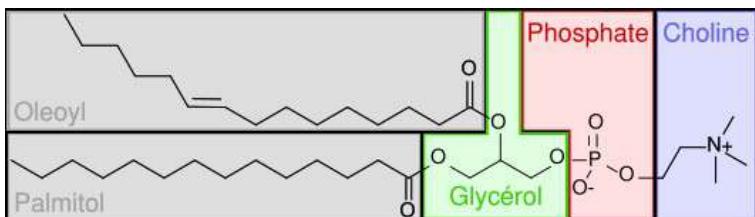


Figure 2.363 Structure of phosphatidylcholine (lecithin)2

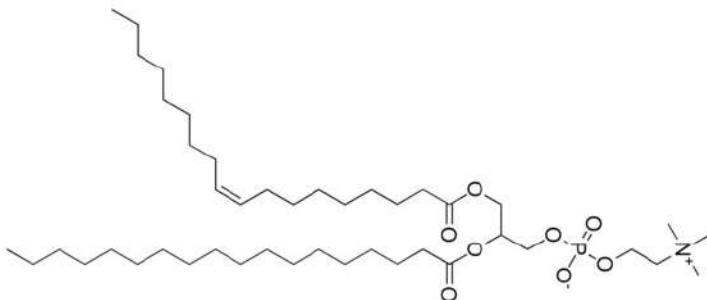


Figure 2.364 Structure of phosphatidylcholine (lecithin)3

Similar to triglycerides, phospholipids are also represented as a hydrophilic head with two hydrophobic tails as shown below.



Figure 2.365 Schematic of a phospholipid

## Phospholipid Functions

Because its structure allows it to be at the interface of water-lipid environments, there are two main functions of phospholipids:

1. Key Component of the Cell's Lipid Bilayer
2. Emulsification

Number 1 in the figure below is a cell's lipid bilayer, while 2 is a micelle that is formed by phospholipids to assist in emulsification.

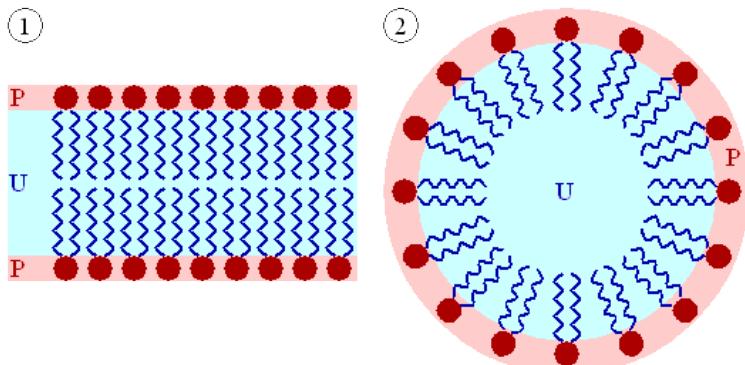


Figure 2.366, 1 – lipid bilayer; 2 – micelle4

### 1. Key Component of Cells' Lipid Bilayers

Phospholipids are an important component of the lipid bilayers of cells. A cross section of a lipid bilayer is shown below. The hydrophilic heads are on the outside and inside of the cell; the hydrophobic tails are in the interior of the cell membrane.

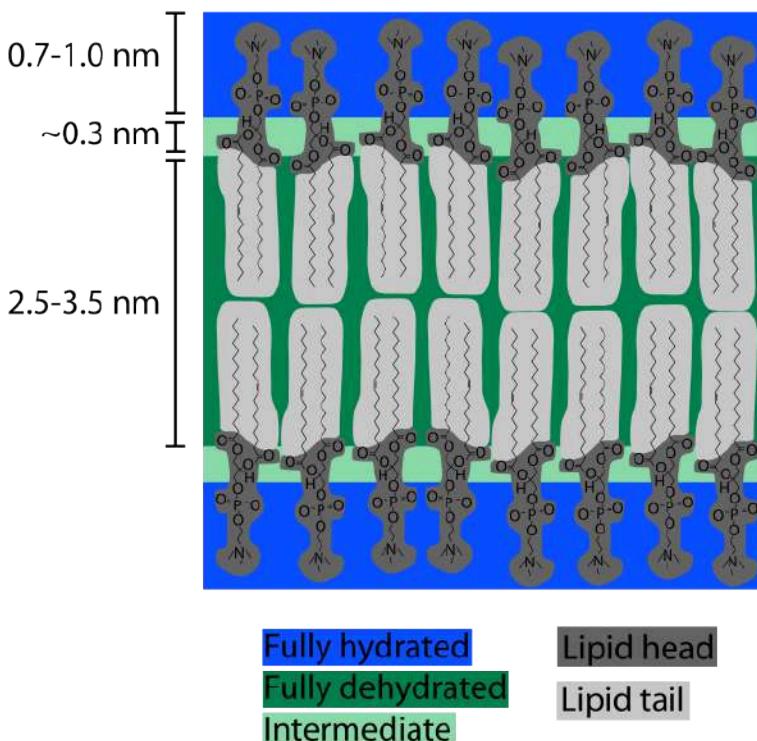


Figure 2.367 Phospholipids in a lipid bilayer. The blue represents the watery environment on both sides of the membrane, while the dark green represents the hydrophobic environment in between the membranes

## 2. Emulsification

As emulsifiers, phospholipids help hydrophobic substances mix in a watery environment. It does this by forming a micelle as shown below. The hydrophobic substance is trapped on the interior of the micelle away from the aqueous environment.

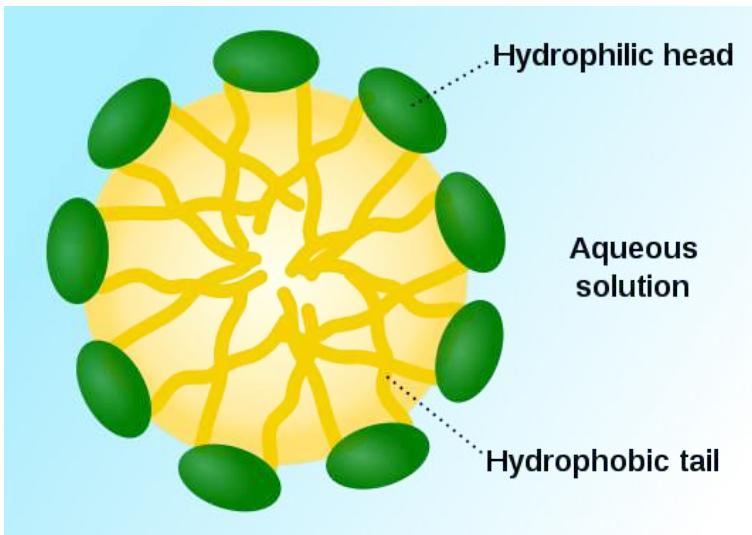


Figure 2.368 Structure of a micelle6

As a result, it can take a hydrophobic liquid (oil) and allow it to mix with hydrophilic liquid (water).

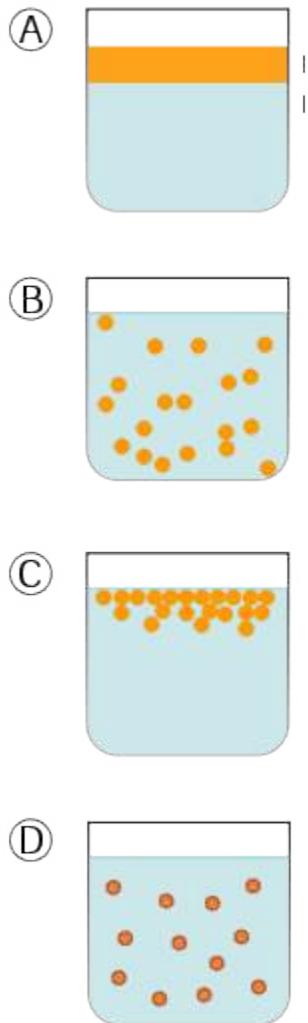


Figure 2.369 How an emulsion can allow the dispersion of a hydrophobic substance (II) into a hydrophilic environment (I) as shown in D7

Foods rich in phosphatidylcholine include: egg yolks, liver,

soybeans, wheat germ, and peanuts<sup>8</sup>. Egg yolks serve as an emulsifier in a variety of recipes. Your body makes all the phospholipids that it needs, so they do not need to be consumed (not essential).

### References & Links

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Phospholipid.svg>
2. [http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Popc\\_details.svg](http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Popc_details.svg)
3. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Phosphatidylcholine.png>
4. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Lipid\\_bilayer\\_and\\_micelle.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Lipid_bilayer_and_micelle.png)
5. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Bilayer\\_hydration\\_profile.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Bilayer_hydration_profile.svg)
6. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Micelle#/media/File:Micelle\\_scheme-en.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Micelle#/media/File:Micelle_scheme-en.svg)
7. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Emulsions.svg>
8. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

## 2.37 Sterols

The last category of lipids are the sterols. Their structure is quite different from the other lipids because sterols are made up of a number of carbon rings. The generic structure of a sterol is shown below.

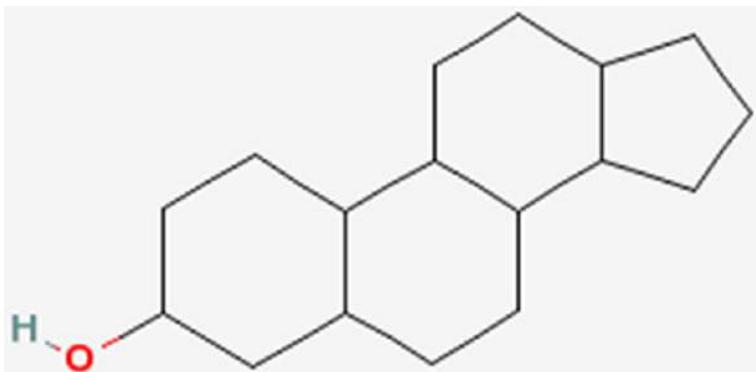


Figure 2.371 Generic structure of a sterol

The primary sterol that we consume is cholesterol. The structure of cholesterol is shown below.

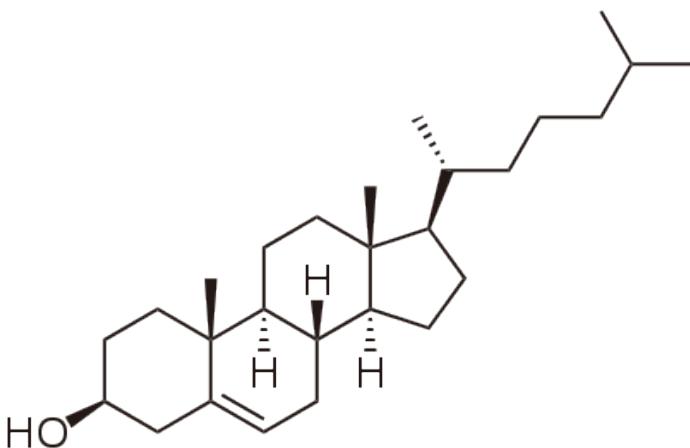


Figure 2.372 The carbon ring structure of cholesterol

Cholesterol is frequently found in foods as a cholesterol ester,

meaning that there is a fatty acid attached to it. The structure of a cholesterol ester is shown below.

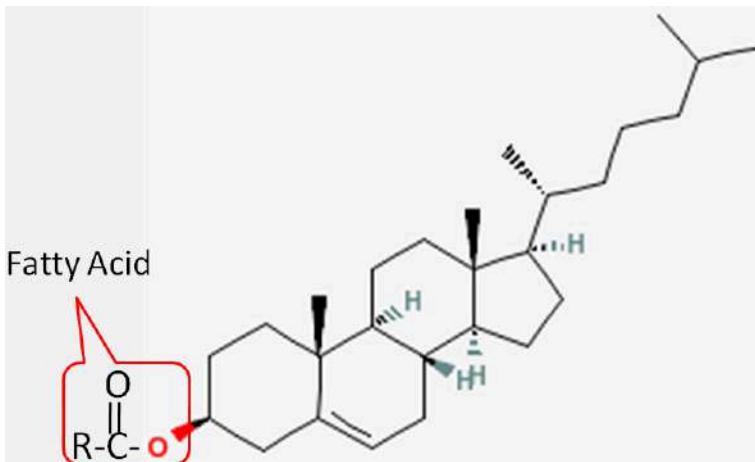
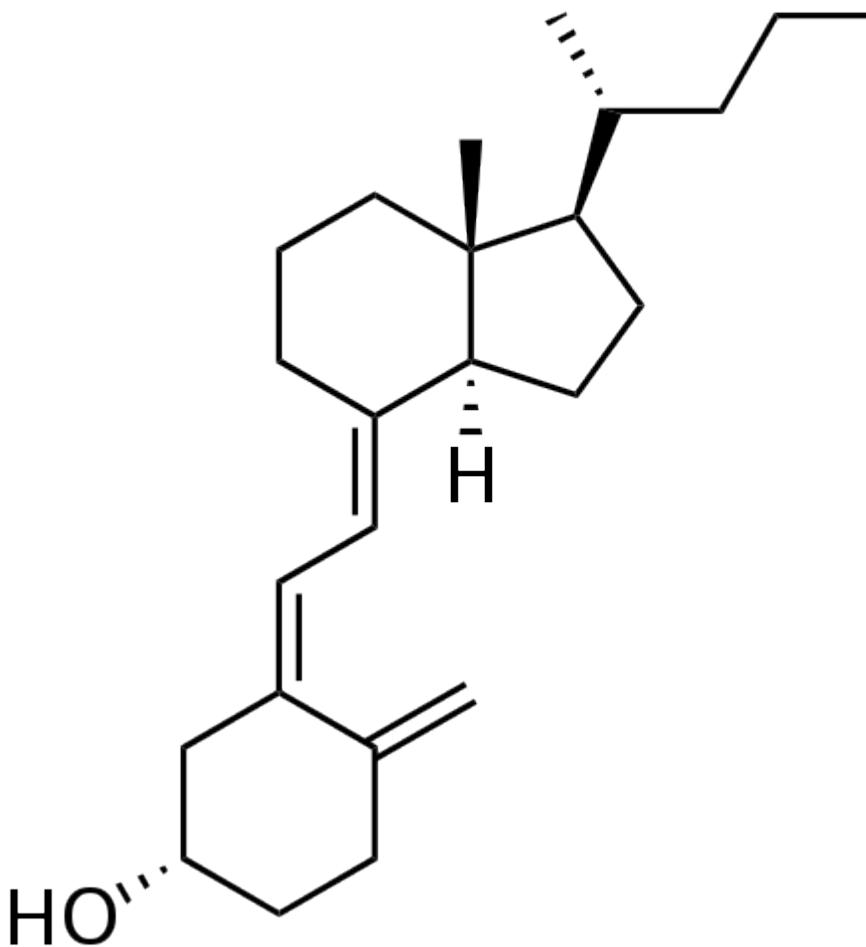


Figure 2.373 Structure of a cholesterol ester

All sterols have a similar structure to cholesterol. Cholesterol is only found in foods of animal origin. If consumers were more knowledgeable, intentionally misleading practices, such as labeling a banana “cholesterol free”, would not be as widespread as they currently are today.

### Function

Although cholesterol has acquired the status of a nutrition “villain”, it is a vital component of cell membranes and is used to produce vitamin D, hormones, and bile acids. You can see the similarity between the structures of vitamin D and estradiol, one of the forms of estrogen shown below.



---

Figure 2.373 Structures of vitamin D<sub>3</sub> and estradiol (a form of estrogen)<sup>2,3</sup>

We do not need to consume any cholesterol from our diets (not essential) because our bodies have the ability to synthesize the required amounts. The figure below gives you an idea of the cholesterol content of a variety of foods.

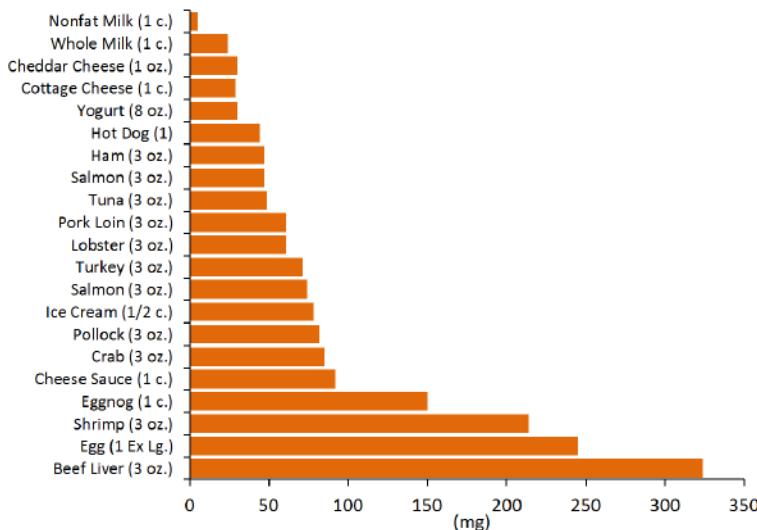


Figure 2.374 The cholesterol content (mg) of foods4

There is neither bad nor good cholesterol, despite these descriptions being commonly used for LDL and HDL, respectively. Cholesterol is cholesterol. HDL and LDL contain cholesterol but are actually lipoproteins that will be described later in chapter 4.

### References & Links

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Cholesterol.svg>
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Cholecalciferol.svg>
3. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Estradiol2.png>
4. <http://ndb.nal.usda.gov/>

# Macronutrient Digestion

You probably do not think too much about what actually happens to the food you eat. This section will describe in depth how what you eat is digested. The desired end result for the learner will be an integrated understanding of the process. This will require higher levels of thinking, but will prove to be well worth it in the end.

Sections:

- 3.1 Digestion at a Glance
- 3.2 Mouth to the Stomach
- 3.3 Stomach
- 3.4 Small Intestine
- 3.5 Macronutrient Digestion Review
- 3.6 Large Intestine

**No References**

## 3.1 Digestion at a Glance

Digestion is the process of breaking down food to be absorbed or excreted. The gastrointestinal (GI, digestive) tract, the passage through which our food travels, is a “tube within a tube.” The trunk of our body is the outer tube and the GI tract is the interior tube, as shown below. Thus, even though the GI tract is within the body, the actual interior of the tract is technically outside of the body. This is because the contents have to be absorbed into the body. If it’s not absorbed, it will be excreted and never enter the body itself.

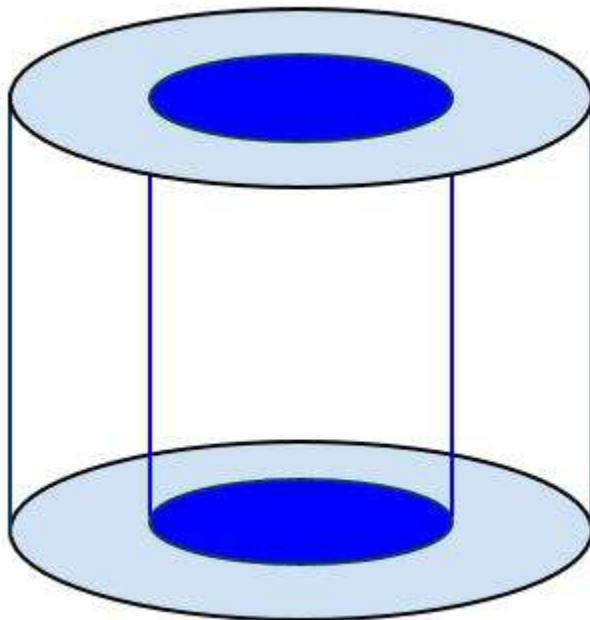


Figure 3.11 The digestive tract, also known as the gastrointestinal tract, is a “tube within a tube”

A number of organs are involved in digestion, which collectively are referred to as the digestive system.

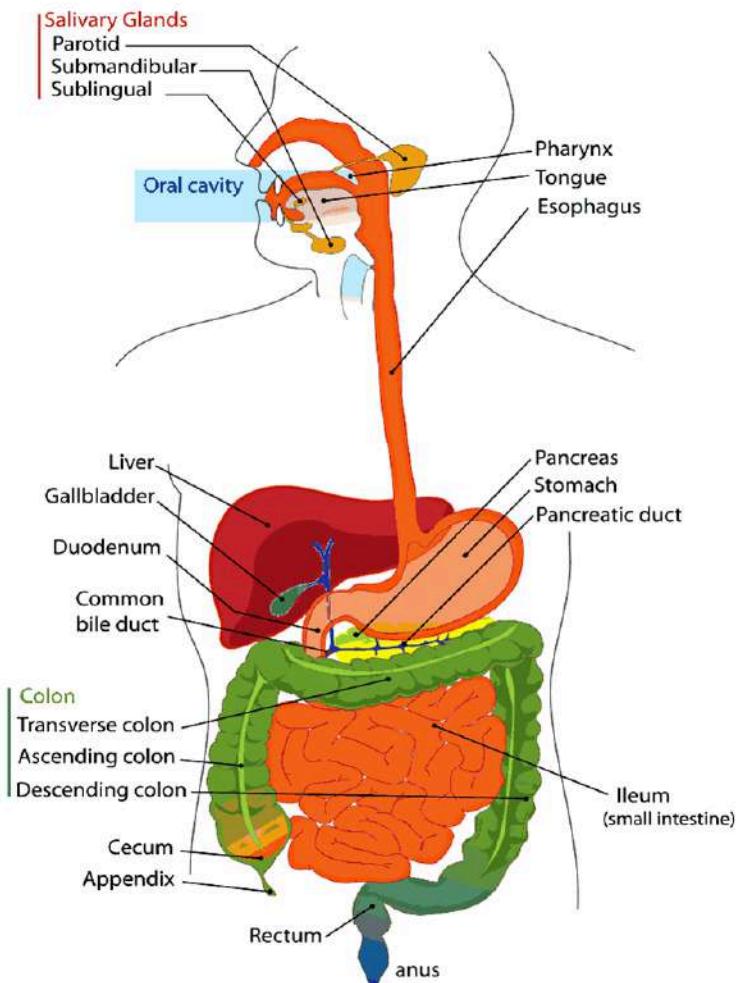


Figure 3.12 The digestive system1

The organs that form the gastrointestinal tract (mouth, esophagus, stomach, small intestine, large intestine (aka colon), rectum, and anus) come into direct contact with the food or digestive content.

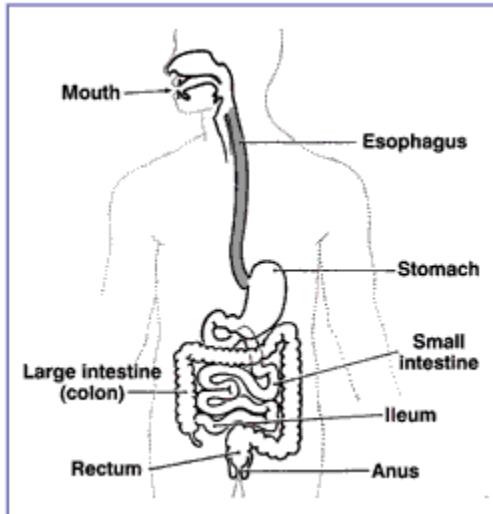


Figure 3.13 The gastrointestinal or digestive tract2

The journey through the gastrointestinal tract starts in the mouth and ends in the anus as shown below:

Mouth → Esophagus → Stomach → Small Intestine → Large Intestine → Rectum → Anus

In addition to the GI tract, there are digestion accessory organs (salivary glands, pancreas, gallbladder, and liver) that play an integral role in digestion. The accessory organs do not come directly in contact with food or digestive content.

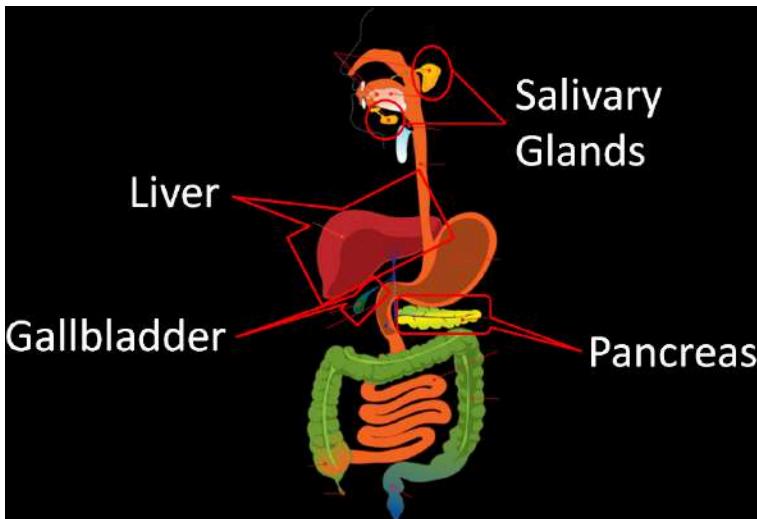


Figure 3.14 Digestion accessory organs

There are a number of enzymes that are involved in digestion. We will go through each one in detail, but this table should help give an overview of which enzymes are active at each location of the GI tract.

Table 3.11 Digestive enzymes

<b>Location</b>	<b>Enzyme/Coenzyme</b>
Mouth	Salivary amylase
	Lingual lipase
Stomach	Pepsin
	Gastric lipase
Small Intestine	Pancreatic alpha-amylase
	Brush border disaccharidases
	Pancreatic lipase
	Colipase
	Phospholipase-A2
	Cholesterol esterase
	Proteases
	Brush border peptidases

## References & Links

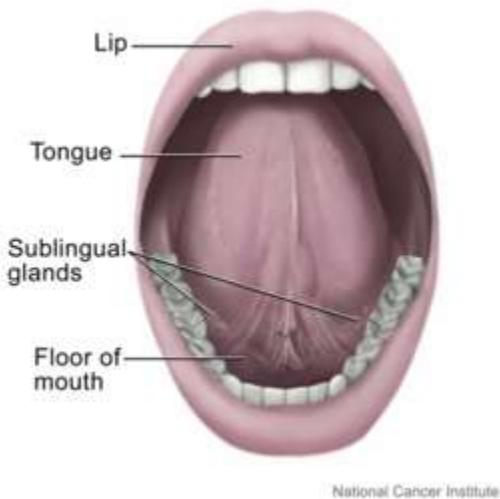
1. [http://www.wpclipart.com/medical/anatomy/digestive/  
Digestive\\_system\\_diagram\\_page.png.html](http://www.wpclipart.com/medical/anatomy/digestive/Digestive_system_diagram_page.png.html)
2. <http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Digestivetract.gif>

## Video

Enzymes and Digestion – [http://www.youtube.com/  
watch?v=bNMsNHqxszc](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=bNMsNHqxszc)

## 3.2 Mouth to the Stomach

Digestion begins in the mouth, both mechanically and chemically. Mechanical digestion is called mastication, or the chewing and grinding of food into smaller pieces. The salivary glands release saliva, mucus, and the enzymes, salivary amylase and lysozyme.



National Cancer Institute

Figure 3.21 The mouth1

Salivary amylase cleaves the alpha 1-4 glycosidic bonds in the starch molecules, amylose and amylopectin. However, salivary amylase cannot cleave the branch points in amylopectin where there are alpha 1-6 glycosidic bonds, as shown in the figure below. Overall this enzyme accounts for a minor amount of carbohydrate digestion.

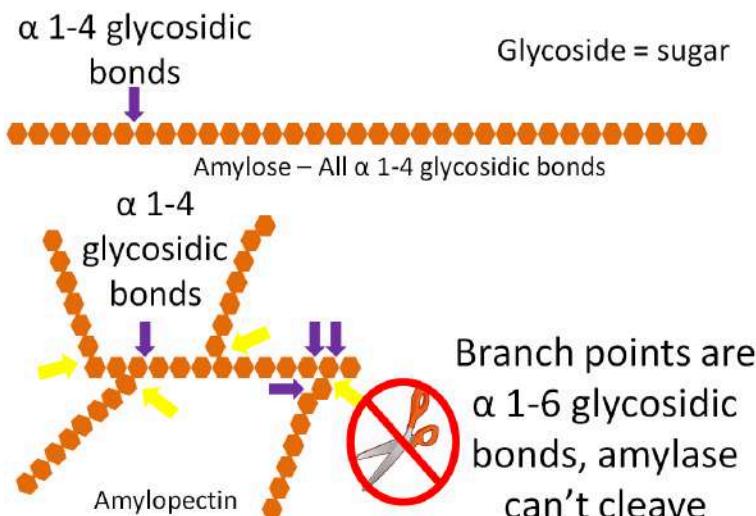


Figure 3.22 Enzymatic action of salivary amylase. Purple arrows point to alpha 1-4 glycosidic bonds that can be cleaved. The yellow arrows point to the alpha 1-6 glycosidic bonds that cannot be cleaved

Lysozyme helps break down bacteria cell walls to prevent a possible infection. Another enzyme, lingual lipase, is also released in the mouth. Although it is released in the mouth, it is most active in the stomach where it preferentially cleaves short-chain fatty acids in the sn-3 position. Lingual lipase has a small role in digestion in adults, but may be important for infants to help break down triglycerides in breast milk.

### Swallowing

Now that the food has been thoroughly chewed and formed into a bolus, it can proceed down the throat to the next stop in digestion. It will move down the pharynx where it reaches a “fork in the road”, with the larynx as one road and the esophagus as the other. The esophagus road leads to the stomach; this is the direction that food should go. The other road, through the larynx, leads to the trachea and ultimately the lungs. This is definitely not where you want your food or drink going, as this is the pathway for the air you breathe.

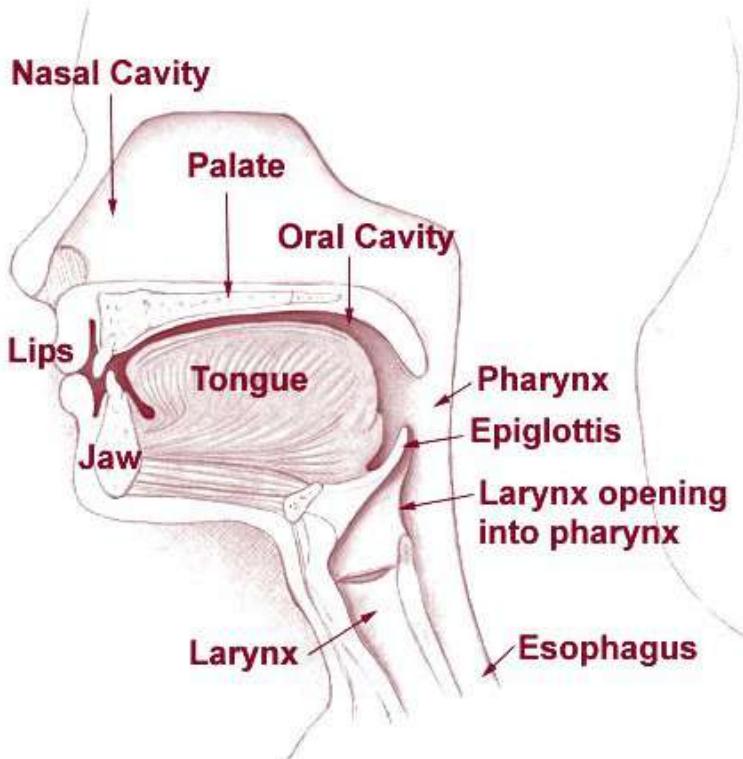


Figure 3.23 Cross section of face. The epiglottis covers larynx to prevent food and drink from entering the lungs

Fortunately, our body was designed in such a way that a small tissue, called the epiglottis, covers the opening to the trachea. It directs the food down the correct road as shown below.

**Esophagus→Stomach**

Correct Road

**Larynx→Trachea→**

**Lungs Wrong Road**

Epiglottis



Figure 3.24 Epiglottis is like a traffic cop guiding food down the correct digestion road.

## Esophagus

Before being correctly guided into the esophagus, the bolus of food will travel through the upper esophageal sphincter. Sphincters are circular muscles that are found throughout the gastrointestinal tract that essentially serve as gates between the different sections. Once in the esophagus, wavelike muscular movements, known as peristalsis, occur, as shown in the animation and video in the links below.

---

### Web Links

[Peristalsis Animation](#)

[Video: Peristalsis \(0:57\)](#)

---

At the end of the esophagus the bolus will encounter the lower esophageal sphincter. This sphincter keeps the harmful acids of the stomach out of the esophagus. However, in many people this sphincter is leaky, which allows stomach acid to reflux, or creep up, the esophagus. Stomach acid is very acidic (has a low pH). The ruler below will give you an idea of just how acidic the stomach is. Notice that the pH of gastric (term used to describe the stomach) fluid is lower (more acidic) than any of the listed items besides battery acid.

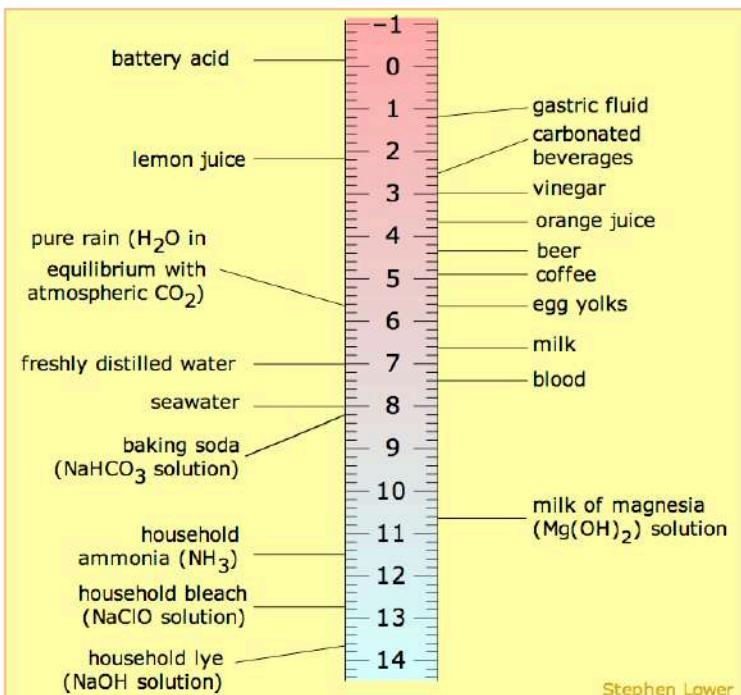


Figure 3.26 pH of some common items<sup>4</sup>

The leaking of the very acidic gastric contents results in a burning sensation, commonly referred to as “heartburn.” If this occurs more than twice per week and is severe, the person may have gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD). The following videos explain more about these conditions.

---

#### Web Links

- Video: Acid Reflux (1:28)  
 Video: GERD 101 (0:55)
- 

Table 3.21 Review of Chemical Digestion in the Mouth

---

### **Macronutrient Action**

Carbohydrates Salivary amylase cleaves 1,4-glycosidic bonds

Lipids Release of lingual lipase

Protein None

---

### **References & Links**

1. Alan Hoofring, <http://visualsonline.cancer.gov/details.cfm?imageid=4371>
2. Shils ME, Shike M, Ross AC, Caballero B, Cousins RJ, editors. (2006) Modern nutrition in health and disease. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Illu01\\_head\\_neck.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Illu01_head_neck.jpg)
4. [http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/4/46/PH\\_scale.png](http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/4/46/PH_scale.png)

### **Link**

Peristalsis – <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Peristalsis.gif>

### **Videos**

Peristalsis Animation – <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=o18UycWRsaA>

Acid Reflux – <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=SW-QfyDSY5I>  
GERD 101 – [http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=FqdOvZkrSYk&feature=rec-lis-watch-cur\\_emp-farside\\_rn](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=FqdOvZkrSYk&feature=rec-lis-watch-cur_emp-farside_rn)

## **3.3 Stomach**

After going through the lower esophageal sphincter, food enters the stomach. Our stomach is involved in both chemical and mechanical digestion. Mechanical digestion occurs as the stomach churns and

grinds food into a semisolid substance called chyme (partially digested food).

The lining of the stomach is made up of different layers of tissue. The mucosa is the outermost layer (closest to stomach cavity) as shown in the figure below.

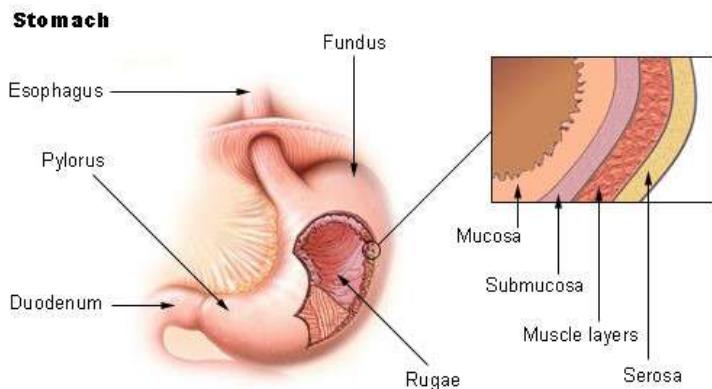


Figure 3.31 The anatomy of the stomach<sup>1</sup>

The mucosa is not a flat surface. Instead, its surface is lined by gastric pits, as shown in the figure below.

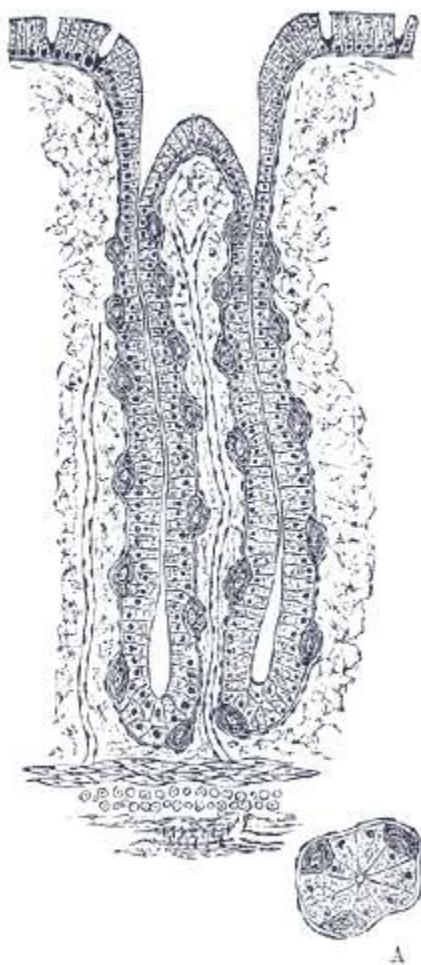


Figure 3.32 Gastric pits2

Gastric pits are indentations in the stomach's surface that are lined by four different types of cells.

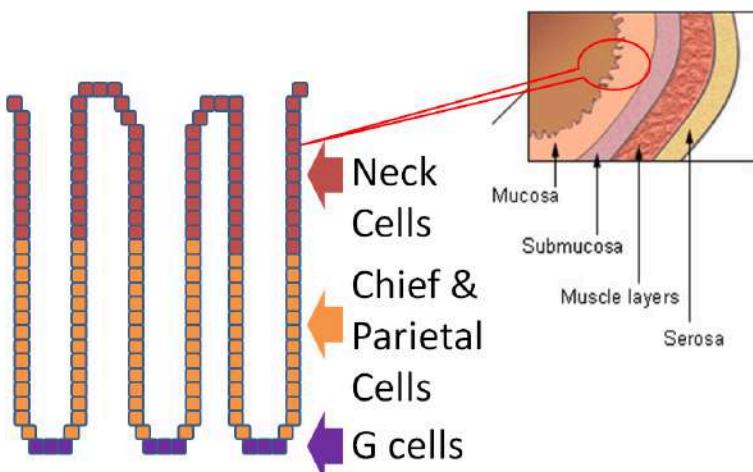


Figure 3.33 Blowup of mucosa to show the structure of gastric pits

The following video is a nice introduction to gastric pits and talks about chief and parietal cells that are covered in more detail below.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Video: Gastric Pits \(0:56\)](#)

---

At the bottom of the gastric pit are the G cells that secrete the hormone gastrin. Gastrin stimulates the parietal and chief cells that are found above the G cells. The chief cells secrete the zymogen pepsinogen and the enzyme gastric lipase. A zymogen is an inactive precursor of an enzyme that must be cleaved or altered to form the active enzyme. The parietal cells secrete hydrochloric acid (HCl), which lowers the pH of the gastric juice (water + enzymes + acid). The HCl inactivates salivary amylase and catalyzes the conversion of pepsinogen to pepsin. Finally, the top of the pits are the neck cells that secrete mucus to prevent the gastric juice from digesting or damaging the stomach mucosa<sup>3</sup>. The table below summarizes the actions of the different cells in the gastric pits.

Table 3.41 Cells involved in the digestive processes in the stomach

Type of Cell	Secretes
Neck	Mucus
Chief	Pepsinogen and gastric lipase
Parietal	HCl
G	Gastrin

The figure below shows the action of all these different secretions in the stomach.

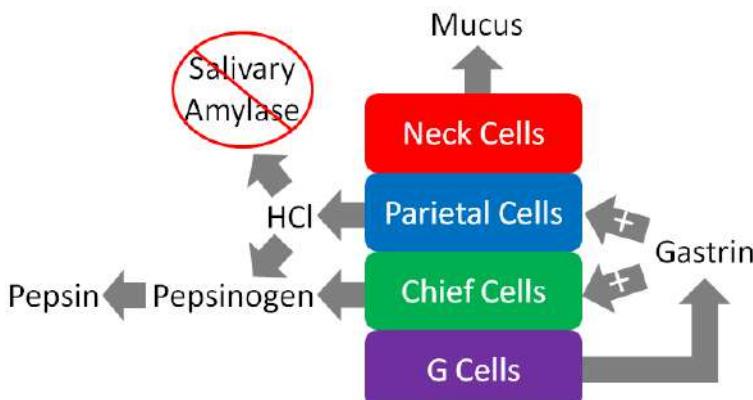


Figure 3.34 The action of gastric secretions in the stomach

To reiterate, the figure above illustrates that the neck cells of the gastric pits secrete mucus to protect the mucosa of the stomach from essentially digesting itself. Gastrin from the G cells stimulates the parietal and chief cells to secrete HCl and enzymes, respectively.

The HCl in the stomach denatures salivary amylase and other proteins by breaking down the structure and, thus, the function of it. HCl also converts pepsinogen to the active enzyme pepsin. Pepsin is a protease, meaning that it cleaves bonds in proteins. It breaks down the proteins in food into individual peptides (shorter

segments of amino acids). The other enzyme that is active in the stomach is gastric lipase. This enzyme preferentially cleaves the sn-3 position of triglycerides to produce 1,2-diglyceride and a free fatty acid, as shown below<sup>4</sup>. It is responsible for up to 20% of triglyceride digestion<sup>3</sup>.

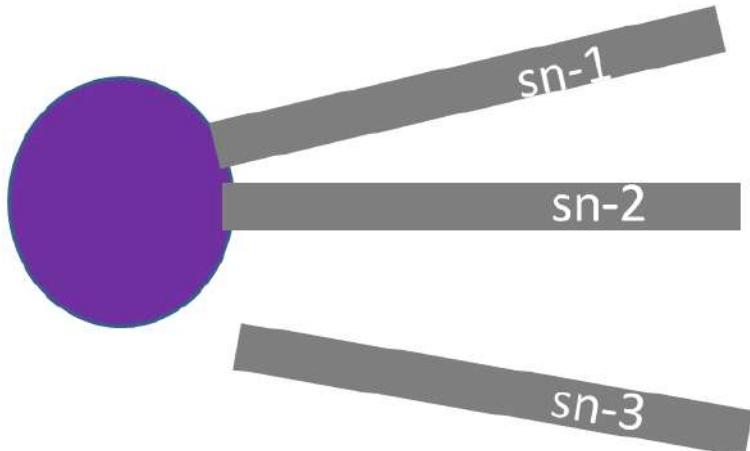


Figure 3.35 Gastric Lipase action results in production of 1,2-diglyceride and a free fatty acid

The chyme will then leave the stomach and enter the small intestine via the pyloric sphincter (shown below).

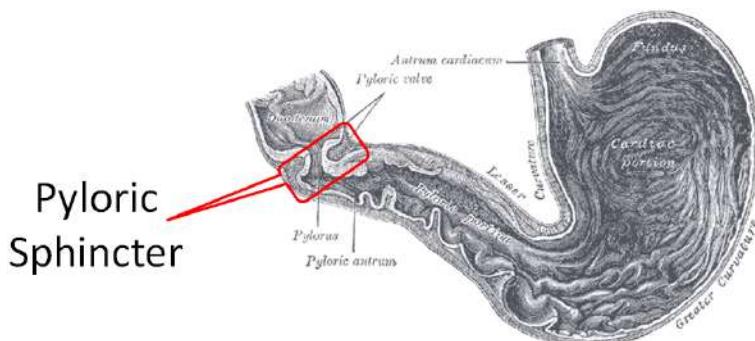


Figure 3.36 Cross section of the stomach showing the pyloric sphincter<sup>5</sup>

Table 3.32 Summary of chemical digestion in the stomach

Chemical or Enzyme	Action
Gastrin	Stimulates chief cells to release pepsinogen
	Stimulates parietal cells to release HCl
	Denatures salivary amylase
HCl	Denatures proteins Activates pepsinogen to pepsin
Pepsin	Cleaves proteins to peptides
Gastric lipase	Cleaves sn-3 FA of triglycerides

## References & Links

1. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stomach#/media/  
File:Illu\\_stomach2.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stomach#/media/File:Illu_stomach2.jpg)
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gray1055.png>
3. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
4. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
5. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pylorus#/media/  
File:Gray1050.png](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pylorus#/media/File:Gray1050.png)

## Video

Gastric Pits – <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6hquzCXYlNg>

## 3.4 Small Intestine

The small intestine is the primary site of digestion. It is divided into three sections: the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum (shown below). After leaving the stomach, the first part of the small intestine that chyme will encounter is the duodenum.

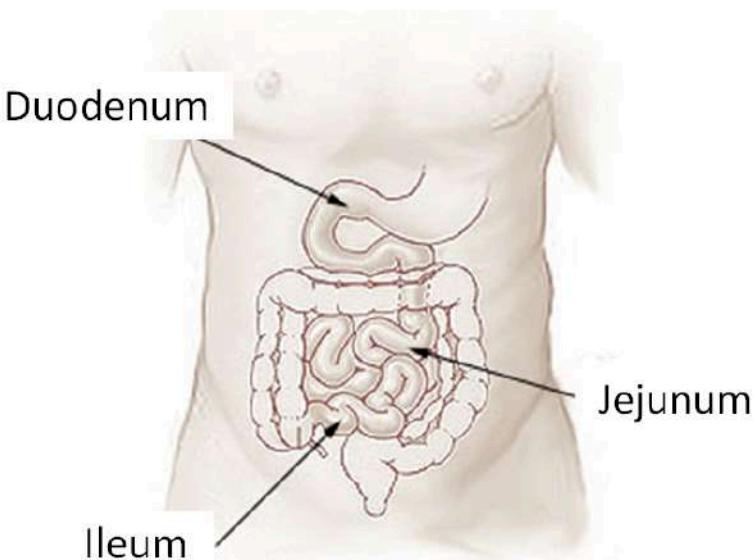


Figure 3.41 Three sections of the small intestine

The small intestine consists of many layers, which can be seen in the cross section below.

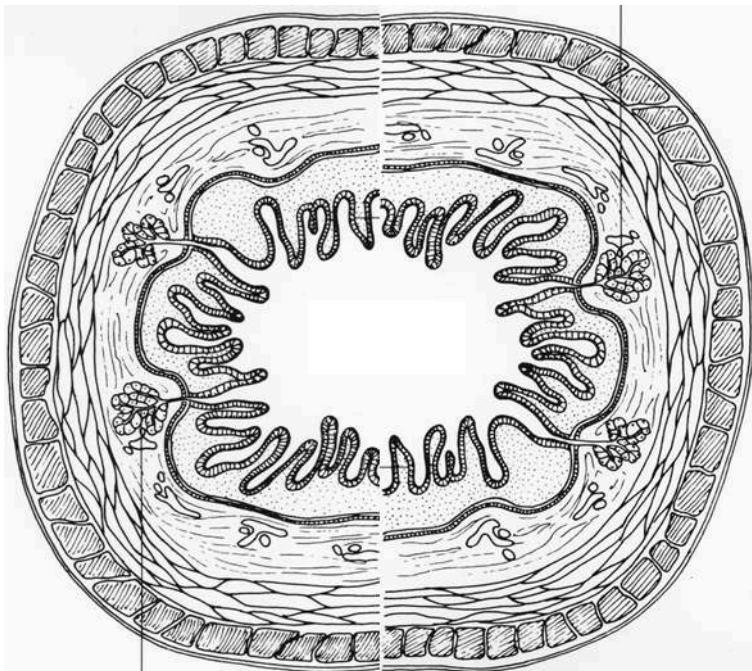


Figure 3.42 Cross section of the small intestine2

Examining these layers closer, we are going to focus on the epithelium, which comes into contact with the chyme and is responsible for absorption. The lumen is the name of the cavity that is considered “outside the body” that chyme moves through.

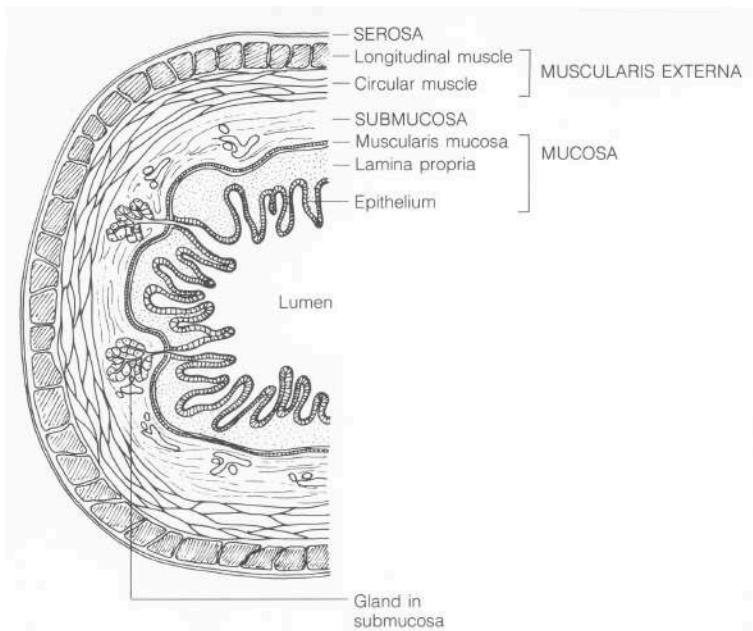


Figure 3.43 Cross section of small intestine with the structures labeled2

The organization of the small intestine is in such a way that it contains circular folds and finger-like projections known as villi. The folds and villi are shown in the next few figures.

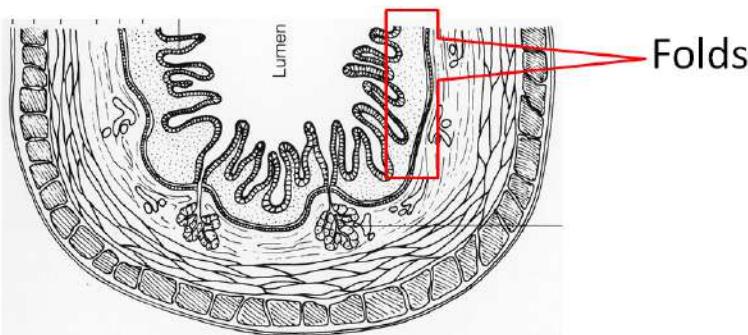


Figure 3.44 Folds in the small intestine2

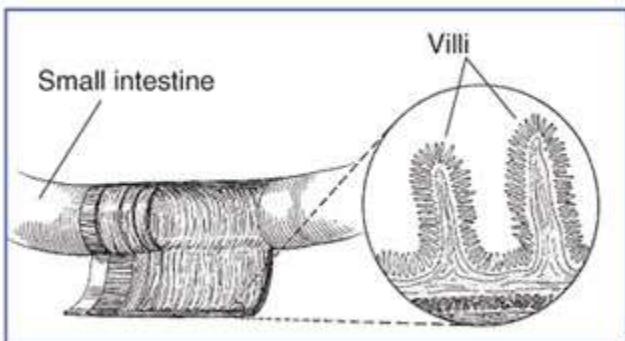


Figure 3.45 Villi in the small intestine3

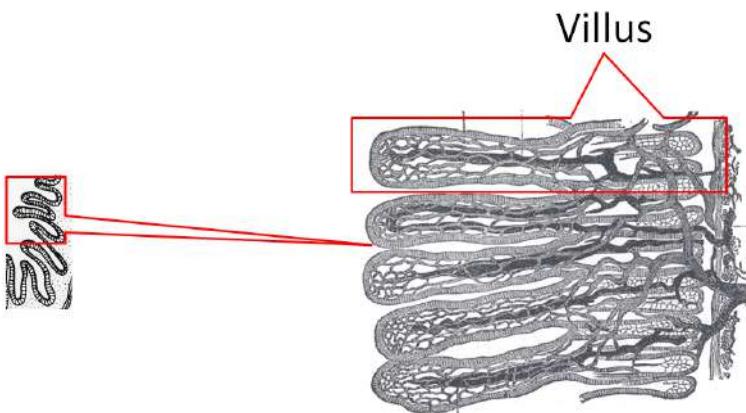


Figure 3.46 Villi line the surface of the small intestine2,4

If we were to zoom in even closer, we would be able to see that enterocytes (small intestine absorptive cells) line villi as shown below.

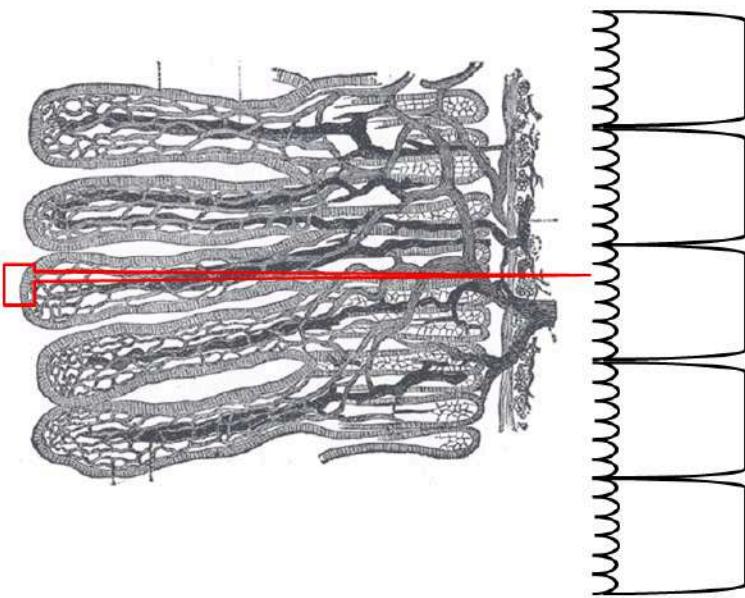


Figure 3.47 Enterocytes line villi4

The side, or membrane, of the enterocyte that faces the lumen is not smooth either. It is lined with microvilli, and is known as the brush border (aka apical) membrane, as shown below.

## Brush Border (aka apical)

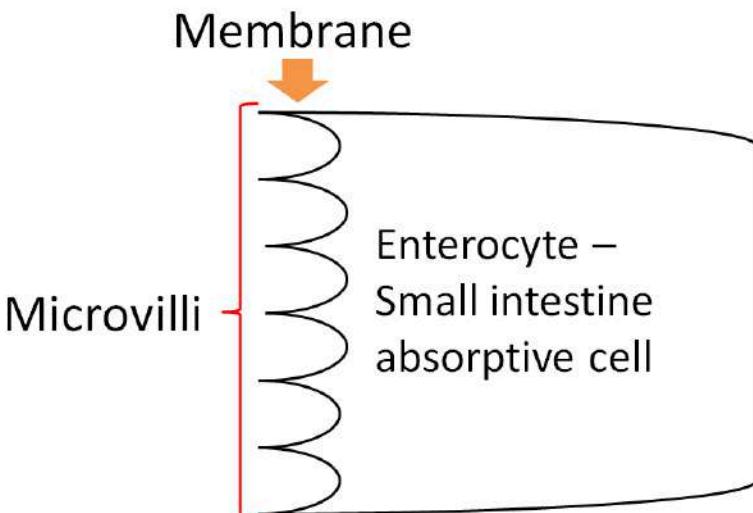


Figure 3.48 Enterocyte, or small intestinal absorptive cell is lined with microvilli. This lined surface is referred to as the brush border membrane.

Together these features (folds + villi + microvilli) increase the surface area ~600 times versus if it was a smooth tube<sup>5</sup>. More surface area leads to more contact with the enterocytes and thus, increased absorption.

Going even closer, we discover that the surface of the microvilli is covered by the hair-like glycocalyx, which is glycoproteins and carbohydrates as shown below.

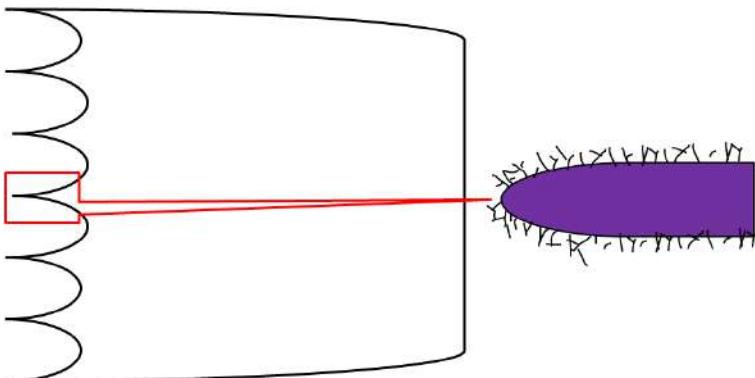


Figure 3.49 Glycocalyx lines the microvilli

Now that you have learned about the anatomy of the small intestine, the following subsections go through the different digestive processes that occur there.

Subsections:

- 3.41 Digestive Hormones, Accessory Organs, & Secretions
- 3.42 Carbohydrate Digestion in the Small Intestine
- 3.43 Protein Digestion in the Small Intestine
- 3.44 Lipid Digestion in the Small Intestine

### References & Links

1. [http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/  
Image:Illu\\_small\\_intestine\\_catal%C3%A0o.png](http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/Image:Illu_small_intestine_catal%C3%A0o.png)
2. Author unknown, NCI, [http://visualsonline.cancer.gov/  
details.cfm?imageid=1781](http://visualsonline.cancer.gov/details.cfm?imageid=1781)
3. <http://digestive.niddk.nih.gov/ddiseases/pubs/celiac/>
4. <http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/Image:Gray1061.png>
5. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

### **3.41 Digestive Hormones, Accessory Organs & Secretions**

Before we go into the digestive details of the small intestine, it is important that you have a basic understanding of the anatomy and physiology of the following digestion accessory organs: pancreas, liver, and gallbladder. Digestion accessory organs assist in digestion, but are not part of the gastrointestinal tract. How are these organs involved?

Upon entering the duodenum, the chyme causes the release of two hormones from the small intestine: secretin and cholecystokinin (CCK, previously known as pancreozymin) in response to acid and fat, respectively. These hormones have multiple effects on different tissues. In the pancreas, secretin stimulates the secretion of bicarbonate ( $\text{HCO}_3$ ), while CCK stimulates the secretion of digestive enzymes. The bicarbonate and digestive enzymes released together are collectively known as pancreatic juice, which travels to the small intestine, as shown below.

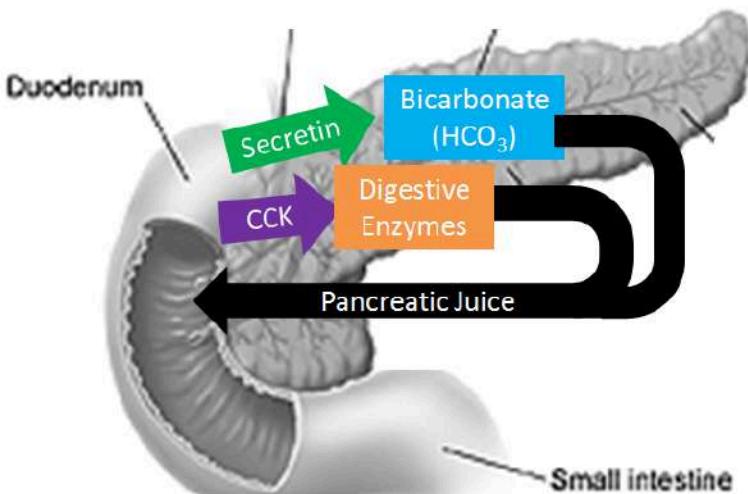


Figure 3.411 The hormones secretin and CCK stimulate the pancreas to secrete pancreatic juice1

In addition, CCK also stimulates the contraction of the gallbladder causing the secretion of bile into the duodenum.

### Pancreas

The pancreas is found behind the stomach and has two different portions. It has an endocrine (hormone-producing) portion that contains alpha and beta cells that secrete the hormones glucagon and insulin, respectively. However, the vast majority of the pancreas is made up of acini, or acinar cells, that are responsible for producing pancreatic juice. The following video does a nice job of showing and explaining the function of the different pancreatic cells.

#### **Web Link**

[Video: The Pancreas \(First 53 seconds\)](#)

Bicarbonate is a base (high pH) meaning that it can help neutralize

acid. You can find sodium bicarbonate ( $\text{NaHCO}_3$ , baking soda) on the ruler below to get an idea of its pH.

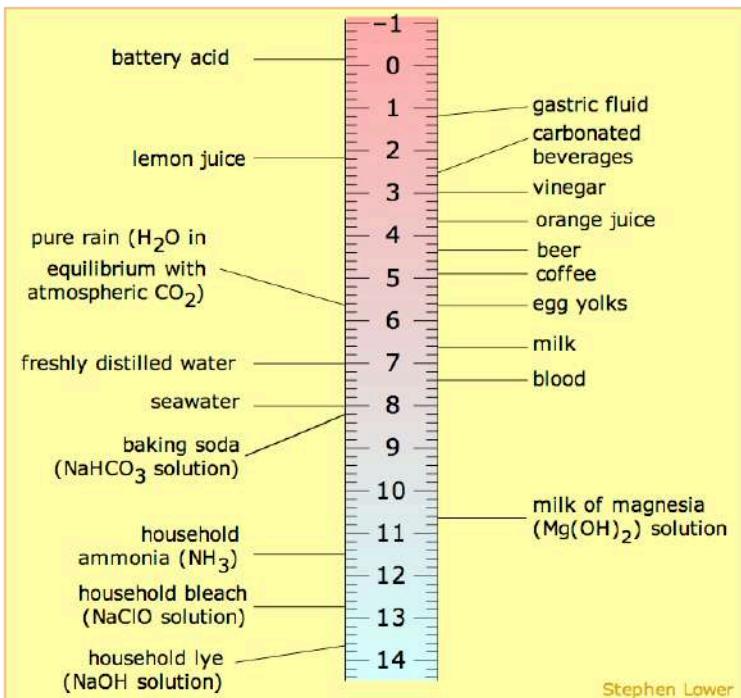


Figure 3.412 pH of some common items<sup>2</sup>

The main digestive enzymes in pancreatic juice are listed in the table below. Their function will be discussed further in later subsections.

Table 3.411 Enzymes in pancreatic juice

---

## **Enzyme**

Pancreatic alpha-amylase

Proteases

Pancreatic Lipase & Procolipase\*

Phospholipase A2

Cholesterol Esterase

---

\*Not an enzyme

## **Liver**

The liver is the largest internal and most metabolically active organ in the body. The figure below shows the liver and the accessory organs position relative to the stomach.

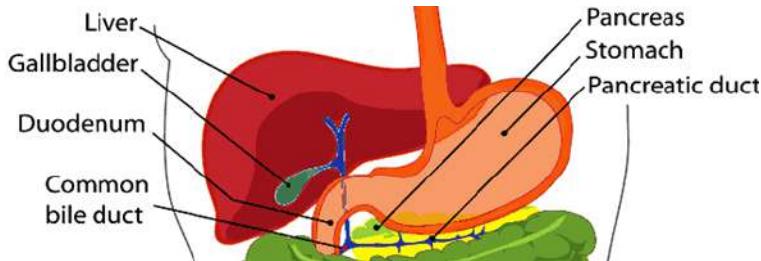
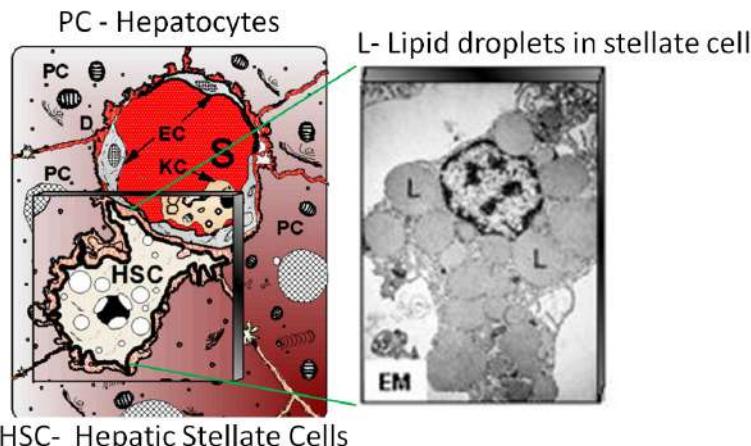


Figure 3.413 Location of digestion accessory organs relative to the stomach3

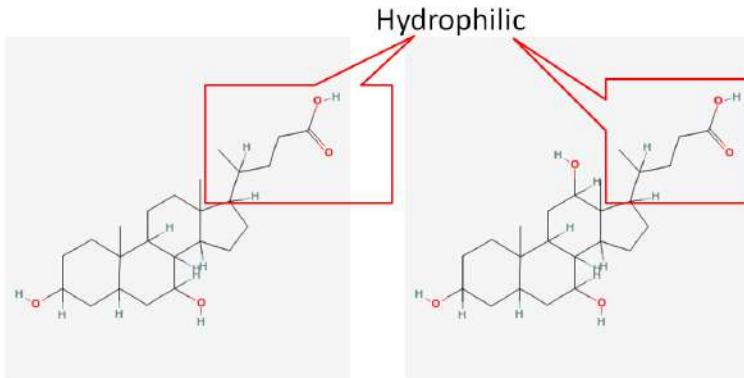
The liver is made up two major types of cells. The primary liver cells are hepatocytes, which carry out most of the liver's functions. Hepatic is another term for liver. For example, if you are going to refer to liver concentrations of a certain nutrient, these are often reported as hepatic concentrations. The other major cell type is the hepatic stellate (also known as Ito) cells. These are fat storing cells in the liver. These two cell types are depicted below.



### HSC- Hepatic Stellate Cells

Figure 3.414 Hepatocytes (PC) and hepatic stellate cells (HSC) along with an electron microscope image showing the lipid droplets within a stellate cell<sup>4</sup>

The liver's major role in digestion is to produce bile. This is a greenish-yellow fluid that is composed primarily of bile acids, but also contains cholesterol, phospholipids, and the pigments bilirubin and biliverdin. Bile acids are synthesized from cholesterol. The two primary bile acids are chenodeoxycholic acid and cholic acid. In the same way that fatty acids are found in the form of salts, these bile acids can also be found as salts. These salts have an (-ate) ending, as shown below.



Chenodeoxycholic Acid  
Or Chenodeoxycholate

Cholic Acid  
Or Cholate

Figure 3.415 Structures of the 2 primary bile acids

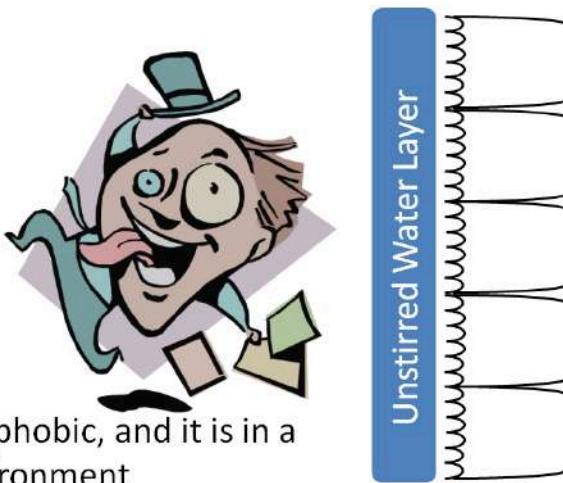
Bile acids, much like phospholipids, have a hydrophobic and hydrophilic end. This makes them excellent emulsifiers that are instrumental in fat digestion. Bile is then transported to the gallbladder.

### Gallbladder

The gallbladder is a small, sac-like organ found just off the liver (see figures above). Its primary function is to store and concentrate bile made by the liver. The bile is then transported to the duodenum through the common bile duct.

### Why do we need bile?

Bile is important because fat is hydrophobic and the environment in the lumen of the small intestine is watery. In addition, there is an unstirred water layer that fat must cross to reach the enterocytes in order to be absorbed.



Fat is hydrophobic, and it is in a watery environment

*Figure 3.416 Fat is not happy alone in the watery environment of the small intestine.*

Here triglycerides form large triglyceride droplets to keep the interaction with the watery environment to a minimum. This is inefficient for digestion, because enzymes cannot access the interior of the droplet. Bile acts as an emulsifier, or detergent. It, along with phospholipids, forms smaller triglyceride droplets that increase the surface area that is accessible for triglyceride digestion enzymes, as shown below.

- Emulsifier or Detergent

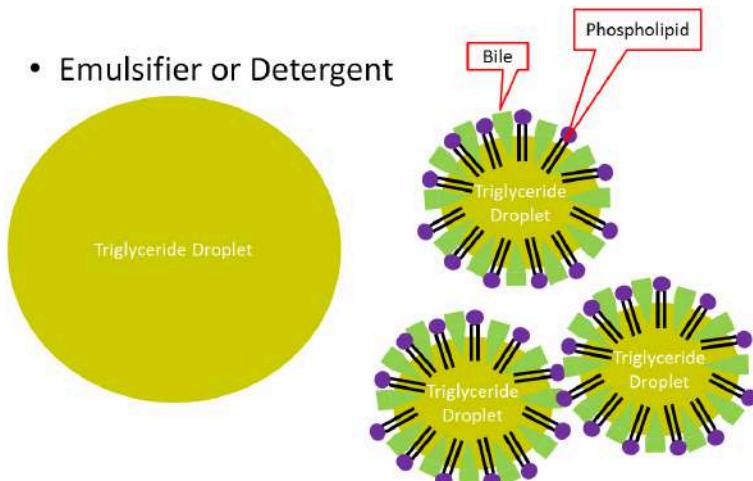


Figure 3.417 Bile acids and phospholipids facilitate the production of smaller triglyceride droplets.

Secretin and CCK also control the production and secretion of bile. Secretin stimulates the flow of bile from the liver to the gallbladder. CCK stimulates the gallbladder to contract, causing bile to be secreted into the duodenum, as shown below.

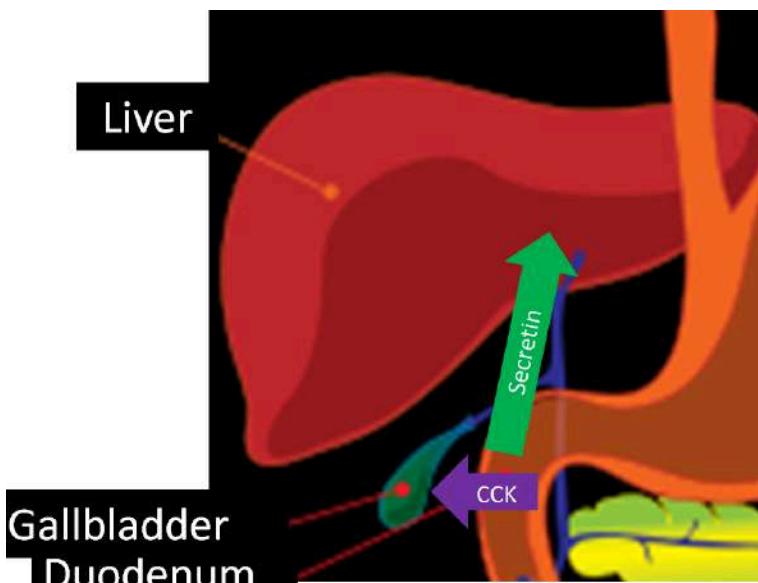


Figure 3.418 Secretion stimulates bile flow from liver; CCK stimulates the gallbladder to contract

## References & Links

1. Don Bliss, NCI, <http://visualsonline.cancer.gov>
2. [http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/4/46/PH\\_scale.png](http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/4/46/PH_scale.png)
3. [http://www.wpclipart.com/medical/anatomy/digestive/Digestive\\_system\\_diagram\\_page.png.html](http://www.wpclipart.com/medical/anatomy/digestive/Digestive_system_diagram_page.png.html)
4. <http://www.comparative-hepatology.com/content/6/1/7>

## Video

The Pancreas - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=j5WF8wUFNkI>

### 3.42 Carbohydrate Digestion in the Small Intestine

The small intestine is the primary site of carbohydrate digestion. Pancreatic alpha-amylase is the primary carbohydrate digesting enzyme. Pancreatic alpha-amylase, like salivary amylase, cleaves the alpha 1-4 glycosidic bonds of carbohydrates, reducing them to simpler carbohydrates, such as glucose, maltose, maltotriose, and dextrins (oligosaccharides containing 1 or more alpha 1-6 glycosidic bonds). Pancreatic amylase is also unable to cleave the branch point alpha 1-6 bonds<sup>1</sup>.

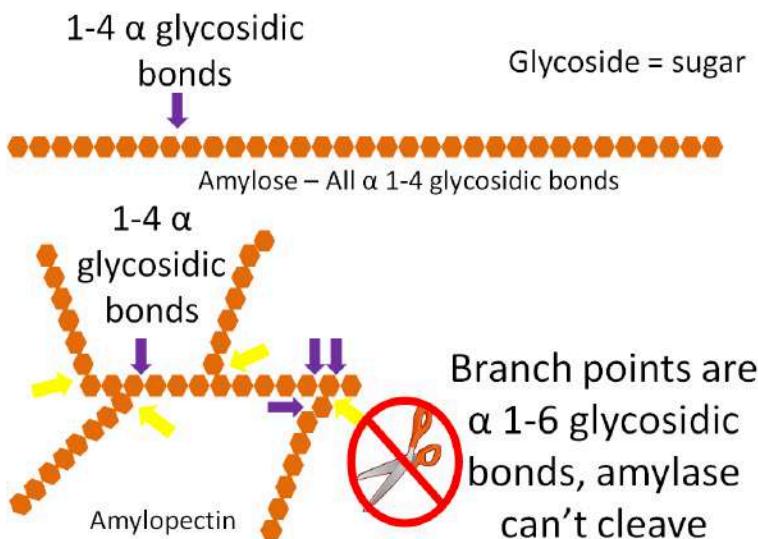


Figure 3.421 The function of pancreatic amylase

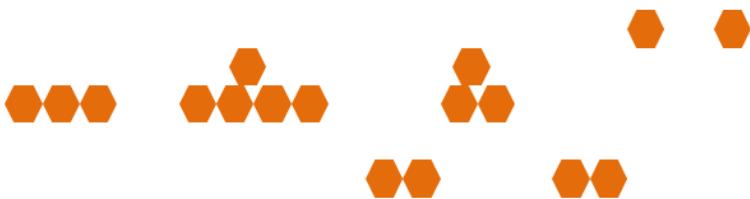


Figure 3.422 Products of pancreatic amylase

The pancreatic amylase products, along with the disaccharides sucrose and lactose, then move to the surface of the enterocyte. Here, there are disaccharidase enzymes (lactase, sucrase, maltase) on the outside of the enterocyte. Enzymes, like these, that are on the outside of cell walls are referred to as ectoenzymes. Individual monosaccharides are formed when lactase cleaves lactose, sucrase cleaves sucrose, and maltase cleaves maltose. There is also another brush border enzyme, alpha-dextrinase. This enzyme cleaves alpha 1-6 glycosidic bonds in dextrins, primarily the branch point bonds in amylopectin. The products from these brush border enzymes are the single monosaccharides glucose, fructose, and galactose that are ready for absorption into the enterocyte.

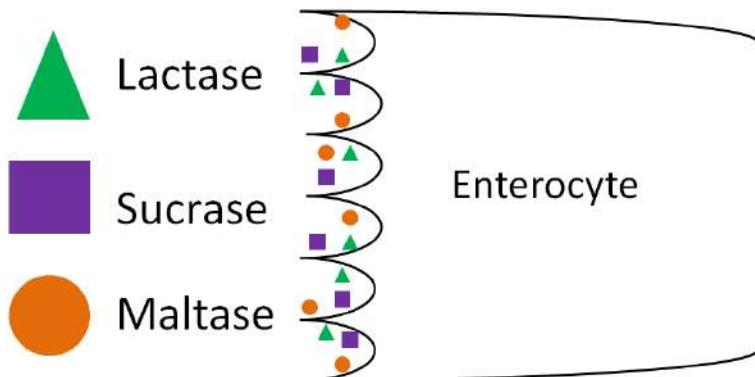


Figure 3.423 Disaccharidases on the outside of the enterocyte.

## **References & Links**

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

### **3.43 Protein Digestion in the Small Intestine**

The small intestine is the major site of protein digestion by proteases (enzymes that cleave proteins). The pancreas secretes a number of proteases as zymogens into the duodenum where they must be activated before they can cleave peptide bonds<sup>1</sup>. This activation occurs through an activation cascade. A cascade is a series of reactions in which one step activates the next in a sequence that results in an amplification of the response. An example of a cascade is shown below.

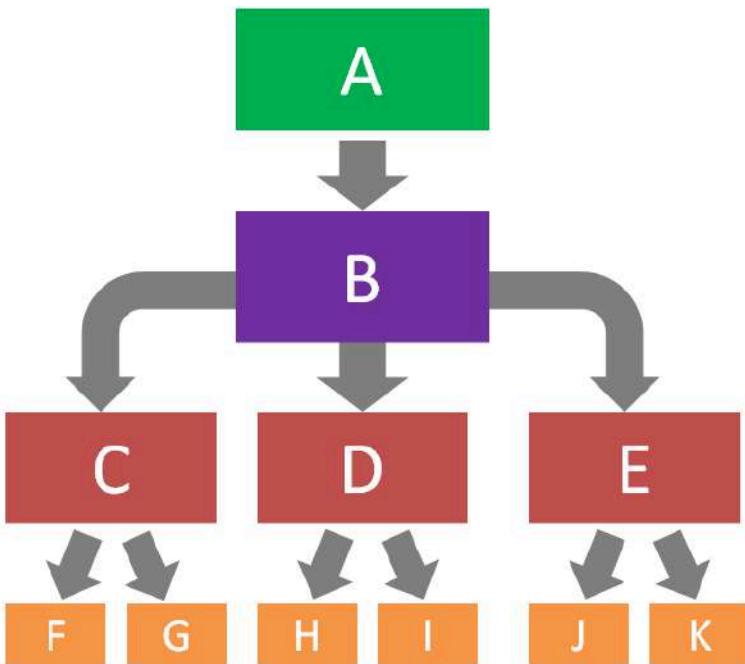


Figure 3.431 An example of a cascade, with one event leading to many more events

In this example, A activates B, B activates C, D, and E, C activates F and G, D activates H and I, and E activates K and L. Cascades also help to serve as control points for certain process. In the protease cascade, the activation of B is really important because it starts the cascade.

The protease/colipase activation scheme starts with the enzyme enteropeptidase (secreted from the intestinal brush border) that converts trypsinogen to trypsin. Trypsin can activate all the proteases (including itself) and colipase (involved in fat digestion)<sup>1</sup> as shown in the 2 figures below.

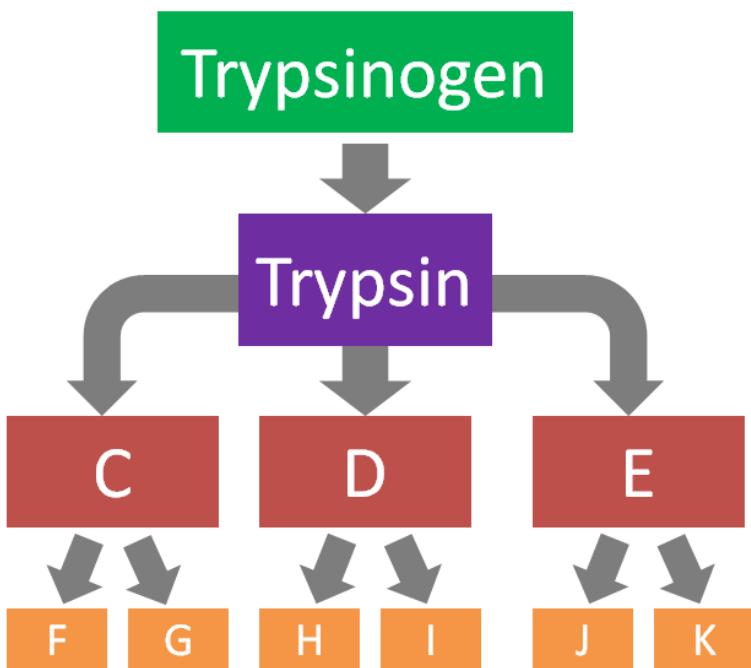


Figure 3.432 Protease/colipase activation cascade

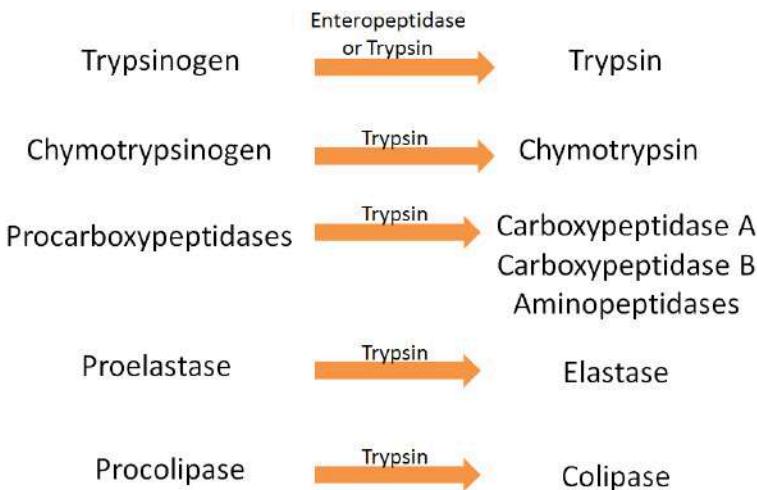


Figure 3.433 The protease/colipase activation cascade

The products of the action of the proteases on proteins are dipeptides, tripeptides, and individual amino acids, as shown below.

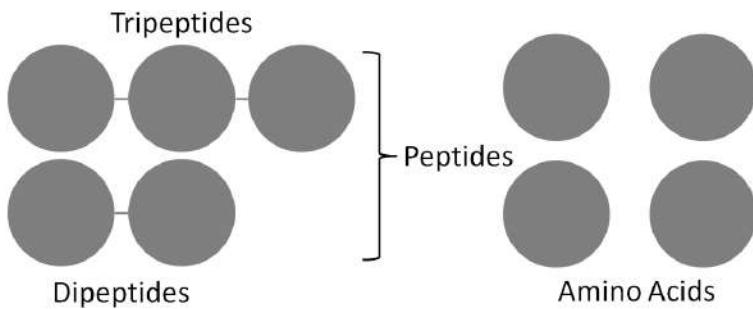


Figure 3.434 Products of pancreatic proteases

At the brush border, much like disaccharidases, there are peptidases that cleave some peptides down to amino acids. Not all peptides are cleaved to individual amino acid, because small peptides can be taken up into the enterocyte, thus, the peptides do not need

to be completely broken down to individual amino acids. Thus the end products of protein digestion are primarily dipeptides and tripeptides, along with individual amino acids<sup>1</sup>.

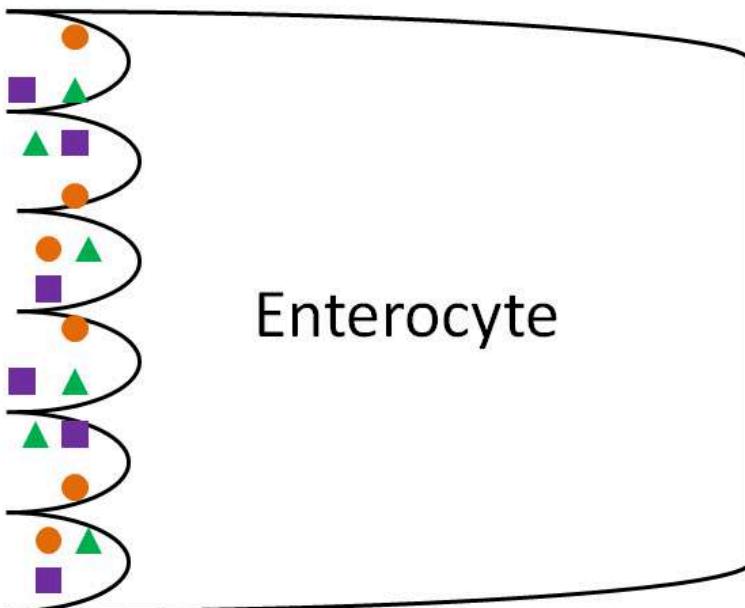


Figure 3.435 Peptidases are produced by the brush border to cleave some peptides into amino acids

### References & Links

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

## 3.44 Lipid Digestion in the Small Intestine

The small intestine is the major site for lipid digestion. There are specific enzymes for the digestion of triglycerides, phospholipids,

and cleavage of esters from cholesterol. We will look at each in this section.

### Triglycerides

The pancreas secretes pancreatic lipase into the duodenum as part of pancreatic juice. This major triglyceride digestion enzyme preferentially cleaves the sn-1 and sn-3 fatty acids from triglycerides. This cleavage results in the formation of a 2-monoglyceride and two free fatty acids as shown below.

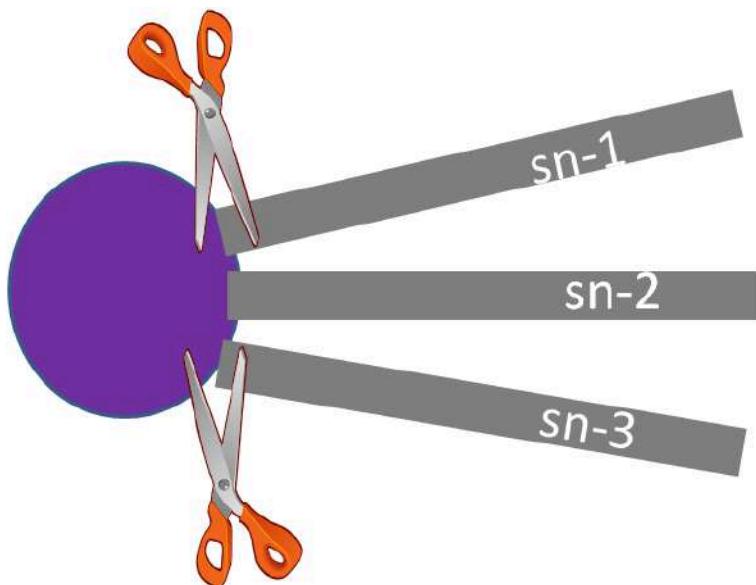


Figure 3.441 Pancreatic lipase cleaves the sn-1 and sn-3 fatty acids of triglycerides

# Fatty Acids

Indicates  
FA position

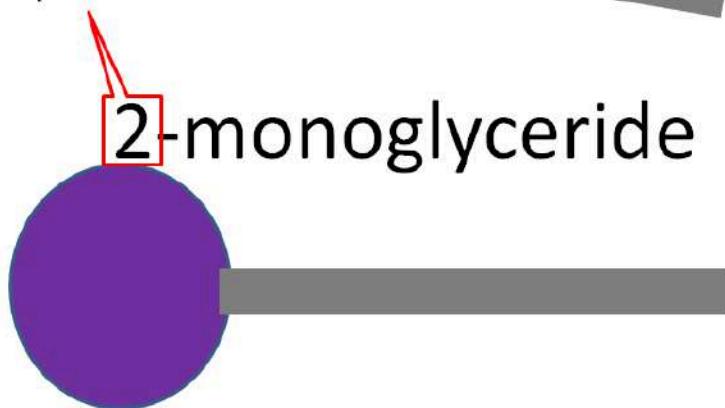


Figure 3.442 The products of pancreatic lipase are a 2-monoglyceride and two free fatty acids

To assist lipase, colipase serves as an anchor point to help lipase attach to the triglyceride droplet.

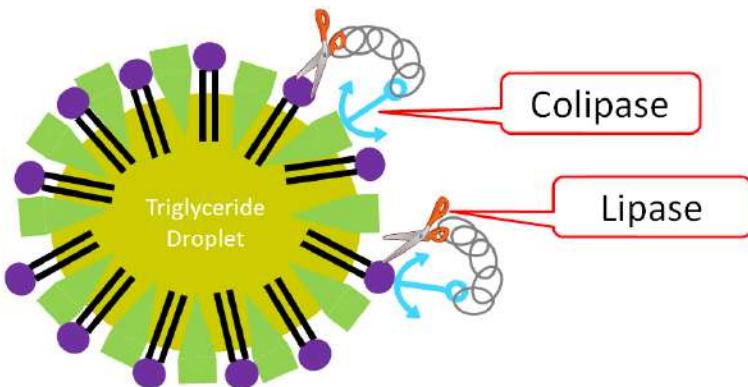


Figure 3.443 Colipase helps anchor lipase to the triglyceride droplet

### Phospholipids

The enzyme phospholipase A2 cleaves the C-2 fatty acid of lecithin, producing lysolecithin and a free fatty acid.

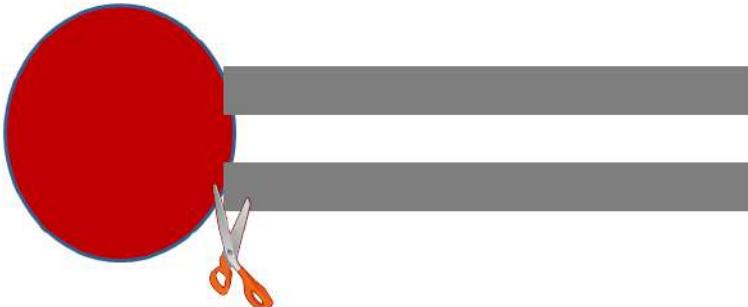
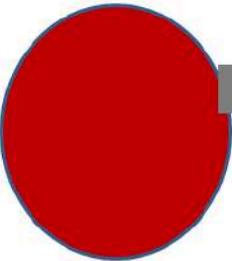


Figure 3.444 Phospholipase A2 cleaves the C-2 fatty acid of lecithin

# Fatty Acid



## Lyssolecithin

Figure 3.445 Products of phospholipase A2 cleavage

### Cholesterol Esters

The fatty acid in cholesterol esters is cleaved by the enzyme, cholesterol esterase, producing cholesterol and a free fatty acid.

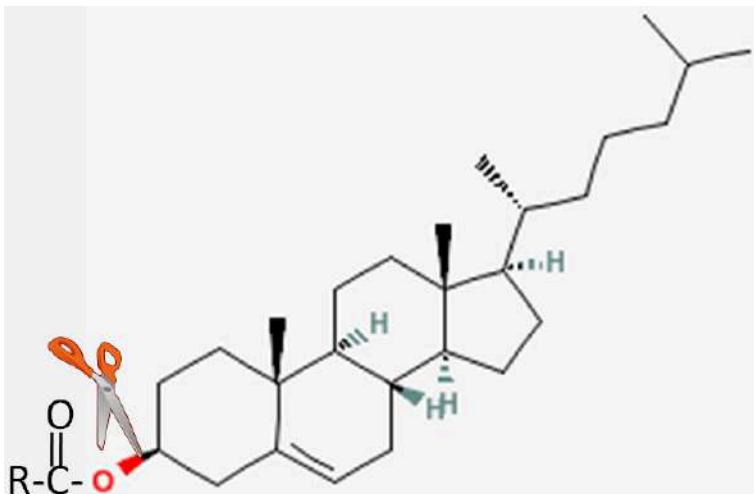


Figure 3.446 Cholesterol esterase cleaves fatty acids off of cholesterol

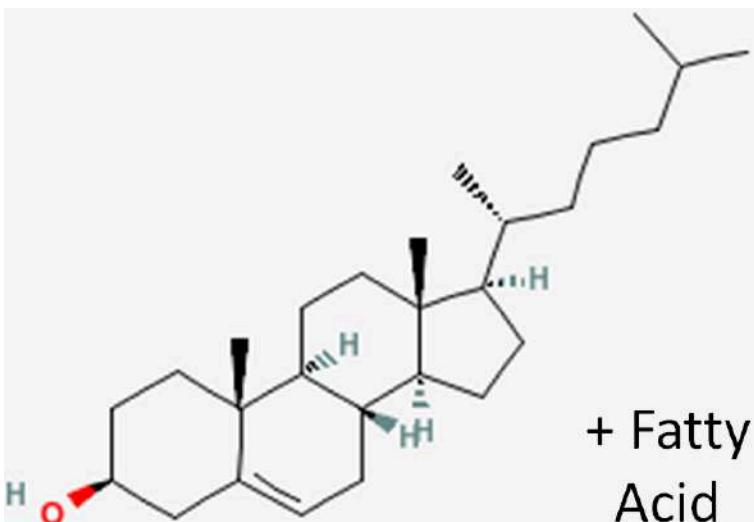


Figure 3.447 Products of cholesterol esterase

## Formation of Mixed Micelles

If nothing else happened at this point, the 2-monoglycerides and fatty acids produced by pancreatic lipase would form micelles. The hydrophilic heads would be outward and the fatty acids would be buried on the interior. These micelles are not sufficiently water-soluble to cross the unstirred water layer to get to the brush border of enterocytes. Thus, mixed micelles are formed containing cholesterol, bile acids, and lyssolecithin in addition to the 2-monoglycerides and fatty acids, as illustrated below1.

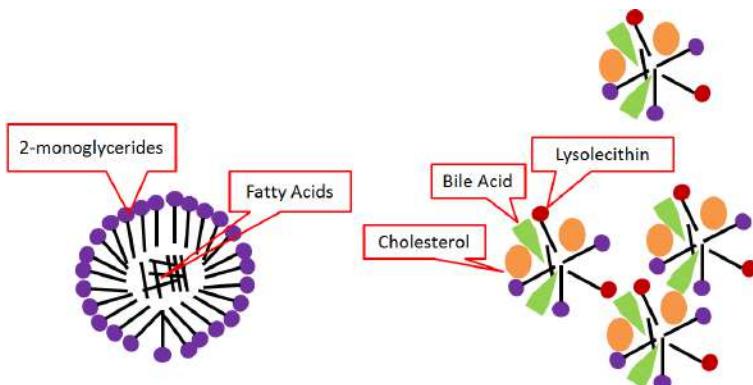


Figure 3.448 Normal (left) and mixed (right) micelles

Mixed micelles are more water-soluble, allowing them to cross the unstirred water layer to the brush border of enterocytes for absorption.

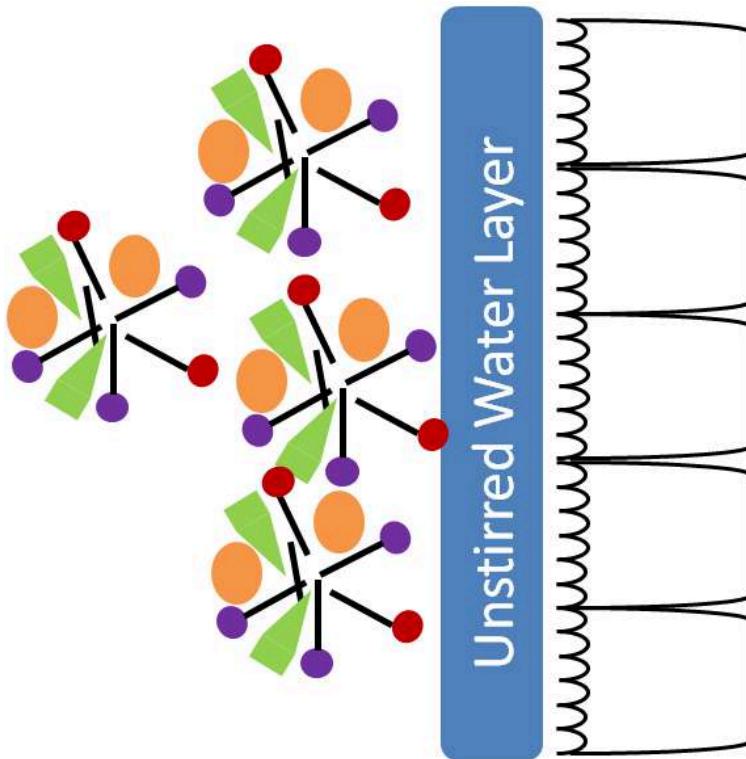


Figure 3.449 Mixed micelles can cross the unstirred water layer for absorption into the enterocytes

## References & Links

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

## 3.5 Macronutrient Digestion Review

The following figures review the digestion of the different macronutrients.

### Carbohydrate Digestion

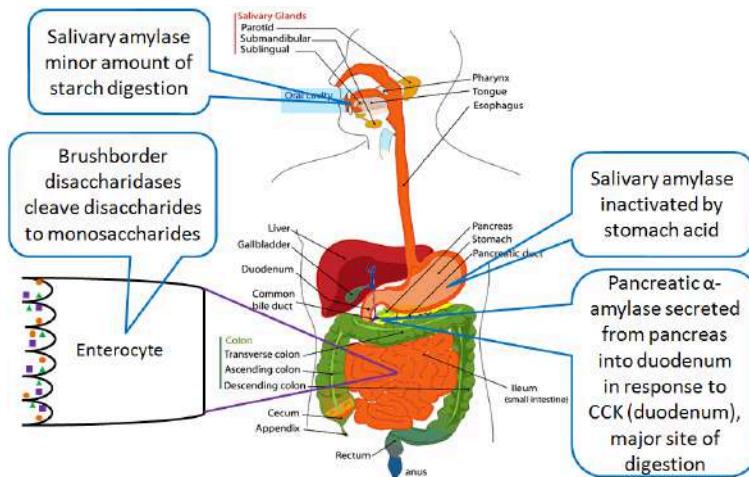


Figure 3.51 Review of carbohydrate digestion1

### Protein Digestion

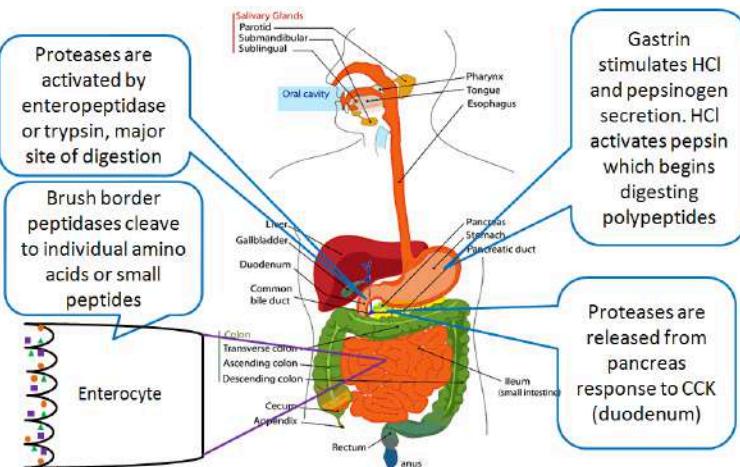


Figure 3.52 Review of protein digestion1

## Lipid Digestion

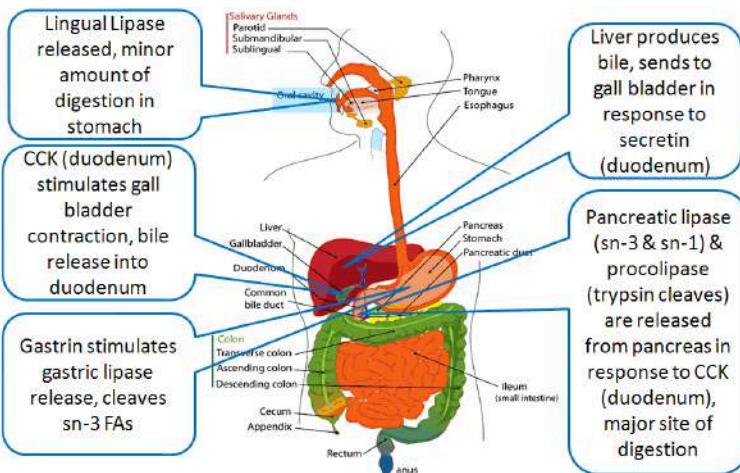


Figure 3.53 Review of triglyceride digestion1

## Cholesterol Ester and Phospholipid Digestion

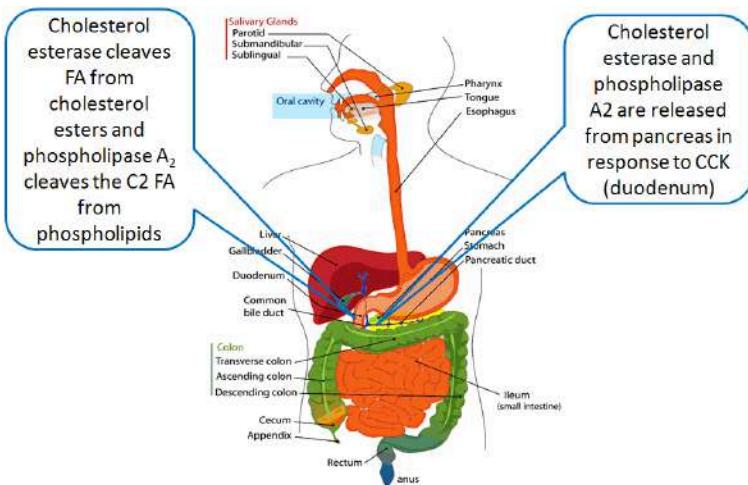


Figure 3.54 Review of cholesterol ester and phospholipid digestion1

After digestion, the products below are ready for uptake into the enterocyte.

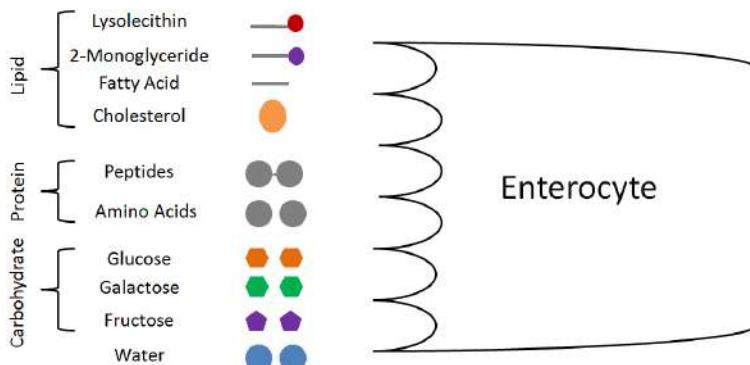


Figure 3.55 Macronutrient digestion products ready for uptake into the enterocyte

## References & Links

1. [http://www.wpclipart.com/medical/anatomy/digestive/  
Digestive\\_system\\_diagram\\_page.png.html](http://www.wpclipart.com/medical/anatomy/digestive/Digestive_system_diagram_page.png.html)

## 3.6 The Large Intestine

We have reached a fork in the road. We could follow the uptake of the digested compounds into the enterocyte or we could finish following what has escaped digestion and is going to continue into the large intestine. Obviously from the title of this section we are going to do the latter. As we learned previously, fiber is a crude term for what has survived digestion and has reached the large intestine.



Figure 3.61 The fork in the road between finishing digestion in the colon and absorption into the enterocyte

The ileocecal valve is the sphincter between the ileum and the large intestine. This name should make more sense as we go through the anatomy of the large intestine.

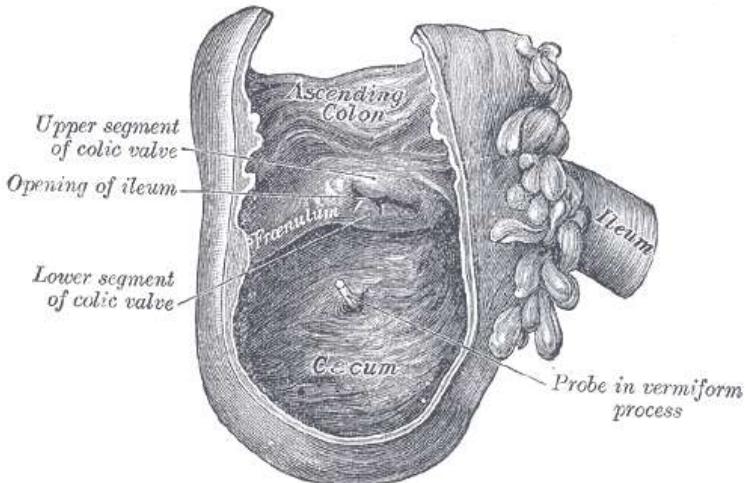


Figure 3.62 The ileocecal valve

The large intestine consists of the colon, the rectum, and the anus. The colon can be further divided into the cecum (hence the -cecal in ileocecal valve, ileo- refers to ileum), ascending colon, transverse colon, descending colon, and sigmoid colon as shown below.

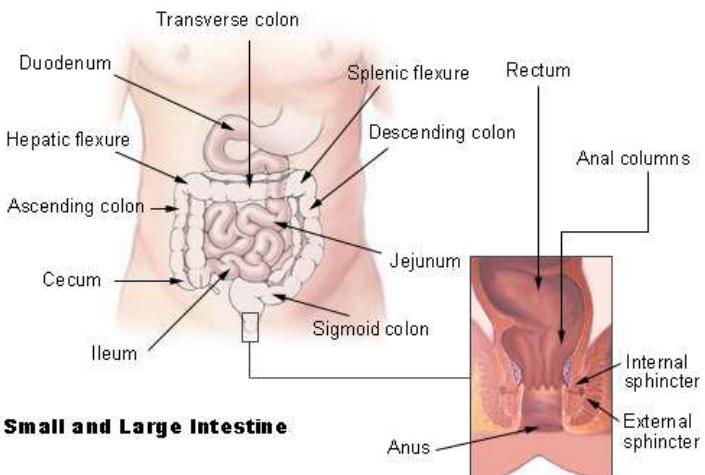


Figure 3.63 Anatomy of the large intestine and rectum2

The large intestine is responsible for absorbing remaining water and electrolytes (sodium, potassium, and chloride). It also forms and excretes feces. The large intestine contains large amounts of microorganisms like those shown in the figure below.

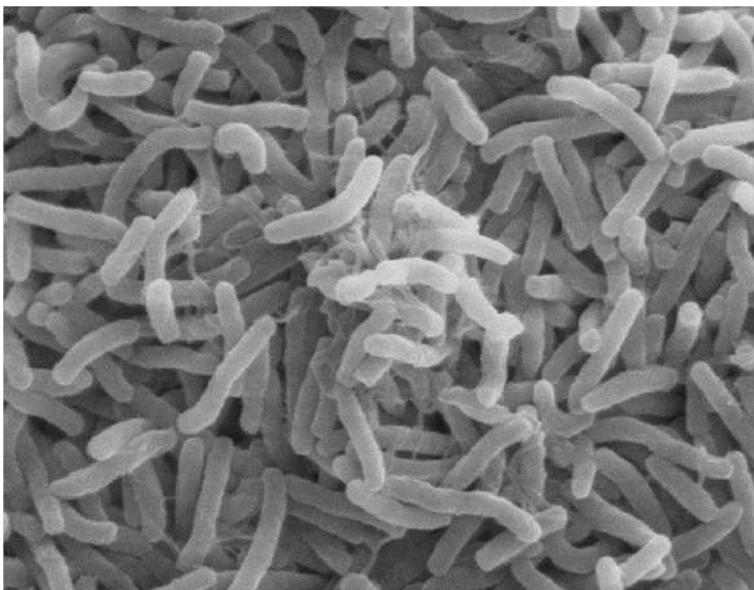
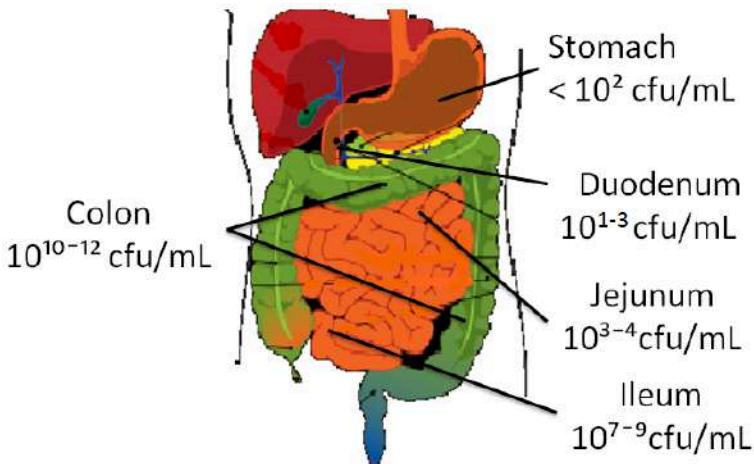


Figure 3.64 Magnified image of bacteria3

The large intestine can also be referred to as the gut. There are a large number of microorganisms found throughout the gastrointestinal tract that collectively are referred to as the flora, microflora, biota, or microbiota. Technically, microbiota is the preferred term because flora means “pertaining to plants”. There are 10 times more microorganisms in the gastrointestinal tract than cells in the whole human body<sup>4</sup>. As can be seen in the figure below, the density of microorganisms increases as you move down the digestive tract.



**Figure 3.65 Relative amount of bacteria in selected locations of the GI tract.**  
*cfu/ml = colony forming unit, a measure of the number of live microorganisms in 1 mL of digestive sample<sup>5,6</sup>*

As described in the fiber sections, there are two different fates for fiber once it reaches the large intestine. The fermentable, viscous fiber is fermented by bacteria. Fermentation is the metabolism of compounds by the microorganisms in the gut. An example of fermentation is the utilization of the oligosaccharides raffinose and stachyose by microorganisms that results in the production of gas, which can lead to flatulence. Also, some bile acids are fermented by microorganisms to form secondary bile acids that can be reabsorbed. These secondary bile acids represent approximately 20% of the total bile acids in our body. Fermentable fibers can be used to form short-chain fatty acids that can then be absorbed and used by the body. The nonfermentable, nonviscous fiber is not really altered and will be a component of feces, that is then excreted through the rectum and anus. This process involves both an internal and external sphincter that are shown in figure 3.63 above.

#### Subsection:

##### 3.61 Probiotics & Prebiotics

## **References & Links**

1. <https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gray1075.png>
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Illu\\_intestine.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Illu_intestine.jpg)
3. [http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/Image:Cholera\\_bacteria\\_SEM.jpg](http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/Image:Cholera_bacteria_SEM.jpg)
4. Guarner F, Malagelada J. (2003) Gut flora in health and disease. *The Lancet* 361(9356): 512.
5. DiBaise J, Zhang H, Crowell M, Krajmalnik-Brown R, Decker , et al. (2008) Gut microbiota and its possible relationship with obesity. *Mayo Clin Proc* 83(4): 460.
6. Adapted from: [http://www.wpclipart.com/medical/anatomy/digestive/Digestive\\_system\\_diagram\\_page.png.html](http://www.wpclipart.com/medical/anatomy/digestive/Digestive_system_diagram_page.png.html)

## **3.61 Probiotics & Prebiotics**

Recently there has been increased attention given to the potential of a person's microbiota to impact health. This is because there are beneficial and non-beneficial bacteria inhabiting our gastrointestinal tracts. Thus, theoretically, if you can increase the beneficial or decrease the non- beneficial bacteria, there may be improved health outcomes. In response to this, probiotics and prebiotics have been identified/developed. A probiotic is a live microorganism that is consumed, and colonizes in the body as shown in the figures below.

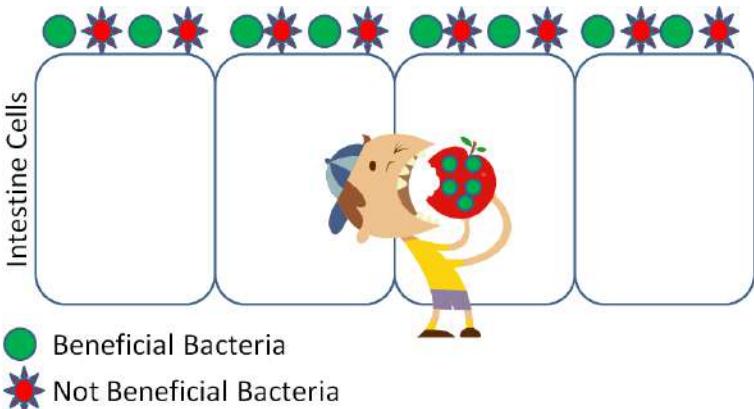


Figure 3.611 Probiotics the consumption of the bacteria itself

A prebiotic is a nondigestible food component that selectively stimulates the growth of beneficial intestinal bacteria. An example of a prebiotic is inulin, which is shown in the figure below.

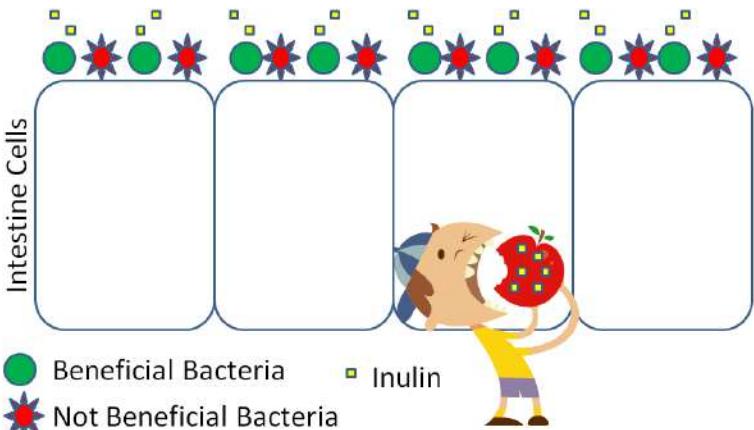


Figure 3.612 Inulin, an indigestible food component that is a commonly used prebiotic

The net result is the same for both prebiotics and probiotics, an increase in the beneficial/non beneficial microorganism ratio.

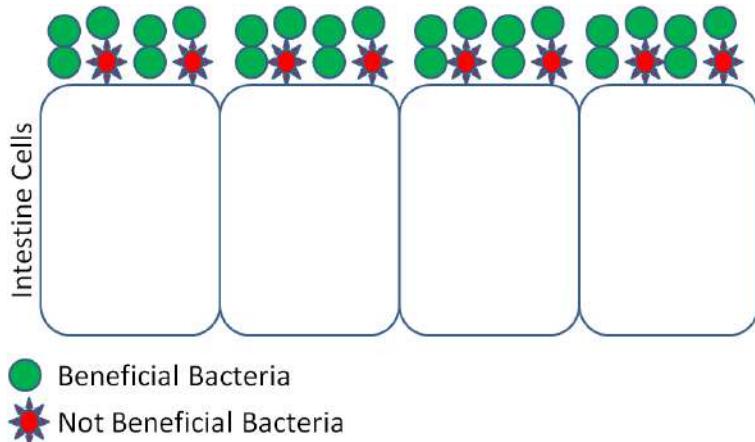


Figure 3.613 An effective prebiotic or probiotic should result in an increase in the beneficial bacteria

The following video does a nice job of explaining and illustrating how probiotics work. The NCCAM website is a good source of information if you have further questions on the topic.

---

#### Web Links

Video: Probiotics (3:40)  
NCCAM: Probiotics

---

Some common examples of probiotics are DanActive® and Activia®.

---

#### Web Links

DanActive®(inactive link as of 09/08/2020)  
Activia®

---

The claims that companies made about their products are probiotic

products have come under scrutiny. Dannon settled with the US Federal Trade Commission to drop claims that its probiotic products will help prevent colds or alleviate digestive problems, as seen in the top link below. General Mills also settled a lawsuit that accused them of falsely advertising the digestive benefits of Yo-Plus a product it no longer sells, as seen in the second link.

---

**Web Link**

Dannon Agrees to Drop Exaggerated Health Claims for Activia Yogurt and DanActive Dairy Drink  
General Mills Settles Yo-Plus Lawsuit

---

Some examples of prebiotics include inulin, other fructose-containing oligosaccharides and polysaccharides, and resistant starch. Inulin is a polysaccharide that contains mainly fructoses that are joined by beta-bonds, which allows them to survive digestion. The structure of inulin is shown below.

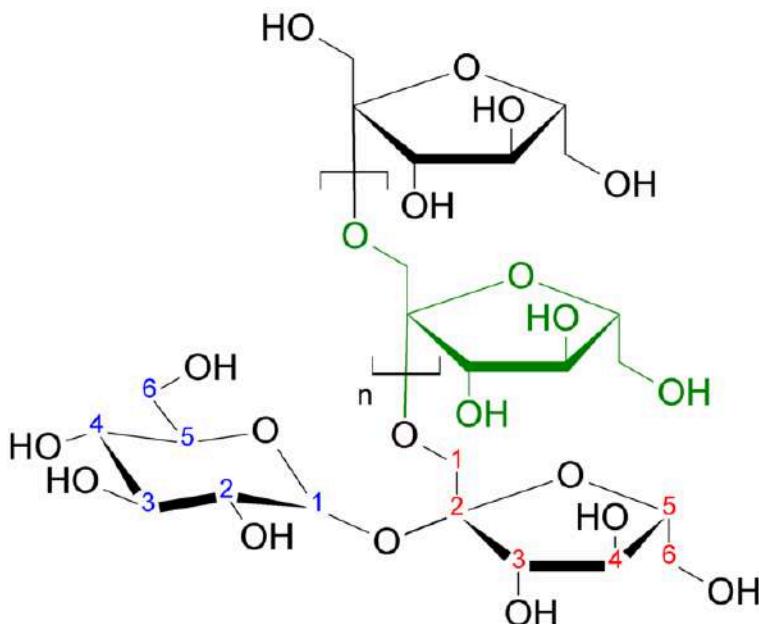


Figure 3.614 Structure of inulin

Resistant starch is so named because it is a starch that is resistant to digestion. As a result, it arrives in the colon to be fermented.

### **References & Links**

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Inulin\\_strukturformel.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Inulin_strukturformel.png)
2. Douglas L, Sanders M. (2008) Probiotics and prebiotics in dietetics practice. American Dietetic Association.Journal of the American Dietetic Association 108(3): 510.

### **Links**

NCCAM: Probiotics – <http://nccam.nih.gov/health/probiotics/>  
DanActive® – <http://www.danactive.com/>  
Activia® – <http://www.activia.us.com/>  
Danimals® – [http://www.danimals.com/New\\_Campaign\\_Markets\\_Activia\\_to\\_Wider\\_Audience](http://www.danimals.com/New_Campaign_Markets_Activia_to_Wider_Audience) – [http://www.nytimes.com/2014/01/06/business/media/new-campaign-markets-activia-to-wider-audience.html?\\_r=0](http://www.nytimes.com/2014/01/06/business/media/new-campaign-markets-activia-to-wider-audience.html?_r=0)  
General Mills Settles Yo-Plus Lawsuit – [http://www.foodbusinessnews.net/articles/news\\_home/Site\\_News/2013/02/General\\_Mills\\_settles\\_Yo-Plus.aspx?ID={40F62478-1AA4-49DF-9330-E41E19E946D0}&cck=1](http://www.foodbusinessnews.net/articles/news_home/Site_News/2013/02/General_Mills_settles_Yo-Plus.aspx?ID={40F62478-1AA4-49DF-9330-E41E19E946D0}&cck=1)

### **Video**

Probiotics – <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2k8Puxz54FQ&NR=1>

# Macronutrient Uptake, Absorption & Transport

The term absorption can have a number of different meanings. Not everything that is taken up into the enterocyte from the lumen will be absorbed, so the term uptake refers to compounds being transported into the enterocyte. Absorption means that a compound is transported from the enterocyte into circulation. Under most circumstances, compounds that are taken up will then be absorbed. After this chapter, hopefully this distinction between these terms will be clear. After later micronutrient chapters, hopefully you will understand the reason for emphasizing this distinction.

Sections:

- 4.1 Crypts of Lieberkuhn & Enterocyte Maturation
- 4.2 Absorptive Lineup & Cell Membranes
- 4.3 Types of Cell Uptake/Transport
- 4.4 Carbohydrate Uptake, Absorption, Transport & Liver Uptake
- 4.5 Protein Uptake, Absorption, Transport & Liver Uptake
- 4.6 Lipid Uptake, Absorption & Transport
- 4.7 Glycemic Response, Insulin & Glucagon

## 4.1 Crypts of Lieberkuhn & Enterocyte Maturation

There are some additional anatomical and physiological features of the small intestine that are important to understand before defining uptake and absorption. Crypts of Lieberkuhn are pits between villi as pointed out by the green arrow in the figure below.

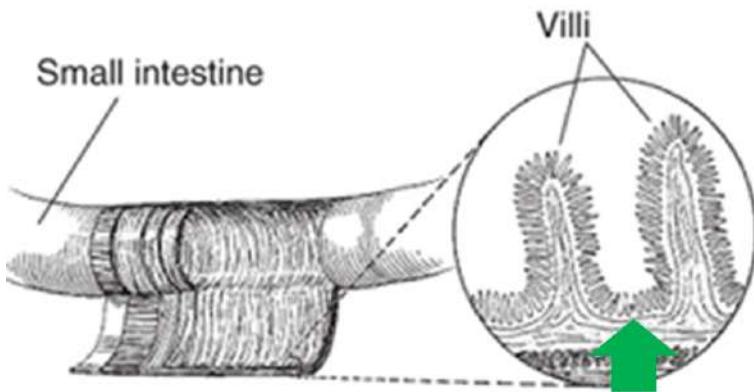


Figure 4.11 A crypt of Lieberkuhn is the pit between the villi in the small intestine as pointed out by the green arrow<sup>1</sup>

The crypts of Lieberkuhn (often referred to simply as crypts) are similar to the gastric pits in the stomach. The crypts contain stem cells that can produce a number of different cell types, including enterocytes<sup>2</sup>. From these stem cells in the crypt, immature enterocyte cells are formed that mature as they rise, or migrate up, the villi. Thus, the tips at the top of villi are where the mature, fully functioning enterocytes are located, as represented by the purple cells in the figure below<sup>3</sup>.

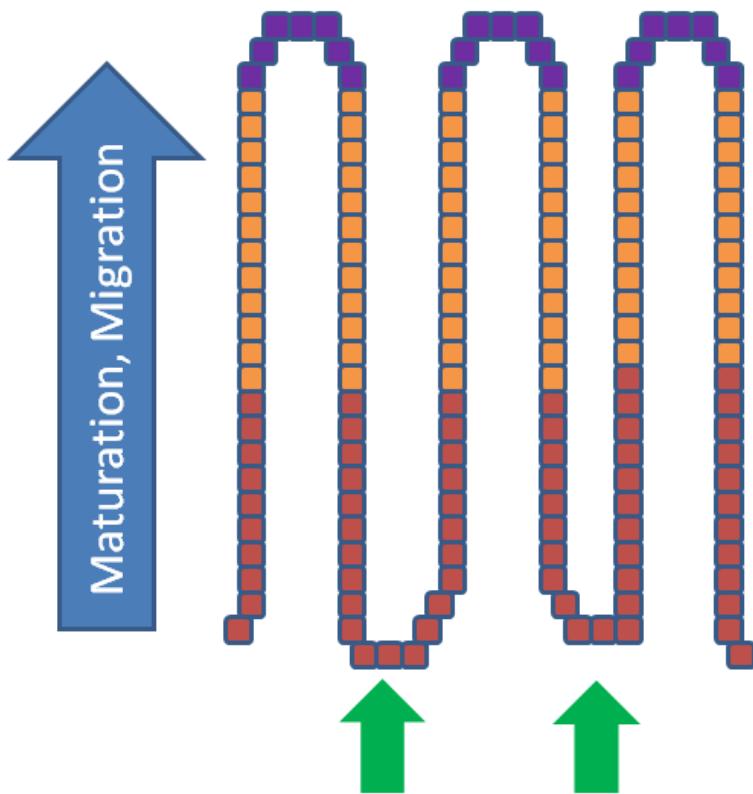


Figure 4.12 Crypts are represented by green arrows, fully mature enterocytes are represented by the purple cells at the top of the villi

This maturation and migration is a continuous process. The life cycle of an enterocyte is 72 hours once it enters the villus from the crypt<sup>2</sup>. At the top, enterocytes are sloughed off, and, unless they are digested (contain proteins and lipid) and components are taken up by enterocytes still on villi, they will be excreted in feces as depicted in the figure below.

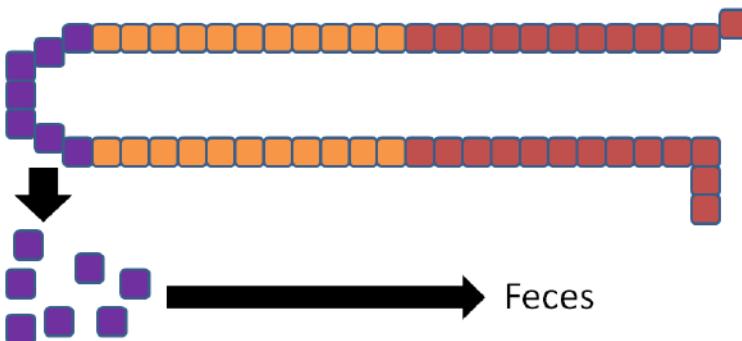


Figure 4.13 Enterocytes sloughed off the villus. Unless these cells are digested and their components are taken up by other enterocytes on the villus, they will be excreted in feces

Thus, we define absorption as reaching body circulation, because compounds taken up into enterocytes might not make it into body circulation, and thus are not necessarily absorbed.

#### References & Links

1. <http://digestive.niddk.nih.gov/ddiseases/pubs/celiac/>
2. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
3. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

## 4.2 Uptake Lineup & Cell Membranes

Having completed digestion in the small intestine, a number of compounds are ready for uptake into the enterocyte. The figure below shows the macronutrient uptake lineup, or what is ready to be taken up into the enterocyte.

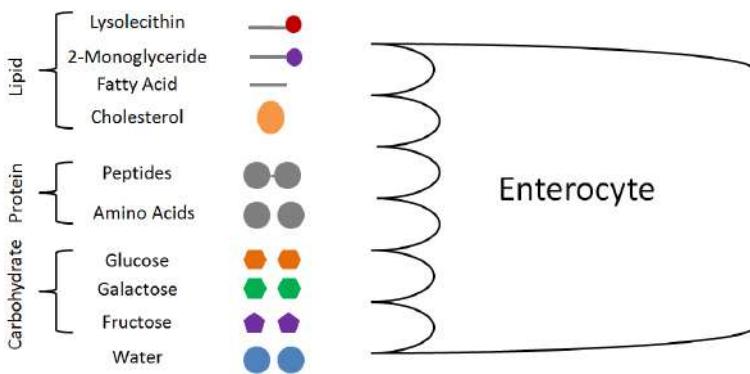


Figure 4.21 The macronutrient uptake lineup

From lipids, we have the lysolecithin (from phospholipid), 2-monoglyceride (from triglycerides), fatty acids, and cholesterol. From protein, there are small peptides (di- and tripeptides) and amino acids. From carbohydrates, only the monosaccharides glucose, galactose, and fructose will be taken up. The other macronutrient, water, has not been discussed so far because it does not undergo digestion.

However, these compounds must now cross the plasma (cell) membrane, which is a phospholipid bilayer. In the cell membrane, the hydrophilic heads of the phospholipids point into the lumen as well as towards the interior of the cell, while the tails are on the interior of the plasma membrane as shown below.

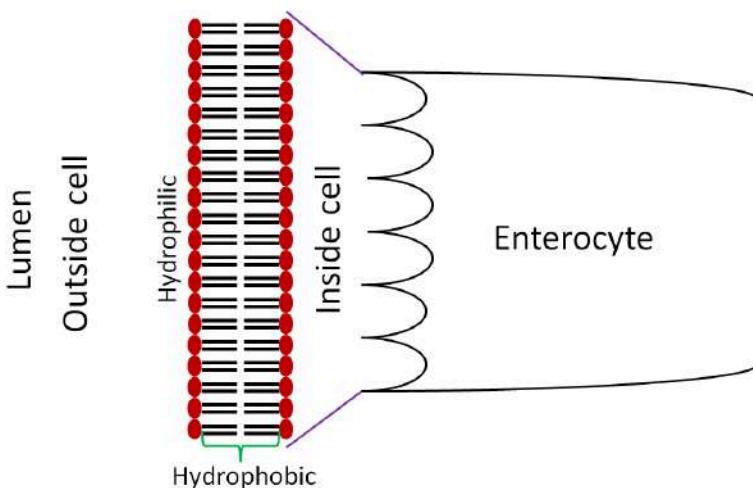


Figure 4.22 Plasma membrane of a cell

The plasma membrane contains proteins, cholesterol, and carbohydrates in addition to the phospholipids. Membrane proteins, such as channels and pumps, are important for the transport of some compounds across the cell membrane. The figure and two videos below do a nice job of illustrating the components of the cell membrane.

Figure 4.23 Cell membrane1

---

#### Web Links

Video: Cell Membrane (1:27)

Video: Voyage inside the cell: Membrane (1:23)

---

#### References & Links

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/>  
File:Cell\_membrane\_detailed\_diagram\_4.svg

## Videos

Cell Membrane - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=owEgqrq51zY>

Voyage Inside the Cell: Membrane - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GW0lqf4Fqpg>

## 4.3 Types of Cell Uptake/Transport

There are a number of different forms of uptake/transport utilized by your body. These can be classified as passive or active. The difference between the two is whether energy is required and whether (from a solute perspective) they move with or against a concentration gradient. Passive transport does not require energy to move with a concentration gradient. Active transport requires energy to move against the concentration gradient.

The energy for active uptake/transport is provided by adenosine triphosphate (ATP), which is the energy currency in the body. The structures of adenosine and phosphate are shown below.

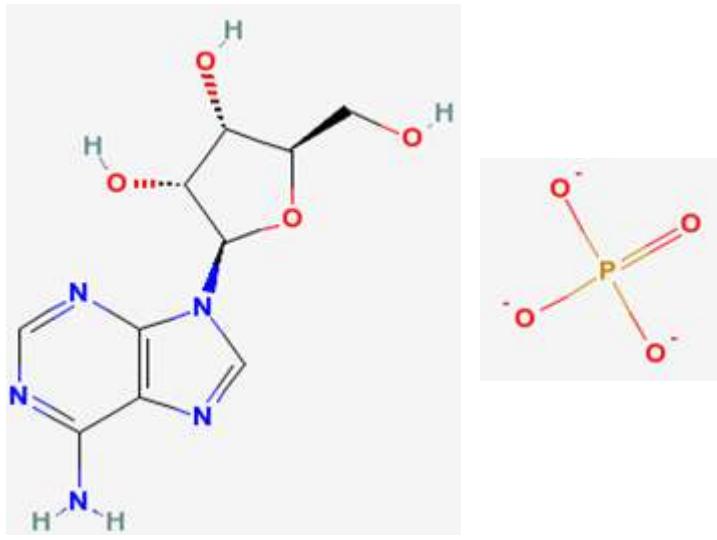


Figure 4.31 Structures of adenosine (left) and phosphate (right)  
Tri- means three, thus ATP is adenosine with three phosphate groups bonded to it, as shown below.

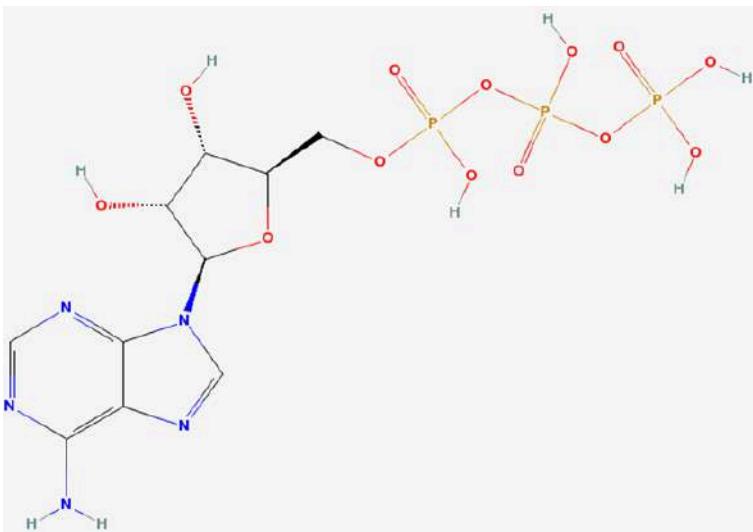


Figure 4.32 Structure of adenosine triphosphate (ATP)

Phosphorylation is the formation of a phosphate bond. Dephosphorylation is removal of a phosphate bond. Overall phosphorylation is a process that require energy. The net effect of dephosphorylation is the release of energy. Thus, energy is required to add phosphates to ATP, energy is released through removing phosphates from ATP.

The concentration gradient is a way to describe the difference between the concentration of the solute outside of a cell versus the concentration inside of a cell. A solute is what is dissolved in a solvent in a solution; the more solute the higher the concentration. Moving with the gradient is typically moving of solute from a region of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration. The exception is osmosis, which moves solvent instead of solute to have the same effect of equalizing concentrations on both sides of the membrane. Moving against the gradient is moving solute from an area of lower concentration to an area of higher concentration.

Subsections:

- 4.31 Passive Uptake/Transport
- 4.32 Active Uptake/Transport

## 4.31 Passive Uptake/Transport

There are three forms of passive uptake/transport:

1. Simple Diffusion
2. Osmosis
3. Facilitated Diffusion

Below is more information of each type of uptake/transport.

### 1. Simple Diffusion

Simple diffusion is the movement of solutes from an area of higher

concentration (with the concentration gradient) to an area of lower concentration without the help of a protein, as shown below.

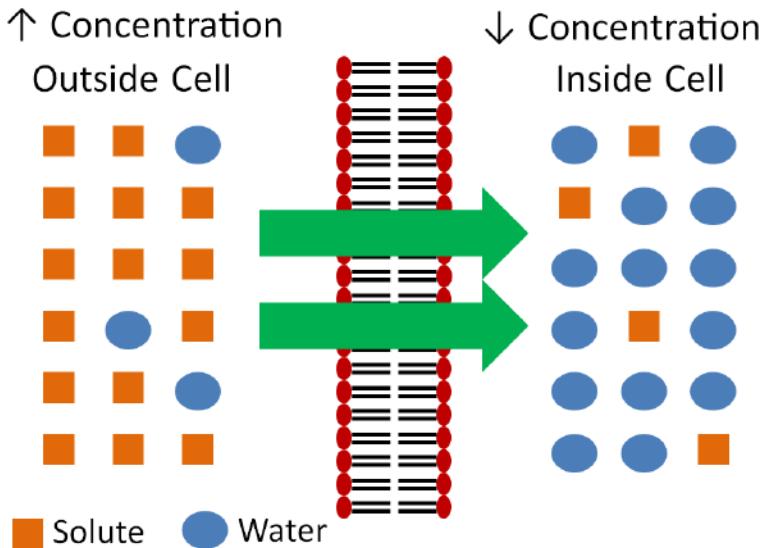


Figure 4.311 Simple diffusion

## 2. Osmosis

Osmosis is similar to simple diffusion, but water moves instead of solutes. In osmosis water molecules move from an area of lower concentration to an area of higher concentration of solute as shown below. The effect of this movement is to dilute the area of higher concentration.

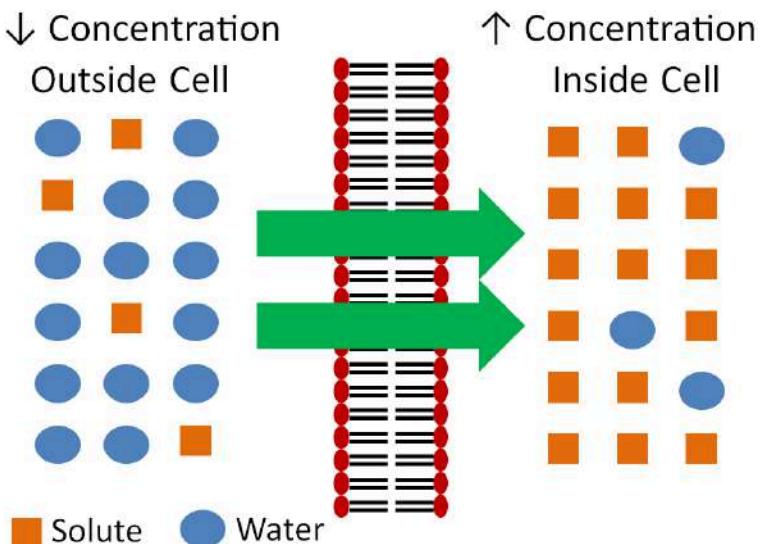


Figure 4.312 Osmosis

The following videos do a nice job of illustrating osmosis.

---

#### Web Links

[Video: Osmosis \(0:47\)](#)

[Video: Osmosis in the Kitchen \(0:58\)](#)

---

Another example illustrating osmosis is the red blood cells in different solutions shown below.

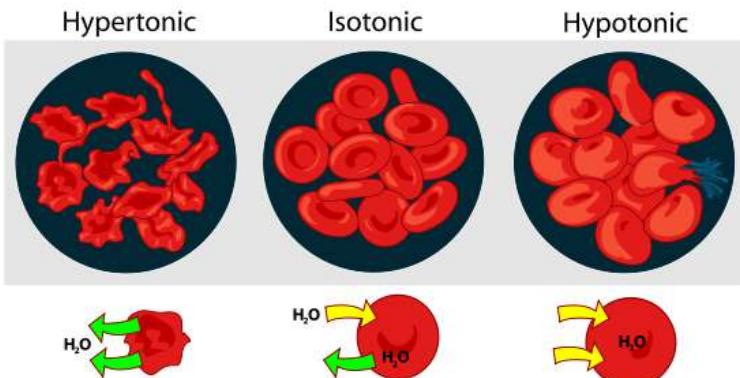


Figure 4.313 Effect of salt solution concentration on red blood cells!

We will consider the simple example of salt as the solute. If the solution is hypertonic, that means that there is a greater concentration of salt outside (extracellular) the red blood cells than within them (intracellular). Water will then move out of the red blood cells to the area of higher salt concentration, resulting in the shriveled red blood cells depicted. Isotonic means that there is no difference between concentrations. There is an equal exchange of water between intracellular and extracellular fluids. Thus, the cells are normal, functioning red blood cells. A hypotonic solution contains a lower extracellular concentration of salt than the red blood cell intracellular fluid. As a result, water enters the red blood cells, possibly causing them to burst.

### 3. Facilitated Diffusion

The last form of passive absorption is similar to diffusion in that it follows the concentration gradient (higher concentration to lower concentration). However, it requires a carrier protein to transport the solute across the membrane. The following figure and video do a nice job of illustrating facilitated diffusion.

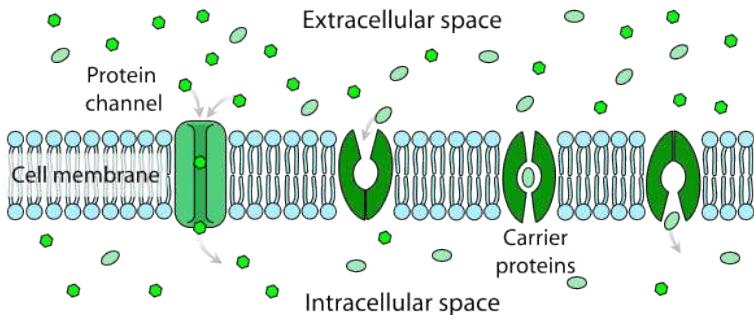


Figure 4.314 Facilitated diffusion examples2

### **Web Link**

[Video: Facilitated Diffusion \(0:27\)](#)

### **References & Links**

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:Osmotic\\_pressure\\_on\\_blood\\_cells\\_diagram.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Osmotic_pressure_on_blood_cells_diagram.svg)
2. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Facilitated\\_diffusion#/media/  
File:Scheme\\_facilitated\\_diffusion\\_in\\_cell\\_membrane-en.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Facilitated_diffusion#/media/File:Scheme_facilitated_diffusion_in_cell_membrane-en.svg)

### **Videos**

- Osmosis - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sdiJtDRJQEe>  
 Osmosis in the Kitchen - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=H6N1IiTmnc&NR=1&feature=fvwp>  
 Facilitated Diffusion - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=s0p1ztrbXPY>

### **4.32 Active Uptake/Transport**

There are two forms of active uptake/transport:

1. Active Carrier Transport
2. Endocytosis

## 1. Active Carrier Transport

Active carrier transport is similar to facilitated diffusion in that it utilizes a protein (carrier). However, energy is also used to move compounds against their concentration gradient. The following figure and video do a nice job of illustrating active carrier transport.

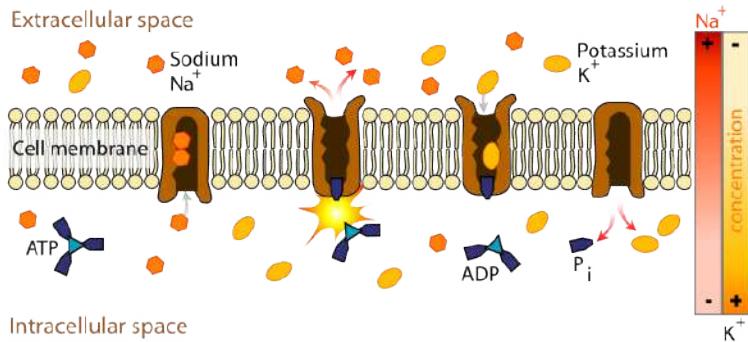


Figure 4.321 Sodium-potassium ATPase (aka sodium-potassium pump) an example of active carrier transport1

---

### Web Link

[Video: Active Transport \(0:21\)](#)

---

## 2. Endocytosis

Endocytosis is the engulfing of particles, or fluids, to be taken up into the cell. If a particle is endocytosed, this process is referred to as phagocytosis. If a fluid is endocytosed, this process is referred to as pinocytosis as shown below.

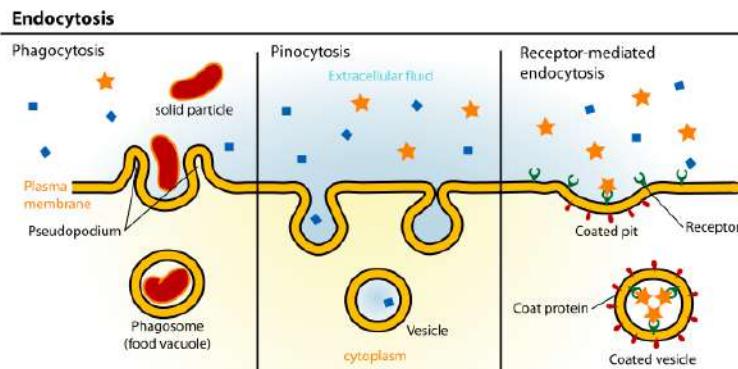


Figure 4.322 Different types of endocytosis2

The following video does a really nice job of showing how endocytosis occurs.

---

#### Web Link

[Video: Endocytosis \(0:35\)](#)

---

#### References & Links

1. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Scheme\\_sodium-potassium\\_pump-en.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Scheme_sodium-potassium_pump-en.svg)
2. [http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Endocytosis\\_types.svg](http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Endocytosis_types.svg)

#### Videos

Active Transport - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=STzOiRqzzL4>  
 Endocytosis - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4gLtk8Yc1Zc>

## 4.4 Carbohydrate Uptake, Absorption,

# Transport & Liver Uptake

Monosaccharides are taken up into the enterocyte. Glucose and galactose are taken up by the sodium-glucose cotransporter 1 (SGLT1, active carrier transport). The cotransporter part of the name of this transporter means that it also transports sodium along with glucose or galactose. Fructose is taken up by facilitated diffusion through glucose transporter (GLUT) 5. There are 12 glucose transporters that are named GLUT 1-12, and all use facilitated diffusion to transport monosaccharides. The different GLUTs have different functions and are expressed at high levels in different tissues. Thus, the intestine might be high in GLUT5, but not in GLUT12. Moving back to monosaccharides, inside the enterocyte, all three are then transported out of the enterocyte into the capillary (absorbed) through GLUT2 as shown below1.

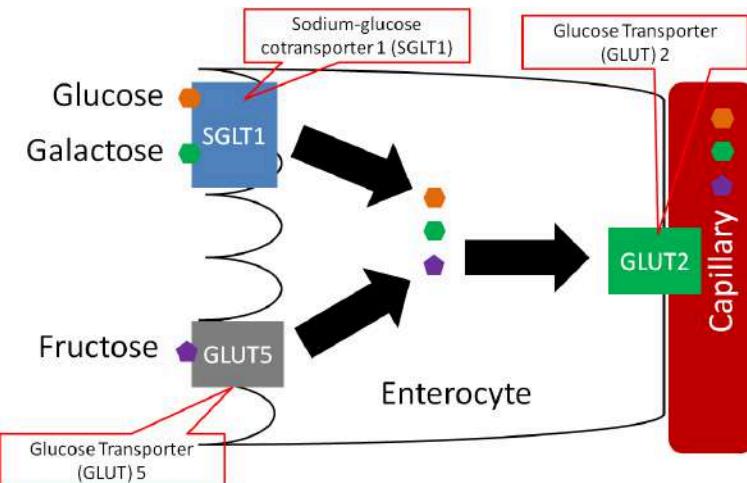


Figure 4.41 Carbohydrate uptake and absorption

Inside of each villus there are capillaries and lacteals as shown below. Capillaries are the smallest blood vessels in the body, lacteals

are also small vessels but are part of the lymphatic system, as will be described further in a later subsection.

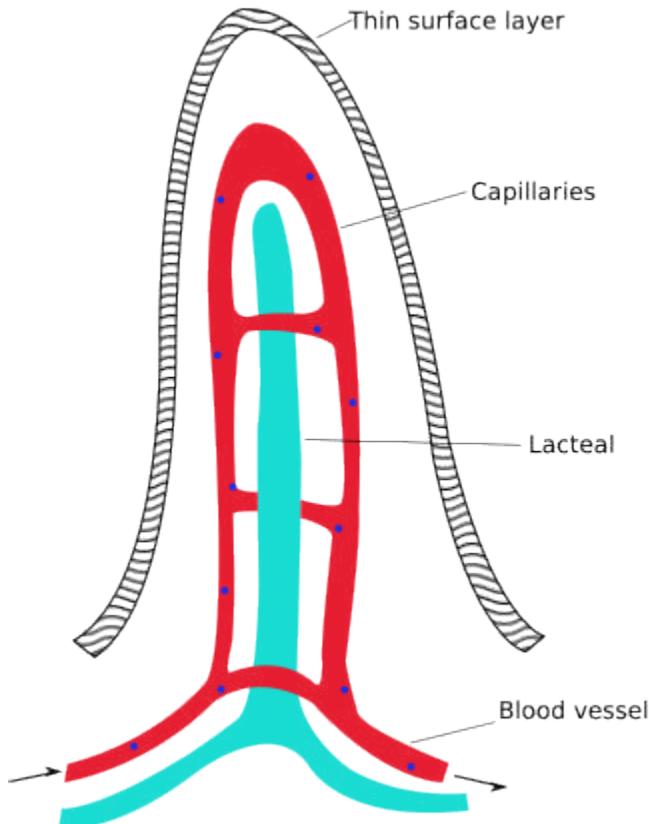


Figure 4.42 Anatomy of a villus2

The following video does a nice job of illustrating capillaries and lacteal and provides some basic detail on uptake and absorption.

---

#### Web Link

Video: Absorption in the Small Intestine

---

The capillaries in the small intestine join to the portal vein, which transports monosaccharides directly to the liver. The figure below shows the portal vein and all the smaller vessels from the stomach, small intestine, and large intestine that feed into it.

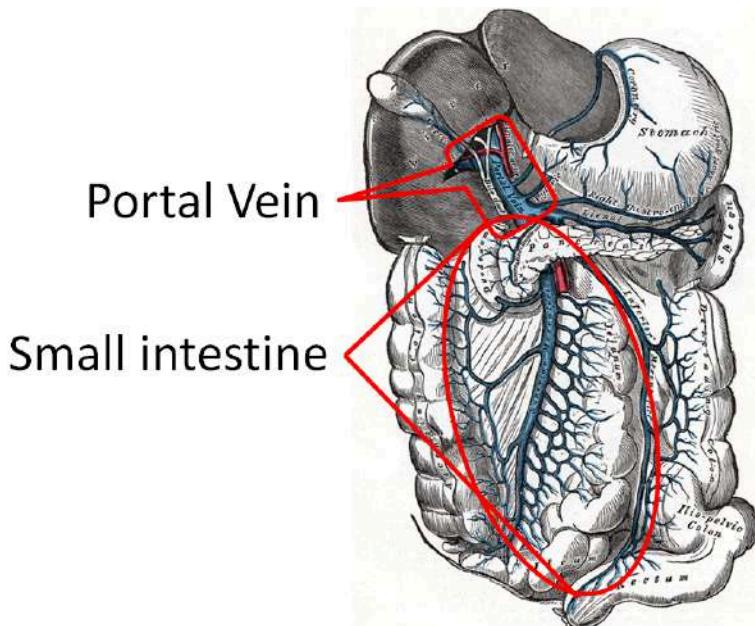


Figure 4.43 The portal vein transports monosaccharides and amino acids to the liver

At the liver, galactose and fructose are completely taken up through GLUT5, while only 30–40% of glucose is taken up through GLUT2. After the monosaccharides are taken up, they are phosphorylated by their respective kinase enzymes forming galactose-1-phosphate, fructose-1-phosphate, and glucose-6-phosphate as shown below.

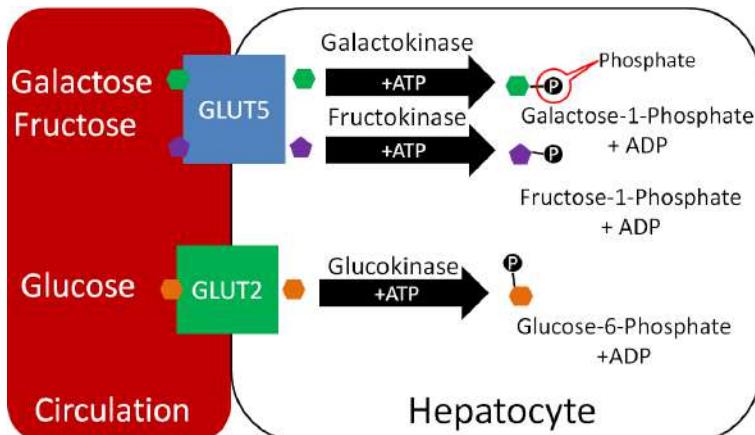


Figure 4.44 Hepatic monosaccharide uptake

Kinase enzymes normally phosphorylate substrates. Phosphorylation of the monosaccharides is important for maintaining the gradient (by keeping unphosphorylated monosaccharide levels within hepatocytes low) needed for facilitated diffusion through the GLUT transporters<sup>3</sup>.

### References & Links

1. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Intestinal\\_villus\\_simplified.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Intestinal_villus_simplified.svg)
3. <https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gray591.png>

### Video

Absorption in the Small Intestine – <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=P1sDOJM65Bc>

## 4.5 Glycemic Response, Insulin, & Glucagon

If only 30–40% of glucose is being taken up by the liver, then what happens to the rest? How the body handles the rise in blood glucose after a meal is referred to as the glycemic response. The pancreas senses the blood glucose levels and responds appropriately. After a meal, the pancreatic beta-cells sense that glucose levels are high and secrete the hormone insulin, as shown below<sup>1</sup>.

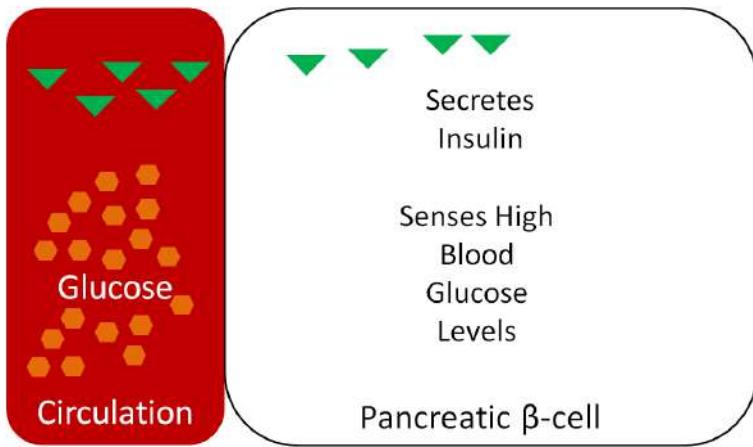


Figure 4.51 Pancreatic beta-cells sense high blood glucose and secrete insulin

Thus, as can be seen in the following figure, blood insulin levels peak and drop with blood glucose levels over the course of a day.

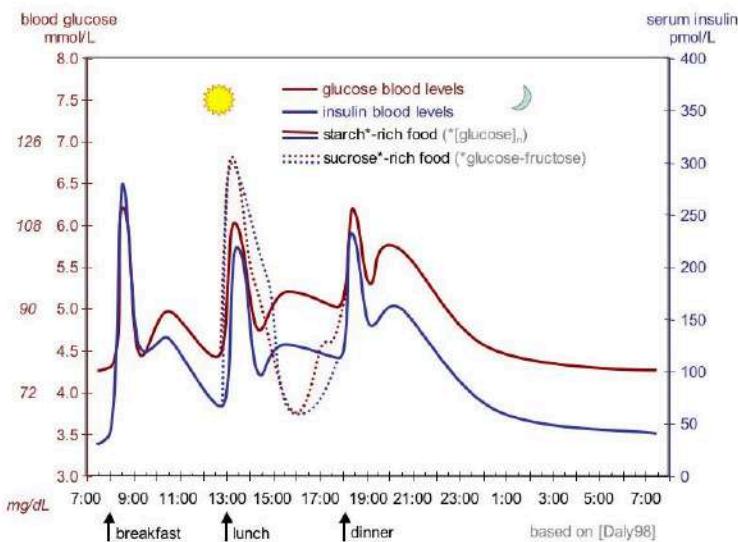


Figure 4.52 Representative figure of blood glucose and insulin levels during a 24-hour period<sup>2</sup>

Blood glucose and insulin levels rise following carbohydrate consumption, and they drop after tissues have taken up the glucose from the blood (described below). Higher than normal blood sugar levels are referred to as hyperglycemia, while lower than normal blood sugar levels are known as hypoglycemia.

Insulin travels through the bloodstream to the muscle and adipose cells. There, insulin binds to the insulin receptor. This causes GLUT4 transporters that are in vesicles inside the cell to move to the cell surface as shown below.

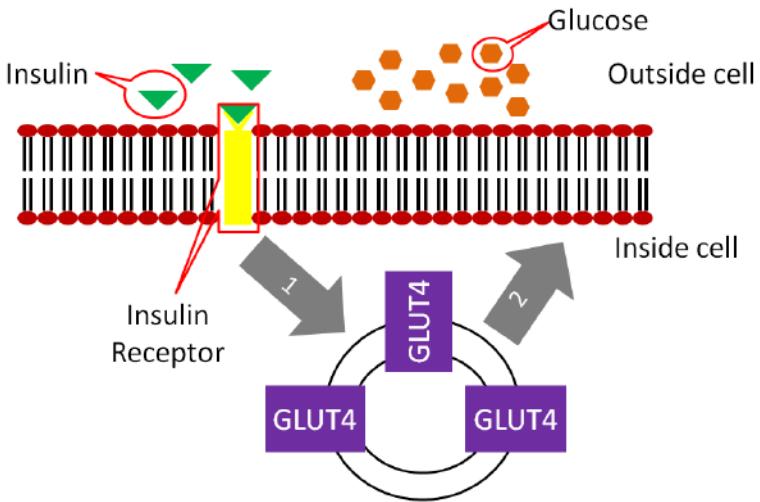


Figure 4.53 Response of muscle and adipose cells to insulin; 1) binding of insulin to its receptor, 2) movement of GLUT4 vesicles to the cell surface.

The movement of the GLUT4 to the cell surface allows glucose to enter the muscle and adipose cells. The glucose is phosphorylated to glucose-6-phosphate by hexokinase (different enzyme but same function as glucokinase in liver) to maintain gradient.

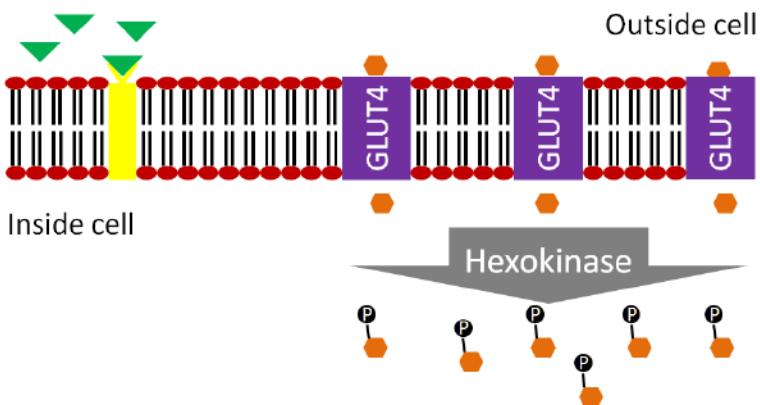


Figure 4.54 Response of muscle and adipose cells to insulin part 2; hexokinase phosphorylates glucose to glucose-6-phosphate

Glucagon is a hormone that has the opposite action of insulin. Glucagon is secreted from the alpha-cells of the pancreas when they sense that blood glucose levels are low, as shown below.

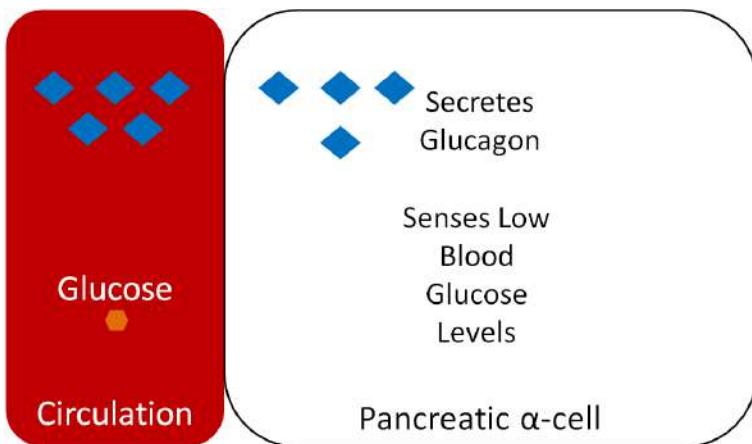


Figure 4.55 Glucagon secretion from pancreatic alpha-cells in response to low blood glucose levels.

Glucagon binds to the glucagon receptor in the liver, which causes the breakdown of glycogen to glucose as illustrated below..

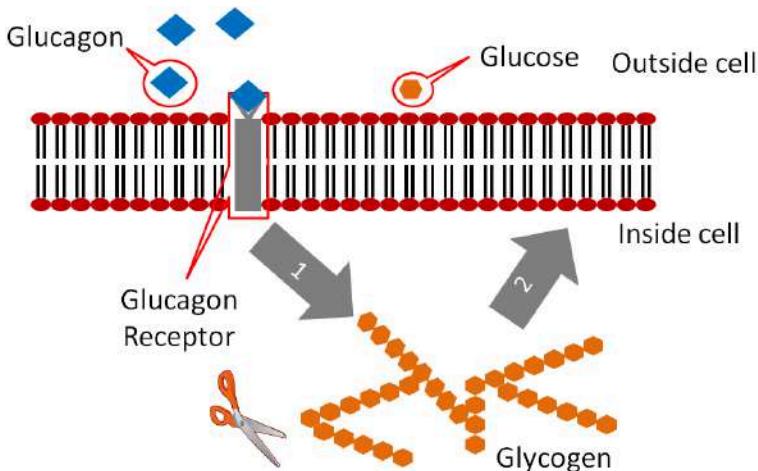


Figure 4.56 Glucagon binding to its receptor leads to the breakdown of glycogen to glucose.

This glucose is then released into circulation to raise blood glucose levels as shown below.

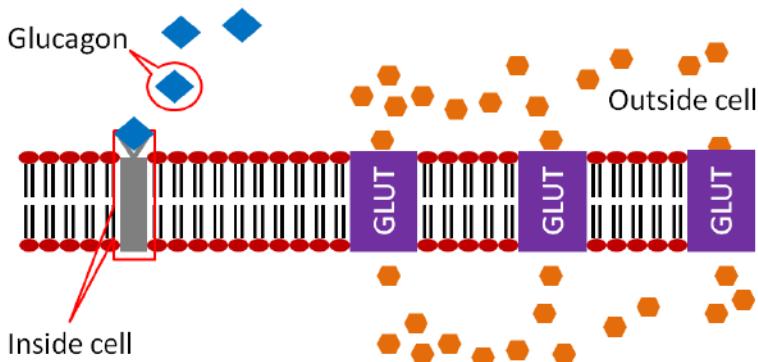


Figure 4.57 Glucagon leads to the release of glucose from the liver.

Subsections:

4.51 Diabetes

4.52 Glycemic Index

4.53 Glycemic Load

### References & Links

1. Webb , Akbar , Zhao , Steiner . (2001) Expression profiling of pancreatic beta-cells: Glucose regulation of secretory and metabolic pathway genes. *Diabetes* 50 Suppl 1: S135.
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:Suckale08\\_fig3\\_glucose\\_insulin\\_day.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Suckale08_fig3_glucose_insulin_day.jpg)

## 4.51 Diabetes

Diabetes is a condition of chronically high blood sugar levels. The prevalence of diabetes in the US has been rapidly increasing; the link below provides some statistics about prevalence.

---

### Web Link

---

[Diabetes Statistics](#)

---

There are 2 forms of diabetes, type 1 and type 2.

In type 1 diabetes, not enough insulin is produced, as shown in the figure below.

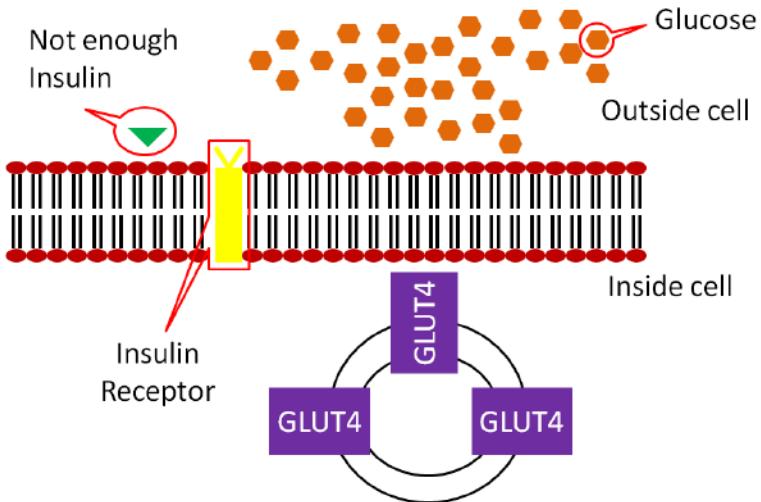


Figure 4.512 Type 1 diabetes

As a result, GLUT4 does not make it to the surface of muscle and adipose cells, meaning glucose is not taken up into these cells.

Type 1 diabetes was previously known as juvenile-onset, or insulin-dependent diabetes and is estimated to account for 5-10% of diabetes cases<sup>1</sup>. Type 1 diabetics receive insulin through injections or pumps to manage their blood sugar.

In type 2 diabetes, the body produces enough insulin, but the person's body is resistant to it. In type 2 diabetics the binding of insulin to its receptor does not cause GLUT4 to move to the surface of the muscle and adipose cells, thus no glucose is taken up.

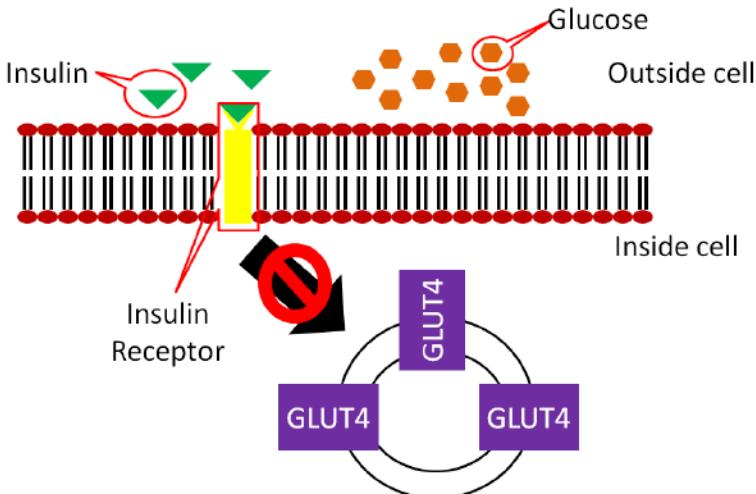


Figure 4.513 Type 2 diabetes

Type 2 diabetes accounts for 90-95% of diabetes cases and was once known as non-insulin-dependent diabetes or adult-onset diabetes<sup>1</sup>. However, with the increasing rates of obesity, many younger people are being diagnosed with type 2, making the latter definition no longer appropriate. Some people with type 2 diabetes can control their condition with a diet and exercise regimen. This regimen improves their insulin sensitivity, or their response to the body's own insulin. Others with type 2 diabetes must receive insulin. These individuals are producing enough insulin, but are so resistant to it that more is needed for glucose to be taken up by their muscle and adipose cells.

The video below illustrates type 2 diabetes. However, I do not agree, nor do I teach, that type 2 diabetics have decreased insulin levels as described in the video.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Video: Diabetes Mellitus \(1:36\)](#)

---

## **References & Links**

1. <http://diabetes.niddk.nih.gov/dm/pubs/statistics/#what>

### **Link**

Diabetes Statistics – <http://www.diabetes.org/diabetes-basics/statistics/>

### **Video**

Diabetes Mellitus – <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=VLiTbb6MaEU>

## **4.52 Glycemic Index**

Research has indicated that hyperglycemia is associated with chronic diseases and obesity. As a result, measures of the glycemic response to food consumption have been developed so that people can choose foods with a smaller glycemic response. The first measure developed for this purpose was the glycemic index. The glycemic index is the relative change in blood glucose after consumption of 50 g of carbohydrate in a test food compared to 50 g of carbohydrates of a reference food (white bread or glucose). Thus, a high glycemic index food will produce a greater rise in blood glucose concentrations compared to a low glycemic index food, as shown below.

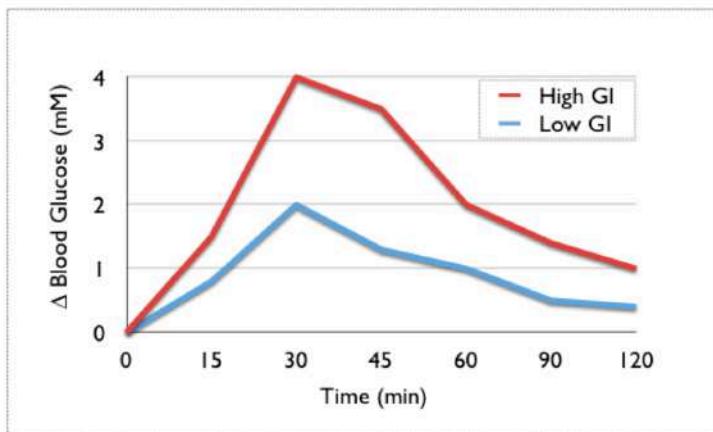


Figure 4.521 Blood glucose response to a high glycemic index (GI) food compared to a low glycemic index food<sup>1</sup>

As a general guideline, a glycemic index that is 70 or greater is high, 56-69 is medium, and 55 and below is low. A stop light graphical presentation has been designed to emphasize the consumption of the low glycemic index foods while cautioning against the consumption of too many high glycemic index foods<sup>2</sup>.



Figure 4.522 Food glycemic index classifications<sup>2</sup>

The main problem with the glycemic index is that it does not take into account serving sizes. Let's take popcorn (glycemic index 89-127) as an example. A serving size of popcorn is 20 g, 11 g of which is carbohydrate<sup>3</sup>. This is equal to approximately 2.5 cups of popcorn<sup>4</sup>. Thus, a person would have to consume over 11 cups of popcorn to consume 50 g of carbohydrate needed for the glycemic index measurement. Another example is watermelon, which has a glycemic index of 103, with a 120 g serving containing only 6 g of carbohydrates<sup>3</sup>. To consume the 50 g needed for glycemic index measurement, a person would need to consume over 1000 g (1 kg)

of watermelon. Assuming this is all watermelon flesh (no rind), this would be over 6.5 cups of watermelon<sup>4</sup>.

The website glycemicindex.com (link provided below) contains a database where you can search to see the food's glycemic index and glycemic load (covered in the next section). The database contains detail on how the measurement was done and more information on the product itself. The top link below will take you to this website. The second link is to another database that contains the same information that might be easier for some people to use. However, please note that in the second link the glycemic loads are calculated using 100 g serving sizes for all foods. This might not be the actual serving size for all foods, which is what is typically used, so it is important to keep this in mind.

---

### **Web Links**

[glycemicindex.com](http://www.glycemicindex.com)  
[Glycemic Index & Glycemic Load of Foods](#)

---

### **References & Links**

1. [http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/ec/  
Glycemic.png](http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/ec/Glycemic.png)
2. [www.glycemicindex.com](http://www.glycemicindex.com)
3. Foster-Powell K, Holt SHA, Brand-Miller J. (2002) International table of glycemic index and glycemic load values: 2002. Am J Clin Nutr 76(1): 5.
4. USDA National Nutrient Database – [http://www.nal.usda.gov/  
fnic/foodcomp/search/](http://www.nal.usda.gov/fnic/foodcomp/search/)

### **Links**

Glycemicindex.com – <http://www.glycemicindex.com/>  
Glycemic Index & Glycemic Load of Foods – [http://dietgrail.com/  
gid/](http://dietgrail.com/gid/)

## 4.53 Glycemic Load

To incorporate serving size into the calculation, another measure known as the glycemic load has been developed. It is calculated as shown below:

$$\text{Glycemic Load} = (\text{Glycemic Index} \times (\text{g Carbs}/\text{serving})) / 100$$

Thus, for most people, the glycemic load is a more meaningful measure of the glycemic impact of different foods. Considering the two examples from the glycemic index section, their glycemic loads would be:

Popcorn

$$(89-127 \times 11 \text{ g Carbs}/\text{Serving}) / 100 = 10-14$$

Watermelon

$$(103 \times 6 \text{ g Carbs}/\text{Serving}) / 100 = 6.18$$

As a general guideline for glycemic loads of foods : 20 or above is high, 11-19 is medium, and 10 or below is low<sup>1,2</sup>.



Figure 4.531 Food glycemic load classifications<sup>1,2</sup>

Putting it all together, popcorn and watermelon have high glycemic indexes, but medium and low glycemic loads, respectively.

You can also use the top two links below to find the glycemic loads of foods. However, please note that in the second link the glycemic loads are calculated using 100g serving sizes for all foods. This might not be the actual serving size for all foods, which is what is typically used, so it is important to keep this in mind. The third link is to the NutritionData estimated glycemic load tool that is pretty good at estimating the glycemic loads of foods, even if actual glycemic indexes have not been measured.

---

### **Web Links**

glycemicindex.com  
Glycemic Index & Glycemic Load of Foods  
Estimated Glycemic Load

---

### **References & Links**

1. <http://www.mendosa.com/gilists.htm>
2. <http://www.nutritiondata.com/help/estimated-glycemic-load>

### **Links**

Glycemicindex.com – <http://www.glycemicindex.com/>  
Glycemic Index & Glycemic Load of Foods – <http://dietgrail.com/gid/>  
Estimated Glycemic Load – <http://www.nutritiondata.com/help/estimated-glycemic-load>

## **4.6 Protein Uptake, Absorption, Transport & Liver Uptake**

There are a number of similarities between carbohydrate and protein uptake, absorption, transport, and uptake by the liver. Hopefully after this section you will understand these similarities.

Over 60% of all amino acids are taken up into the enterocyte as di- and tripeptides through the PepT1 transporter. Individual amino acids are taken up through a variety of amino acid transporters. Once inside the enterocyte, peptidases cleave the peptides to individual amino acids. These cleaved amino acids, along with those that were taken up as individual amino acids, are moved into the capillary by another variety of amino acid transporters (some are the same as on the brush border, some are different).

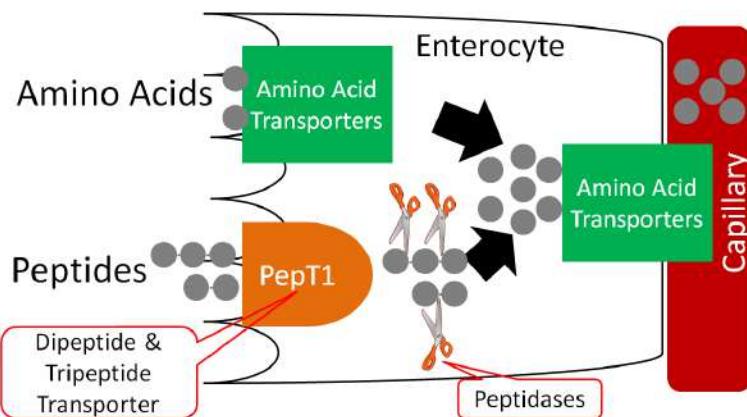


Figure 4.61 Protein uptake and absorption

The capillary inside a villus is shown below.

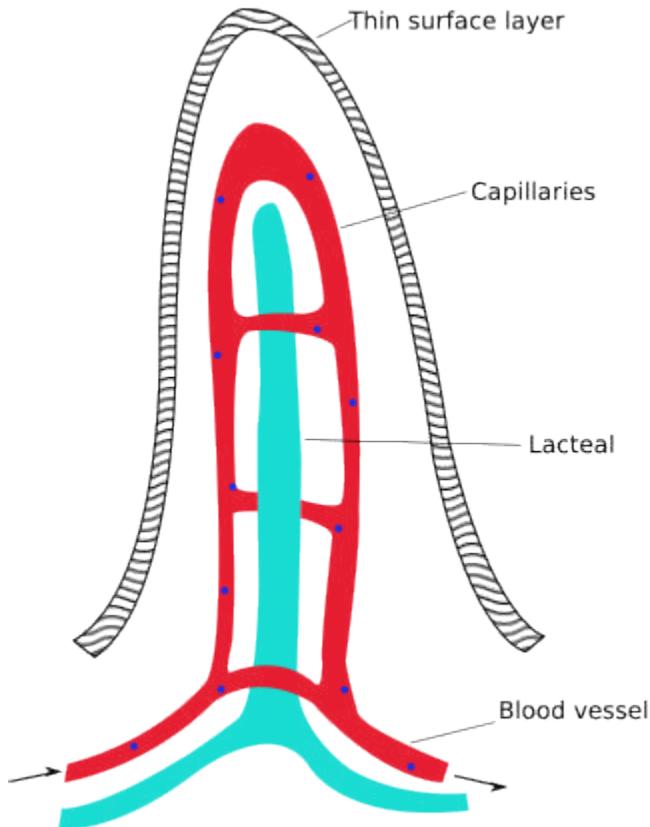


Figure 4.62 Anatomy of a villus1

Like monosaccharides, amino acids are transported directly to the liver through the portal vein.

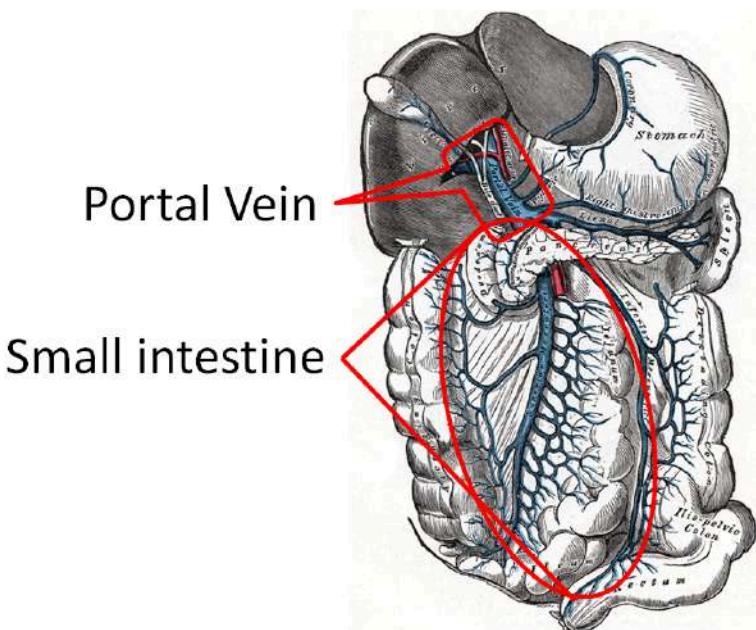


Figure 4.63 The portal vein transports monosaccharides and amino acids to the liver

Amino acids are taken up into the hepatocyte through a variety of amino acid transporters. The amino acids can then be used to either make proteins or are broken down to produce glucose, as will be described in chapter 6.

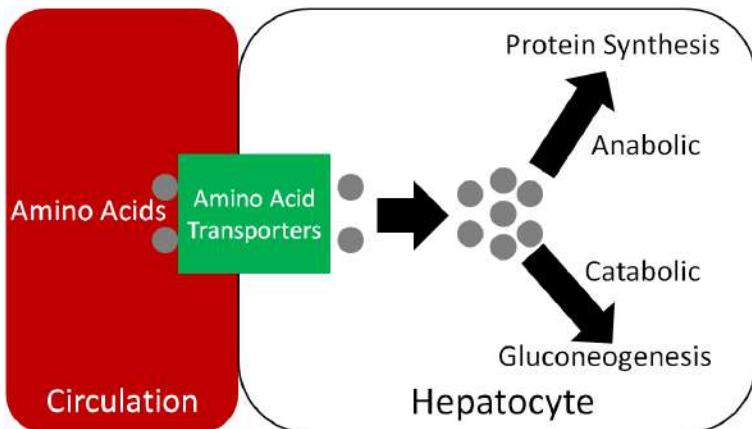


Figure 4.64 Hepatic amino acid uptake

## References & Links

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Intestinal\\_villus\\_simplified.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Intestinal_villus_simplified.svg)
2. <https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gray591.png>

## Videos

Absorption in the Small Intestine – <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=P1sDOJM65Bc>

## 4.7 Lipid Uptake, Absorption & Transport

Once mixed micelles reach the brush border of the enterocyte, two different lipid uptake mechanisms are believed to occur, but lipid uptake is not completely understood. One mechanism is that individual components of micelles may diffuse across the enterocyte. Otherwise, it is believed that some components may be

taken up through unresolved transporters. For example, cholesterol transporters have been identified, but their overall mechanism of absorption is not well understood. The individual compounds are taken up as shown below.

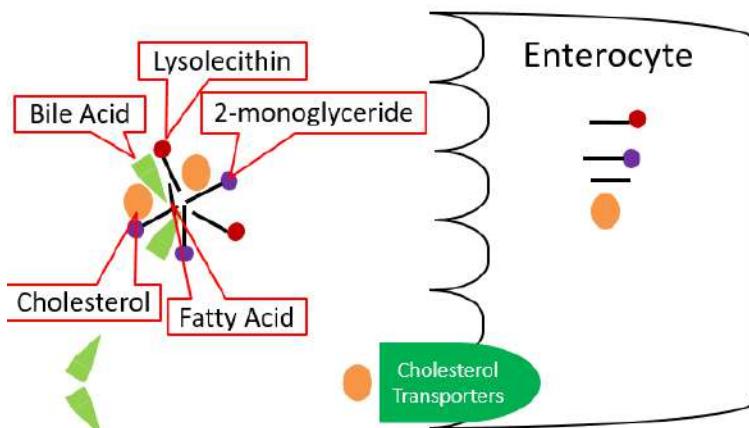


Figure 4.71 Uptake of mixed micelle components into the enterocyte

Once inside the enterocyte, there are different fates for fatty acids, depending on their length. Short- and medium-chain fatty acids move through the enterocyte and enter circulation through the capillaries; they are transported by the protein albumin. They will be carried to the liver by the portal vein, like monosaccharides and amino acids. Long-chain fatty acids, 2-monoglyceride, lysolecithin, and cholesterol will be re-esterified forming triglycerides, phosphatidylcholine, and cholesterol esters, respectively. These re-esterified lipids are then packaged into chylomicrons, which are lipoproteins, that are described in further detail in the next section. These chylomicrons are too large to fit through the pores in the capillaries, but they can fit through the larger fenestrations (openings) in the lacteal.

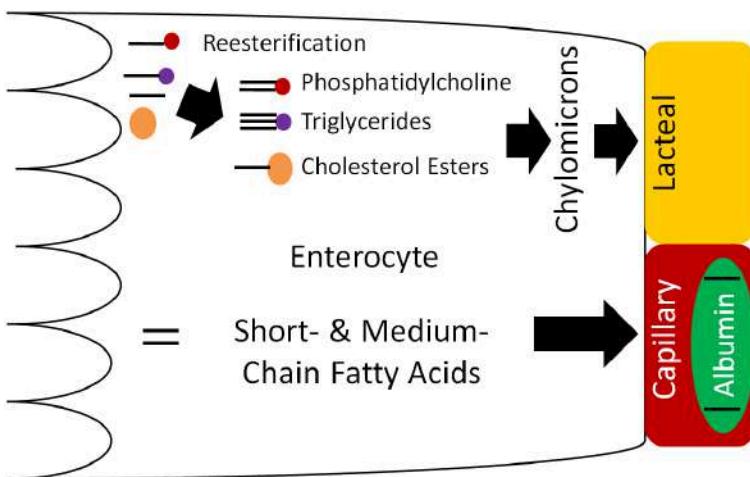


Figure 4.72 Fates of lipids in the enterocyte

Lacteals (shown below) are small vessels that feed into the lymphatic system. Thus, the chylomicrons enter the lacteals and enter into lymphatic circulation.

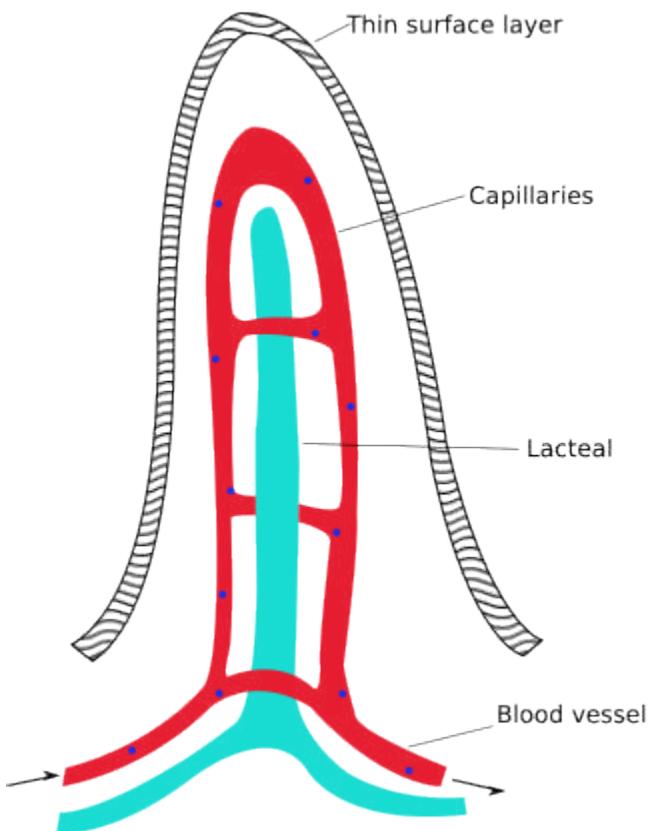


Figure 4.73 Anatomy of a villus, with the lacteal shown in blue<sup>1</sup>

The lymphatic system is a system similar to the circulatory system in that it contains vessels that transport fluid. However, instead of blood, the lymphatic system contains a clear fluid known as lymph. There are a number of lymph nodes (small glands) within the lymphatic system that play a key role in the body's immune system. The figure below shows the lymphatic system.

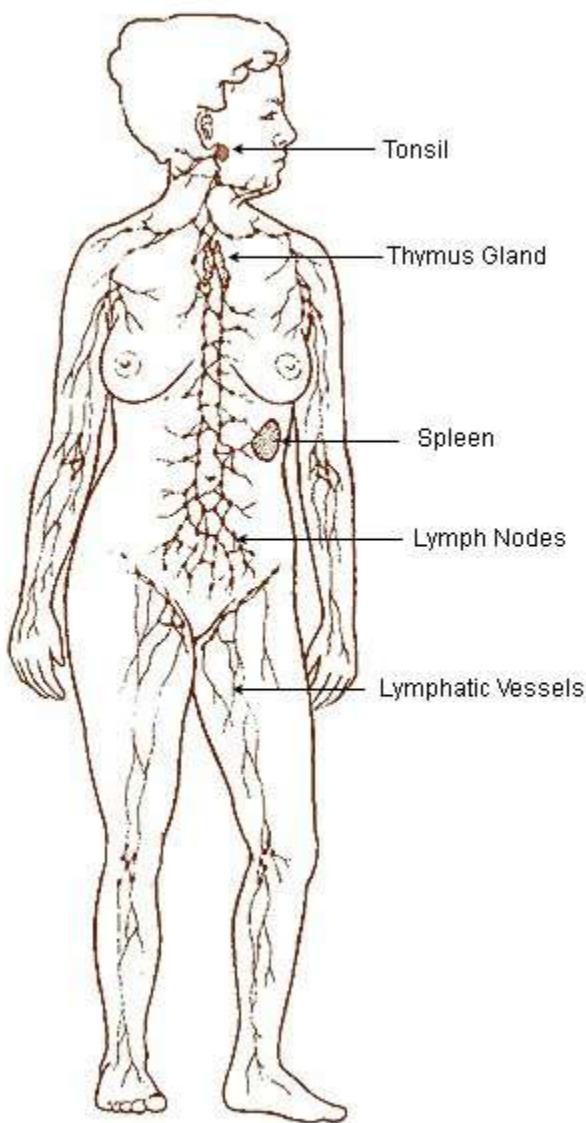


Figure 4.74 The lymphatic system2

The following videos describe and illustrate how the lymphatic system and lymph functions.

---

### Web Links

[Video: Lymphatic System \(0:49\)](#)

[Video: Lymph Movement \(0:44\)](#)

---

The lymphatic system enters general circulation through the thoracic duct that enters the left subclavian vein as shown below. General in this case means that it is not directed to the liver like other components that have been absorbed.

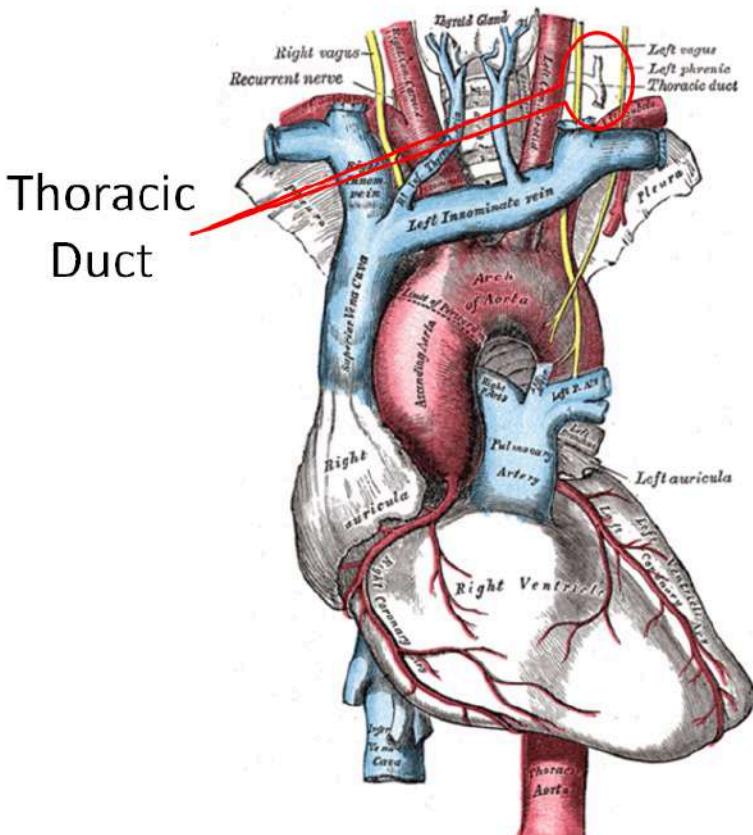


Figure 4.75 The thoracic duct is where the lymphatic system enters circulation.

The animation below is an overview of lipid digestion, uptake, and initial transport.

---

### **Web Links**

[Animation: Lipid Digestion, Uptake, and Transport](#)

---

Subsection:

#### 4.71 Lipoproteins

#### **References & Links**

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:Intestinal\\_villus\\_simplified.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Intestinal_villus_simplified.svg)
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Illu\\_lymphatic\\_system.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Illu_lymphatic_system.jpg)
3. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gray505.png>

#### **Link**

[http://www.wiley.com/college/grosvenor/0470197587/  
animations/Animation\\_Lipid\\_Digestion\\_and\\_Absorption/  
Energy/media/content/dig/anima/dig5a/frameset.htm](http://www.wiley.com/college/grosvenor/0470197587/animations/Animation_Lipid_Digestion_and_Absorption/Energy/media/content/dig/anima/dig5a/frameset.htm)

#### **Videos**

- |                  |   |  |
|------------------|---|--|
| Lymphatic system | - | <a href="http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=qXTDqvPnRk">http://www.youtube.com/<br/>watch?v=qXTDqvPnRk</a>     |
| Lymph Movement   | - | <a href="https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ZdYxx4CHb-A">https://www.youtube.com/<br/>watch?v=ZdYxx4CHb-A</a> |

## **4.71 Lipoproteins**

Lipoproteins, as the name suggests, are complexes of lipids and protein. The proteins within a lipoprotein are called apolipoproteins (aka apoproteins). There are a number of different apolipoproteins that are abbreviated apo-, then an identifying letter (i.e. Apo A) as shown in the chylomicron below.

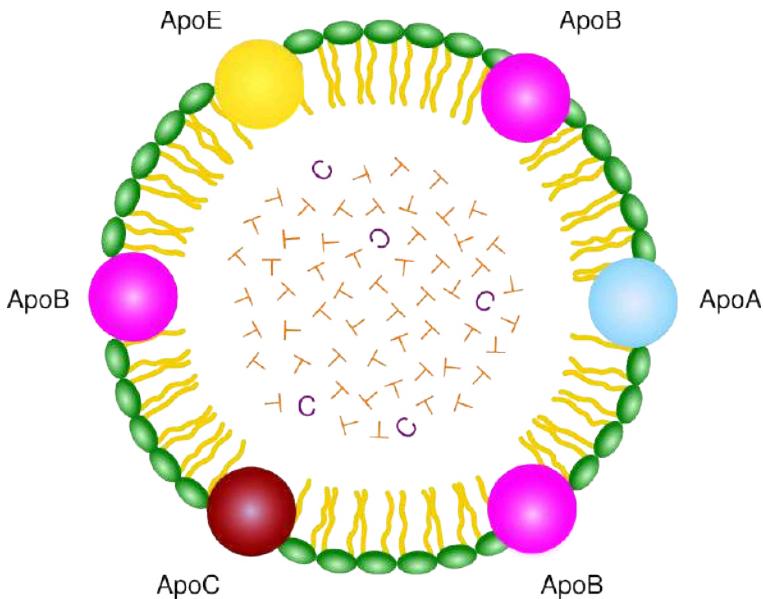


Figure 4.711 Chylomicron structure<sup>1</sup>

The following video does a nice job of illustrating the different lipoprotein components.

---

#### Web Link

[Video: Lipoproteins \(0:28\)](#)

---

There are a number of lipoproteins in the body. They differ by the apolipoproteins they contain, size (diameter), density, and composition. The table below shows the difference in density and diameter of different lipoproteins. Notice that as diameter decreases, density increases.

Table 4.711 The density and diameter of different lipoproteins<sup>2</sup>

Lipoprotein	Density (g/dL)	Diameter (nm)
Chylomicrons	0.95	75-1200
VLDL (very low-density lipoproteins)	0.95-1.006	30-80
IDL (intermediate-density lipoproteins)	1.006-1.019	25-35
LDL (low-density lipoproteins)	1.019-1.063	18-25
HDL (high-density lipoproteins)	1.063-1.21	5-12

This inverse relationship is a result of the larger lipoproteins being composed of a higher percentage of triglyceride and a lower percentage of protein as shown below.

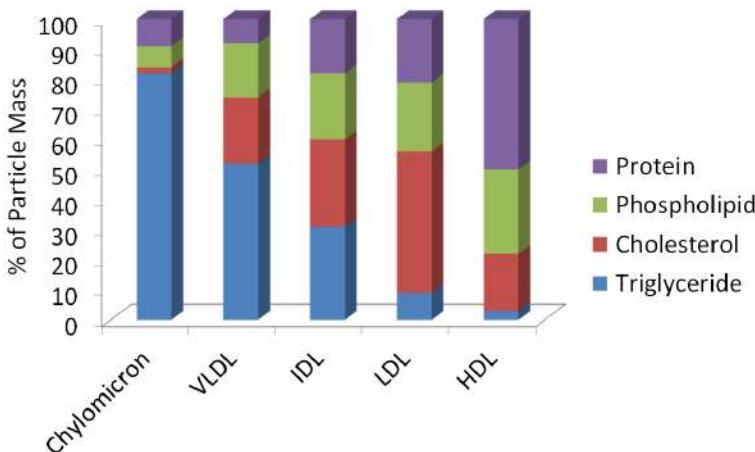


Figure 4.712 Composition of lipoproteins3

Protein is more dense than triglyceride (why muscle weighs more than fat), thus the higher protein/lower triglyceride composition, the higher the density of the lipoprotein. Many of the lipoproteins are named based on their densities (i.e. very low-density lipoproteins).

As described in the last subsection, the lipoproteins released from the small intestine are chylomicrons. The video below does a nice

job of showing, describing, and illustrating how chylomicrons are constructed and function.

---

### Web Link

[Video: Chylomicrons \(0:55\)](#)

---

The endothelial cells that line blood vessels, especially in the muscle and adipose tissue, contain the enzyme lipoprotein lipase (LPL). LPL cleaves the fatty acids from lipoprotein triglycerides so that the fatty acids can be taken up into tissues. The figure below illustrates how endothelial cells are in contact with the blood that flows through the lumen of blood vessels.

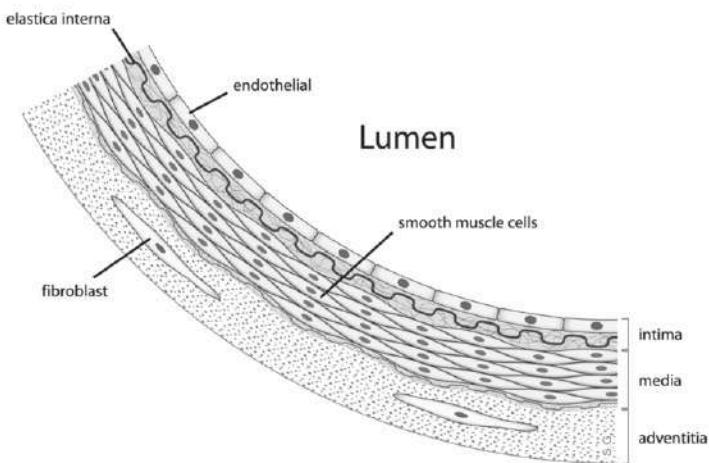


Figure 4.713 Lining of a blood vessel. The lumen is where the blood would be flowing, thus endothelial cells are those that are in contact with blood4

LPL cleaves fatty acids from the triglycerides in the chylomicron, decreasing the amount of triglyceride in the lipoprotein. This

lipoprotein with less triglycerides becomes what is known as a chylomicron remnant, as shown below.

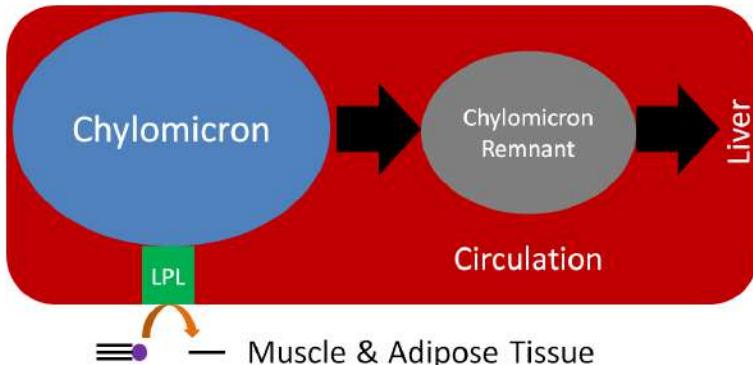


Figure 4.714 The cleavage of triglycerides by LPL from a chylomicron leads to the formation of a chylomicron remnant.

Now in the form of a chylomicron remnant, the digested lipid components originally packaged into the chylomicron are directed to the liver where the chylomicron remnant is endocytosed. This process of clearing chylomicrons from the blood takes 2-10 hours after a meal<sup>2</sup>. This is why people must fast 12 hours before having their blood lipids (triglycerides, HDL, LDL etc.) measured. This fast allows all the chylomicrons and chylomicron remnants to be cleared before blood is taken. However, whether patients should be asked to fast has been questioned as described in the link below.

---

#### Web Link

Should you fast before a cholesterol test?

---

After the chylomicron remnant is endocytosed, it is broken down to its individual components (triglycerides, cholesterol, protein etc.). In the liver, VLDL are produced, similar to how chylomicrons are produced in the small intestine. The individual components are packaged into VLDL and secreted into circulation as shown below.

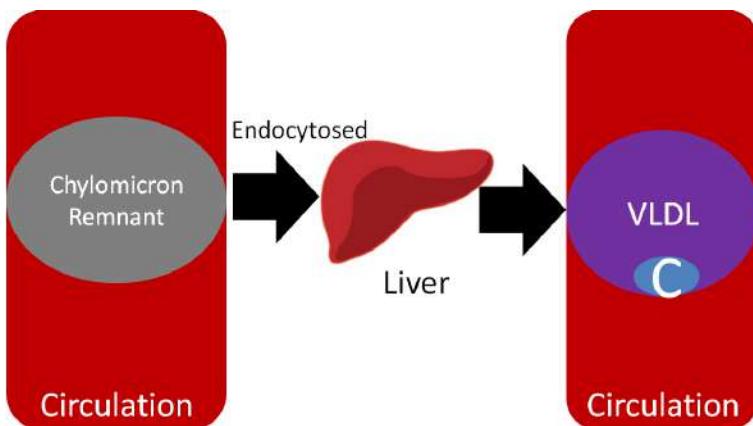


Figure 4.715 Chylomicron remnants are taken up by the liver. The liver secretes VLDL that contain cholesterol (C)

Like it does to chylomicrons, LPL cleaves fatty acids from triglycerides in VLDL, forming the smaller IDL (aka VLDL remnant). Further action of LPL on IDL results in the formation of LDL. The C in Figures 4.715 and 4.716 represents cholesterol, which is not increasing; rather, since triglyceride is being removed, it constitutes a greater percentage of particle mass of lipoproteins. As a result, LDL is composed mostly of cholesterol, as depicted in the figure below.

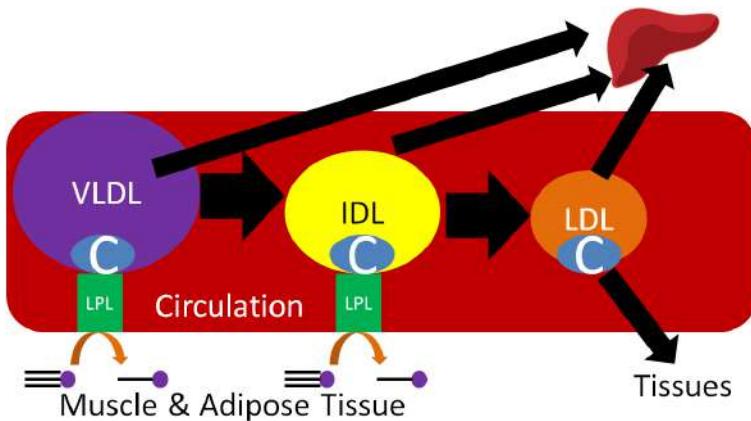
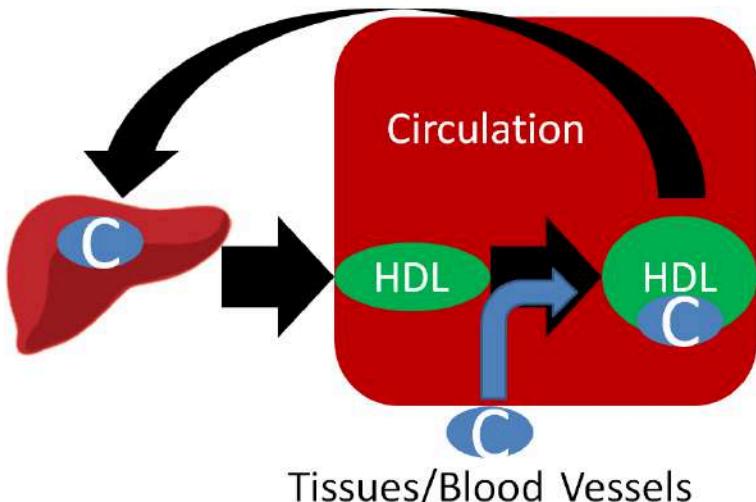


Figure 4.716 Formation of IDL and LDL from VLDL

LDL contains a specific apolipoprotein (Apo B100) that binds to LDL receptors on the surface of target tissues. The LDL are then endocytosed into the target tissue and broken down to cholesterol and amino acids.

HDL are made up of mostly protein and are derived from the liver and intestine. HDL participates in reverse cholesterol transport, which is the transport of cholesterol back to the liver. HDL picks up cholesterol from tissues/blood vessels and returns it to the liver itself or transfers it to other lipoproteins returning to the liver.



*Figure 4.717 HDL is involved in reverse cholesterol transport*

The animation under the transport button in the following link does a really nice job of going through the process of lipoprotein transport.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Lipoprotein Animation](#)

---

You are probably familiar with HDL and LDL being referred to as “good cholesterol” and “bad cholesterol,” respectively. This is an oversimplification to help the public interpret their blood lipid values, because cholesterol is cholesterol; it’s not good or bad. LDL and HDL are lipoproteins, and as a result you can’t consume good or bad cholesterol, you consume cholesterol. A more appropriate descriptor for these lipoproteins would be HDL “good cholesterol transporter” and LDL “bad cholesterol transporter.”

What’s so bad about LDL? LDL enters the endothelium where it is oxidized. This oxidized LDL is engulfed by white blood cells

(macrophages), leading to the formation of what are known as foam cells. The foam cells eventually accumulate so much LDL that they die and accumulate, forming a fatty streak. From there the fatty streak, which is the beginning stages of a lesion, can continue to grow until it blocks the artery. This can result in a myocardial infarction (heart attack) or a stroke. HDL is good in that it scavenges cholesterol from other lipoproteins or cells and returns it to the liver. The figure below shows the formation of the fatty streak and how this can progress to a point where it greatly alters blood flow.

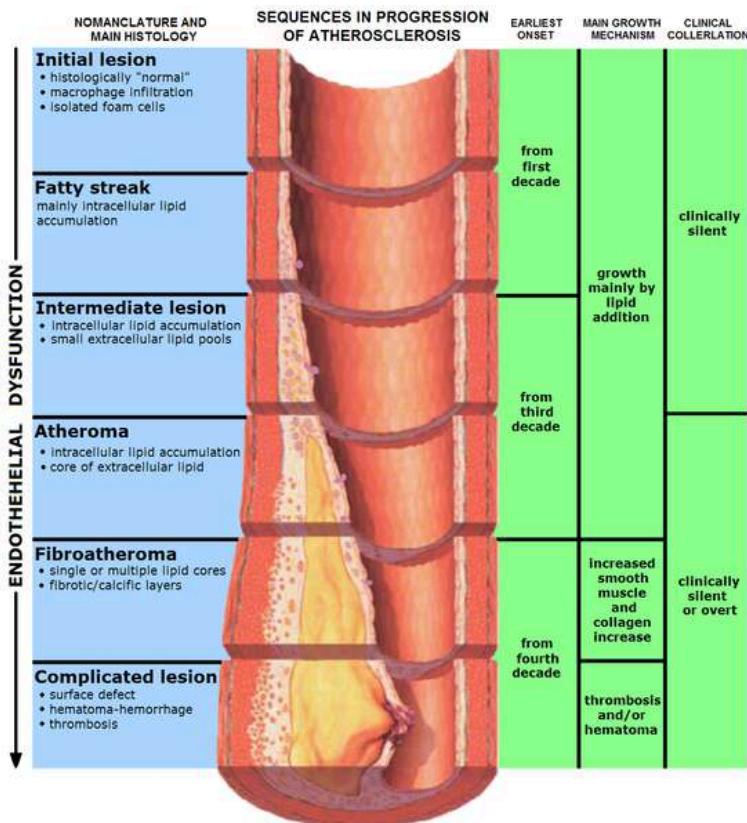


Figure 4.718 The formation of a lesion in an artery5

The video below does an excellent job of illustrating this process. However there are two caveats to point out. First, it incorrectly refers to cholesterol (LDL-C etc.), and second, it is clearly made by a drug company, so keep these factors in mind. The link below is the American Heart Association's simple animation of how atherosclerosis develops.

---

#### **Web Link**

Video: Atherosclerosis (5:36)  
Cholesterol and CAD

---

Despite what you learned above about HDL, a recent study questions its importance in preventing cardiovascular disease. It found that people who have genetic variations that lead to higher HDL levels were not at decreased risk of developing cardiovascular disease. You can read more about this interesting finding in the first link below. In addition, another recent study is questioning whether saturated fat is associated with an increased risk of cardiovascular disease.

---

#### **Web Link**

Doubt Cast on the 'Good' in 'Good Cholesterol'  
Study Questions Fat and Heart Disease Link

---

The following video gives a general overview of macronutrient digestion, uptake, and absorption.

---

#### **Web Link**

Video: Small Intestine (1:29)

---

### **References & Links**

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Chylomicron.svg>
2. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-

Hill.

3. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
4. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Anatomy\\_artery.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Anatomy_artery.png)
5. 7. Erdman JW Jr., MacDonald IA, Zeisel SH, editors. (2012) Present knowledge in nutrition – 10th ed. Ames, IA: Wiley-Blackwell.
6. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Endo\\_dysfunction\\_Athero.PNG](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Endo_dysfunction_Athero.PNG)

## Links

Ask Well: Should you fast before a cholesterol test – <http://well.blogs.nytimes.com/2016/05/24/ask-well-should-you-fast-before-a-cholesterol-test/>

Lipoprotein Animation – <http://www.wiley.com/legacy/college/boyer/0470003790/animations/cholesterol/cholesterol.swf>

Cholesterol and CAD – [http://watchlearnlive.heart.org/CVML\\_Player.php?moduleSelect=chlcad](http://watchlearnlive.heart.org/CVML_Player.php?moduleSelect=chlcad)

Doubt Cast on the ‘Good’ in ‘Good Cholesterol’ – <http://www.nytimes.com/2012/05/17/health/research/hdl-good-cholesterol-found-not-to-cut-heart-risk.html>

Study Questions Fat and Heart Disease Link – <http://well.blogs.nytimes.com/2014/03/17/study-questions-fat-and-heart-disease-link/>

## Videos

Lipoproteins – <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=x-4ZQaiZry8>  
Chylomicrons – [http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hRx\\_i9npTDU](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hRx_i9npTDU)

LDL Receptor – <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XPguYN7dcbE>

Atherosclerosis – <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fLonh7ZesKs&feature=rec-HM-r2>

Small Intestine – <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=P1sDOJM65Bc>

# Common Digestive Problems

Before moving to metabolism, we are going learn about some common digestive problems.

Sections:

- 5.1 Peptic Ulcers
- 5.2 Gallstones
- 5.3 Irritable Bowel Syndrome
- 5.4 Inflammatory Bowel Disease
- 5.5 Celiac Disease
- 5.6 Diverticulosis & Diverticulitis
- 5.7 Hemorrhoids

## 5.1 Peptic Ulcers

When the mucus layer of the stomach or duodenum becomes too thin, acid can erode the cells lining these tissues. This results in a lesion known as a peptic ulcer, as shown below.

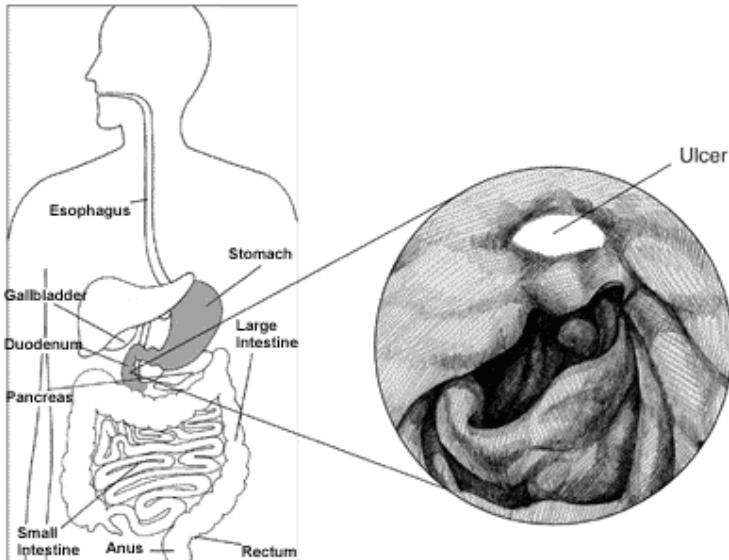


Figure 5.11 A peptic ulcer in the duodenum<sup>1</sup>

The first video says that goblet cells secrete mucus in the stomach. This is not correct; they secrete mucus in the intestine. It should be neck cells in the stomach. The second link shows what two ulcers actually look like in the stomach.

---

#### Web Links

[Video: Gastric Ulcers \(1:21\)](#)

[Video: Endoscopy of Two Giant Gastric Ulcers \(0:26\)](#)

---

10% of Americans will develop an ulcer in their lifetime. Despite common beliefs, these ulcers are not caused by stress or spicy foods. Most ulcers are believed to be caused by the acid-resistant bacteria, *Helicobacter pylori*. 30-40% of Americans are infected with this bacteria. *Helicobacter pylori* causes a thinning of the mucus that protects the stomach and duodenum from gastric acid. It is not clear how *Helicobacter pylori* is transmitted, though it may be

through contaminated food or water. It might also be spread through contact with vomit, feces, or saliva of an infected person<sup>1</sup>.

Prolonged use of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDS) such as aspirin, ibuprofen, or naproxen (Aleve) are also frequent causes of peptic ulcers. NSAIDs inhibit the production of a protective eicosanoid<sup>1</sup>.

### References & Links

1.<http://www.niddk.nih.gov/health-information/health-topics/digestive-diseases/peptic-ulcer/Pages/definition-facts.aspx>

### Videos

Gastric Ulcers - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=98JaiKH2q3E>

Endoscopy of Two Giant Gastric Ulcers - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ncHcpzCnjGQ&feature=related>

## 5.2 Gallstones

It is estimated that up to 1 million Americans are hospitalized annually as a result of gallstones, making it the most common of all digestive diseases<sup>1</sup>. Gallstones are formed when bile hardens in the gallbladder. 80% of gallstones are a result of cholesterol precipitation, while 20% are a result of bile pigment precipitation<sup>2</sup>. The cause of gallstones is unknown<sup>2</sup>. The way in which gallstones are formed is shown in the following video.

---

### Web Link

[Video: Gallstones \(0:27\)](#)

---

The following figure shows a severe case of gallstones.



Figure 5.21 Gallstones within a dissected gallbladder3

Many people do not experience symptoms from gallstones. They are usually discovered during examination for another health condition. However, some people experience an “attack” or pain that results from blockage of the bile ducts. The gallbladder is not essential, so the primary treatment is cholecystectomy, the removal of the gallbladder. Bile then flows directly from the liver into the small intestine.

### References & Links

1. Bar-Meir S. (2001) Gallstones: Prevalence, diagnosis and treatment. The Israel Medical Association Journal 3(2): 111.
2. <http://www.niddk.nih.gov/health-information/health-topics/digestive-diseases/gallstones/Pages/facts.aspx>
3. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gallstones.jpg>

### Video

Gallstones - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1q3NxfwSEN&feature=rec-HM-fresh+div>

## 5.3 Irritable Bowel Syndrome

Up to 20% of Americans may have irritable bowel syndrome (IBS). A syndrome is a group of symptoms, not a disease. In IBS, the colon does not function correctly. The symptoms of IBS are cramping, bloating, gas, diarrhea, and/or constipation. The cause of IBS is unknown. Diet changes, stress reduction, and medicine may help manage the condition<sup>1</sup>. To learn more about IBS, see the reference below.

### Reference

1. <http://www.niddk.nih.gov/health-information/health-topics/digestive-diseases/irritable-bowel-syndrome/pages/definition-facts.aspx>

## 5.4 Inflammatory Bowel Disease

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) refers to a number of inflammatory conditions in the intestine. The two most common are Crohn's Disease and ulcerative colitis. These two conditions differ mainly in the areas of the intestine that are affected. Crohn's disease can occur anywhere throughout the GI tract, but most commonly occurs in the last part of the ileum. Crohn's disease may also involve all layers of the intestine<sup>1</sup>. Ulcerative colitis are ulcers, or sores, in the lining of the colon and/or rectum<sup>2</sup>. It is estimated that up to 1 million people have IBD in the United States. Half of these individuals have Crohn's disease, and the other half have ulcerative colitis<sup>3</sup>.

The figure in the link below illustrates the differences between these two conditions.

---

## **Web Links**

### Ulcerative Colitis vs. Crohn's Disease

---

The exact causes of these two diseases is not known. One hypothesized cause is an overactive immune system (autoimmune response, the immune system attack tissues/cells rather than pathogens) that results in the chronic inflammation and collateral damage to the cells of the intestine, resulting in formation of lesions.

Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis present symptoms similar to other gastrointestinal diseases, such as irritable bowel syndrome and GERD.

## **References & Links**

1. <http://www.niddk.nih.gov/health-information/health-topics/digestive-diseases/crohns-disease/Pages/facts.aspx>
2. <http://www.niddk.nih.gov/health-information/health-topics/digestive-diseases/ulcerative-colitis/Pages/facts.aspx>
3. <http://www.cdfa.org/info/about/crohns>

## **Links**

Ulcerative Colitis vs. Crohn's Disease – <http://www.quibd.com/wp-content/uploads/2015/08/DIFFERENCES001.jpg>

## **5.5 Celiac Disease & Gluten**

1 out of every 133 people in the United States has celiac disease<sup>1</sup>. People with celiac disease cannot consume the protein gluten because it causes their body to generate an autoimmune response

(immune cells attack the body's own cells) that causes damage to the villi in the intestine, as shown below.

### UPPER JEJUNAL MUCOSAL IMMUNOPATHOLOGY

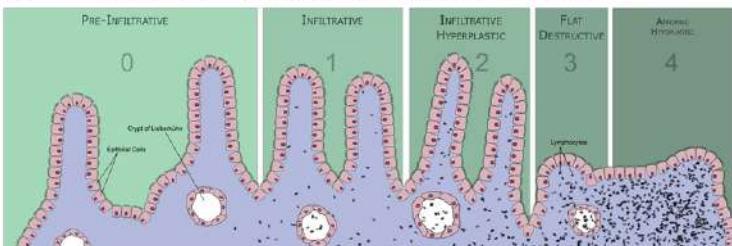


Figure 5.51 Different stages of celiac disease<sup>2</sup>

This damage to the villi impairs the absorption of macronutrients and micronutrients from food.

There are a variety of symptoms for celiac disease that vary depending on age and from person to person. For a listing of all symptoms, see the first link below. The second link describes the difficulty in diagnosing this disease, which is reinforced by the the third video link.

#### What is gluten?

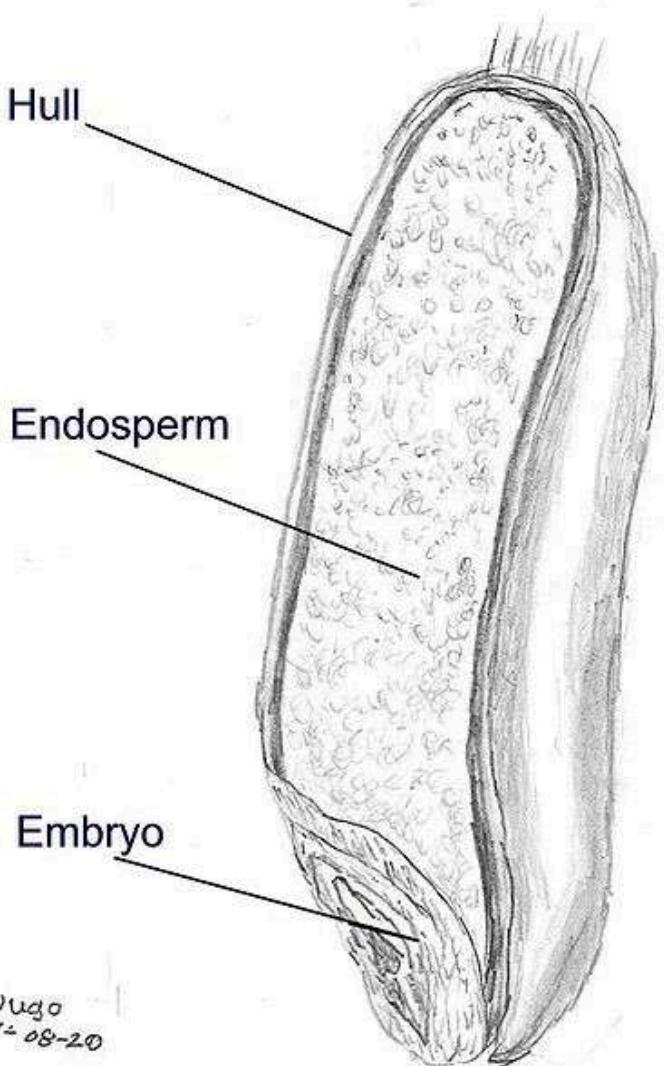
Gluten is a protein that is bound to starch in the endosperm of grains such as:

Wheat

Barley

Rye

Triticale



wug  
07-08-20

Figure 5.51 Parts of a wheat granule3

The video below does a nice job of providing some more information about this disease.

Gluten-free diets have been increasing in popularity even for people who don't have celiac disease. The thinking among those consuming these diets is that they might be non-celiac gluten-sensitive, meaning that they experience adverse effects from consuming it. However, as the study describes, it seems more likely that it is fructan, a fructooligosaccharide, that causes these issues as found in the research described in the abstract below. These are apart of fermentable oligosaccharides-, disaccharides, monosaccharides and polyols (FODMAPs). Low FODMAP diets are increasing in use for similar reasons as gluten-free diets were used, but there is better evidence justification for their use.

---

#### **Web Link**

Fructan, Rather Than Gluten, Induces Symptoms in Patients With Self-Reported Non-Celiac Gluten Sensitivity

---

#### **References & Links**

1. <http://www.celiac.org/>
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Coeliac\\_Disease.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Coeliac_Disease.png)
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Wheat\\_seed.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Wheat_seed.jpg)

#### **Links**

Fructan, Rather Than Gluten, Induces Symptoms in Patients With Self-Reported Non-Celiac Gluten Sensitivity  
<https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/29102613#>

## **5.6 Diverticulosis and Diverticulitis**

Approximately 10% of people under 40, and 50% of people over 60 years old have a condition known as diverticulosis<sup>1</sup>. In this condition, diverticula (plural, diverticulum singular), or outpouches, are formed at weak points in the large intestine, primarily in the

lowest section of the sigmoid colon, as nicely shown in the figure below and in the video in the web link below.

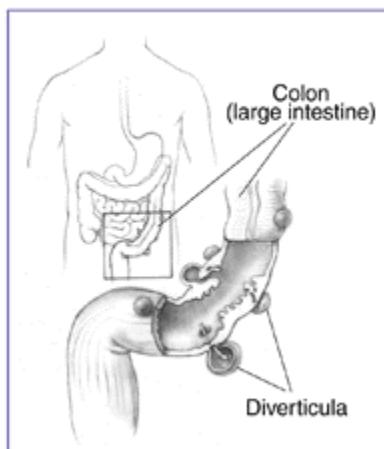


Figure 5.61 Diverticula on the large intestine1

---

### Web Link

[Video: Diverticulosis \(1:24\)](#)

---

It is believed that diverticula are formed as a result of a low-fiber diet because people may strain more during bowel movements. Most people with diverticulosis do not know that they have the condition. However, if the pouches become inflamed, then the condition is known as diverticulitis. The most common symptom of this condition is abdominal pain. A liquid diet may be needed until the inflammation is decreased, then fiber is gradually increased1.

### References & Links

1.<http://www.niddk.nih.gov/health-information/health-topics/digestive-diseases/diverticular-disease/Pages/facts.aspx#1>

### Video



A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://open.oregonstate.education/humannutrition/?p=276>

## 5.7 Hemorrhoids

Hemorrhoids are swollen or inflamed veins of the anus or lower rectum. An internal hemorrhoid occurs within the anus, while an external hemorrhoid occurs in the skin surrounding the anus. Symptoms of hemorrhoids include bleeding, pain during bowel movements, and/or itching<sup>1</sup>. It is estimated that “about 75% of people will have hemorrhoids at some point in their lives”<sup>2</sup>.

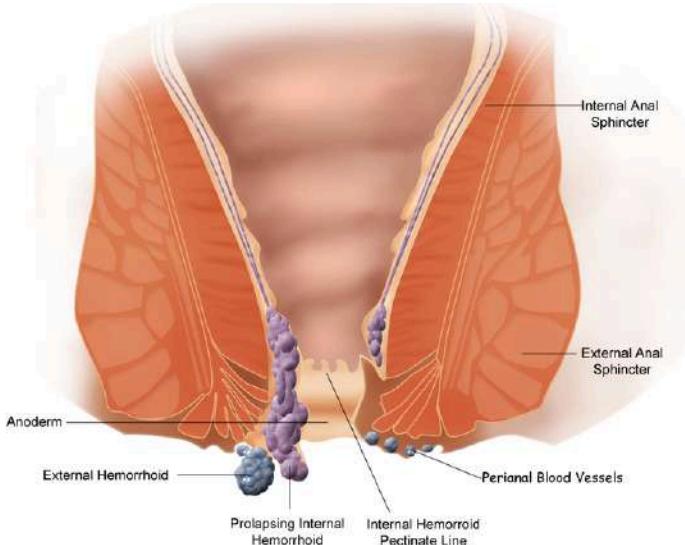


Figure 5.71 Hemorrhoids3

The first 55 seconds of the following video does a nice job of illustrating what hemorrhoids are and how they develop.

---

#### Web Link

[Video: Hemorrhoids \(2:05\)](#)

---

The anus and lower rectum experience high pressure during bowel movements. Thus, hemorrhoids are believed to be caused by straining during bowel movements. To prevent this condition from occurring, it is recommended that people consume a high-fiber diet, drink plenty of water, and exercise to produce regular, large, soft stools. In addition, people should “go” at first urge and not wait until it is more than an urge2.

#### References & Links

1. <http://www.webmd.com/a-to-z-guides/hemorrhoids-topic->

overview

2. <http://www.niddk.nih.gov/health-information/health-topics/digestive-diseases/hemorrhoids/Pages/facts.aspx>
3. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Hemorrhoid.png>

## **Video**

Hemorrhoids - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=C8vZoIhQCwU>

# Macronutrient & Alcohol Metabolism

Now that we have digested, taken up, absorbed, and transported the macronutrients, the next step is to learn how these macronutrients are metabolized. Alcohol is also included at the end of this chapter, even though it is not a macronutrient.

Sections:

- 6.1 Metabolism Basics
- 6.2 Carbohydrate Metabolism
- 6.3 Lipid Metabolism
- 6.4 Protein Metabolism
- 6.5 Alcohol Metabolism

## **6.1 Metabolism Basics**

Metabolism consists of all the chemical processes that occur in living cells. These processes/reactions can generally be classified as either anabolic or catabolic. Anabolic means to build, catabolic means to breakdown. If you have trouble remembering the difference between the two, remember that anabolic steroids are what are used to build enormous muscle mass.



Figure 6.11 One of these two is taking anabolic steroids, which one would be your guess?

An anabolic reaction/pathway requires energy to build something. A catabolic reaction/pathway generates energy by breaking down something. This is shown in the example below of glucose and glycogen. The same is true for other macronutrients.

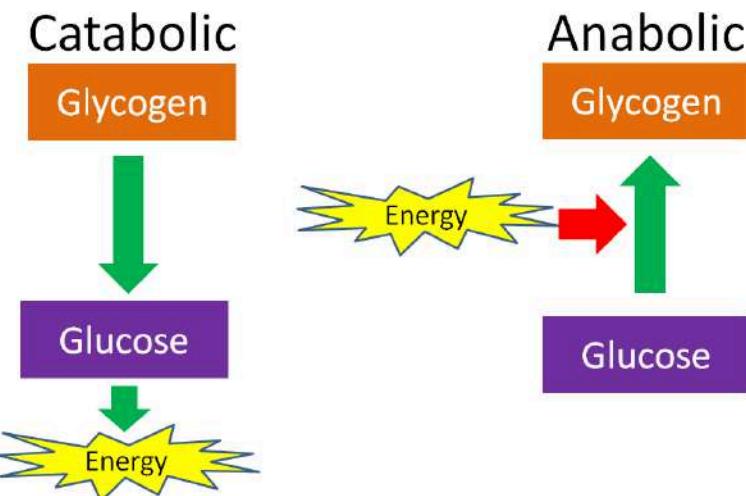


Figure 6.12 The breakdown of glycogen to glucose is catabolic. The glucose can then be used to produce energy. The synthesis of glycogen from glucose is anabolic and requires energy.

Anabolic and catabolic can also be used to describe conditions in the body. For instance, after a meal there is often a positive energy balance, or there is more energy and macronutrients than the body needs at that time. Thus, some energy needs to be stored and the macronutrients will be used for synthesis, such as amino acids being used for protein synthesis. However, after a fast, or a prolonged period without energy intake, the body is in negative energy balance and is considered catabolic. In this condition, macronutrients will be mobilized from their stores to be used to generate energy. For example, if prolonged enough, protein can be broken down, then the released amino acids can be broken down to be used as an energy source.

A number of the metabolic reactions oxidize or reduce compounds. A compound that is being oxidized loses at least one electron, while a compound that is reduced gains at least 1 electron. To remember the difference, a mnemonic device such as OIL

(oxidation is lost), RIG (reduction is gained) is helpful. Oxidation-reduction reactions are illustrated in the figure below.

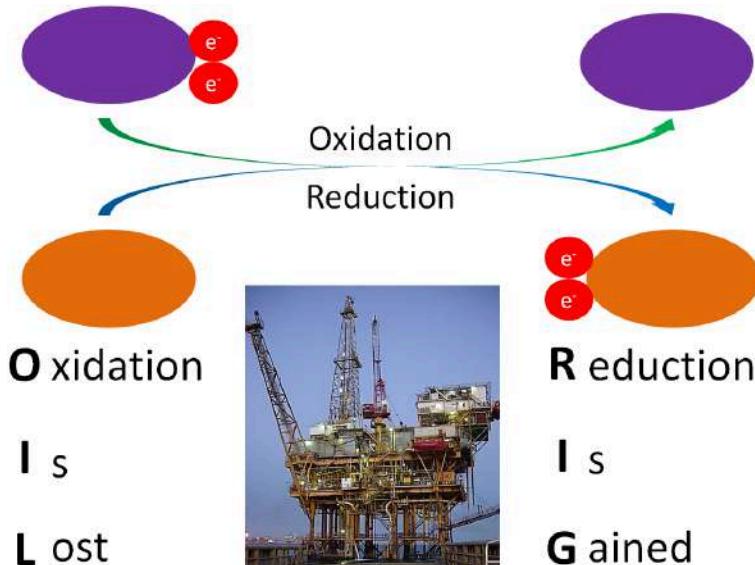


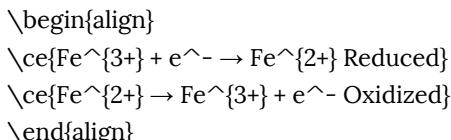
Figure 6.13 The purple compound is being oxidized, the orange compound is being reduced!

Another way to remember oxidation versus reduction is **LEO goes GER** (like a lion)

Lose Elections = Oxidize

Gain Elections = Reduce

Iron is a good example we can use to illustrate oxidation-reduction reactions. Iron commonly exists in two oxidation states ( $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ ). It is constantly oxidized/reduced back and forth between the two states. The oxidation/reduction of iron is shown below.



However, some oxidation reduction reactions are not as easy to recognize. There are some simple rules to help you recognize less obvious oxidation/reduction reactions that are based upon the gain or loss of oxygen or hydrogen. These are as follows:

Oxidation: gains oxygen or loses hydrogen

Reduction: loses oxygen or gains hydrogen

### References

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/>  
Image:Gulf\_Offshore\_Platform.jpg

## 6.11 Cofactors

A number of enzymes require cofactors to function. Some also require what other textbooks and resources refer to as coenzymes. But to keep things simple, we are going to include these coenzymes in our definition of cofactors. Thus, cofactors can be either organic or inorganic molecules that are required by enzymes to function. Many organic cofactors are vitamins or molecules derived from vitamins. Most inorganic cofactors are minerals. Cofactors can be oxidized or reduced for the enzymes to catalyze the reactions.

Two common cofactors that are derived from the B vitamins, niacin and riboflavin, are nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD) and flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD), respectively. The structure of NAD and FAD are shown below.

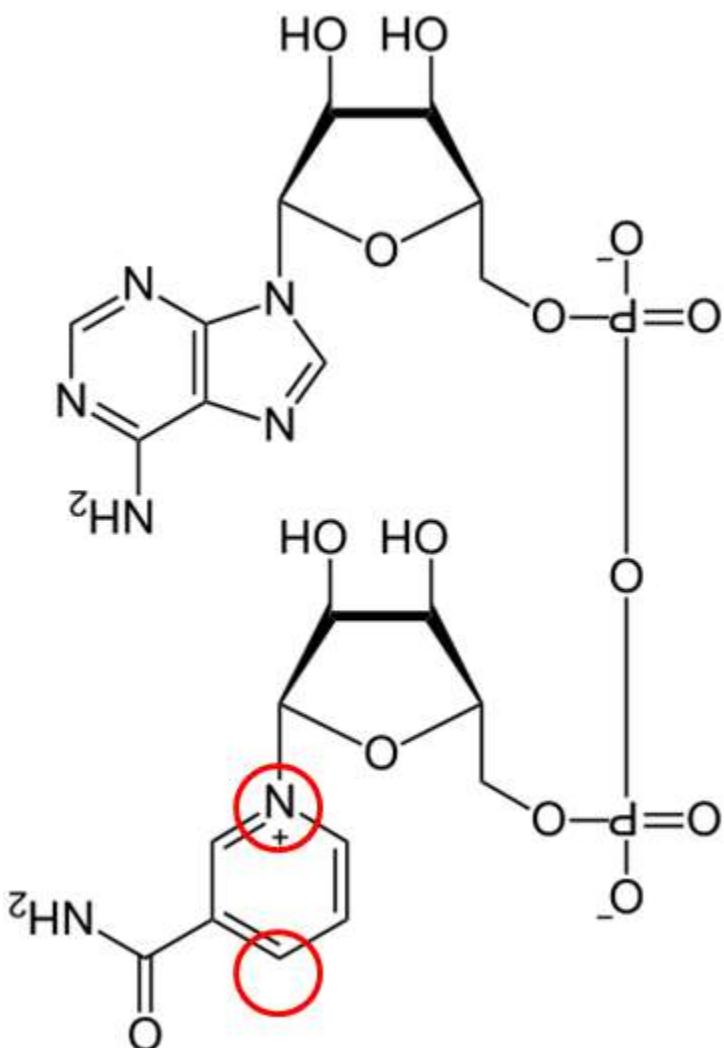


Figure 6.111 Structure of NAD<sup>+</sup> upside down. The atoms are circled to help orient this structure with Figure 6.113

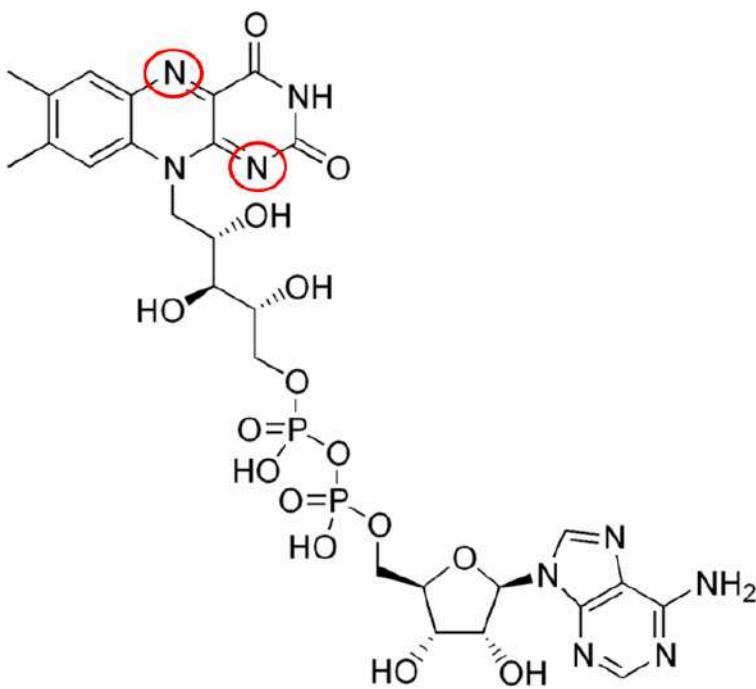


Figure 6.112 Structure of FAD2. The nitrogens are circled to help orient this structure with Figure 6.114

Both of these cofactors can be reduced; NAD is reduced to form NADH, while FAD is reduced to form FADH<sub>2</sub> as shown in the 2 figures below.

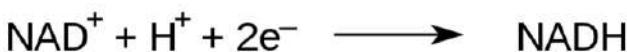
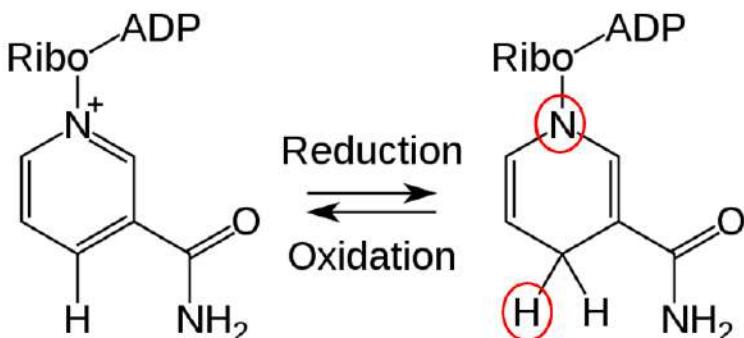


Figure 6.113 The reduction of NAD to form NADH

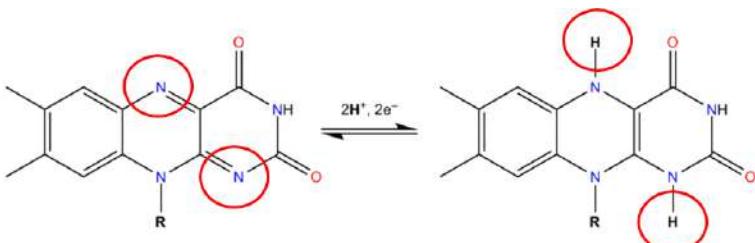


Figure 6.114 The reduction of FAD4 to FADH2

An example of a mineral that serves as a cofactor is Fe<sup>2+</sup> for proline and lysyl hydroxylases. We will discuss later in detail why vitamin C (ascorbic acid) is needed to reduce iron to Fe<sup>2+</sup> so that it can serve as a cofactor for proline and lysyl hydroxylases.

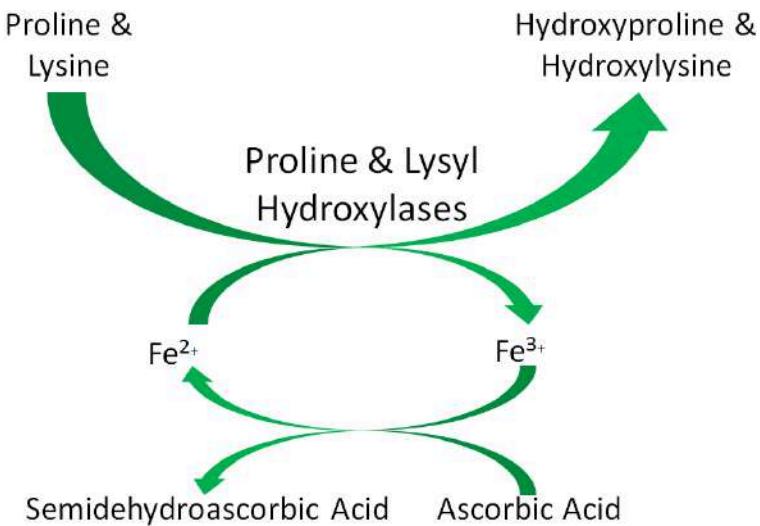


Figure 6.115 Iron ( $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ ) is a cofactor for proline and lysyl hydroxylases

### References & Links

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:NAD%2B\\_phys.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:NAD%2B_phys.svg)
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Flavin\\_adenine\\_dinucleotide.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Flavin_adenine_dinucleotide.png)
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:NAD\\_oxidation\\_reduction.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:NAD_oxidation_reduction.svg)
4. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:FAD\\_FADH2\\_equilibrium.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:FAD_FADH2_equilibrium.png)

## 6.2 Carbohydrate Metabolism Pathways

There are many metabolic pathways/cycles/processes/reactions that are involved in the synthesis or degradation of carbohydrates and compounds formed from them. Please note that most of these

pathways aren't specific to carbohydrates only. Gluconeogenesis will be covered in the protein section, because amino acids are a common substrate used for synthesizing glucose.

### **Carbohydrate Pathways/Cycles/Processes/Reactions:**

#### **Glycogenesis**

-glycogen synthesis

#### **Glycogenolysis**

-glycogen breakdown

#### **Gluconeogenesis**

-synthesis of glucose from a non-carbohydrate source

#### **Glycolysis**

-breakdown of glucose to pyruvate

#### **Transition Reaction**

-conversion of pyruvate to acetyl-CoA

#### **Citric Acid (Tricarboxylic acid (TCA), Kreb's) Cycle**

-acetyl-CoA combines with oxaloacetate to form citrate; ATP, NADH, and FADH<sub>2</sub> are produced in the cycle

#### **Electron Transport Chain**

-oxidative phosphorylation, producing ATP from NADH and FADH<sub>2</sub>

Subsections:

6.21 Monosaccharide Metabolism

6.22 Glycogenesis & Glycogenolysis

6.23 Glycolysis

6.24 Transition Reaction

6.25 Citric Acid Cycle

6.26 Electron Transport Chain

6.27 Aerobic Glucose Metabolism Totals

6.28 Anaerobic Respiration

## **6.21 Monosaccharide Metabolism**

Galactose and fructose metabolism is a logical place to begin

looking at carbohydrate metabolism, before shifting focus to the preferred monosaccharide glucose. The figure below reminds you that in the liver, galactose and fructose have been phosphorylated.

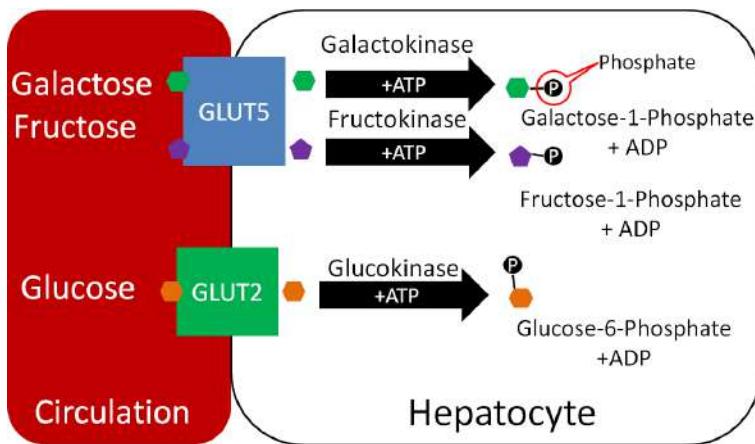


Figure 6.211 Uptake of monosaccharides into the hepatocyte

### Galactose

In the liver, galactose-1-phosphate is converted to glucose-1-phosphate, before finally being converted to glucose-6-phosphate<sup>1</sup>. As shown below, glucose 6-phosphate can then be used in either glycolysis or glycogenesis, depending on the person's current energy state.

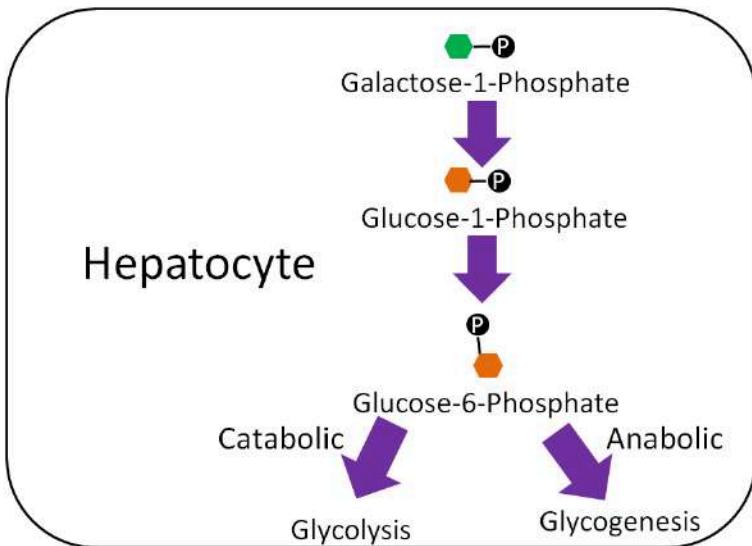


Figure 6.212 Conversion of galactose-1-phosphate to glucose-6-phosphate

### Fructose

Unlike galactose, fructose cannot be used to form phosphorylated glucose. Instead, fructose-1-phosphate is cleaved in the liver to form glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate, a glycolysis (pathway that breaks down glucose) intermediate. This occurs through multiple steps, as depicted below.

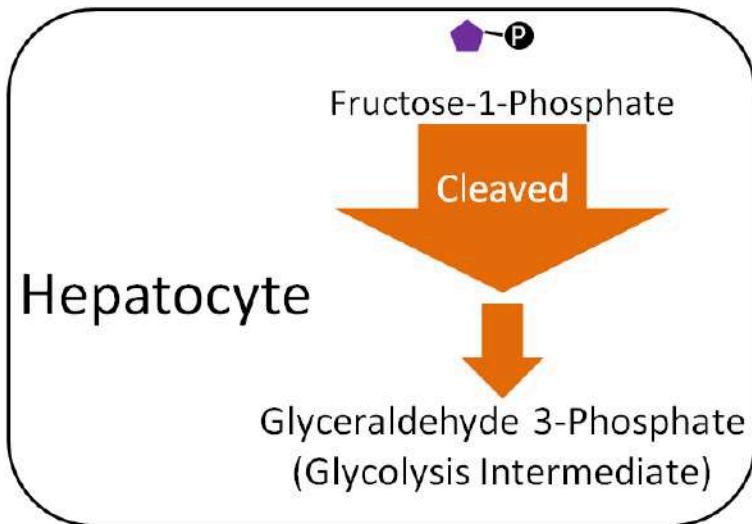


Figure 6.213 Conversion of fructose-1-phosphate to glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate

### Glucose-6-Phosphate

Within hepatocytes or myocytes (muscle cells), glucose-6-phosphate can be used either for glycogenesis (glycogen synthesis) or glycolysis (breakdown of glucose for energy production). If the person is in an anabolic state, they will use glucose-6-phosphate for storage. If they are in a catabolic state, they will use it for energy production.

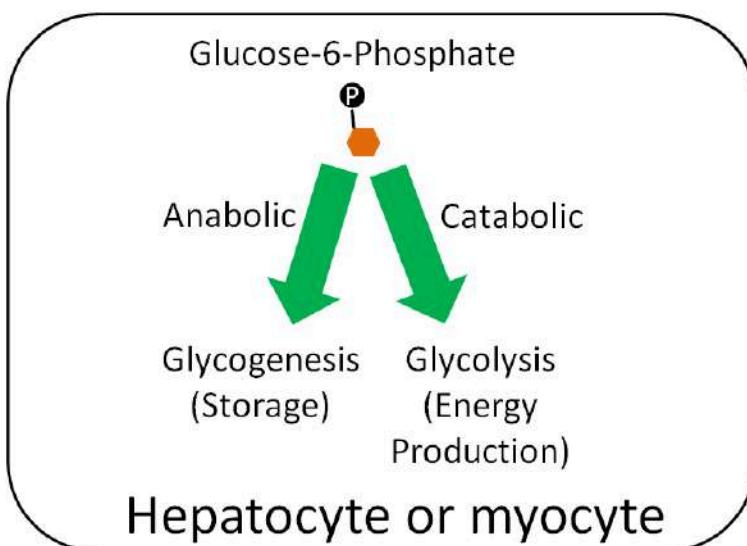


Figure 6.214 The “fork in the road” for glucose-6-phosphate

### References & Links

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

## 6.22 Glycogenesis & Glycogenolysis

As discussed earlier, glycogen is the animal storage form of glucose. If a person is in an anabolic state, such as after consuming a meal, most glucose-6-phosphate within the myocytes (muscle cells) or hepatocytes (liver cells) is going to be stored as glycogen. The structure is shown below as a reminder.

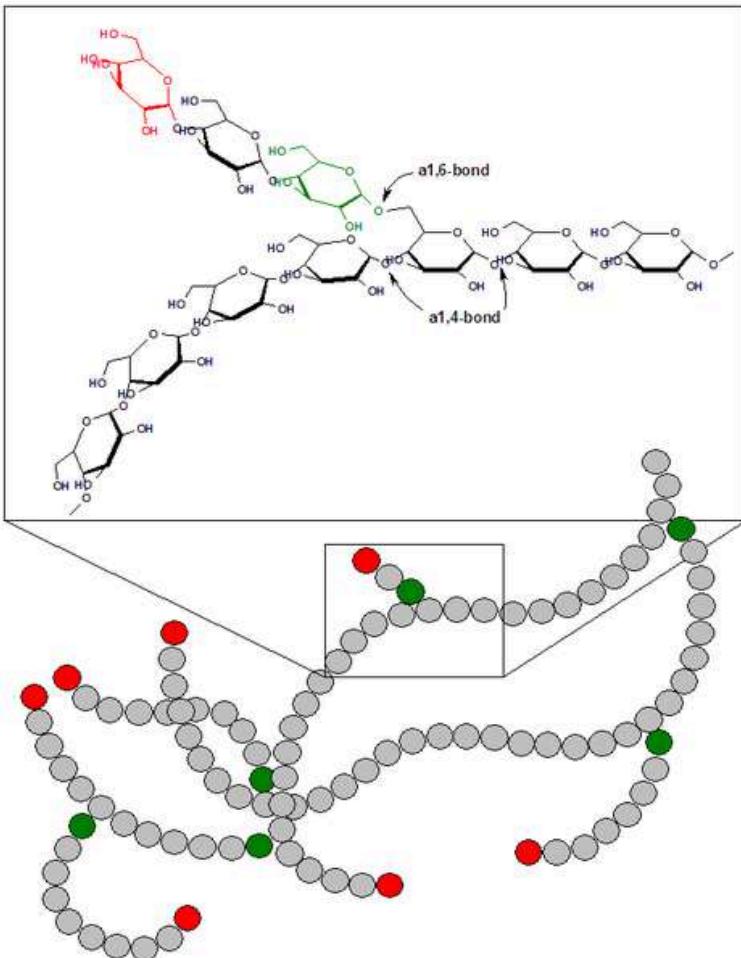


Figure 6.221 Structure of glycogen1

Glycogen is mainly stored in the liver and the muscle. It makes up ~6% of the wet weight of the liver and only 1% of muscle wet weight. However, since we have far more muscle mass in our body, there is 3-4 times more glycogen stored in muscle than in the liver<sup>2</sup>. We have limited glycogen storage capacity. Thus, after a

high-carbohydrate meal, our glycogen stores will reach capacity. After glycogen stores are filled, glucose will have to be metabolized in different ways for it to be stored in a different form.

### Glycogenesis

The synthesis of glycogen from glucose is a process known as glycogenesis. Glucose-6-phosphate is not inserted directly into glycogen in this process. There are a couple of steps before it is incorporated. First, glucose-6-phosphate is converted to glucose-1-phosphate and then converted to uridine diphosphate (UDP)-glucose. UDP-glucose is inserted into glycogen by either the enzyme, glycogen synthase (alpha-1,4 bonds), or the branching enzyme (alpha-1,6 bonds) at the branch points<sup>3</sup>.

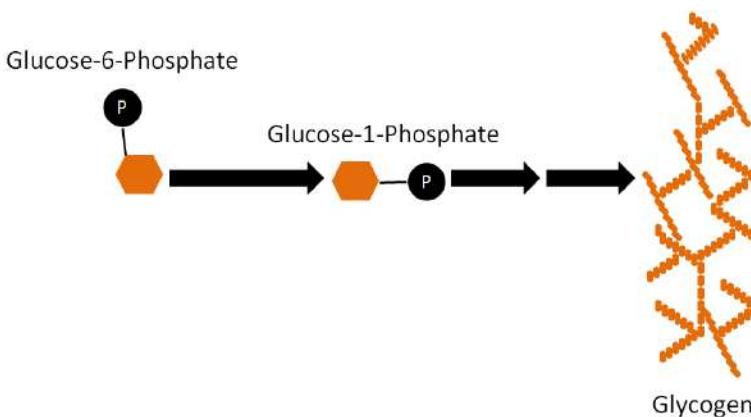


Figure 6.222 Glycogenesis

### Glycogenolysis

The process of liberating glucose from glycogen is known as glycogenolysis. This process is essentially the opposite of glycogenesis with two exceptions: (1) there is no UDP-glucose step, and (2) a different enzyme, glycogen phosphorylase, is involved. Glucose-1-phosphate is cleaved from glycogen by the enzyme, glycogen phosphorylase, which then can be converted to glucose-6-phosphate as shown below<sup>3</sup>.

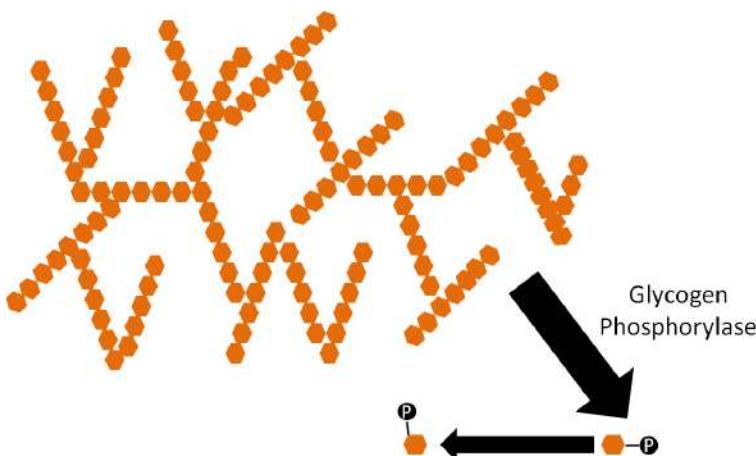


Figure 6.223 Glycogenolysis

## References & Links

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Glycogen.png>
2. Shils ME, Shike M, Ross AC, Caballero B, Cousins RJ, editors. (2006) Modern nutrition in health and disease. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
3. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

## 6.23 Glycolysis

If a person is in a catabolic state or in need of energy, such as during fasting, most glucose-6-phosphate will be used for glycolysis.

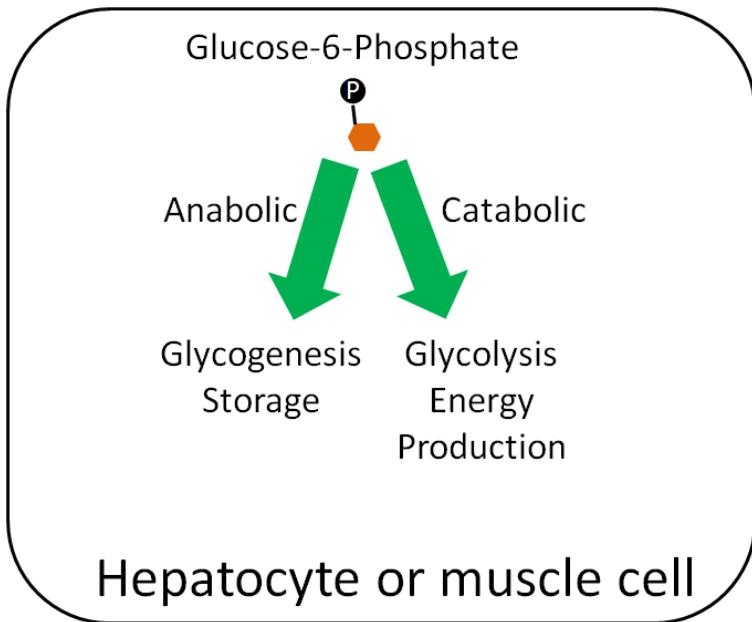


Figure 6.231 The “fork in the road” for glucose-6-phosphate

Glycolysis is the breaking down of one glucose molecule (6 carbons) into two pyruvate molecules (3 carbons). During the process, a net of two ATPs and two NADHs are also produced.

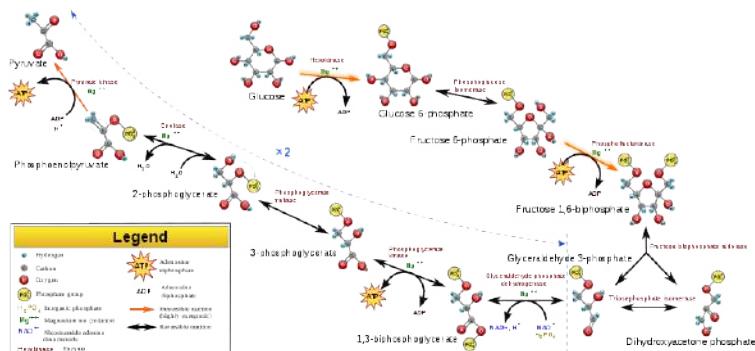


Figure 6.232 Glycolysis1

The following animation, using ball-and-stick models, allows you to control the 3 steps of glycolysis.

---

### Web Links

[Glycolysis Animation](#)

---

### 3 steps of Glycolysis

1. Energy investment step – 2 ATP are added to the 6 carbon molecule.

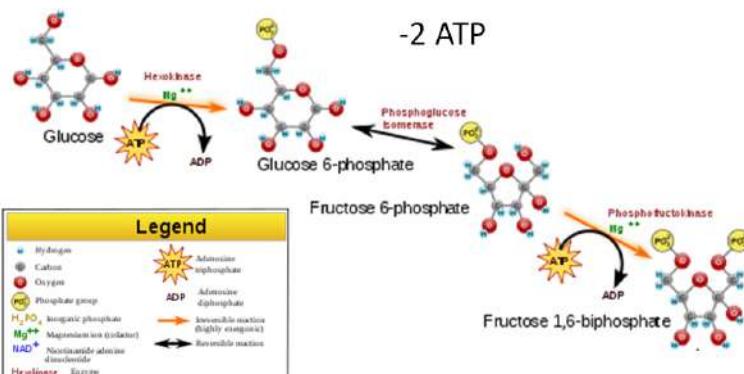


Figure 6.233 Glycolysis step 1, energy investment1

2. Glucose Split – The 6 carbon molecule is split into two 3 carbon molecules.

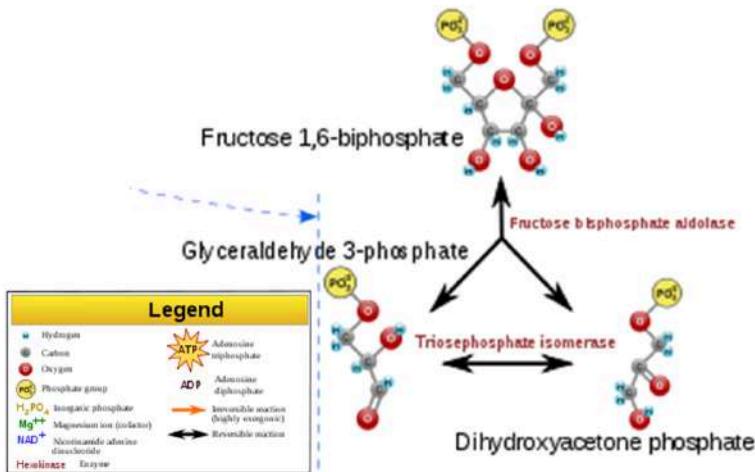


Figure 6.234 Glycolysis step 2, glucose split1

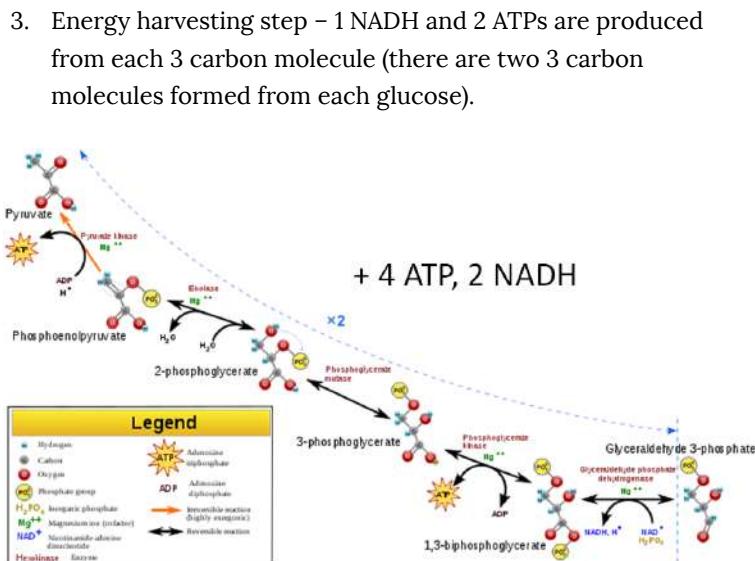


Figure 6.235 Glycolysis step 3, energy harvesting1

Thus, from a molecule of glucose, the harvesting step produces a total of four ATPs and two NADHs. Subtracting the harvesting from the investment step, the net output from one molecule of glucose is two ATPs and two NADHs.

The figure below shows the stages of glycolysis, as well as the transition reaction, citric acid cycle, and electron transport chain that are utilized by cells to produce energy. They are also the focus of the next 3 sections.

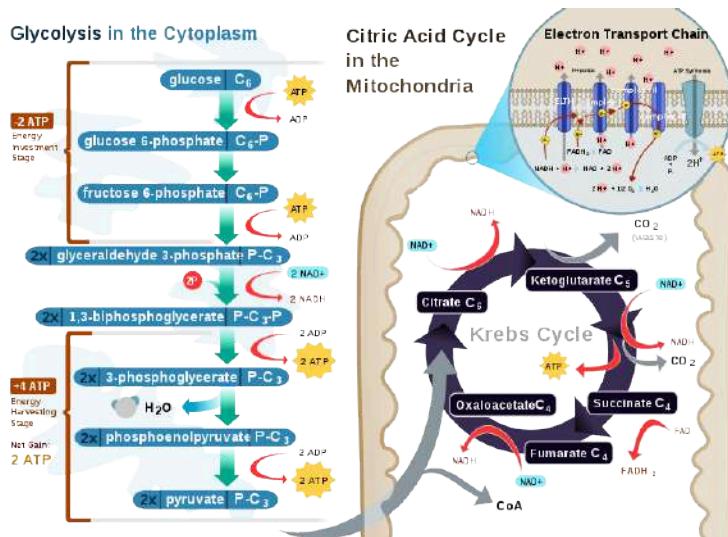


Figure 6.236 Glycolysis, transition reaction, citric acid cycle, and the electron transport chain2

## References & Links

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Glycolysis.svg>
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:CellRespiration.svg>

## Links

Glycolysis Animation – <http://www.science.smith.edu/departments/Biology/Bio231/glycolysis.html>

## 6.24 Transition Reaction

If a person is in a catabolic state, or needs energy, how pyruvate will be used depends on whether adequate oxygen levels are present. If there are adequate oxygen levels (aerobic conditions), pyruvate moves from the cytoplasm, into the mitochondria, and then undergoes the transition reaction. If there are not adequate oxygen levels (anaerobic conditions), pyruvate will instead be used to produce lactate in the cytoplasm. We are going to focus on the aerobic pathway to begin with, then we will address what happens under anaerobic conditions in the anaerobic respiration section.

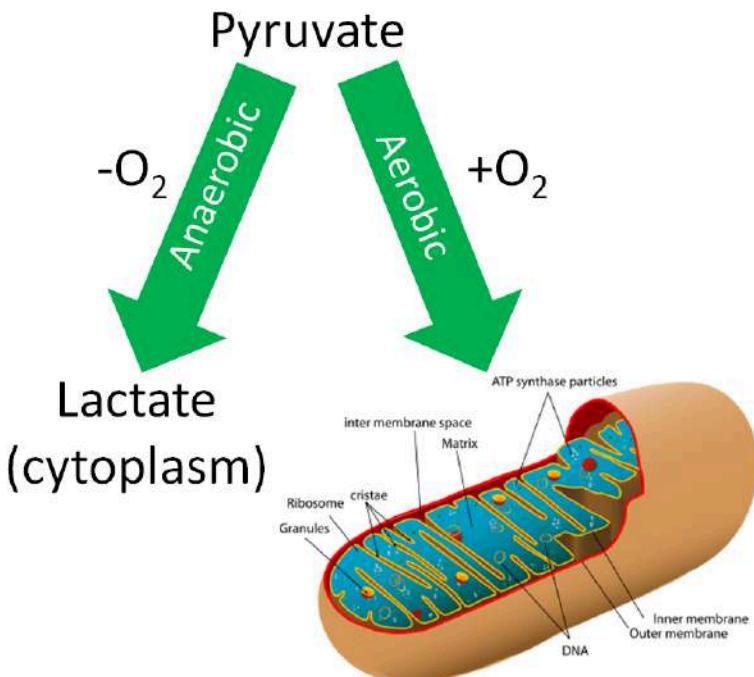


Figure 6.241 Pyruvate fork in the road. What happens depends on whether it is aerobic or anaerobic respiration1

The transition reaction is the transition between glycolysis and the citric acid cycle. The transition reaction converts pyruvate (3 carbons) to acetyl CoA (2 carbons), producing carbon dioxide ( $\text{CO}_2$ ) and a NADH as shown below. The figure below shows the transition reaction with CoA and NAD entering, and acetyl-CoA,  $\text{CO}_2$ , and NADH being produced.



Figure 6.242 Transition reaction2

The acetyl is combined with coenzyme A (CoA) to form acetyl-CoA. The structure of CoA is shown below.

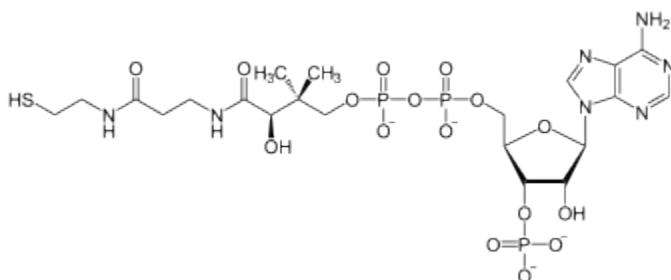


Figure 6.243 Structure of coenzyme A3

Thus, for one molecule of glucose, the transition reaction produces 2 acetyl-CoAs, 2 molecules of CO<sub>2</sub>, and 2 NADHs.

## References & Links

1. [https://simple.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mitochondria#/media/File:Animal\\_mitochondrion\\_diagram\\_en\\_\(edit\).svg](https://simple.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mitochondria#/media/File:Animal_mitochondrion_diagram_en_(edit).svg)
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Citric\\_acid\\_cycle\\_with\\_aconitate\\_2.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Citric_acid_cycle_with_aconitate_2.svg)
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Coenzym\\_A.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Coenzym_A.svg)

### 6.25 The Citric Acid Cycle

Acetyl-CoA is a central point in metabolism, meaning there are a number of ways that it can be used. We're going to continue to consider its use in an aerobic, catabolic state (need energy). Under these conditions, acetyl-CoA will enter the citric acid cycle (aka Krebs Cycle, TCA Cycle). The following figure shows the citric acid cycle.

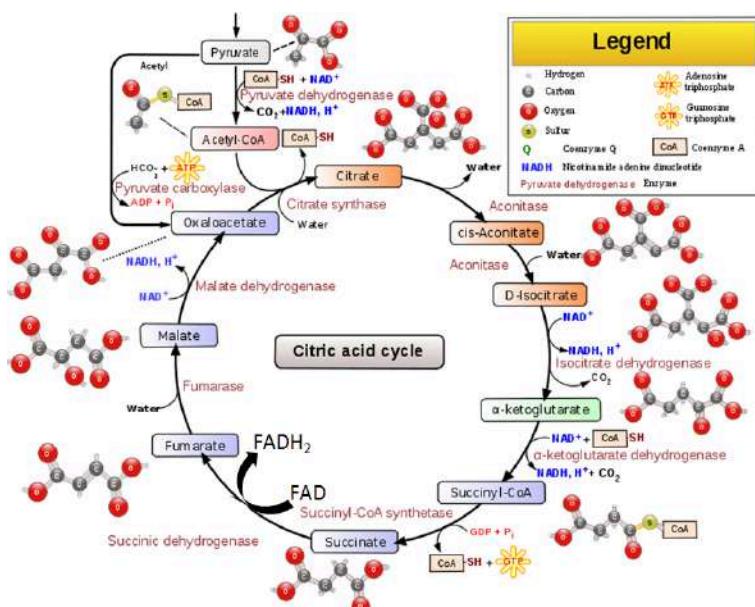


Figure 6.251 The citric acid cycle1

The citric acid cycle begins by acetyl-CoA (2 carbons) combining with oxaloacetate (4 carbons) to form citrate (aka citric acid, 6 carbons). A series of transformations occur before a carbon is given off as carbon dioxide and NADH is produced. This leaves alpha-ketoglutarate (5 carbons). Another carbon is given off as CO<sub>2</sub> to form succinyl CoA (4 carbons) and produce another NADH. In the next step, one guanosine triphosphate (GTP) is produced as succinyl-CoA is converted to succinate. GTP is readily converted to ATP, thus this step is essentially the generation of 1 ATP. In the next step, an FADH<sub>2</sub> is produced along with fumarate. Then, after more steps, another NADH is produced as oxaloacetate is regenerated.

Thus, the net output from one cycle is:

2 CO<sub>2</sub>

3 NADH

1 FADH<sub>2</sub>

1 GTP (converted to ATP)

The two carbons that are given off as CO<sub>2</sub> originally came from acetyl-CoA.

The first video and the animation do a good job of explaining and illustrating how the cycle works. The second video is an entertaining rap about the cycle.

---

### Web Links

Video: Citric acid cycle (0:44)

Citric acid cycle animation

Video: TCA (Kreb's) Cycle Rap (3:01)

---

There are two acetyl-CoAs produced from one glucose, so the net from one glucose is the amount generated from two cycles:

4 CO<sub>2</sub>

6 NADH

2 FADH<sub>2</sub>

2 GTP (converted to ATP)

Through glycolysis, the transition reaction, and the citric acid cycle, multiple NADH and FADH<sub>2</sub> molecules are produced. Under aerobic conditions, these molecules will enter the electron

transport chain to be used to generate energy through oxidative phosphorylation as described in the next section.

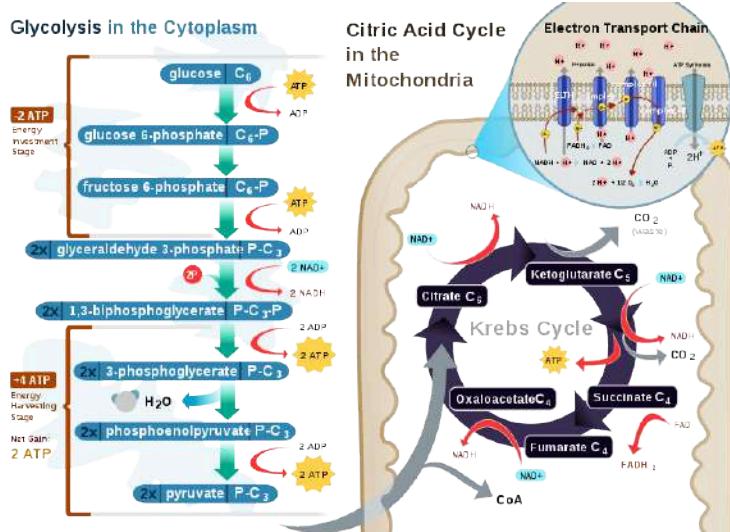


Figure 6.252 The pathways involved in aerobic respiration2

## References & Links

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Citric\\_acid\\_cycle\\_with\\_aconitate\\_2.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Citric_acid_cycle_with_aconitate_2.svg)
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:CellRespiration.svg>

## Link

Citric Acid Cycle Animation – <http://www.wiley.com/college/boyer/0470003790/animations/tca/tca.htm>

## Video

Citric acid cycle – <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hw5nWB0xNOY>

TCA (Kreb's) Cycle Rap – [http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=aMBIs\\_Iw0kE](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=aMBIs_Iw0kE)

## 6.26 Electron Transport Chain

The electron transport chain is located on the inner membrane of the mitochondria, as shown below.

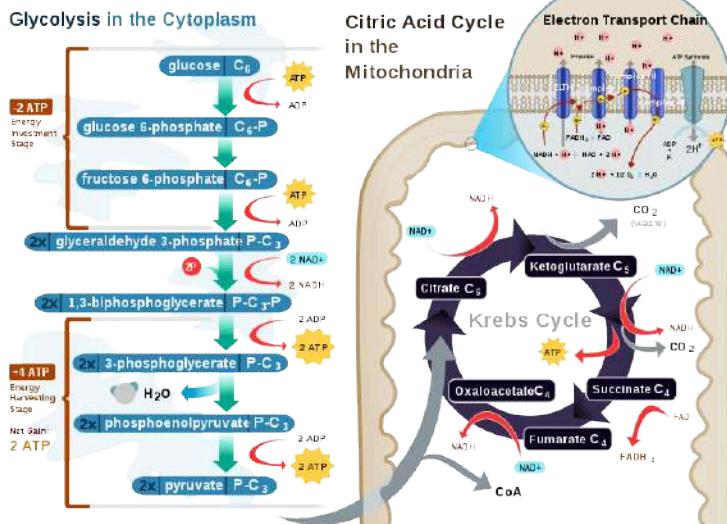


Figure 6.261 The pathways involved in aerobic respiration

The electron transport chain contains a number of electron carriers. These carriers take the electrons from NADH and FADH<sub>2</sub>, pass them down the chain of complexes and electron carriers, and ultimately produce ATP. More specifically, the electron transport chain takes the energy from the electrons on NADH and FADH<sub>2</sub> to pump protons (H<sup>+</sup>) into the intermembrane space. This creates a proton gradient between the intermembrane space (high) and the matrix (low) of the mitochondria. ATP synthase uses the energy from this gradient to synthesize ATP. Oxygen is required for this process because it serves as the final electron acceptor, forming water. Collectively this process is known as oxidative phosphorylation. The

following figure and animation do a nice job of illustrating how the electron transport chain functions.

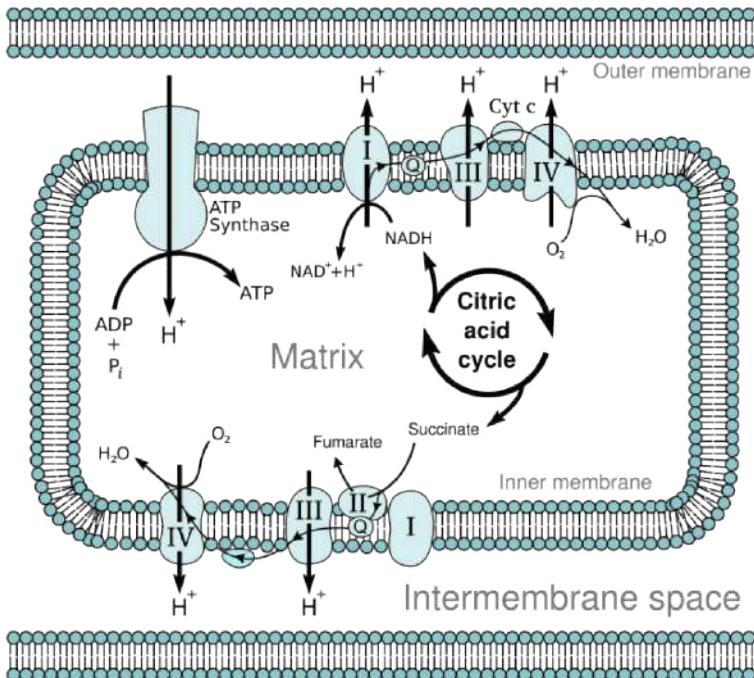


Figure 6.262 Location of the electron transport chain in the mitochondria2

---

### Web Link

---

### ETC Animation

---

2.5 ATP/NADH and 1.5 ATP/FADH<sub>2</sub> are produced in the electron transport chain. Some resources will say 3 ATP/NADH and 2 ATP/FADH<sub>2</sub>, but these values are generally less accepted now.

For one molecule of glucose, the preceding pathways produce:

Glycolysis: 2 NADH

Transition Reaction: 2 NADH

Citric Acid Cycle: 6 NADH, 2 FADH<sub>2</sub>

Total 10 NADH, 2 FADH<sub>2</sub>

Multiply that by the amount of ATP per NADH or FADH<sub>2</sub> to yield:

10 NADH X 2.5 ATP/NADH = 25 ATP

2 FADH<sub>2</sub> X 1.5 ATP/FADH<sub>2</sub> = 3 ATP

Total 28 ATP

The first video does a nice job of illustrating and reviewing the electron transport chain. Note that it uses 3 ATP/NADH and 2 ATP/FADH<sub>2</sub> so the totals from each cycle are different from those listed above. The second video is a great rap video explaining the steps of glucose oxidation.

---

### Web Links

Video: Electron Transport (1:43)

Video: Oxidate it or Love it/Electron to the Next One (3:23)

---

### References & Links

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:CellRespiration.svg>
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Mitochondrial\\_electron\\_transport\\_chain%E2%80%94Etc4.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Mitochondrial_electron_transport_chain%E2%80%94Etc4.svg)

### Link

ETC Animation – <http://www.science.smith.edu/departments/Biology/Bio231/etc.html>

### Videos

Electron Transport Chain – [http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1engJR\\_XWVU&feature=related](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1engJR_XWVU&feature=related)

Oxidate it or Love it/Electron to the Next One – [http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=VCpNk92uswY&feature=response\\_watch](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=VCpNk92uswY&feature=response_watch)

## 6.27 Aerobic Glucose Metabolism Totals

The table below shows the ATP generated from one molecule of glucose in the different metabolic pathways.

Table. 6.271 ATP generated from one molecule of glucose.

Metabolic Pathway	ATP Generated
Glycolysis	2
Citric Acid Cycle	2
Electron Transport Chain	28
Total	32

Notice that the vast majority of ATP is generated by the electron transport chain. If we do the math,  $28/32 \times 100 = 87.5\%$  of the ATP from a molecule of glucose is generated by the electron transport chain. Remember that this is aerobic and requires oxygen to be the final electron acceptor. If 3 ATP/NADH and 2 ATP/FADH<sub>2</sub> are used instead of 2.5 ATP/NADH and 1.5 ATP/FADH<sub>2</sub> that were used above, total ATP and percentage of ATP produced by the electron transport chain would be different. But the takeaway message remains the same. The electron transport chain by far produces the most ATP from one molecule of glucose.

### No References

## 6.28 Anaerobic Respiration

Conditions without oxygen are referred to as anaerobic. In this case, the pyruvate will be converted to lactate in the cytoplasm of the cell as shown below.

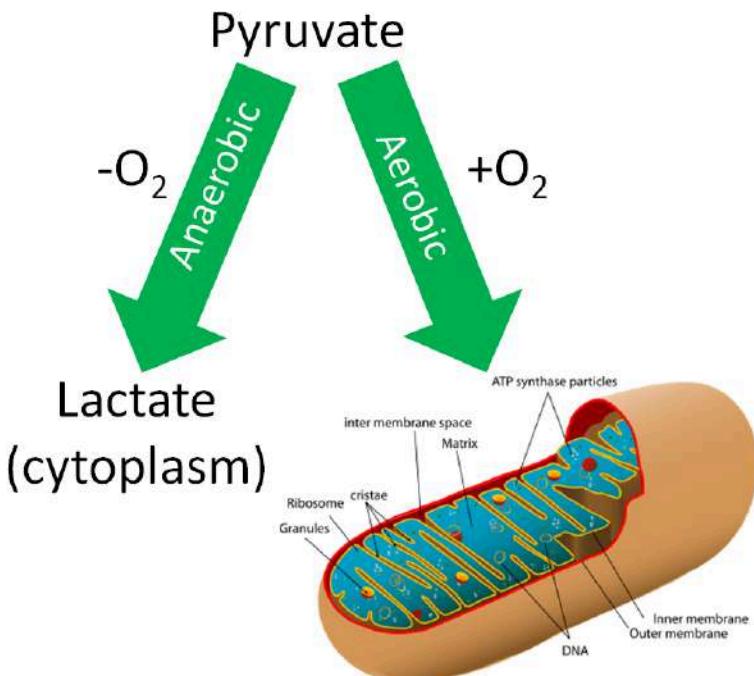


Figure 6.281 Pyruvate fork in the road, what happens depends on whether it is aerobic or anaerobic respiration1

What happens if oxygen isn't available to serve as the final electron acceptor? As shown in the following video, the ETC becomes backed up with electrons and can't accept them from NADH and FADH<sub>2</sub>.

---

#### **Web Link**

Video: What happens when you run out of oxygen? (0:37)

---

This leads to a problem in glycolysis because NAD is needed to accept electrons, as shown below. Without the electron transport chain functioning, all NAD has been reduced to NADH and glycolysis cannot continue to produce ATP from glucose.

### Glycolysis in the Cytoplasm

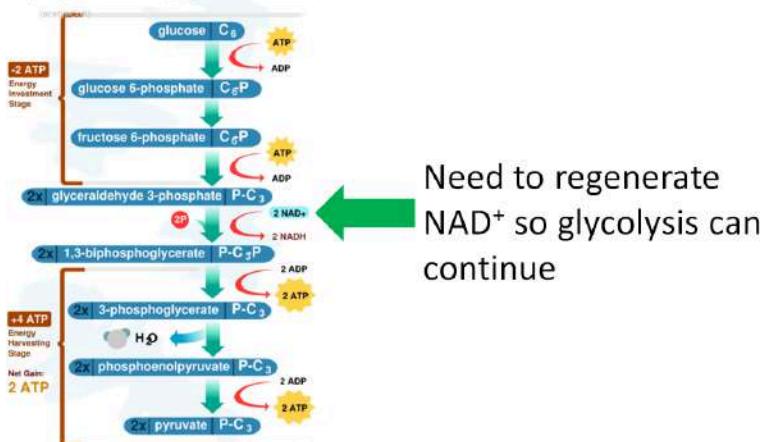


Figure 6.282 Why NAD needs to be regenerated under anaerobic conditions2

Thus, there is a workaround to regenerate NAD by converting pyruvate (pyruvic acid) to lactate (lactic acid) as shown below.

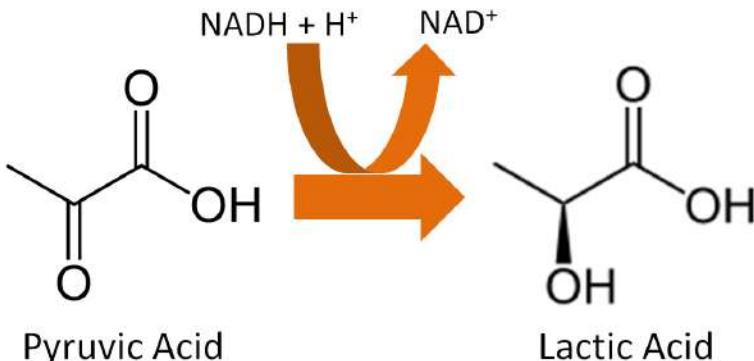


Figure 6.283. The conversion of pyruvic acid to lactic acid regenerates NAD<sup>+</sup>

However, anaerobic respiration only produces 2 ATP per molecule of glucose, compared to 32 ATP for aerobic respiration. The biggest

producer of lactate is the muscle. Through what is known as the Cori cycle, lactate produced in the muscle can be sent to the liver. In the liver, through a process known as gluconeogenesis, glucose can be regenerated and sent back to the muscle to be used again for anaerobic respiration forming a cycle as shown below.

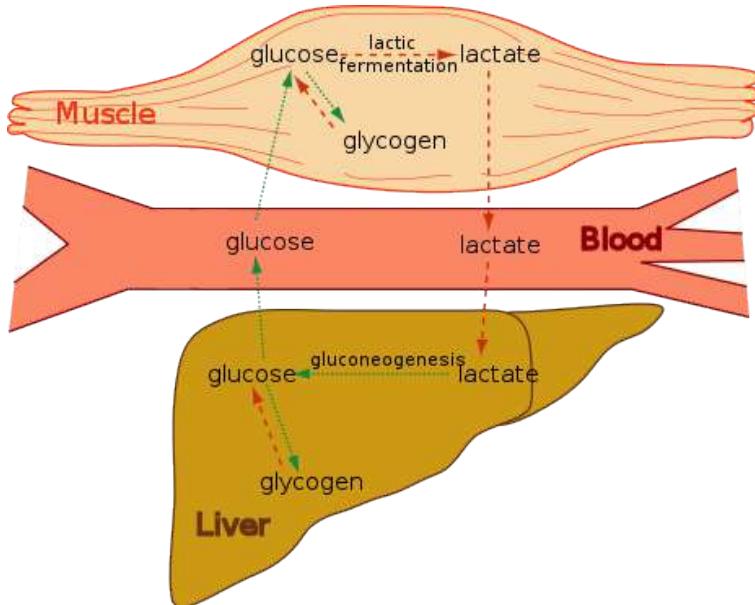


Figure 6.284 The Cori cycle5

It is worth noting that the Cori cycle also functions during times of limited glucose (like fasting) to spare glucose by not completely oxidizing it.

#### References & Links

1. [https://simple.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mitochondria#/media/File:Animal\\_mitochondrion\\_diagram\\_en\\_\(edit\).svg](https://simple.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mitochondria#/media/File:Animal_mitochondrion_diagram_en_(edit).svg)
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:CellRespiration.svg>
3. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pyruvic\\_acid#/media/File:Pyruvic-acid-2D-skeletal.png](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pyruvic_acid#/media/File:Pyruvic-acid-2D-skeletal.png)

4. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lactic\\_acid#/media/File:Lactic-acid-skeletal.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lactic_acid#/media/File:Lactic-acid-skeletal.svg)
5. <https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:CoriCycle-noLang.svg#/media/File:CoriCycle-eng.svg>

## Video

What happens when your run out of oxygen? -  
<http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=StXloIW3Gvg>

## 6.3 Lipid Metabolism Pathways

Five lipid metabolic pathways/processes will be covered in the following subsections:

- 6.31 Lipolysis (Triglyceride Breakdown)
  - Breakdown of triglycerides to glycerol and free fatty acids.
- 6.32 Fatty Acid Oxidation (Beta-Oxidation)
  - Breakdown of fatty acids to acetyl-CoA
- 6.33 De Novo Lipogenesis (Fatty Acid & Triglyceride Synthesis)
  - Synthesis of fatty acids from acetyl-CoA and esterification into triglycerides
- 6.34 Ketogenesis (Ketone Body Synthesis)
  - Synthesis of ketone bodies from acetyl-CoA
- 6.35 Cholesterol Synthesis

### 6.31 Lipolysis (Triglyceride Breakdown)

Lipolysis is the cleavage of triglycerides to glycerol and fatty acids, as shown below.

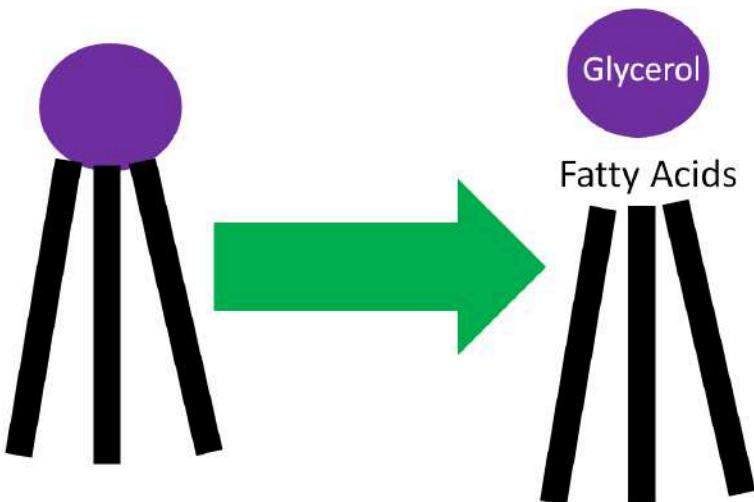


Figure 6.311 Lipolysis

There are two primary lipolysis enzymes:

1. Lipoprotein lipase (LPL)
2. Hormone-sensitive lipase (HSL)

Despite performing the same function, at the adipose level, the enzymes are primarily active for seemingly opposite reasons. In the fed state, LPL on the endothelium of blood vessels cleaves lipoprotein triglycerides into fatty acids so that they can be taken up into adipocytes, for storage as triglycerides, or myocytes where they are primarily used for energy production. This action of LPL on lipoproteins is shown in the two figures below.

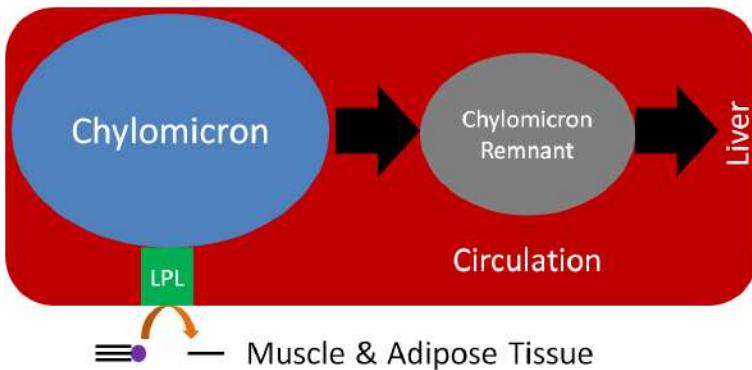


Figure 6.312 Lipoprotein lipase cleaves fatty acids from the chylomicron, forming a chylomicron remnant.

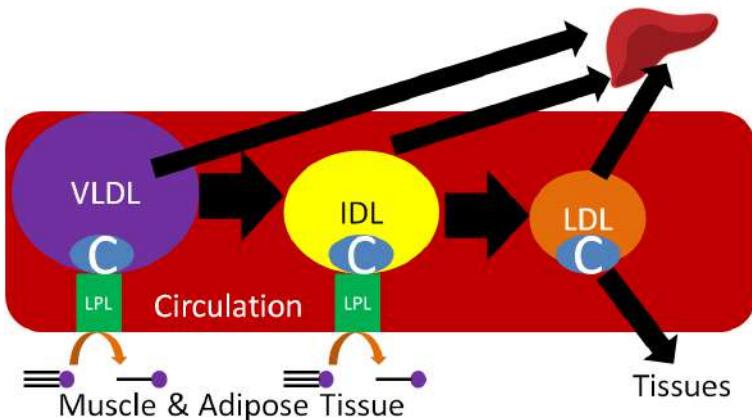


Figure 6.313 Lipoprotein lipase cleaves triglycerides from VLDL and IDL, forming subsequent lipoproteins (IDL and LDL) that contain less triglyceride

HSL is an important enzyme in adipose tissue, which is a major storage site of triglycerides in the body. HSL activity is increased by glucagon and epinephrine (“fight or flight” hormone), and decreased by insulin. Thus, in hypoglycemia (such as during a fast) or a “fight or flight” response, triglycerides in the adipose are cleaved, releasing

fatty acids into circulation that then bind with the transport protein albumin. Thus, HSL is important for mobilizing fatty acids so they can be used to produce energy. The figure below shows how fatty acids can be taken up and used by tissues such as the muscle for energy production1.

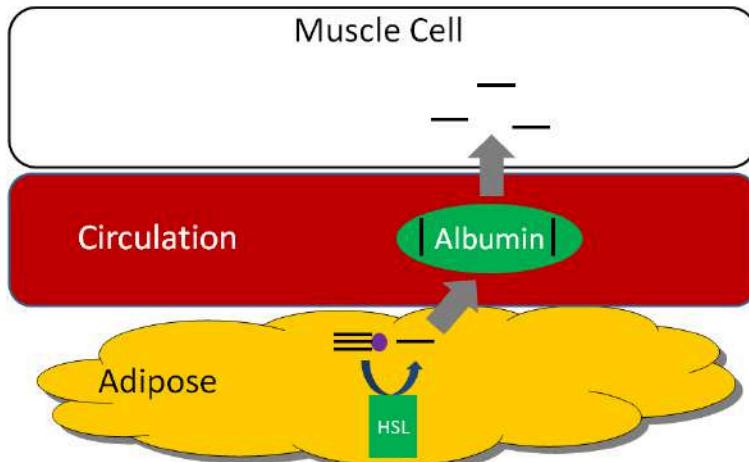


Figure 6.314 Hormone-sensitive lipase

We are not going to focus on glycerol, but it does have two metabolic fates.

1. It can be broken down in glycolysis
2. It can be used to synthesize glucose (gluconeogenesis)

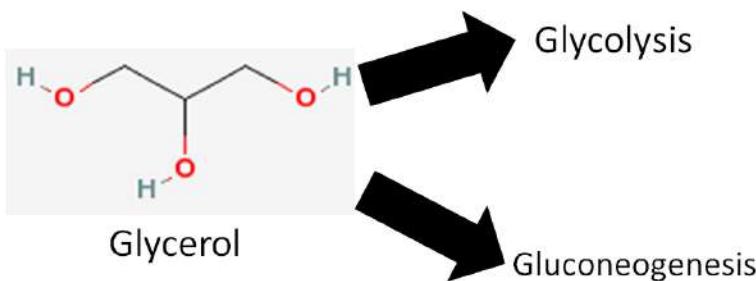


Figure 6.315 Metabolic fates of glycerol

### References & Links

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

## 6.32 Fatty Acid Oxidation (Beta-oxidation)

To generate energy from fatty acids, they must be oxidized. This process occurs in the mitochondria, but long chain fatty acids cannot diffuse across the mitochondrial membrane (similar to absorption into the enterocyte). Carnitine, an amino acid-derived compound, helps shuttle long-chain fatty acids into the mitochondria. The structure of carnitine is shown below.

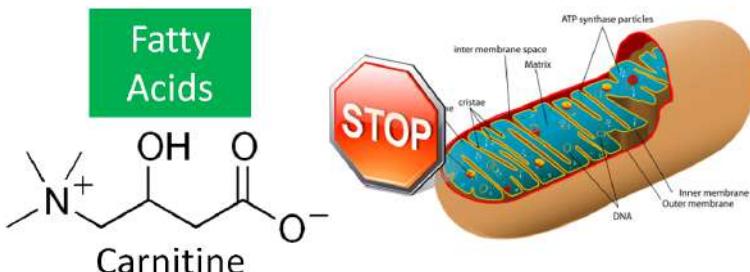


Figure 6.321 Carnitine shuttles fatty acids into the mitochondrial<sup>1,2</sup>

### Fatty Acid Shuttling

As shown below, there are two enzymes involved in this process: carnitine palmitoyltransferase I (CPTI) and carnitine palmitoyltransferase II (CPTII). CPTI is located on the outer mitochondrial membrane, CPTII is located on the inner mitochondrial membrane. The fatty acid is first activated by addition of a CoA (forming acyl-CoA), then CPTI adds carnitine. Acyl-Carnitine is then transported into the mitochondrial matrix with the assistance of the enzyme translocase. In the matrix, CPTII removes carnitine from the activated fatty acid (acyl-CoA). Carnitine is recycled back into the cytosol to be used again, as shown in the figure and animation below.

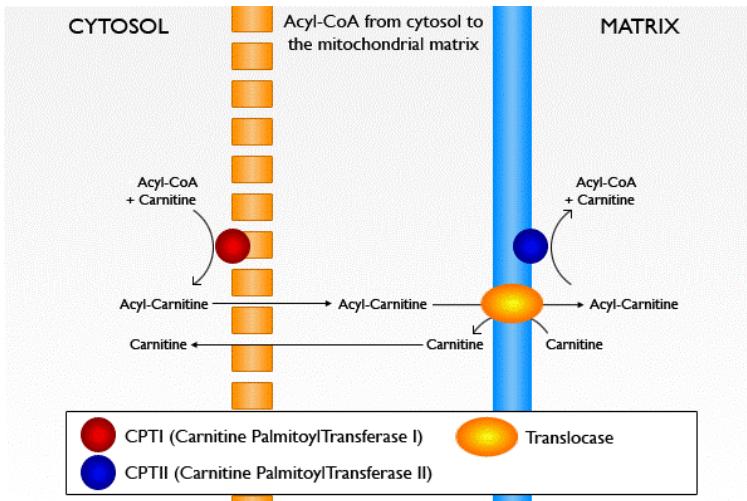


Figure 6.322 Transfer of fatty acids into the mitochondria3

---

### Web Link

[Fatty acid transfer from cytoplasm to mitochondria](#)

---

### Fatty Acid Activation

As shown below, the first step of fatty acid oxidation is activation. A CoA molecule is added to the fatty acid to produce acyl-CoA, converting ATP to AMP in the process. Note that in this step, the ATP is converted to AMP, not ADP. Thus, activation uses the equivalent of 2 ATP molecules<sup>4</sup>.

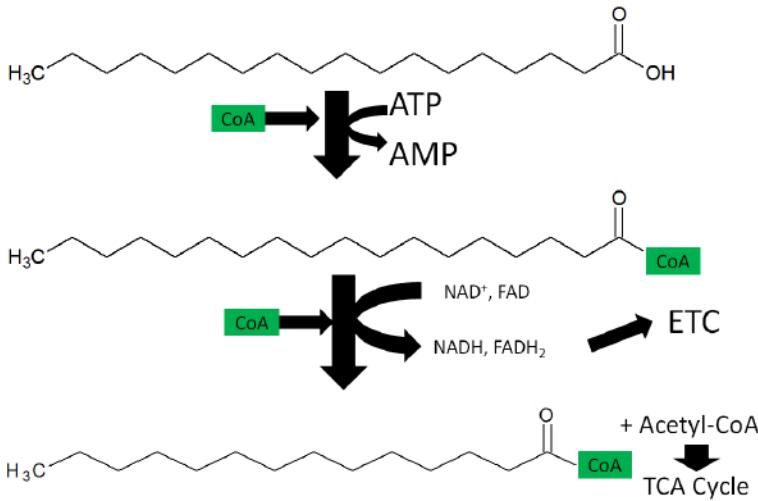


Figure 6.323 Fatty Acid Oxidation

### Fatty Acid Oxidation

Fatty acid oxidation is also referred to as beta-oxidation because 2 carbon units are cleaved off at the beta-carbon position (2nd carbon from the acid end) of an activated fatty acid. The cleaved 2 carbon unit forms acetyl-CoA and produces an activated fatty acid (acyl-CoA) with 2 fewer carbons, acetyl-CoA, NADH, and FADH<sub>2</sub>.

To completely oxidize the 18-carbon fatty acid above, 8 cycles of beta-oxidation have to occur. This will produce:

9 acetyl-CoAs

8 NADH

8 FADH<sub>2</sub>

Those 9 acetyl-CoAs can continue into the citric acid cycle, where they can produce:

9 GTP

9 FADH<sub>2</sub>

27 NADH

The products of the complete oxidation of a fatty acid are shown below.

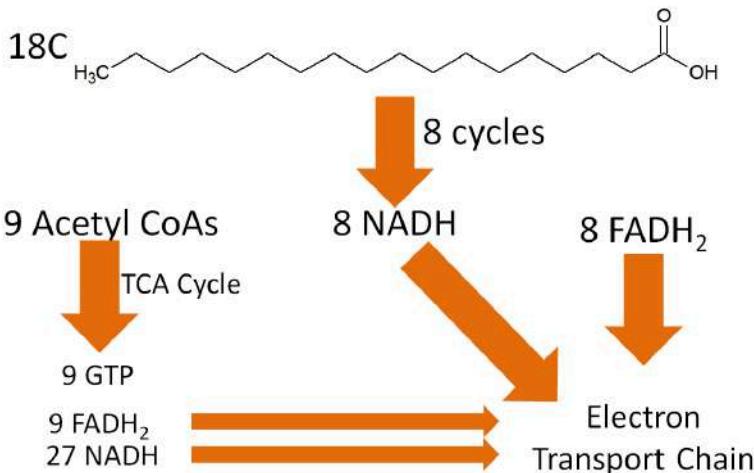


Figure 6.324 Complete oxidation of a 18 carbon (C) fatty acid

Adding up the NADH and FADH<sub>2</sub>, the electron transport chain ATP production from beta-oxidation and the citric acid cycle looks like this:

NADH

$$8 \text{ (beta-oxidation)} + 27 \text{ (TCA)} = 35 \text{ NADH} \times 2.5 \text{ ATP/NADH} = 87.5 \text{ ATP}$$

FADH<sub>2</sub>

$$8 \text{ (beta-oxidation)} + 9 \text{ (TCA)} = 17 \text{ FADH}_2 \times 1.5 \text{ ATP/FADH}_2 = 25.5 \text{ ATP}$$

GTP

$$9 \text{ GTP} = 9 \text{ ATP}$$

Total ATP from complete oxidation of an 18 carbon fatty acid:

$$87.5 + 25.5 + 9 = 122 \text{ ATP}$$

Subtract 2 ATP (ATP→AMP) required for activation of the fatty acid:

$$122 - 2 = 120 \text{ Net ATP}$$

Compared to glucose (32 ATP) you can see that there is far more energy stored in a fatty acid. This is because fatty acids are in a more

reduced form and thus, they yield 9 kcal/g instead of 4 kcal/g like carbohydrates<sup>4</sup>.

The following animation reviews lipolysis and beta-oxidation.

---

#### **Web Link**

Fatty Acid Metabolism

---

#### **References & Links**

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Carnitine\\_structure.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Carnitine_structure.png)
2. [https://simple.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mitochondria#/media/File:Animal\\_mitochondrion\\_diagram\\_en\\_\(edit\).svg](https://simple.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mitochondria#/media/File:Animal_mitochondrion_diagram_en_(edit).svg)
3. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Carnitine\\_palmitoyltransferase\\_I#/media/File:Acyl-CoA\\_from\\_cytosol\\_to\\_the\\_mitochondrial\\_matrix.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Carnitine_palmitoyltransferase_I#/media/File:Acyl-CoA_from_cytosol_to_the_mitochondrial_matrix.svg)
4. Berg JM, Tymoczko JL, Stryer L. (2002) Biochemistry. New York, NY: W.H. Freeman and Company.

#### **Links**

Fatty acid transfer from cytoplasm to mitochondrion –  
[http://brookscole.cengage.com/chemistry\\_d/templates/student\\_resources/shared\\_resources/animations/carnitine/carnitine1.html](http://brookscole.cengage.com/chemistry_d/templates/student_resources/shared_resources/animations/carnitine/carnitine1.html)

Fatty Acid Metabolism – [http://www.wiley.com/legacy/college/boyer/0470003790/animations/fatty\\_acid\\_metabolism/fatty\\_acid\\_metabolism.htm](http://www.wiley.com/legacy/college/boyer/0470003790/animations/fatty_acid_metabolism/fatty_acid_metabolism.htm)

## **6.33 De novo Lipogenesis (Fatty Acid Synthesis)**

De novo in Latin means “from the beginning.” Thus, *de novo* lipogenesis is the synthesis of fatty acids, beginning with acetyl-CoA. Acetyl-CoA has to first move out of the mitochondria, where

it is then converted to malonyl-CoA (3 carbons). Malonyl-CoA then is combined with another acetyl-CoA to form a 4 carbon fatty acid (1 carbon is given off as CO<sub>2</sub>). The addition of 2 carbons is repeated through a similar process 7 times to produce a 16 carbon fatty acid.

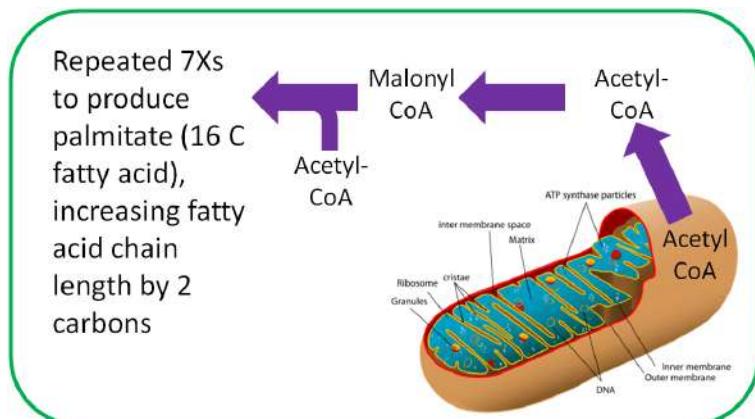


Figure 6.331 Fatty acid synthesis2

Most fatty acids synthesized will be esterified into triglycerides for storage.

### References

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mitochondrion>

## 6.34 Ketone Body Synthesis

In cases where there is not enough glucose available for the brain (very low carbohydrate diets, starvation), the liver can use acetyl-CoA, primarily from fatty acids (but also certain amino acids), to synthesize ketone bodies (ketogenesis). The structures of the three

ketone bodies; acetone, acetoacetic acid, and beta-hydroxybutyric acid, are shown below.

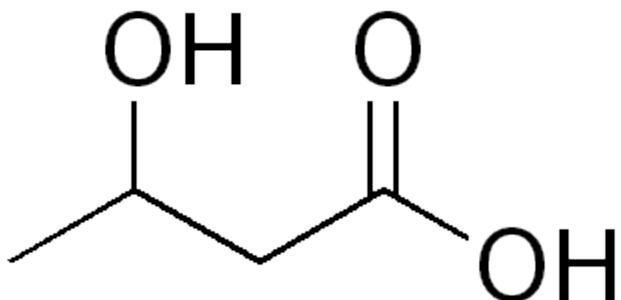
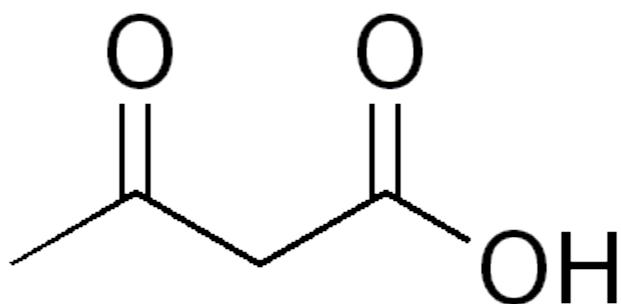
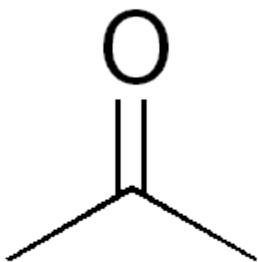


Figure 6.341 The three ketone bodies from top to bottom (acetone, acetoacetic acid, and beta-hydroxybutyric acid)

After they are synthesized in the liver, ketone bodies are released into circulation where they can travel to the brain. The brain converts the ketone bodies to acetyl-CoA that can then enter the citric acid cycle for ATP production, as shown below.

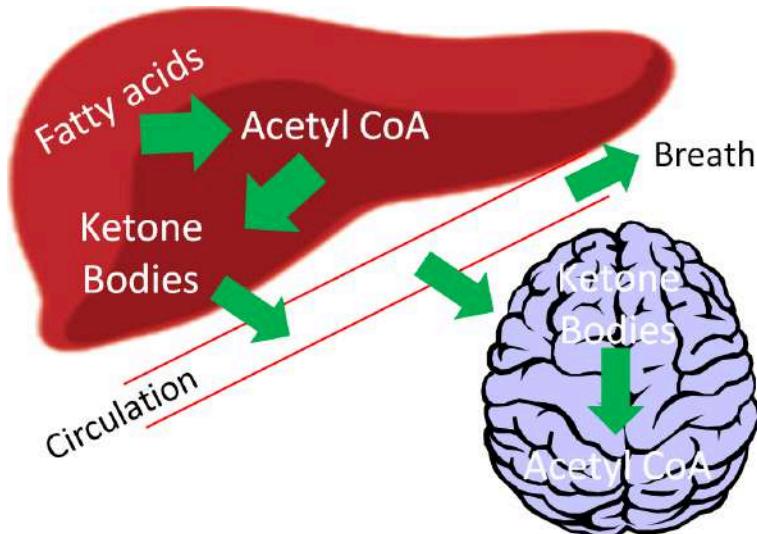


Figure 6.342 The production, release, use, or exhalation of ketone bodies<sup>2</sup>

If there are high levels of ketones secreted, it results in a condition known as ketosis or ketoacidosis. The high level of ketones in the blood decreases the blood's pH, meaning it becomes more acidic. It is debatable whether mild ketoacidosis is harmful, but severe ketoacidosis can be lethal. One symptom of this condition is fruity or sweet smelling breath, which is due to increased acetone exhalation.

#### References & Links

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Ketone\\_bodies.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Ketone_bodies.png)
2. <http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Liver.svg>

## 6.35 Cholesterol Synthesis

Acetyl-CoA is also used to synthesize cholesterol. As shown below, there are a large number of reactions and enzymes involved in cholesterol synthesis.

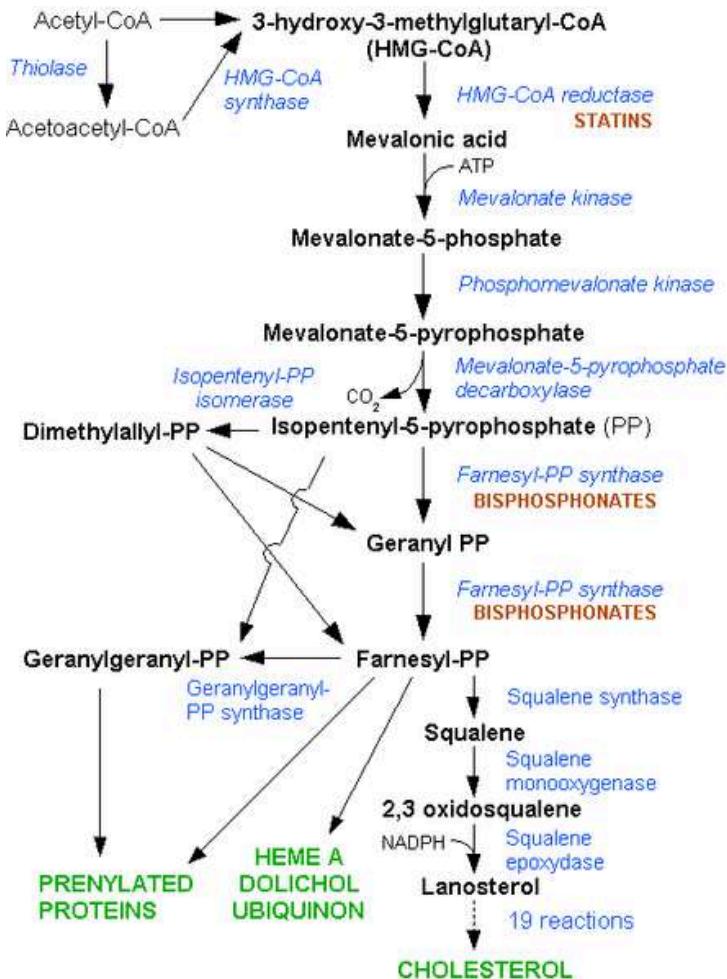


Figure 6.351 Cholesterol synthesis pathway<sup>1</sup>

Simplifying this, acetyl-CoA is converted to acetoacetyl-CoA (4 carbons) before forming 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-CoA (HMG-CoA). HMG-CoA is converted to mevalonate by the enzyme HMG-CoA reductase. This enzyme is important because it is the rate-limiting enzyme in cholesterol synthesis.

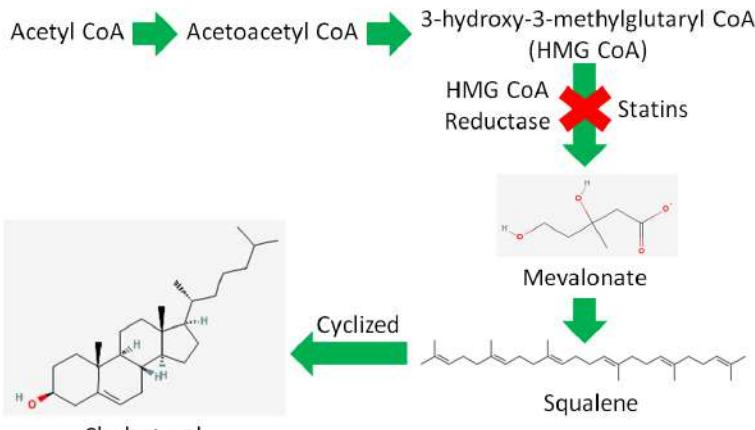


Figure 6.352 Cholesterol synthesis simplified2

A rate-limiting enzyme is like a bottleneck in a highway, as shown below, that determines the flow of traffic past it.

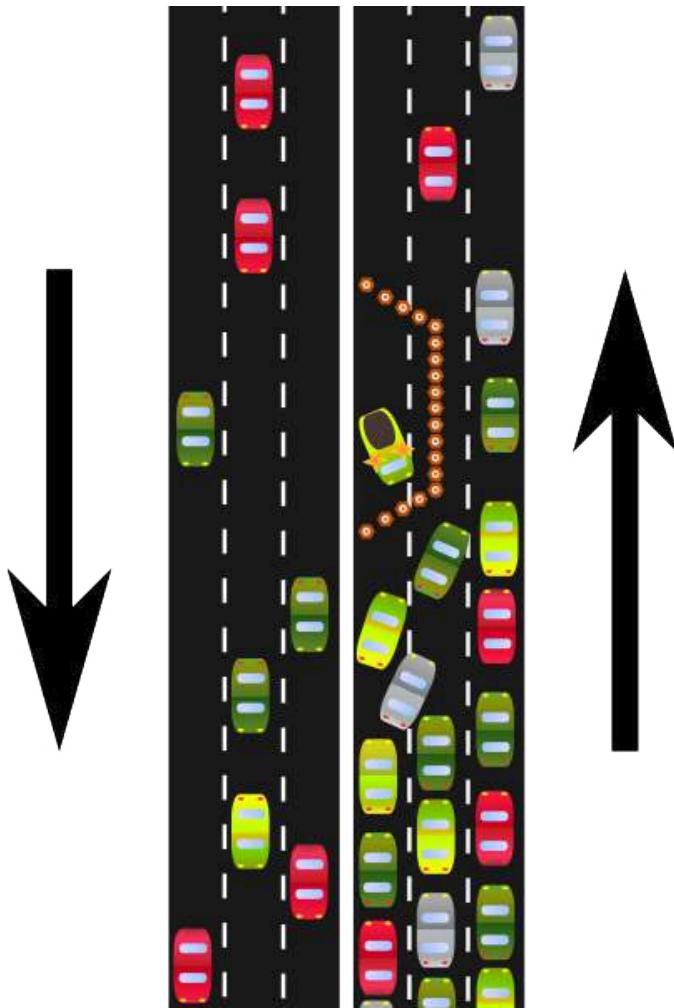


Figure 6.353 Bottleneck in traffic3

Rate-limiting enzymes limit the rate at which a metabolic pathway proceeds. The pharmaceutical industry has taken advantage of this knowledge to lower people's LDL levels with drugs known as statins. These drugs inhibit HMG-CoA reductase and thus decrease

cholesterol synthesis. Less cholesterol leads to lower LDL levels, and hopefully a lower risk of cardiovascular disease.

The brand name of the statins approved for use in the US are<sup>4</sup>:

Lipitor

Lescol

Mevacor

Pravachol

Crestor

Zocor

Livalo

The cholesterol guidelines have changed dramatically from the previous focus on LDL and HDL target levels. Now statins are prescribed at set therapeutic doses based on assessed cardiovascular risk rather than based off LDL and HDL target levels. It is also recommended that only statins that have been shown to decrease cardiovascular disease risk be used, some have only been shown to improve LDL/HDL levels. The link below is to the online calculator that can be used to estimate individual's risk. The third link talks about a drug that was effective at lowering LDL, increasing HDL, but did not improve cardiovascular disease outcomes. This finding is consistent with the new cholesterol guidelines deemphasizing HDL and LDL target levels. The fourth link below describes some new cholesterol lowering drugs, which have shown some promising preliminary results.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Check.Change.Control Heart Attack & Stroke Risk Calculator](http://Check.Change.Control)

---

The body synthesizes approximately 1 gram of cholesterol a day, whereas it is recommended that we consume less than 0.3 gram a day. A number of tissues synthesize cholesterol, with the liver accounting for ~20% of synthesis. The intestine is believed to be the most active among the other tissues that are responsible for the other 80% of cholesterol synthesis<sup>5</sup>.

#### **References & Links**

1. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Statin#/media/File:HMG-CoA\\_reductase\\_pathway.png](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Statin#/media/File:HMG-CoA_reductase_pathway.png)
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Squalene.svg>
3. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Bottleneck.svg>
4. <http://www.medicinenet.com/statins/page3.htm>
5. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

## Links

Check.Change.Control Heart Attack & Stroke Risk Calculator –  
<https://ccccalculator.ccctracker.com/>

## 6.4 Protein Metabolism

Section 2.22 described how proteins are synthesized. Thus, this section will focus on how proteins and amino acids are broken down. There are four protein metabolic pathways that will be covered in this section:

### **Transamination**

-transfer of an amino group from one amino acid to another

### **Deamination**

-removal of an amino group, normally from an amino acid.

### **Gluconeogenesis**

-synthesis of glucose from a non-carbohydrate source.

### **Protein Turnover/Degradation**

-liberation of amino acids from proteins.

Subsections:

6.41 Transamination, Deamination, & Ammonia Removal as Urea

6.42 Gluconeogenesis

6.43 Protein Turnover/Degradation

## 6.41 Transamination, Deamination & Ammonia Removal as Urea

The first step in catabolizing, or breaking down, an amino acid is the removal of its amine group (-NH<sub>3</sub>). Amine groups can be transferred or removed through transamination or deamination, respectively.

### Transamination

Transamination is the transfer of an amine group from an amino acid to a keto acid (amino acid without an amine group), thus creating a new amino acid and keto acid as shown below.

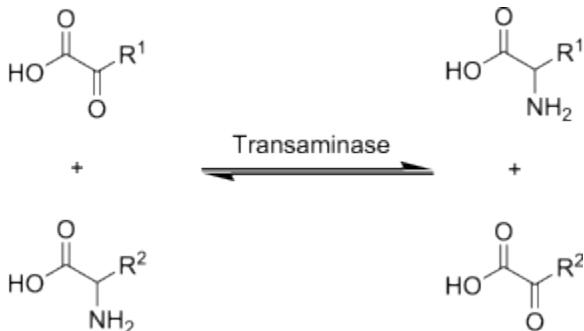


Figure 6.411 Generic transamination reaction where the top keto acid is converted to an amino acid, while the bottom amino acid is converted to a keto acid

Keto acids and/or carbon skeletons are what remains after amino acids have had their nitrogen group removed by deamination or transamination. Transamination is used to synthesize nonessential amino acids.

### Deamination

Deamination is the removal of the amine group as ammonia (NH<sub>3</sub>), as shown below.

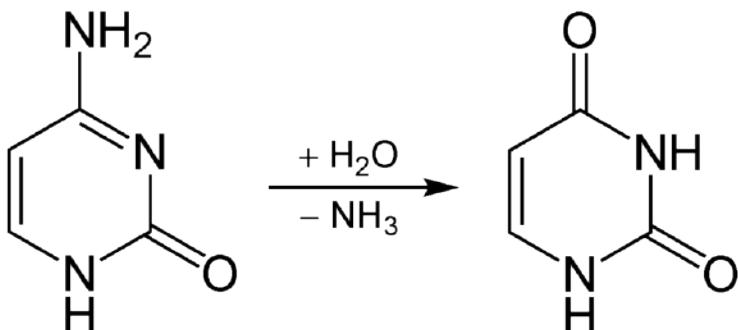


Figure 6.412 Deamination of cytosine to uracil (nucleotides, not amino acids)<sup>2</sup>

The potential problem with deamination is that too much ammonia is toxic, causing a condition known as hyperammonemia. The symptoms of this condition are shown in the following figure.

## Symptoms of Hyperammonemia

### General

- Growth retardation
- Hypothermia

### Muscular/Neurologic

- Poor coordination
- Dysdiadochokinesia
- Hypotonia or hypertonia
- Ataxia
- Tremor
- Seizures
- Decorticate or decerebrate posturing

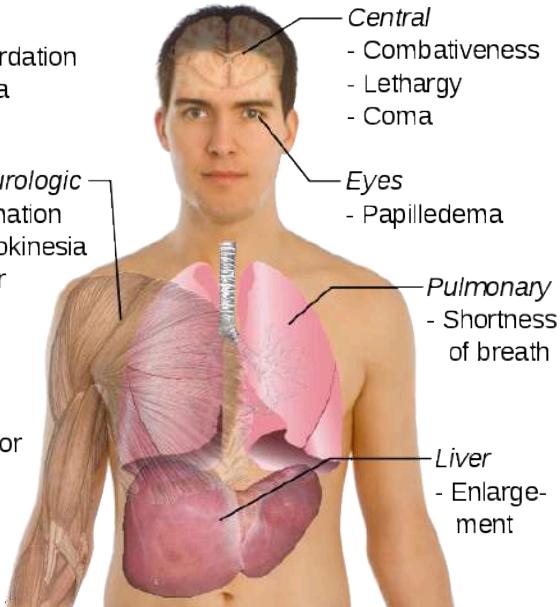


Figure 6.413 Symptoms of Hyperammonemia3

Our body has a method to safely package ammonia in a less toxic form to be excreted. This safer compound is urea, which is produced by the liver using 2 molecules of ammonia ( $\text{NH}_3$ ) and 1 molecule of carbon dioxide ( $\text{CO}_2$ ). Most urea is then secreted from the liver and incorporated into urine in the kidney to be excreted from the body, as shown below.

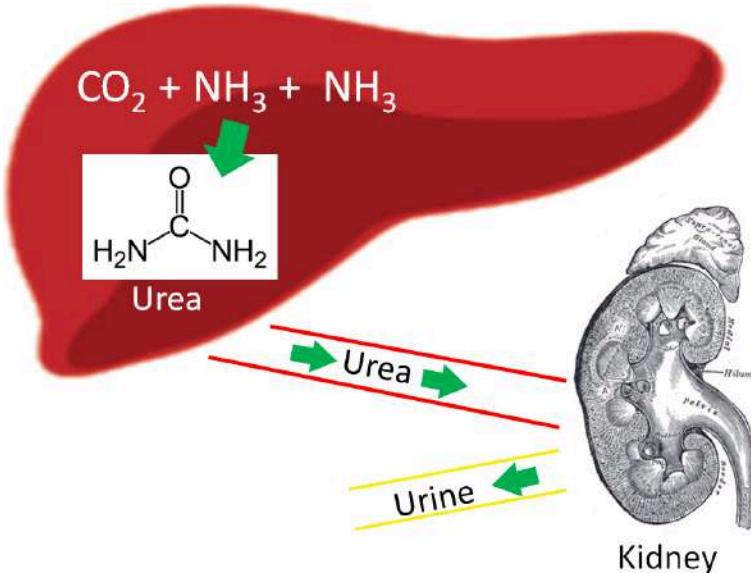


Figure 6.414 Production of urea helps to safely remove ammonia from the body<sup>4-6</sup>

## References

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Transaminierung.svg>
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:DesaminierungCtoU.png>
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Symptoms\\_of\\_hyperammonemia.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Symptoms_of_hyperammonemia.svg)
4. <http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Liver.svg>
5. [http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/b0/Kidney\\_section.jpg](http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/b0/Kidney_section.jpg)
6. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Urea.png>

## 6.42 Gluconeogenesis

Gluconeogenesis is the synthesis of glucose from noncarbohydrate sources. Certain amino acids can be used for this process, which is the reason that this section is included here instead of the carbohydrate metabolism section. Gluconeogenesis is glycolysis in reverse with an oxaloacetate workaround, as shown below. Remember oxaloacetate is also an intermediate in the citric acid cycle.

### Glycolysis in the Cytoplasm

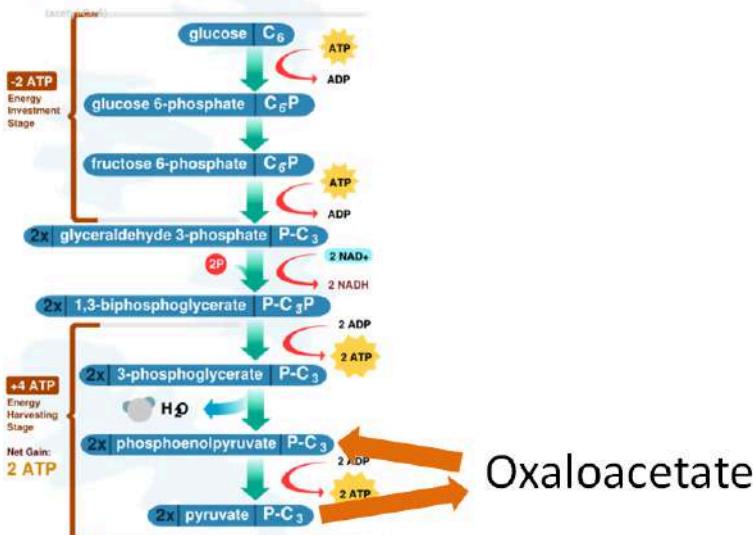


Figure 6.421 Gluconeogenesis is glycolysis in reverse with an oxaloacetate workaround

Not all amino acids can be used for gluconeogenesis. The ones that can be used are termed glucogenic (red), and can be converted to either pyruvate or a citric acid cycle intermediate. Other amino acids can only be converted to either acetyl-CoA or acetoacetyl-CoA, which cannot be used for gluconeogenesis. However, acetyl-

CoA or acetoacetyl-CoA can be used for ketogenesis to synthesize the ketone bodies, acetone and acetoacetate. Thus, these amino acids are instead termed ketogenic (green).

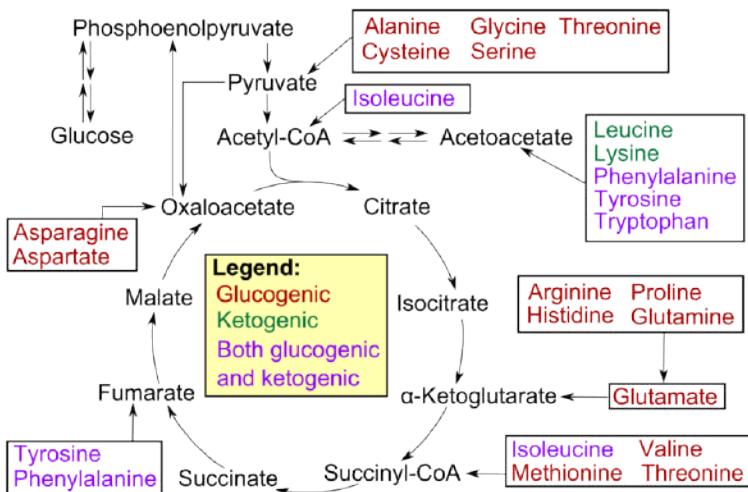


Figure 6.422 Glucogenic (red), ketogenic (green), and glucogenic and ketogenic amino acids<sup>2</sup>

Fatty acids and ketogenic amino acids cannot be used to synthesize glucose. The transition reaction is a one-way reaction, meaning that acetyl-CoA cannot be converted back to pyruvate. As a result, fatty acids can't be used to synthesize glucose, because beta-oxidation produces acetyl-CoA. Even if acetyl-CoA enters the citric acid cycle, the carbons from it will eventually be completely oxidized and given off as CO<sub>2</sub>. The net result is that these carbons are not readily available to serve as keto-acids or carbon skeletons for amino acid synthesis. Some amino acids can be either glucogenic or ketogenic, depending on how they are metabolized. These amino acids are referred to as glucogenic and ketogenic (pink).

## References

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:CellRespiration.svg>

2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Amino\\_acid\\_catabolism.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Amino_acid_catabolism.png)

## 6.43 Protein Turnover/Degradation

Proteins serve a number of functions in the body, but what happens when cells, enzymes, etc. have completed their lifespan? They are recycled.



Figure 6.431 Recycling symbol1

Proteins are broken down to amino acids that can be used to

synthesize new proteins. There are 3 main systems of protein degradation:

1. Ubiquitin-proteasome degradation
2. Lysosome degradation
3. Calpain degradation

### 1. Ubiquitin-Proteasome Degradation

Proteins that are damaged or abnormal are tagged with the protein ubiquitin. There are multiple protein subunits involved in the process (E1-E3), but the net result is the production of a protein (substrate) with a ubiquitin tail, as shown below.

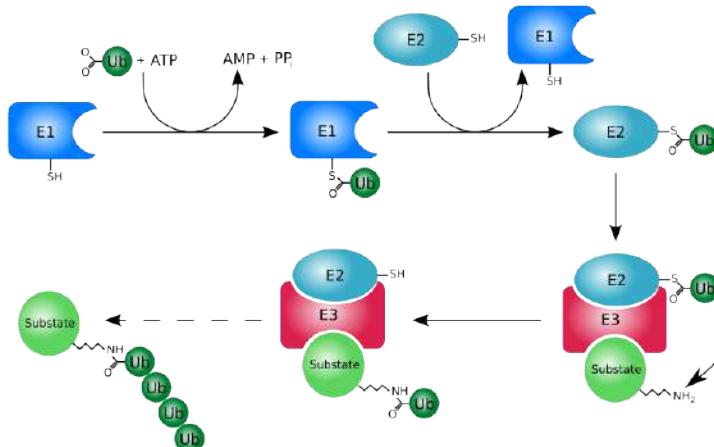


Figure 6.432 Ubiquitination of a protein (substrate)2

This protein then moves to the proteasome for degradation. Think of the proteasome like a garbage disposal. The ubiquitinated “trash” protein is inserted into the garbage disposal where it is broken

down into its component parts (primarily amino acids). The following video illustrates this process nicely.

---

#### Web Link

Video: Proteasome Degradation (0:44)

---

## 2. Lysosome Degradation

The lysosomes are organelles that are found in cells. They contain a number of proteases that degrade proteins.

#### Cell Structure

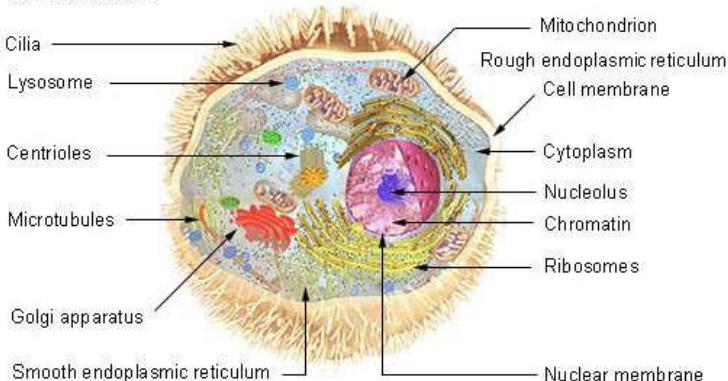


Figure 6.431 Lysosomes are organelles within the cell3

## 3. Calpain Degradation

The last degradation system is the calpain system, which is not as well understood, but does require calcium.

#### References & Links

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Recycling\\_symbol.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Recycling_symbol.svg)
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Ubiquitylation.svg>
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Illu\\_cell\\_structure.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Illu_cell_structure.jpg)

## Video

Proteasome Degradation - <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=w2Qd6v-4Ilc>

## 6.5 Alcohol Metabolism

The other energy source is alcohol. The alcohol we consume contains two carbons and is known as ethanol.

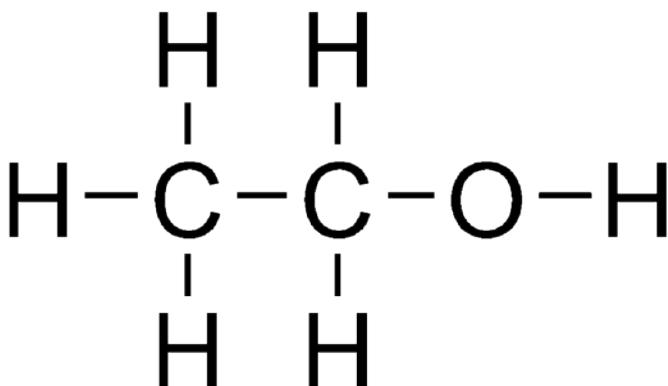


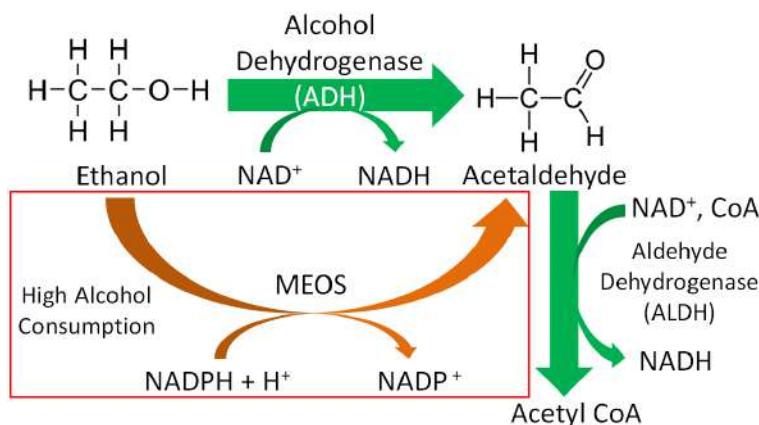
Figure 6.51 Structure of ethanol1

Ethanol is passively absorbed by simple diffusion into the enterocyte. Ethanol metabolism occurs primarily in the liver, but 10-30% is estimated to occur in the stomach<sup>2</sup>. For the average person, the liver can metabolize the amount of ethanol in one drink (1/2 ounce) per hour<sup>3</sup>. There are three ways that alcohol is metabolized in the body.

1. Catalase – an enzyme that we will cover again in the

antioxidants section. Catalase is estimated to metabolize less than 2% of ethanol, so it is not shown below or discussed further<sup>4</sup>.

- Alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH) – This is the major ethanol-metabolizing enzyme that converts ethanol and NAD to acetaldehyde and NADH, respectively. Aldehyde dehydrogenase (ALDH) uses NAD, CoA, and acetaldehyde to create acetyl-CoA and to produce another NADH. The action of ADH is shown in the figure below.



MEOS – Microsomal Ethanol Oxidizing System

Figure 6.52 Ethanol Metabolism<sup>1,5</sup>

- Microsomal ethanol oxidizing system (MEOS) – When a person consumes a large amount of alcohol the MEOS, is the overflow pathway, that also metabolizes ethanol to acetaldehyde. It is estimated that the MEOS metabolizes 20% of ethanol<sup>3</sup>, and it differs from ADH in that it uses ATP to convert reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH + H<sup>+</sup>) to NADP<sup>+</sup>. The action of the MEOS is shown in the figure above.

At high intakes or with repeated exposure, there is increased

synthesis of MEOS enzymes resulting in more efficient metabolism, also known as increased tolerance. ADH levels do not increase based on alcohol exposure. MEOS also metabolizes a variety of other compounds (drugs, fatty acids, steroids) and alcohol competes for the enzyme's action. This can cause the metabolism of drugs to slow and potentially reach harmful levels in the body<sup>3</sup>.

Females have lower stomach ADH activity and body H<sub>2</sub>O concentrations. As a result, a larger proportion of ethanol reaches circulation, thus, in general, females have a lower tolerance for alcohol. About 50% of Taiwanese, Han Chinese, and Japanese populations have polymorphisms in ALDH which cause the enzyme to have low activity<sup>6</sup>. This leads to buildup of acetaldehyde and undesirable symptoms such as: flushing, dizziness, nausea, and headaches<sup>2</sup>. The following short video explains what happens when the MEOS system gets involved in alcohol metabolism.

---

### **Web Link**

[Video: MEOS Overflow Pathway](#)

---

### **References & Links**

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Ethanol\\_flat\\_structure.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Ethanol_flat_structure.png)
2. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
3. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2008) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Thomson Wadsworth.
4. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
5. <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Acetaldehyde#/media/File:Acetaldehyde-2D-flat.svg>
6. Zakhari, S. (2006) Overview: How Is Alcohol Metabolized by the Body? (2006) *Alcohol Research and Health*. 29 (4) 245-254.

### **Video**

MEOS Overflow Pathway - <http://nutrition.jbpub.com/resources/animations.cfm?id=20&debug=0>

# Integration of Macronutrient & Alcohol Metabolism

Understanding the different metabolic pathways is an important step. However, an integrated understanding of the interconnectedness and tissue specificity of metabolism is where this knowledge really becomes powerful. To this end, we will first cover how the different pathways feed into one another and then talk about the metabolic capabilities of the different tissues in the body. We will then discuss what happens metabolically during different conditions or when consuming certain diets.

Sections:

- 7.1 Integration of Macronutrient & Alcohol Metabolic Pathways
- 7.2 Liver Macronutrient & Alcohol Metabolism
- 7.3 Extrahepatic Macronutrient & Alcohol Metabolism
- 7.4 Metabolic Conditions

## 7.1 Integration of Macronutrient and Alcohol Metabolic Pathways

If you were to draw all the macronutrient and alcohol metabolic pathways covered in chapter 6, hopefully it would look something like the figure below. In this figure:

Carbohydrate pathways are orange

Triglyceride/fatty acid pathways are purple

Protein/amino acid pathways are green

Nonclassified pathways are gray

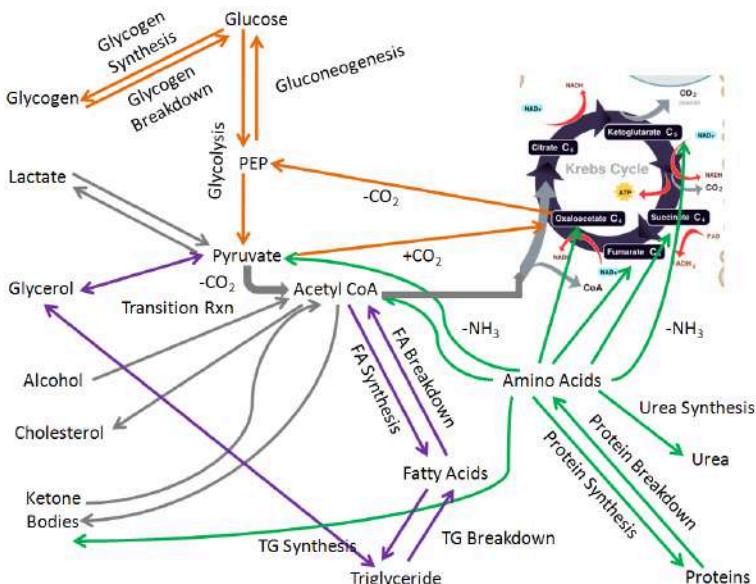


Figure 7.11 Integrated macronutrient and alcohol metabolism1

To simplify, we are going to remove the glycerol and cholesterol pathways so that we can focus on integrating the other pathways in macronutrient and alcohol metabolism.

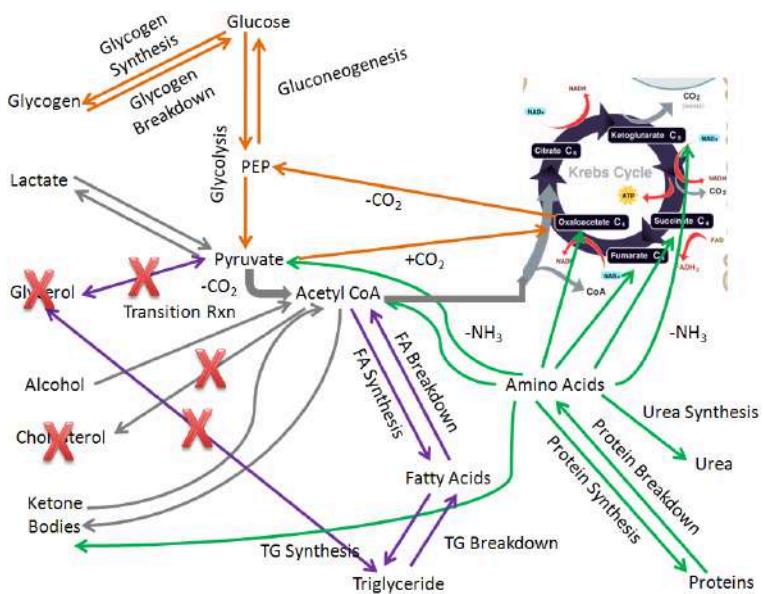


Figure 7.12 Removal of glycerol and cholesterol pathways<sup>1</sup>

Thus, we are left with the following simplified figure:

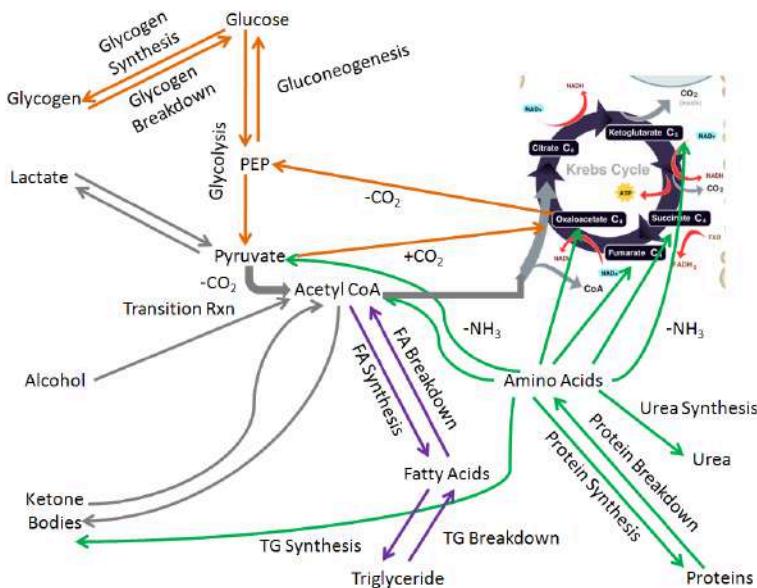


Figure 7.13 Simplified integrated macronutrient and alcohol metabolism1

Notice that acetyl-CoA is the the central metabolite in integrated metabolism that connects many different pathways. For example, carbohydrates can be broken down to acetyl-CoA that can then be used to synthesize fats and ultimately triglycerides.

### References & Links

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:CellRespiration.svg>

## 7.2 Liver Macronutrient and Alcohol Metabolism

The liver is the organ that has the greatest macronutrient metabolic capability; there are a number of metabolic functions that only

the liver performs. However, there are two major macronutrient metabolic processes, lactate synthesis and ketone body breakdown, that the liver will not normally perform, as shown in the figure below.

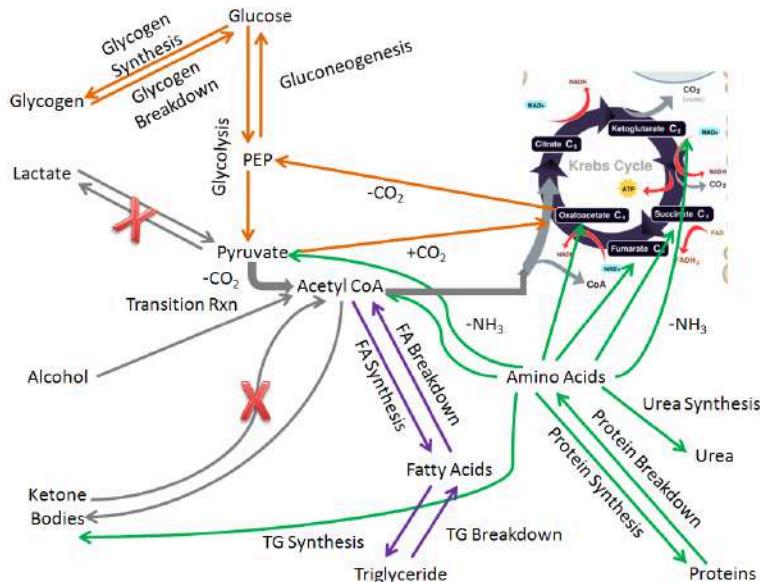


Figure 7.21 Ketone body breakdown and lactate synthesis are major macronutrient metabolic pathways that the liver does not normally perform!

But aside from those two pathways, the liver performs all the other metabolic pathways that you have learned about that are listed and shown below:

- Glycogen synthesis and breakdown
- Glycolysis
- Gluconeogenesis
- Alcohol oxidation
- Ketone body synthesis
- Fatty acid synthesis and breakdown
- Triglyceride synthesis and breakdown
- Protein synthesis and breakdown

Urea synthesis  
VLDL synthesis  
Glucose-6-phosphatase

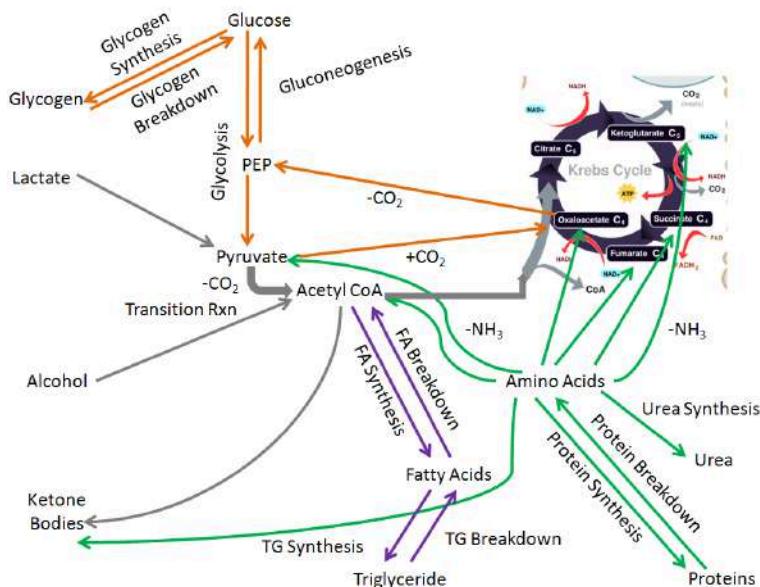


Figure 7.22 Metabolic capability of the liver

The liver is the only tissue that performs the following functions:

Ketone body synthesis  
Urea synthesis  
VLDL synthesis

The liver is also the primary, but not exclusive site, of the following functions:

Alcohol oxidation (also occurs in the stomach)  
Gluconeogenesis (also occurs in the kidney(s))  
Glucose-6-phosphatase activity (also occurs in the kidney(s))  
Lactate breakdown (also occurs in muscle)

Glucose-6-phosphatase is important because it removes the phosphate from glucose-6-phosphate so that glucose can be

released into circulation. Kidneys can perform gluconeogenesis and has glucose-6-phosphatase. However, it is estimated that 90% of glucose formed from gluconeogenesis is produced by the liver; the remaining 10% is produced by the kidney(s). It is also important to note that the muscle does not have this enzyme, so it cannot release glucose into circulation3.

### References & Links

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:CellRespiration.svg>
2. Phypers B, Pierce JMT. (2006) Lactate physiology in health and disease. Continuing Education in Anaesthesia Critical Care & Pain, 6(3).
3. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.

## 7.3 Extrahepatic Macronutrient Metabolism

Because the liver is so important in metabolism, the term extrahepatic has been defined to mean “located or occurring outside of the liver<sup>1</sup>”. We are next going to consider extrahepatic tissue metabolism.



Figure 7.31 The liver “is kind of a big deal<sup>2</sup>”

To start considering the metabolic capabilities of the extrahepatic tissues, we start by removing pathways that only or mostly occur in the liver:

- Alcohol oxidation
- Gluconeogenesis
- Ketone body synthesis
- Urea synthesis
- Lactate breakdown
- Glucose-6-phosphatase

These metabolic processes are crossed off in the figure below.

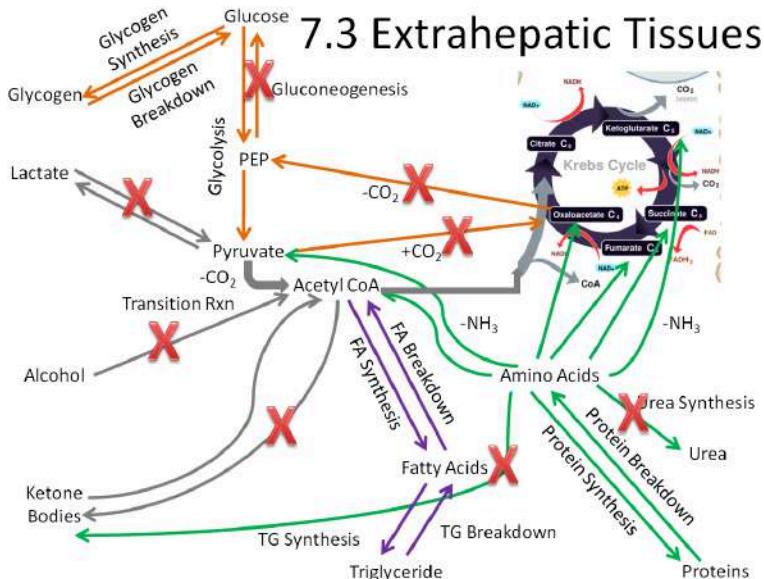


Figure 7.32 Removing the pathways that only or mostly occur in the liver

We are left with metabolic capabilities that are listed and shown below.

- Glycogen synthesis and breakdown
- Glycolysis
- Fatty acid synthesis and breakdown

Triglyceride synthesis and breakdown  
Protein synthesis and breakdown

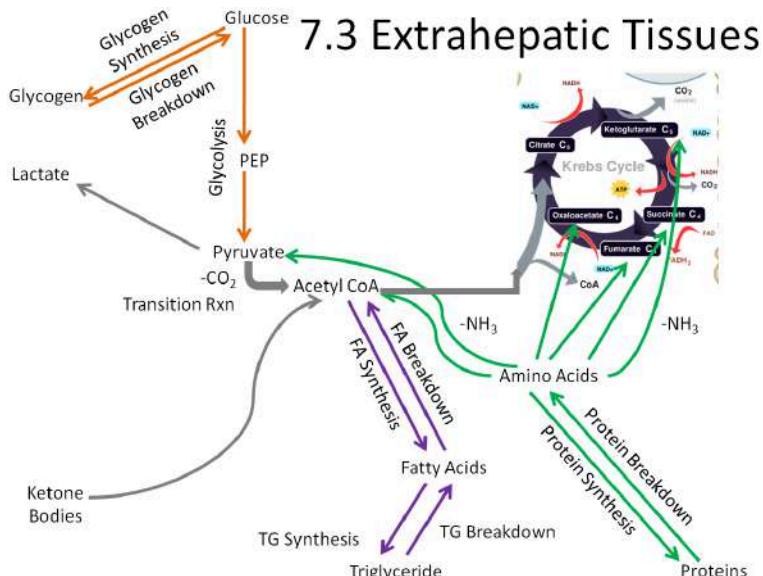


Figure 7.33 The metabolic capability of the extrahepatic tissues3

We will use this figure as the base for metabolic capabilities of the different extrahepatic tissues to compare what pathways other tissues can perform versus all the pathways performed by extrahepatic tissues.

In an effort to keep this simple, we are going to focus on four extrahepatic tissues in the following subsections:

- 7.31 Muscle Macronutrient Metabolism
- 7.32 Adipose Macronutrient Metabolism
- 7.33 Brain Macronutrient Metabolism
- 7.34 Red Blood Cell Macronutrient Metabolism

### References & Links

1. <http://www.cancer.gov/dictionary/?CdrID=44498>

2. <http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Liver.svg>
3. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:CellRespiration.svg>

## 7.31 Muscle Macronutrient Metabolism

Compared to extrahepatic tissues as a whole, in the muscle the following pathways are not performed or are not important:

Fatty acid synthesis  
Ketone body breakdown

These pathways are crossed out in the figure below.

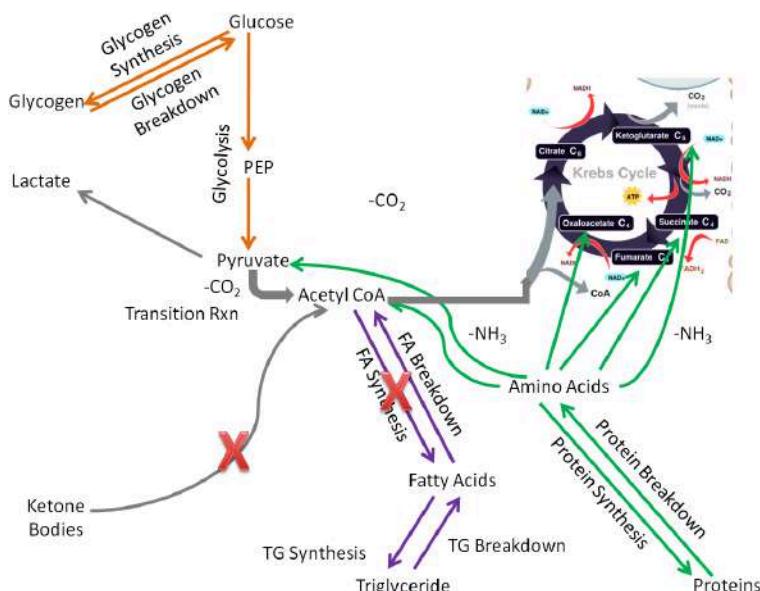


Figure 7.311 The metabolic pathways that are not performed or important in the muscle, compared to extrahepatic tissues as a whole

Removing those pathways, the following metabolic pathways make up the muscle metabolic capability:

Glycogen synthesis and breakdown  
 Glycolysis  
 Protein synthesis and breakdown  
 Triglyceride synthesis and breakdown  
 Fatty acid breakdown  
 Lactate synthesis

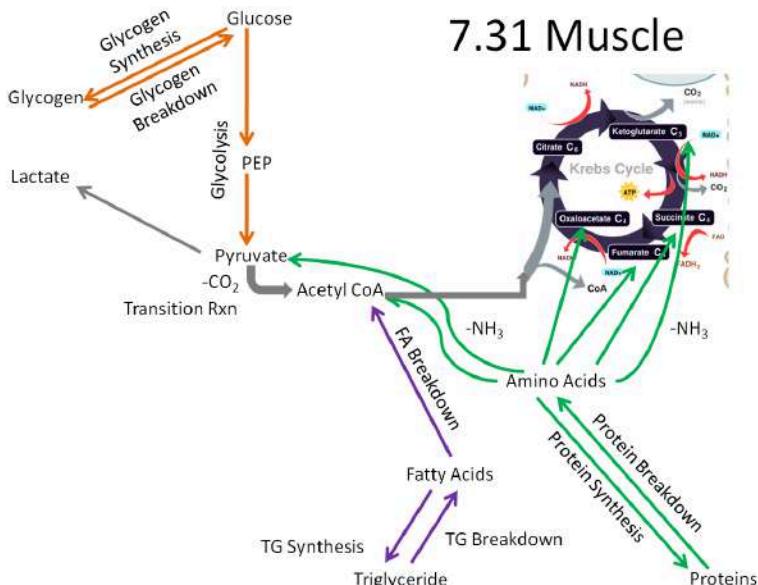


Figure 7.312 Muscle metabolic capability1

Muscle is a major extrahepatic metabolic tissue. It is the only extrahepatic tissue with significant glycogen stores. However, unlike the liver, the muscle cannot secrete glucose after it is taken up (no glucose-6-phosphatase). Thus, you can think of the muscle as being selfish with glucose. It either uses it for itself initially or stores it for its later use.

#### References & Links

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:CellRespiration.svg>

## 7.32 Adipose Macronutrient Metabolism

It probably does not surprise you that the major function of the adipose is to store energy as triglycerides. Compared to extrahepatic tissues as a whole, in the adipose the following pathways are not performed or are not important:

- Glycogen synthesis and breakdown
- Lactate synthesis
- Ketone body breakdown
- Fatty acid breakdown
- Protein synthesis and breakdown
- Citric acid cycle (not much since it is not an active tissue needing energy)

These pathways are crossed out in the figure below.

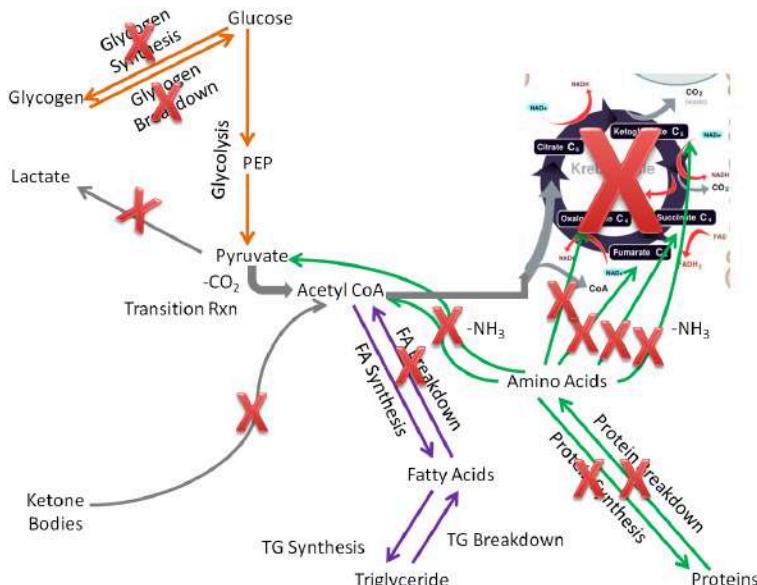


Figure 7.321 The metabolic pathways that are not performed or important in the adipose, compared to extrahepatic tissues as a whole are crossed out!

Removing those pathways, we are left with metabolic capabilities listed below and depicted in the following figure:

Glycolysis

Fatty acid synthesis

Triglyceride synthesis and breakdown

## 7.32 Adipose

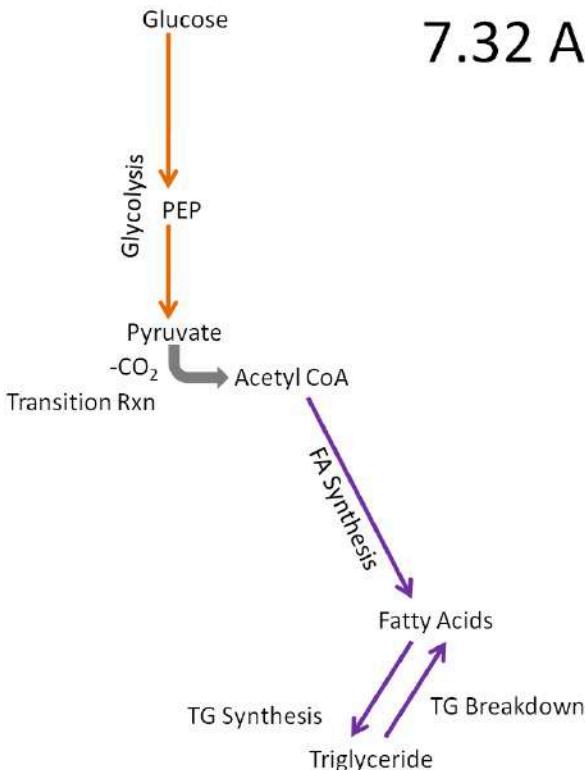


Figure 7.322 Adipose metabolic capability

Fatty acid synthesis only occurs in the adipose and liver. In the adipose, fatty acids are synthesized and most will be esterified into triglycerides to be stored. In the liver, some fatty acids will be esterified into triglycerides to be stored, but most triglycerides will

be incorporated into VLDL so that they can be used or stored by other tissues.

### **References & Links**

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:CellRespiration.svg>

## **7.33 Brain Macronutrient Metabolism**

Fatty acid breakdown does not occur to any great extent in the brain because of the low activity of an enzyme in the beta-oxidation pathway limits the pathway's activity<sup>1</sup>. Compared to the extrahepatic tissues as a whole, in the brain the following pathways are not performed or are not important:

Glycogen synthesis and breakdown

Lactate synthesis

Fatty acid synthesis and breakdown

Triglyceride synthesis and breakdown

Protein synthesis and breakdown

These pathways are crossed out on the figure below.

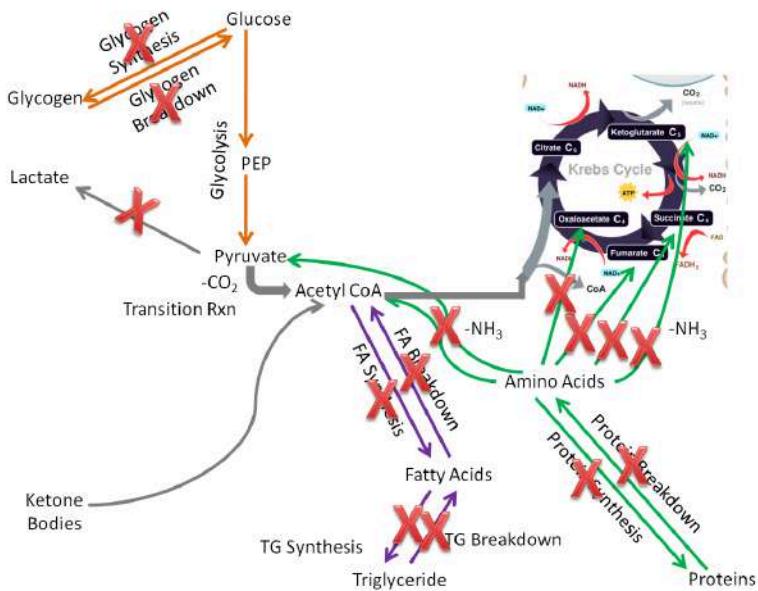


Figure 7.331 The metabolic pathways that are not performed or important in the brain compared to extrahepatic tissues as a whole are crossed out2

Fatty acid breakdown does not occur to any great extent in the brain because low activity of an enzyme in the beta-oxidation pathway limits the activity of this pathway2.

By removing those pathways the only pathways left are:

Glycolysis

Ketone body breakdown

## 7.33 Brain

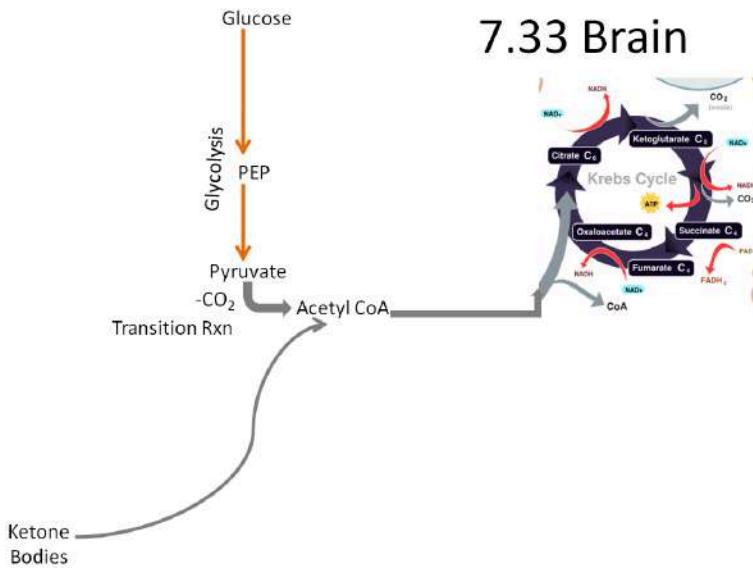


Figure 7.332 Brain metabolic capability1

Thus, due to its limited metabolic capabilities, the brain needs to receive either glucose or ketone bodies to use as an energy source.

### References & Links

1. Yang SY, He XY, Schulz H (1987) Fatty acid oxidation in rat brain is limited by the low activity of 3-ketoacyl-coenzyme A thiolase. *J Biol Chem* 262 (27): 13027-13032.
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:CellRespiration.svg>

## 7.34 Red Blood Cell Macronutrient Metabolism

Red blood cells are the most limited of the extrahepatic tissues because they do not contain a nucleus or other cell organelles, most notably mitochondria.

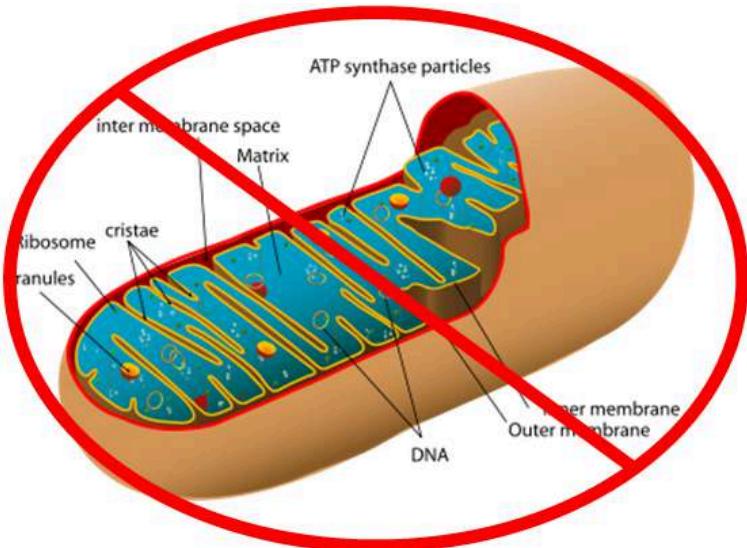


Figure 7.341 Red blood cells do not contain mitochondrial

As a result, compared to the extrahepatic tissues, in red blood cells the following pathways are not performed or are not important:

- Glycogen synthesis and breakdown
- Lactate breakdown
- Fatty acid synthesis and breakdown
- Triglyceride synthesis and breakdown
- Protein synthesis and breakdown
- Ketone body breakdown

These pathways are crossed off in the figure below.

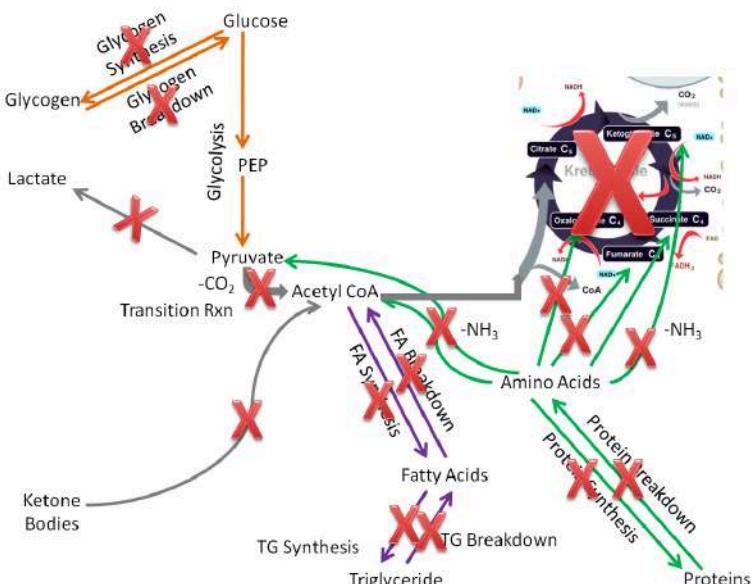


Figure 7.342 The metabolic pathways that are not performed or important in the red blood cells, compared to extrahepatic tissues as a whole are crossed off<sup>2</sup>

If all those pathways are removed, only glycolysis is left, where pyruvate is converted to lactate.

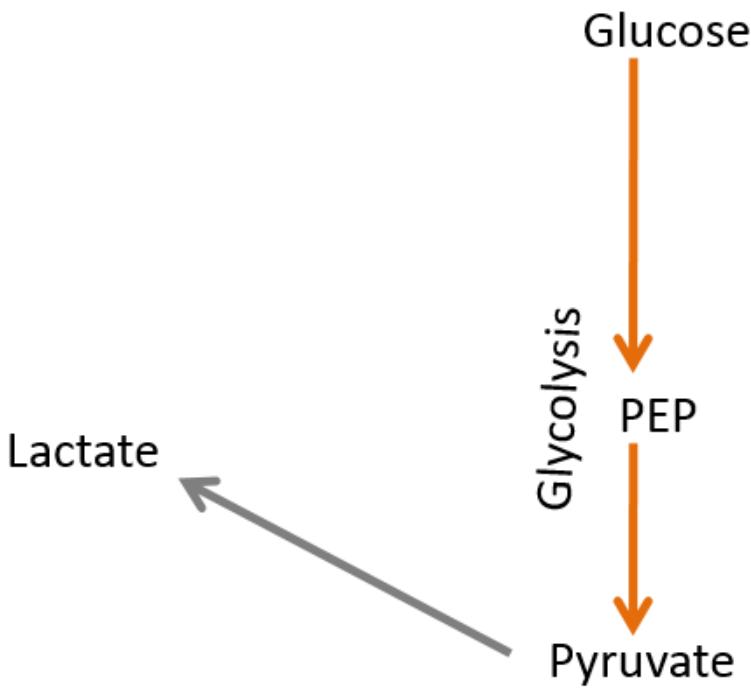


Figure 7.343 Red blood cell metabolic capability

Thus, red blood cells are one-trick ponies, only being able to perform glycolysis and produce lactate.

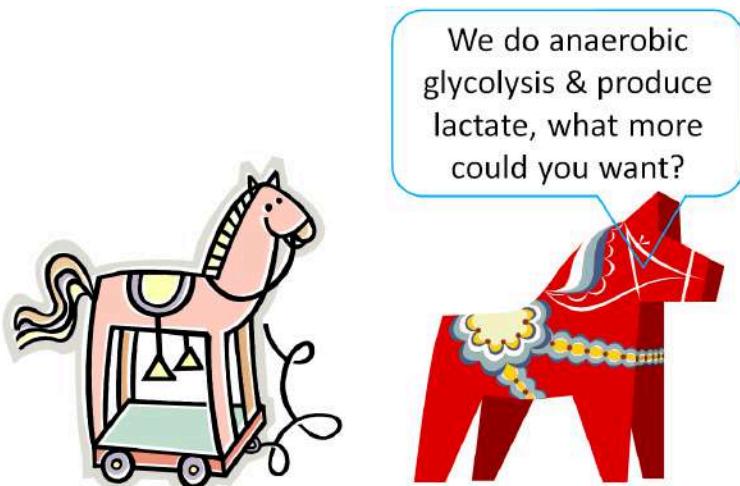


Figure 7.344 Red blood cells are one-trick ponies

### References & Links

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mitochondrion>
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:CellRespiration.svg>

## 7.4 Metabolic Conditions

You have learned about the pathways and the tissue metabolic capabilities, so now we're going to apply that knowledge to three conditions: fasting, the Atkins diet, and the Ornish/Pritikin diet, as ways to illustrate how you can use this knowledge. In fasting, we're going to be considering what is happening metabolically during a prolonged period without food. This is a catabolic condition. The Atkins diet is a carbohydrate-restricted diet, so we are going to consider what happens metabolically when someone is eating a diet

that essentially only contains protein and lipids over an extended period of time. This is an anabolic condition. Finally the Ornish/Pritikin diet is a very low fat diet, so we're going to consider what happens metabolically when someone is eating a diet that is essentially only carbohydrates and protein over an extended period of time. This is an anabolic condition. For each of these conditions, we're going to consider what is happening in the liver, muscle, adipose, and brain.

Now that you should have an understanding of the glycemic response and macronutrient metabolism, you should be able to understand the broader effects of insulin and glucagon that are summarized in the following tables. Knowing what hormone is elevated in the different conditions helps you to understand the metabolism that occurs in different conditions.

Table 7.41 Insulin's effects on targets in tissues<sup>1,2</sup>

<b>Effect</b>	<b>Tissue</b>	<b>Target</b>
↑ Glucose Uptake	Muscle, Adipose	↑ GLUT4
↑ Glucose Uptake	Liver	↑ Glucokinase
↑ Glycogen Synthesis	Liver, Muscle	↑ Glycogen Synthase
↓ Glycogen Breakdown	Liver, Muscle	↓ Glycogen Phosphorylase
↑ Glycolysis,	Liver, Muscle	↑ Phosphofructokinase-1
↑ Transition Reaction		↑ Pyruvate Dehydrogenase Complex
↑ Fatty Acid Synthesis	Liver	↑ Fatty Acid Synthase
↑ Triglyceride Synthesis	Adipose	↑ Lipoprotein Lipase

Table 7.42 Glucagon's effects on targets in tissues<sup>2</sup>

<b>Effect</b>	<b>Tissue</b>	<b>Target</b>
↑ Glycogen Breakdown	Liver	↑ Glycogen Phosphorylase
↓ Glycogen Synthesis	Liver	↓ Glycogen Synthase
↑ Gluconeogenesis	Liver	Multiple Enzymes
↓ Glycolysis	Liver	↓ Phosphofructokinase-1
↑ Ketone Body Synthesis	Liver	↑ Acetyl-CoA Carboxylase
↑ Triglyceride Breakdown	Adipose	↑ Hormone-Sensitive Lipase

Subsections:

7.41 Fasting

7.42 Atkins Diet

7.43 Ornish/Pritikin Diet

### **References & Links**

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. <http://jpkc.gmu.cn/swhx/book/shyl/23.pdf>

## **7.41 Fasting**

In this condition a person has been fasting for an extended period of time (18 hours or longer). As a result, the person is in a catabolic state with low blood glucose levels, which leads the pancreas to secrete glucagon.

The liver will break down glycogen to secrete glucose for other tissues to use until its stores are exhausted. Amino acids and lactate from muscle will be used for gluconeogenesis to synthesize glucose that will also be secreted. Glycolysis will not be occurring to any great extent to spare glucose for use by other tissues. From the breakdown of amino acids, there will be an increase in the synthesis and secretion of urea from the liver to safely rid the body of ammonia from the amino acids. Fatty acids that are received from

the adipose will be broken down to acetyl-CoA and used to synthesize ketone bodies that are secreted for tissues, such as the brain, that cannot directly use fatty acids as a fuel.

The muscle will break down glycogen to glucose until glycogen stores are exhausted, and receive glucose from the liver that enters glycolysis, forming pyruvate. Glucose will be used for anaerobic (lactate) and aerobic (pyruvate) respiration. Pyruvate will enter the transition reaction to form acetyl-CoA. The acetyl-CoA will then enter the citric acid cycle, and NADH and FADH<sub>2</sub> produced will enter the electron transport chain to generate ATP. Once there isn't enough glucose for the muscle to use, fatty acids taken up from the adipose and from breakdown of muscle triglyceride stores will be broken down to acetyl-CoA. The acetyl-CoA will then enter the citric acid cycle, and NADH and FADH<sub>2</sub> produced will enter the electron transport chain to generate ATP. Amino acids from protein breakdown and lactate (Cori Cycle) will be secreted to be used by the liver for gluconeogenesis.

The adipose tissue will break down triglycerides to fatty acids and release these for use by the muscle and the liver. It will not be taking up anything.

#### No References

### 7.42 Atkins Diet

In this condition, assume a person just started into phase I of the Atkins Diet and he/she has just consumed a meal of all protein and fat with no carbohydrates. As a result, this person is in an anabolic state, but blood glucose levels are low, meaning the pancreas will secrete glucagon.

Liver glycogen stores will be broken down to secrete glucose for other tissues. Glycolysis will not be occurring to any great extent, in order to spare glucose for other tissues. Using amino acids from digestion and lactate from muscle, gluconeogenesis will synthesize

glucose that will also be secreted. From the breakdown of amino acids, there will be an increase in the synthesis and secretion of urea from the liver to safely rid the body of ammonia from the amino acids. Amino acids will also be used for protein synthesis. Some triglycerides from chylomicron remnants taken up will be broken down to fatty acids. These will then be broken down to acetyl-CoA and used to synthesize ketone bodies that are secreted for tissues, such as the brain, that cannot directly use fatty acids as a fuel. Other triglycerides will be packaged into VLDL and secreted from the liver.

The muscle is going to break down glycogen to glucose, and receive glucose from the liver that enters glycolysis, forming pyruvate. Glucose will be used for anaerobic (lactate) and aerobic (pyruvate) respiration. After glycogen is used up, most glucose will be used for anaerobic respiration to spare glucose. In aerobic respiration, pyruvate will enter the transition reaction to form acetyl-CoA. The acetyl-CoA will then enter the citric acid cycle, and NADH and FADH<sub>2</sub> produced will enter the electron transport chain to generate ATP. Once there is not enough glucose for the muscle to use, fatty acids will be cleaved from and taken up from chylomicrons, chylomicron remnants, VLDL, IDL, and LDL and broken down to acetyl-CoA. The acetyl-CoA will then enter the citric acid cycle, and NADH and FADH<sub>2</sub> produced will enter the electron transport chain to generate ATP. Amino acids taken up will be used for protein synthesis, and lactate will be secreted for the liver to use for gluconeogenesis (Cori cycle).

In the adipose, fatty acids that are cleaved from chylomicrons, chylomicron remnants, VLDL, IDL, and LDL are also going to be taken up. These fatty acids will be used to synthesize triglycerides for storage. With glucagon levels high in this condition, hormone-sensitive lipase would be active. However, since this is an anabolic state, the net effect would be uptake of fatty acids after cleavage by lipoprotein lipase. The adipose won't be secreting anything under this condition.

### No References

## 7.43 Ornish/Pritikin Diet

In this condition, assume a person is on the Ornish/Pritikin diet and just consumed a meal containing carbohydrates, with minimal but adequate amount of protein and no fat. As a result, this person is in an anabolic state with high blood glucose levels, meaning the pancreas will secrete insulin.

The liver will take up glucose and synthesize glycogen until its stores are filled. After these stores are full, glucose can be broken down through glycolysis to pyruvate, then form acetyl-CoA in the transition reaction. Because we are in the fed or anabolic state, acetyl-CoA will be used for fatty acid synthesis, and the fatty acids will be used for triglyceride synthesis. However, evidence suggests that this *de novo* lipogenesis pathway does not occur to any great extent in humans<sup>1</sup>. These triglycerides will be packaged into VLDL and secreted from the liver. Amino acids will also be taken up and used for protein synthesis as needed. Because there is plenty of glucose, gluconeogenesis and ketone body synthesis will not be operating to any great extent.

The muscle will take up glucose and synthesize glycogen until those stores are filled. Some glucose will go through glycolysis to produce pyruvate, then form acetyl-CoA in the transition reaction. The acetyl-CoA will enter the citric acid cycle, and NADH and FADH<sub>2</sub> produced will enter the electron transport chain to generate ATP. Fatty acids that are cleaved from VLDL, IDL, and LDL are also going to be taken up. These fatty acids will be used to synthesize triglycerides for storage. Whatever amino acids are taken up will be used for protein synthesis. The muscle will not be secreting anything in this condition.

The adipose is going to take up glucose that will enter glycolysis, where pyruvate will be produced, then acetyl-CoA will be produced in the transition reaction. Because we are in the fed or anabolic state, the acetyl-CoA will be used for fatty acid synthesis, and the fatty acids will be used for triglyceride synthesis. However, evidence

suggests that *de novo* lipogenesis does not occur to any great extent in humans<sup>1</sup>. Fatty acids that are cleaved from VLDL, IDL, and LDL are going to be taken up and primarily used to synthesize triglycerides for storage. The adipose won't be secreting anything under this condition.

The brain will have plenty of glucose available for its use, so it is not going to have to use ketone bodies like it would during fasting and during prolonged Atkins diet consumption.

### **References & Links**

1. McDevitt RM, Bott SJ, Harding M, Coward WA, Bluck LJ, et al. (2001) De novo lipogenesis during controlled overfeeding with sucrose or glucose in lean and obese women. Am J Clin Nutr 74(6): 737-746.

# Micronutrients Overview & Dietary Reference Intakes (DRIs)

Micronutrients consist of vitamins and minerals. In this chapter, an overview of vitamins and minerals will be presented followed by a description of the dietary reference intakes (DRIs), which are used as benchmarks of micronutrient intake.

Sections:

- 8.1 Vitamins
- 8.2 Minerals
- 8.3 Covering Vitamins & Minerals
- 8.4 Dietary Reference Intakes (DRIs)

## 8.1 Vitamins

The name vitamin comes from Casimir Funk, who in 1912 thought vital amines ( $\text{NH}_3$ ) were responsible for preventing what we know now are vitamin deficiencies. He coined the term vitamines to describe these compounds. Eventually it was discovered that these compounds were not amines and the 'e' was dropped to form vitamins<sup>1</sup>.

Vitamins are classified as either fat-soluble or water-soluble. The fat-soluble vitamins are:

- Vitamin A
- Vitamin D
- Vitamin E
- Vitamin K

The water-soluble vitamins are vitamin C and the B vitamins, which are shown in the table below.

Table 8.11 The B vitamins and their common names

Vitamin	Common Name
B1	Thiamin
B2	Riboflavin
B3	Niacin
B5	Pantothenic Acid
B6*	Pyridoxine
B7	Biotin
B9	Folate
B12*	Cobalamin

\*Normally used instead of common names

A common question from students about B vitamins is: “Why are there so many B vitamins? It is not like they ran out of letters in the alphabet to name them.”

Before they even knew that vitamins existed, a scientist named E.V. McCollum recognized that a deficiency in what he called ‘fat-soluble factor A’ resulted in severe ophthalmia (inflammation of the eye). In addition, a deficiency in ‘water-soluble factor B’ resulted in beriberi (a deficiency discussed more later)1.

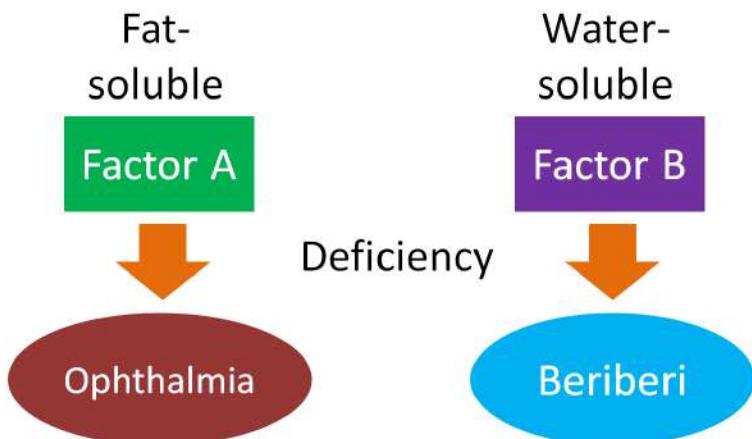


Figure 8.11 Factor A deficiency led to ophthalmia, factor B deficiency led to beriberi

Factor A is what we now know as vitamin A. However, researchers soon realized that factor B actually consisted of two factors that they termed B1 and B2. Then they realized that there are multiple components in B2, and they began identifying the wide array of B vitamins that we know today<sup>1</sup>.

You might be thinking “but the numbers on the B vitamins still do not add up.” You are right, vitamins B4, B8, B10, and B11 were discovered and then removed leaving us with the B vitamins shown in Table 8.11.

Relative to other scientific milestones, the discovery of vitamins is a fairly recent occurrence, as shown in the table below.

Table 8.12 Vitamin, year proposed, isolated, structure determined, and synthesis achieved up to 19441

Vitamin	Year Proposed	Isolated	Structure Determined	Synthesis Achieved
Thiamin	1901	1926	1936	1936
Vitamin C	1907	1926	1932	1933
Vitamin A	1915	1939	1942	–
Vitamin D	1919	1931	1932	1932
Vitamin E	1922	1936	1938	1938
Niacin	1926	1937	1937	1867*
Biotin	1926	1939	1942	1943
Vitamin K	1929	1939	1942	1943
Pantothenic Acid	1931	1939	1939	1940
Folate	1931	1939	–	–
Riboflavin	1933	1933	1934	1935
Vitamin B6	1934	1936	1938	1939

\* Was established long before it was known to be a vitamin

A number of B vitamins serve as cofactors/coenzymes. The following table lists the cofactors/coenzymes formed from B vitamins that will be discussed in more detail in the following subsections.

Table 8.13 Cofactors/coenzymes formed from B vitamins

---

<b>Vitamin</b>	<b>Cofactors/Coenzymes</b>
Thiamin	Thiamin Pyrophosphate (TPP)
Riboflavin	Flavin Adenine Dinucleotide (FAD), Flavin Mononucleotide (FMN)
Niacin	Nicotine Adenine Dinucleotide (NAD), Nicotine Adenine Dinucleotide Phosphate (NADP)
Pantothenic Acid	Coenzyme A
Vitamin B6	Pyridoxal Phosphate (PLP)
Biotin	-
Folate	Tetrahydrofolate (THF)
Vitamin B12	Adenosylcobalamin, Methylcobalamin

---

## References & Links

1. Carpenter K. (2003) A short history of nutritional science: Part 3 (1912-1944). *J Nutr* 133(10): 3023-3032

## 8.2 Minerals

Minerals are elements that are essential for body functions that can't be synthesized in the body. Some people refer to them as elements instead of minerals, and the names can be used interchangeably. However, in the nutrition community, they are more commonly referred to as minerals. Minerals can be divided up into three different categories:

Macrominerals  
Trace Minerals (aka Microminerals)  
Ultratrace Minerals

There is not an exact, agreed on definition for how the different categories are defined, but in general they are defined by the amount required and found in the body such that:

Macrominerals > Trace Minerals > Ultratrace Minerals

Table 8.21 Alphabetical listing of the 20 minerals and their chemical symbols

<b>Macrominerals</b>	<b>Trace Minerals</b>	<b>Ultratrace Minerals</b>
Calcium (Ca)	Chromium (Cr)	Arsenic (As)
Chloride (Cl)a	Copper (Cu)	Boron (B)
Magnesium (Mg)	Fluoride (F)	Nickel (Ni)
Phosphorus (P)b	Iodine (I)	Silicon (Si)
Potassium (K)	Iron (Fe)	Vanadium (V)
Sodium (Na)	Manganese (Mn)	
	Molybdenum (Mo)	
	Selenium (Se)	
	Zinc (Zn)	

a Chlorine ion, Cl-

b Phosphate in body, PO<sub>4</sub>

The table below shows the estimated amount of the macrominerals, trace minerals, and ultratrace minerals found in the body.

Table 8.22 Amount of different minerals found in the body<sup>1</sup>

<b>Macrominerals</b>	<b>Trace Minerals</b>	<b>Ultratrace Minerals</b>
Minerals		

Calcium	1200 g	Iron	4 g	Silicon	1 g
Phosphorus	780 g	Fluoride	3-6 g	Boron	17 mg
Potassium	110-140 g	Zinc	2.3 g	Nickel	15 mg
Sodium	100 g	Copper	70 mg	Arsenic	7 mg
Chloride	95 g	Selenium	14 mg	Vanadium	0.1 mg
Magnesium	25 g	Manganese	12 mg		
		Iodine	10-20 mg		
		Molybdenum	5 mg		
		Chromium	1-2 mg		

Minerals are elements. The figure below shows the distribution of minerals in the periodic table, which you should be familiar with from your chemistry education.

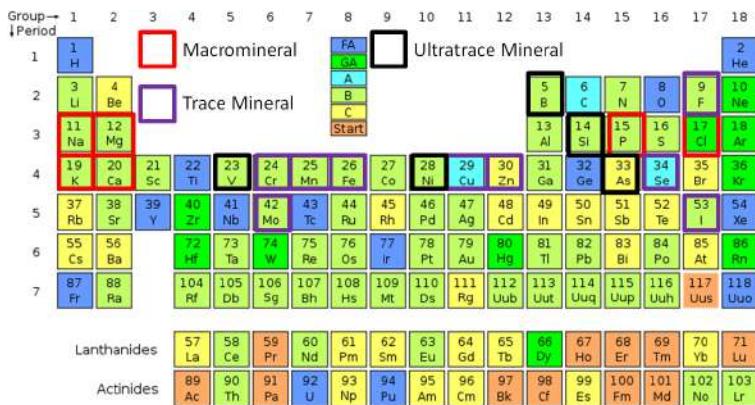


Figure 8.21 Minerals are elements, this figure shows their position within the periodic table2

## References & Links

1. Emsley, John. Nature's building blocks : an A-Z guide to the elements. 2001. Oxford, Oxford University Press.
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/>

## 8.3 Vitamins & Minerals Functional Categories

There are two common ways to teach about vitamins and minerals in nutrition classes. The traditional way is to start with fat-soluble vitamins and go down through the vitamins alphabetically (i.e. vitamin A, vitamin D, vitamin E, vitamin K). However, this method leads students to learn about vitamins and minerals more individually instead of how they work together. For instance, it makes sense to cover calcium with vitamin D, and iron with copper and zinc. We are going to cover vitamins and minerals based on their function rather than covering them by whether they are a water-soluble vitamin or trace mineral. The hope is that you will gain a more integrative understanding of vitamins and minerals from this approach.

Here are the different functional categories that we are going to cover. Notice that some micronutrients fit into more than one functional category. Each vitamin and mineral will be covered only in one section, with some mention of its overlap in other section(s) in certain cases.

<b>Antioxidants</b>	<b>Macronutrient Metabolism</b>	<b>1-Carbon Metabolism</b>	<b>Blood</b>	<b>Bones &amp; Teeth</b>	<b>Electrolytes</b>
Vitamin E	Thiamin	Folate	Vitamin K	Vitamin D	Sodium
Vitamin C	Riboflavin	Vitamin B12	Iron	Calcium	Potassium
Selenium	Niacin	Vitamin B6	Vitamin B6	Vitamin K	Chloride
Iron	Pantothenic Acid		Folate	Phosphorus	Phosphorus
Copper	Vitamin B6		Vitamin B12	Magnesium	Magnesium
Zinc	Biotin		Copper	Fluoride	
Manganese	Vitamin B12		Calcium	Vitamin A	
Riboflavin	Vitamin C			Iron	
	Iodine			Copper	
	Manganese			Zinc	
	Magnesium				

## No References

## 8.4 Dietary Reference Intakes (DRIs)

Dietary Reference Intakes (DRIs) are more than numbers in the table, even though that is often how many people view them. The link below takes you to the tables that many people commonly associate with the DRIs. These tables have been updated to include the new RDAs for vitamin D and calcium.

---

### Web Link

[DRI Tables \(inactive link as of 09/08/2020\)](#)

---

Most of you are probably familiar with Dietary Guidelines. DRIs

and Dietary Guidelines provide different information for different audiences.

Dietary Guidelines provide **qualitative** advice to the public about diet and chronic disease prevention and maintaining health.

DRIIs provide **quantitative** advice to professionals about amounts of nutrients or food components to be of benefit.

DRIIs are a collective term to refer to these components:

Estimated Average Requirement (EAR)

Recommended Dietary Allowance (RDA)

Adequate Intake (AI)

Tolerable Upper Intake Level (UL)

A number of people refer to the UL as simply the “upper limit”, leaving off “tolerable”.

The RDA is the measure that professionals use to assess the quality of people’s diets. It is the requirement estimated to meet the needs of 97.5% of the population. But the RDA is calculated using the EAR. Therefore, the EAR needs to be set before an RDA can be set. There must be applicable research in order to set an EAR. An EAR is the estimated requirement for 50% of the population (hence the average in its name), as shown in the figure below. On the left vertical axis is the risk of inadequacy, and on the bottom of the figure is the observed level of intake that increases from left to right. We will talk about the right axis label in a later figure. Notice that for the EAR, the risk for inadequacy is 0.5 (50%) whereas the RDA the risk of inadequacy is 0.025 (2.5%).

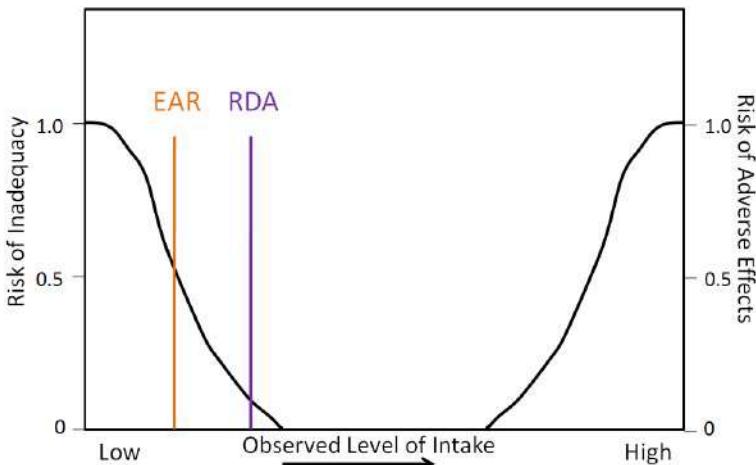


Figure 8.41 The EAR meets the needs of 50% of the population, RDA meets the needs of 97.5% of the population.

The figure below shows the EAR on the normal distribution and splits out the different standard deviations as percents. Notice that for 50% of population, their adequate intake is below the EAR and 50% of the population their adequate intake is above the EAR.

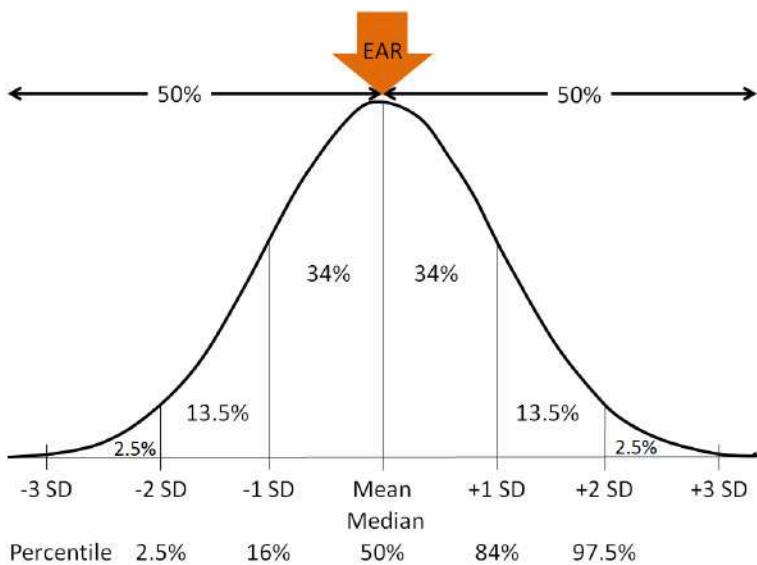


Figure 8.42 The EAR meets the needs of 50% of the population as depicted in this normal distribution. SD – standard deviation

If an EAR is set, the formula for setting the RDA is:

$$\text{EAR} + 2 \text{ Standard Deviations} = \text{RDA}$$

The following figure shows the distribution and how the percentages and standard deviation changes from the EAR. Only 2.5% of the population will have a need above the RDA for a particular nutrient.

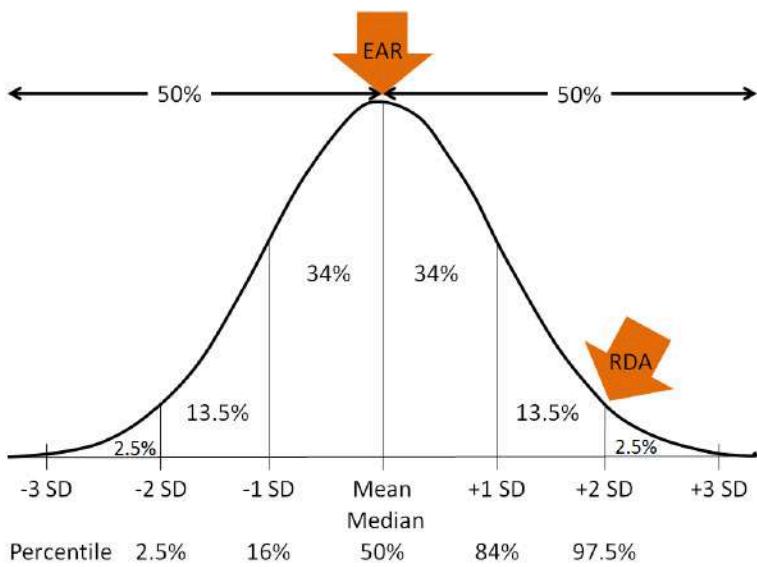


Figure 8.43 The RDA meets the needs for 97.5% of the population

For nutrients lacking the research evidence needed to set an EAR, an AI is set instead. An AI is a level that appears to be adequate in a defined population or subgroup. As you can see, the EAR is adequate for 50% (0.5) of the population and is lower than the RDA. The RDA is adequate for 97.5% (0.025) of the population, and higher than the EAR. The AI level of intake is believed to be between the EAR/RDA and the UL, but since it is not research-based, it is not exactly known where this level falls as shown below.

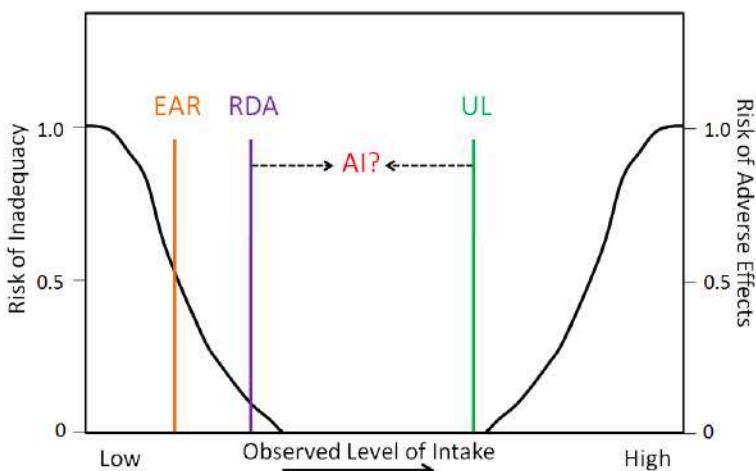


Figure 8.44 The AI compared to the other DRI components, the question mark and dotted line are meant to indicate that it is not known exactly where the AI would fall relative to an RDA if one was set

The last of the DRIs is the Tolerable Upper Intake Level (UL). This is the highest level of daily nutrient intake that is unlikely to pose risk of adverse health effects to almost all individuals in the population. To set this, the committee first sets a no observed adverse effect level (NOAEL) and/or the lowest observed adverse effect level (LOAEL). The UL is then set lower based on a number of uncertainty/safety factors off the NOAEL or LOAEL as shown below. The right vertical axis is used to represent the risk of an adverse event. Notice the NOAEL at the point where no adverse effects have been reported. The LOAEL is somewhere above the NOAEL. The UL is set at a level where it is believed that people will not experience the selected adverse effect.

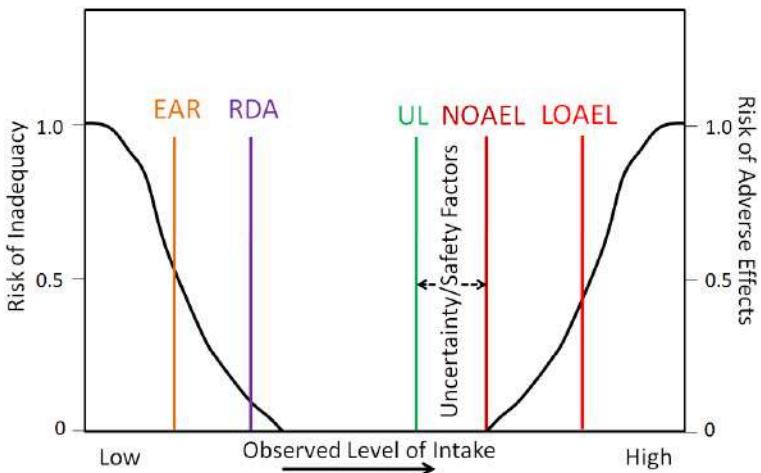


Figure 8.45 Setting of the UL

How are Americans doing in meeting the DRIs? The following figure shows the percentage of Americans that are not meeting the EAR for some of the earlier micronutrients that had DRIs set. Keep in mind that the EAR is lower than the RDA.

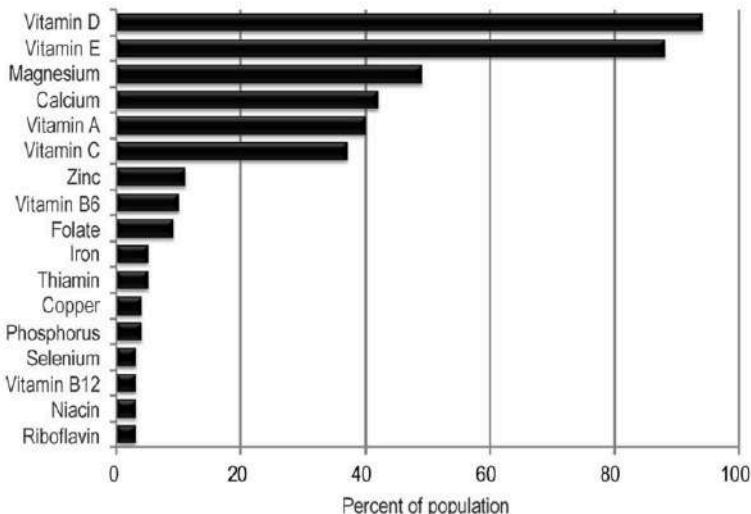


Figure 8.46 Percent of Americans with usual intakes below the EAR

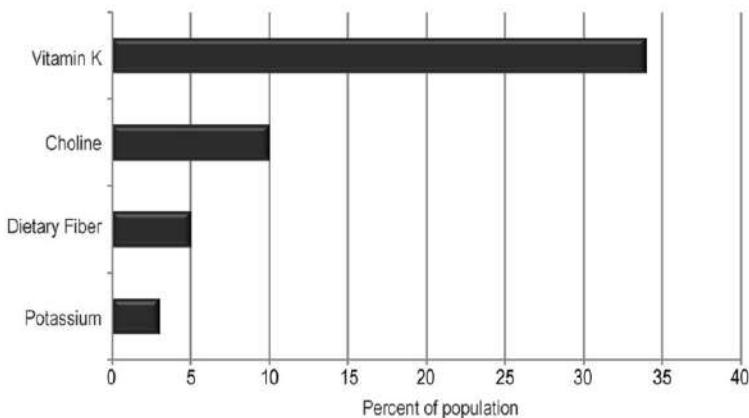


Figure 8.47 Percent of Americans with usual intakes exceeding the AI

As you can see, a large percentage of Americans don't meet the EAR for vitamin E, magnesium, vitamin A, and vitamin C. Also, keep in

mind that this also does not include micronutrients that have AI instead of EARs and RDAs.

### **References & Links**

1. <http://health.gov/dietaryguidelines/2015-scientific-report/06-chapter-1/d1-11.asp>

### **Link**

DRI Tables - <http://www.nationalacademies.org/hmd/~/media/Files/Activity%20Files/Nutrition/DRI-Tables/5Summary%20TableTables%2014.pdf?la=en>

# Antioxidant Micronutrients

This chapter will describe what antioxidants are and then discuss the three major antioxidant micronutrients: vitamin E, vitamin C and selenium.

9.1 Antioxidants

9.2 Vitamin E

9.3 Vitamin C

9.4 Selenium

## 9.1 Antioxidants

The antioxidant vitamins and minerals are:

Vitamin E

Vitamin C

Selenium

Iron

Copper

Zinc

Manganese

Riboflavin

In this section, we are going to cover vitamin E, vitamin C, and selenium in detail because being an antioxidant is their primary function. Iron, copper, zinc, and manganese are cofactors for the antioxidant enzymes catalase and superoxide dismutase, as shown below.

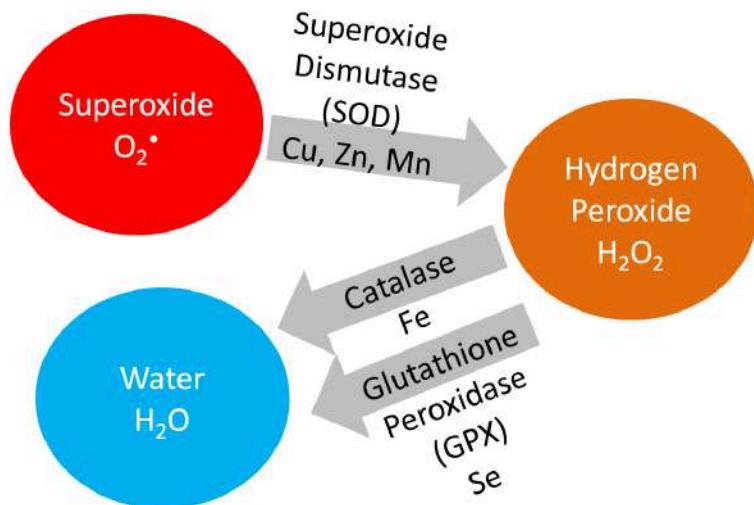


Figure 9.11 Antioxidant enzymes that use minerals as cofactors

Superoxide dismutase converts superoxide into hydrogen peroxide. Catalase converts hydrogen peroxide into water. Iron, copper, and zinc will be covered in more detail in the blood, bones, and teeth chapter (chapter 11). Manganese will be covered in the macronutrient metabolism chapter.

Riboflavin, in the cofactor FAD, is an important cofactor for several antioxidant enzymes, but it will be covered in more depth in the macronutrient metabolism micronutrients chapter (Chapter 10).

Subsections:

- 9.11 Free Radicals & Oxidative Stress
- 9.12 What is an Antioxidant?
- 9.13 Meaningful Antioxidant(s)
- 9.14 Too Much of a Good Thing? Antioxidants as Pro-oxidants

## 9.11 Free Radicals & Oxidative Stress

Before you can understand what an antioxidant is, it is important to have an understanding of oxidants. As you have learned already, oxidation is the loss of an electron as shown below.

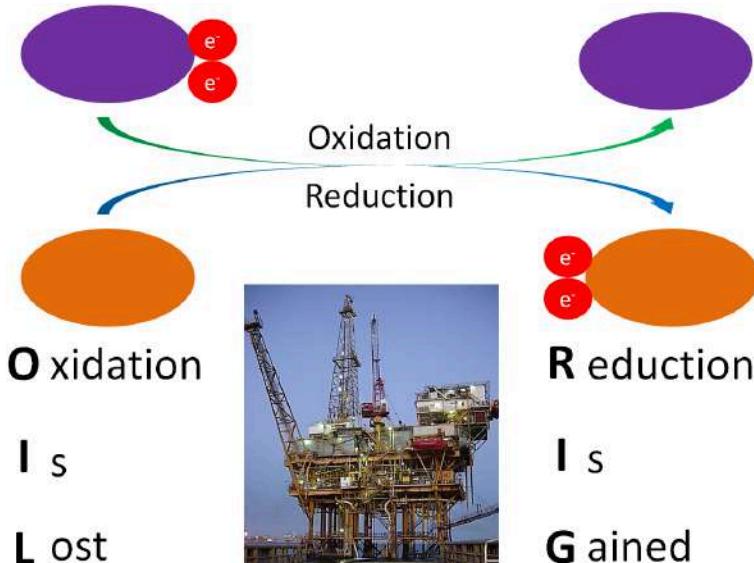


Figure 9.111 The purple compound is oxidized; the orange compound is reduced

Some important terms to understand:

**Free Radical** – a molecule with an unpaired electron in its outer orbital.

The following example shows normal oxygen losing an electron from its outer orbital and thus, becoming an oxygen free radical.

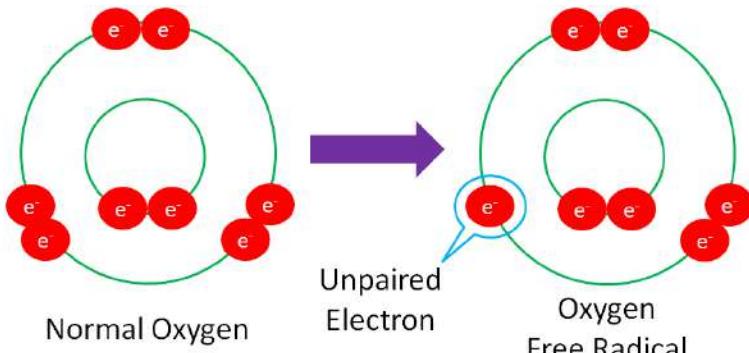


Figure 9.112 Normal oxygen is converted to an oxygen free radical by losing one electron in its outer orbital, leaving one unpaired electron

Free radicals are highly reactive because they actively seek an electron to stabilize the molecule.

**Reactive Oxygen Species (ROS)** – an oxygen-containing, free radical species.

Some of the most common ROS are ( $\bullet$  symbolizes radical):

Superoxide ( $O_2\bullet$ )

Hydroxyl Radical ( $\bullet OH$ )

Hydrogen Peroxide Radical ( $HO_2\bullet$ )

Peroxy Radical ( $ROO\bullet$ )

Alkoxy Radical ( $RO\bullet$ )

Ozone ( $O_3$ )

Singlet Oxygen ( $^1O_2$ )

Hydrogen Peroxide ( $H_2O_2$ )

**Oxidative Stress** – the imbalance between the production of ROS/free radicals and the body's ability to quench them.

The following video does a good job illustrating how free radicals can be formed and quenched by antioxidants.

#### Web Link

Video: How Antioxidants Work (4:31), watch first minute

The following figure shows that inflammation caused by hitting your thumb with a hammer, exposure to UV light, radiation, smoking, and air pollution are all sources of free radicals.

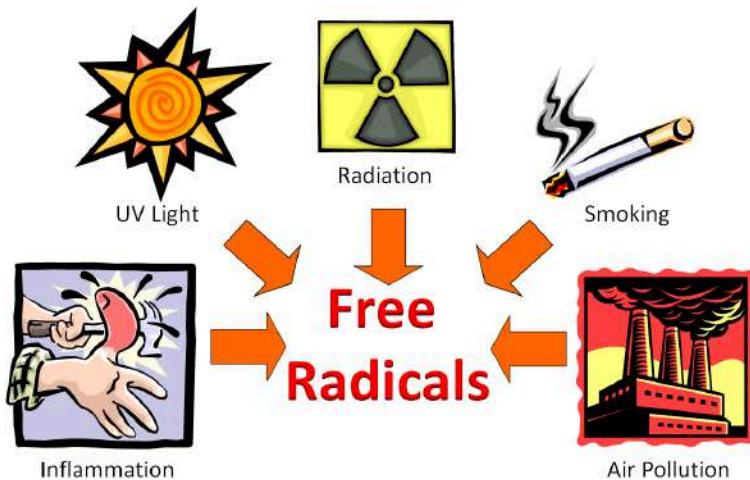


Figure 9.113 Some sources of free radicals

Free radicals can be generated by a variety of sources that can be classified as endogenous (within the body) and exogenous sources (outside the body).

So, we have these free radicals searching for an electron, what's the big deal? The problem arises if the free radicals oxidize LDL, proteins, or DNA as shown below.

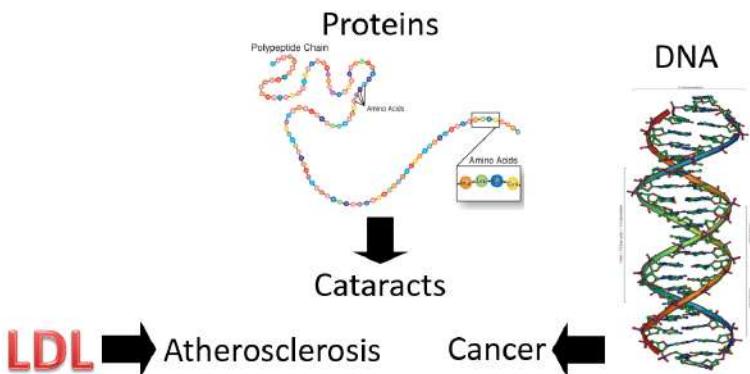


Figure 9.114 Free radicals can attack LDL, proteins, and DNA<sup>2,3</sup>

Oxidized LDL is more atherogenic, meaning it is more likely to contribute to atherosclerosis (hardening of the arteries) than normal LDL. Protein oxidation is believed to be involved in the development of cataracts. Cataracts are the clouding of the lens of the eye. If you would like to see what it looks like, see the link below.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Cataract Vision Simulator](#)

---

If a nucleotide in DNA is attacked, it can result in a mutation. A mutation is a change in the nucleotide or base pair sequence of DNA. Mutations are a common occurrence in cancer.

#### **References & Links**

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
Image:Gulf\\_Offshore\\_Platform.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Gulf_Offshore_Platform.jpg)
2. [http://www.genome.gov/Pages/Hyperion/DIR/VIP/  
Glossary/Illustration/amino\\_acid.cfm?key=amino%20acids](http://www.genome.gov/Pages/Hyperion/DIR/VIP/Glossary/Illustration/amino_acid.cfm?key=amino%20acids)
3. <http://www.genome.gov/Glossary/index.cfm?id=149>

#### **Videos**

How Antioxidants Work – <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=lG3OOXIXvxw>

### **Links**

Cataract Vision Simulator – <https://www.aao.org/eye-health/diseases/cataracts-vision-simulator>

## **9.12 What is an Antioxidant?**

We are ready to move on to antioxidants, which as their name indicates, combat free radicals, ROS, and oxidative stress. As a humorous introduction, the link below is to a cartoon that shows Auntie Oxidant kicking free radicals out of the bloodstream.

---

### **Web Link**

---

[Auntie Oxidant](#)

---

But it's not quite that simple. You have probably heard the saying "take one for the team." Instead of taking one for the team, antioxidants "give one for the team." The 'giving' is the donation of an electron from the antioxidant to a free radical, in order to regenerate a stable compound, as shown below.

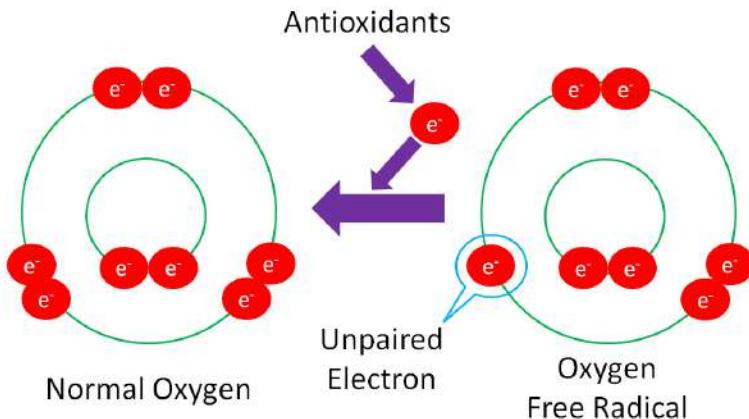


Figure 9.121 Regeneration of normal oxygen from oxygen free radical by the donation of an electron from an antioxidant

Donating an electron is how vitamins act as antioxidants. Minerals, on the other hand, are not antioxidants themselves. Instead, they are cofactors for antioxidant enzymes.

These antioxidant enzymes include:

Superoxide dismutase (SOD): uses copper, zinc, and manganese as cofactors (there is more than one SOD enzyme); converts superoxide to hydrogen peroxide and oxygen<sup>1</sup>.

Catalase: uses iron as a cofactor; converts hydrogen peroxide to water<sup>1</sup>.

Glutathione peroxidase (GPX): is a selenoenzyme that converts hydrogen peroxide to water. It can also convert other reactive oxygen species (ROSs) to water<sup>1</sup>.

The action of these enzymes is shown below.

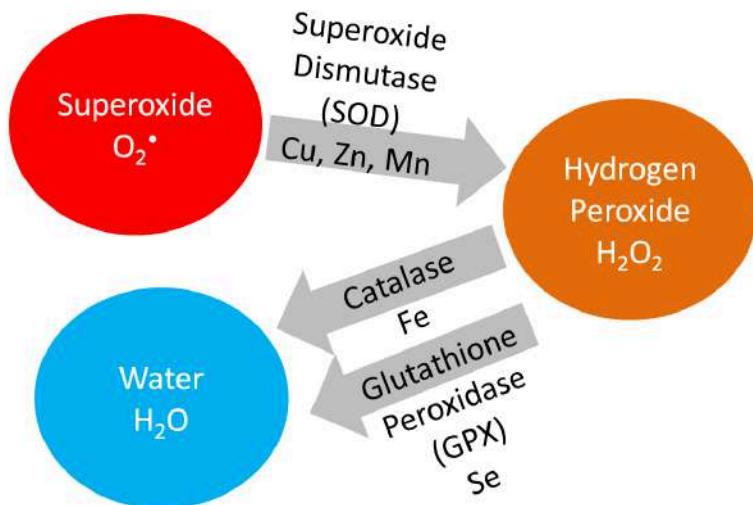


Figure 9.122 Antioxidant enzymes that use minerals as cofactors

Antioxidants are thought to work in concert with one another, forming what is known as the antioxidant network. An example of the antioxidant network is shown below. Alpha-tocopherol (major form of vitamin E in our body) is oxidized, forming an alpha-tocopherol radical. This donation of an electron stabilizes reactive oxygen species. Ascorbate (vitamin C) is then oxidized, forming dehydroascorbate to regenerate (reduce) alpha-tocopherol. Ascorbate is then regenerated by the selenoenzyme thioredoxin reductase. This demonstrates how antioxidants can function as a network to regenerate one another so they can continue to function as antioxidants.

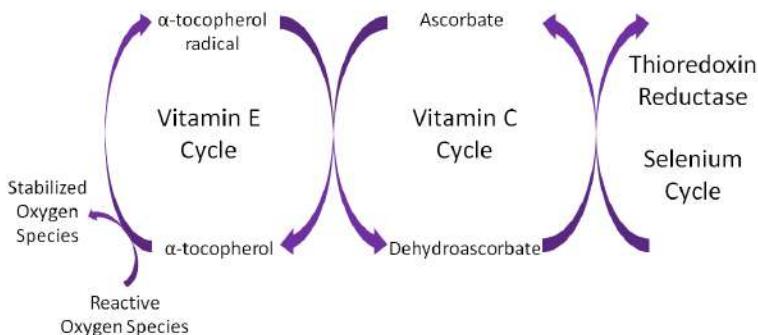


Figure 9.123 The theorized antioxidant network<sup>2</sup>

## References & Links

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. Packer L, Weber SU, Rimbach G. (2001) Molecular aspects of alpha-tocotrienol antioxidant action and cell signalling. J Nutr 131(2): 369S-373S.

## Link

Auntie Oxidant – <http://www.ibiblio.org/Dave/Dr-Fun/df200005/df20000523.jpg>

## 9.13 Meaningful Antioxidant(s)

There is a lot of confusion among the public on antioxidants. For the most part, this is for a good reason. Many food companies put antioxidant numbers on the packages that sound good to consumers, who have no idea how to interpret them. Thus, it is increasingly important to have an understanding of what a meaningful antioxidant actually is.

A meaningful antioxidant has two characteristics (these are based on the assumption that the compound is an antioxidant):

1. Found in appreciable amounts right location where there are free radicals/ROS that need to be quenched
2. It is not redundant with another antioxidant that is already serving as an antioxidant

What do these mean? Let's consider the example of lycopene and vitamin E (alpha-tocopherol), which are both fat-soluble antioxidants. *In vitro* antioxidant assays have found that lycopene is 10-fold more effective in quenching singlet oxygen than alpha-tocopherol. However, when you look at the concentrations found in the body, there is far more alpha-tocopherol than lycopene. For example:

LDL on average contains 11.6 molecules of alpha tocopherol and 0.9 molecules of lycopene. Thus, if we divide alpha tocopherol by lycopene  $11.6/0.9$  we find that there is on average 12.9 times more alpha-tocopherol than lycopene.

Other examples in the body:

Prostate - 162-fold higher alpha-tocopherol than lycopene concentrations

Skin - 17 to 269-fold higher alpha-tocopherol than lycopene concentrations

Plasma - 53-fold higher alpha tocopherol than lycopene concentrations

Thus, despite the fact that lycopene is a better antioxidant *in vitro*, since the concentration of alpha-tocopherol is so much higher in tissues (locations of need), it is likely the more meaningful antioxidant. In addition, if lycopene and alpha-tocopherol have similar antioxidant functions (fat-soluble antioxidants), lycopene's potential antioxidant action is redundant to alpha-tocopherol's antioxidant function and thus, also less likely to be a meaningful antioxidant. Indeed, further examination of the literature has not

suggested that lycopene can act as an antioxidant *in vivo*, even though it is a good one *in vitro*.

You may be wondering “What about the *in vitro* antioxidant assays, like the oxygen radical absorbance capacity (ORAC) assay that some food and supplement companies are including on their labels?” This is an example of how some companies/businesses use ORAC values to market their product(s). However, the USDA removed its table of ORAC values “due to mounting evidence that the values indicating antioxidant capacity have no relevance to the effects of specific bioactive compounds, including polyphenols on human health<sup>2</sup>.”

---

#### **Web Link**

[Sozo Coffee ORAC Comparison](#)

---

However, going back to the two characteristics of meaningful antioxidants, there really is no evidence that shows that a high ORAC score leads to any benefit *in vivo*. This is because the measure also doesn’t take into account characteristics such as bioavailability. Bioavailability is the amount of a compound that is absorbed or reaches circulation. Many of these purported super antioxidants have not been shown to be absorbed or maintained in the body in a way that would suggest that they would be meaningful antioxidants. 5 years after it was removed, industry and suppliers think it has been a good thing that it is no longer used as indicated in the following article.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Saying goodbye to ORAC was a good thing for industry, suppliers say](#)

---

#### **References & Links**

1. Erdman, J.W., Ford, N.A., Lindshield, B.L. Are the health attributes of lycopene related to its antioxidant function? *Arch Biochem Biophys*, 483: 229–235, 2009.

2. <http://www.ars.usda.gov/Services/docs.htm?docid=15866>

### **Link**

Sozo Coffeee ORAC Comparison – <http://www.sozoglobal.com/products/?sec=1>  
<http://www.sozoglobal.com/products/?sec=1>

Saying goodbye to ORAC was a good thing for industry, suppliers say – <http://www.nutraingredients-usa.com/Suppliers2/Saying-goodbye-to-ORAC-was-a-good-thing-for-industry-suppliers-say>

## **9.14 Too Much of a Good Thing? Antioxidants as Pro-oxidants**

Chapter 1 described a clinical trial that found that high-dose beta-carotene supplementation increased lung cancer risk in smokers. This is an example of findings that support that high doses of antioxidants may be “too much of a good thing”, causing more harm than benefit. The parabolic, or U-shaped figure, below displays how the level of nutrient concentration or intake (x-axis) relates to an antioxidant measure (y-axis). The lowest level of antioxidant intake or tissue concentration results in nutrient deficiency if the antioxidant is essential (vitamins and minerals). Intake levels above deficient, but less than optimal, are referred to as low suboptimal. Suboptimal means the levels are not optimal. Thus, low suboptimal and high suboptimal sandwich optimal. The high suboptimal level is between optimal and where the nutrient becomes toxic.

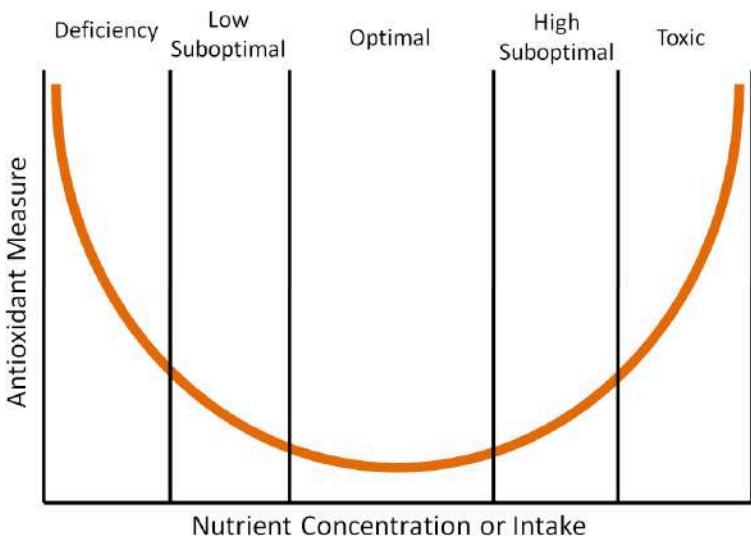


Figure 9.142 How the levels of nutrient concentration or intake alters antioxidant measures in the body. Adapted from reference 1

An example of where this phenomenon has been shown to occur is in the dog prostate with toenail selenium concentrations, which are a good indicator of long-term selenium status<sup>1</sup>. Researchers found that when they plotted prostate DNA damage (antioxidant measure) against toenail selenium status (nutrient concentration or intake) that it resulted in a U-shaped curve like the one shown above<sup>1</sup>. Thus, it is good to have antioxidants in your diet, but too much can be counterproductive.

#### References & Links

1. Waters DJ, Shen S, Glickman LT, Cooley DM, Bostwick DG, et al. (2005) Prostate cancer risk and DNA damage: Translational significance of selenium supplementation in a canine model. *Carcinogenesis* 26(7): 1256-1262.

## 9.2 Vitamin E

There are 8 different forms of vitamin E: 4 tocopherols and 4 tocotrienols. The difference between tocopherols and tocotrienols is that the former have a saturated tail, while the latter have an unsaturated tail. Within tocopherols and tocotrienols, the difference between the different forms is the position of the methyl groups on the ring. The 4 different forms within the tocopherol and tocotrienols are designated by the Greek letters: alpha, beta, gamma, and delta. The difference in these structures is shown in the figures below.

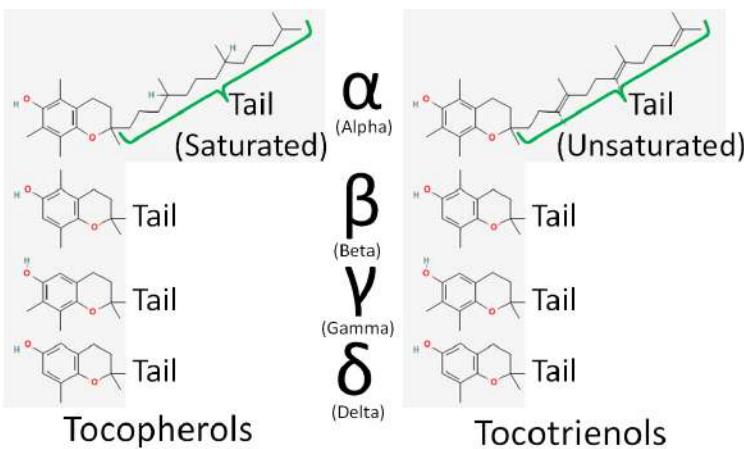


Figure 9.21 Structures of the different forms of vitamin E

For reasons that will be covered in a later subsection, the primary form of vitamin E found in the body is alpha-tocopherol. The major, and possibly only, function of vitamin E is as an antioxidant. When it serves as an antioxidant it forms an alpha-tocopherol radical, as shown below.

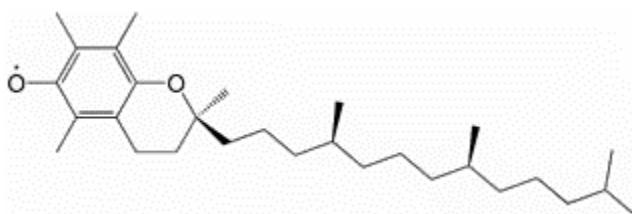


Figure 9.23 Alpha-tocopherol radical1

Alpha-tocopherol is believed to be the first part of an antioxidant network (shown below) where it is oxidized to donate an electron to stabilize reactive oxygen species. Alpha-tocopherol radical can then be reduced by the donation of an electron from ascorbate.

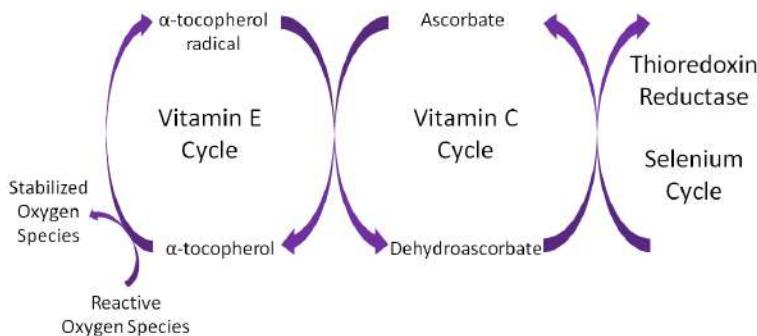


Figure 9.24 The theorized antioxidant network2

To help protect the antioxidant function of alpha-tocopherol (by preventing the formation of alpha-tocopherol radical) in foods and during digestion, some manufacturers have added compounds to this site of alpha-tocopherol through ester bonds. These are referred to as alpha-tocopherol derivatives or alpha-tocopherol esters. The most common forms are alpha-tocopherol acetate, alpha-tocopherol succinate, and alpha-tocopherol phosphate

(Ester-E®). The figures below show the structure of alpha-tocopherol acetate, and the structure of succinic acid.

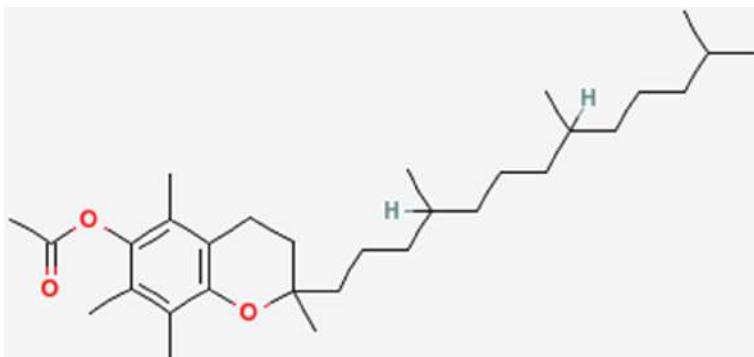


Figure 9.25 Alpha-tocopherol acetate

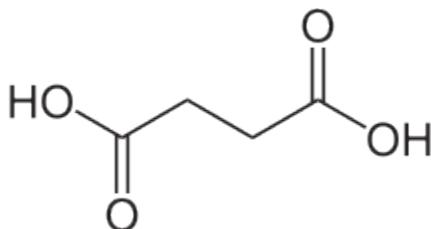


Figure 9.26 Succinic acid3

Alpha-tocopherol derivatives, such as acetate in alpha-tocopherol acetate, are cleaved prior to absorption in the small intestine by esterases, meaning that alpha-tocopherol is absorbed, not the alpha-tocopherol derivative.

#### Subsections:

- 9.21 Alpha-Tocopherol: Natural vs. Synthetic
- 9.22 Absorption, Metabolism & Excretion of Vitamin E
- 9.23 Dietary Vitamin E & Amounts Found in Body

## 9.24 Vitamin E Deficiency & Toxicity

## 9.25 Vitamin E DRI & IUs

### References & Links

1. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Radical\\_\(chemistry\)#/media/File:VitE.gif](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Radical_(chemistry)#/media/File:VitE.gif)
2. Packer L, Weber SU, Rimbach G. (2001) Molecular aspects of alpha-tocotrienol antioxidant action and cell signalling. J Nutr 131(2): 369S-373S
3. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Bernsteins%C3%A4ure2.svg>

## 9.21 Alpha-Tocopherol: Natural vs. Synthetic

In addition to being found naturally in foods, alpha-tocopherol can also be synthesized. It is important to know whether alpha-tocopherol is natural or synthetic because the stereochemistry differs between these forms. Alpha-tocopherol contains 3 chiral centers (non-superimposable mirror images) designated as R or S. If this is a new topic to you or you would like a refresher, the following link is a fun, animated chirality game.

---

#### Web Link

[Chirality Game](#)(inactive link as of 08/31/2020)

---

The 3 chiral centers in alpha-tocopherol are located at the 2, 4', and 8' positions. You can see the full numbering of tocopherols in the link below. In short, the rings are normal numbers and the tail are prime numbers.

---

#### Web Link

[Tocopherol Numbering](#)

---

The figure below shows the 3 chiral centers without the other numbers.

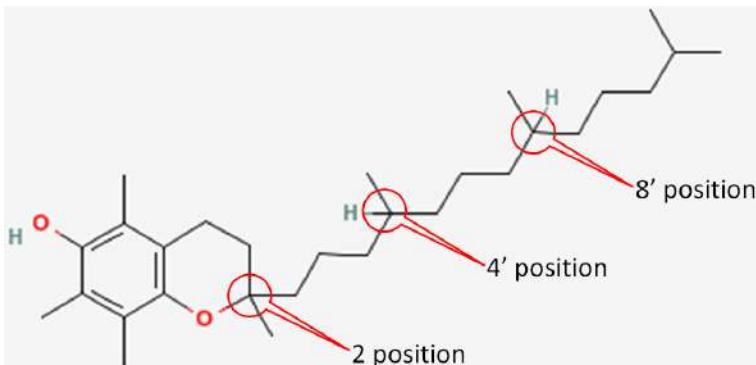


Figure 9.211 The 2, 4', and 8' positions of alpha-tocopherol are chiral centers

In natural alpha-tocopherol, all 3 chiral centers are in the R configuration. Thus, it is designated RRR-alpha-tocopherol. The R's represent the 2, 4', and 8' positions of alpha-tocopherol, respectively, as shown below1.

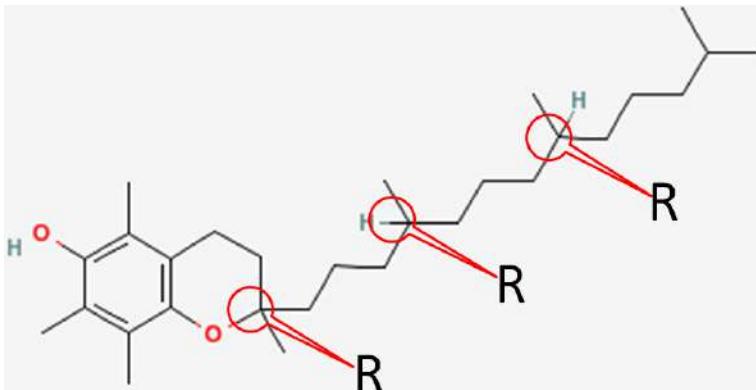


Figure 9.212 Natural alpha-tocopherol 2, 4', and 8' positions are in the R conformation

Synthetic alpha-tocopherol is a racemic (equal) mixture of all the

different stereochemical possibilities at the three chiral centers. These are:

RRR

RRS

RSS

RSR

SRR

SSR

SSS

SRS

The two forms of alpha-tocopherol are designated (these are placed before alpha-tocopherol to indicate whether it is natural or synthetic) as listed below:

### **1. Natural**

New designation: RRR-alpha-tocopherol (because all 3 positions are RRR)

Old designation: d-alpha-tocopherol

### **2. Synthetic**

New designation: all-rac-alpha-tocopherol (because it is a racemic mixture)

Old designation: dl-alpha-tocopherol

The old d and dl designations were describing the chemical structure that are sometimes still used. Keep in mind the natural and synthetic are describing the stereochemistry of alpha-tocopherol and not whether it is naturally derived. For example, there are natural alpha-tocopherol derivatives where the derivatives are added through synthetic procedures.

### **References & Links**

1. <http://lpi.oregonstate.edu/mic/vitamins/vitamin-E>

### **Link**

Chirality Game - [http://nobelprize.org/educational\\_games/chemistry/chiral/game/game.html](http://nobelprize.org/educational_games/chemistry/chiral/game/game.html)

Tocopherol Numbering - <http://www.chem.qmul.ac.uk/iupac/mis/noGreek/toc.html>

## 9.22 Vitamin E Absorption, Metabolism, & Excretion

You might be saying to yourself, “who cares about natural versus synthetic alpha-tocopherol.” But the small change in stereochemistry makes a big difference in how alpha-tocopherol is maintained in the body.

All forms of vitamin E (tocopherols, tocotrienols) are absorbed equally. Fat-soluble vitamins are handled like lipids and thus are incorporated into chylomicrons that have triglycerides removed by lipoprotein lipase. The chylomicron remnants containing the different forms of vitamin E are then taken up by the liver. The figure below shows the absorption, metabolism, and excretion of vitamin E.

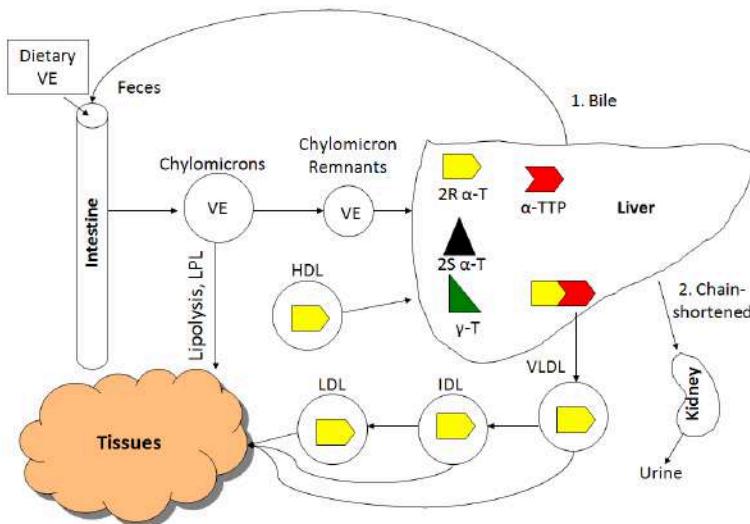


Figure 9.221 The absorption, metabolism, and excretion of vitamin E

The liver contains a protein called alpha-tocopherol transfer protein (alpha-TTP), which is responsible for maintaining higher levels of alpha-tocopherol in the body. Alpha-TTP preferentially binds to 2R alpha-tocopherol and helps facilitate its incorporation into VLDL. 2R means any form of alpha-tocopherol in which the 2 position is in the R conformation. The following table summarizes the forms of alpha-tocopherol that bind well to alpha-TTP, and those that don't bind well to alpha-TTP.

Table 9.221 Alpha-tocopherol isomers and binding to alpha-TTP

Do not bind well to alpha-TTP	Bind well to alpha-TTP
SRR	RRR
SSR	RRS
SSS	RSS
SRS	RSR

Other forms of vitamin E (gamma-tocopherol, tocotrienols) also don't bind well to alpha-TTP and thus, are found in lower levels than alpha-tocopherol in the body. The following graph shows plasma vitamin E levels from a study in which subjects were given 150 mg each of RRR-alpha-tocopherol, all-rac-alpha-tocopherol, or gamma-tocopherol.

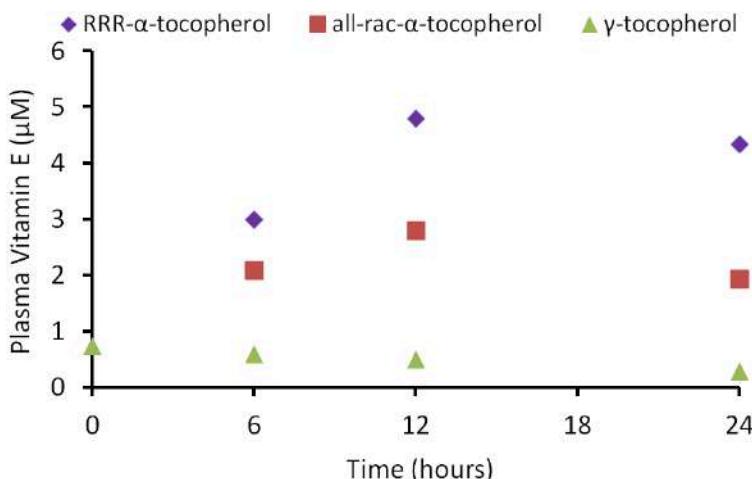


Figure 9.222 Plasma vitamin E concentrations in response to a 150 mg dose of RRR-alpha-tocopherol, all-rac-alpha-tocopherol, or gamma-tocopherol.  
Adapted from reference 1

As you can see in the figure, there was a greater rise in the plasma alpha-tocopherol levels after receiving RRR-alpha-tocopherol vs. all-rac-alpha-tocopherol. This is not a surprise because approximately 50% of all-rac-alpha-tocopherol is 2R alpha-tocopherol that binds well with alpha-TTP. You can also see that the plasma gamma-tocopherol concentration is much lower than either natural or synthetic alpha-tocopherol.

From VLDL and subsequent lipoproteins, vitamin E reaches tissues, with most vitamin E in the body being found in the adipose tissue. There are 2 main routes of vitamin E excretion. The major route of excretion is through bile that is then excreted in feces. The

second route is in the urine after vitamin E is chain-shortened in a process similar to beta-oxidation to make them more water-soluble.

### Reference

1. Traber MG, Elsner A, Brigelius-Floh R. (1998) Synthetic as compared with natural vitamin E is preferentially excreted as alpha-CEHC in human urine: Studies using deuterated alpha-tocopheryl acetates. FEBS Lett 437(1-2): 145-148.

## 9.23 Dietary Vitamin E & Amounts Found in Body

The best food sources of vitamin E are primarily oils and nuts. As you can see below, the forms of vitamin E that nuts and oils contain varies, with the two major forms being alpha and gamma-tocopherol. Soybean, corn, and flaxseed oils are good sources of gamma-tocopherol. Palm and canola oils contain almost equal amounts of alpha-tocopherol and gamma-tocopherol. Safflower oil, almonds, sunflower oil, and wheat germ oil are good sources of alpha-tocopherol. Beta-tocopherol and delta-tocopherol are found in lower levels in foods. Tocotrienols, for the most part, are not found in high levels in the diet. The amount of tocopherols in different nuts and oils are shown in the figure below.

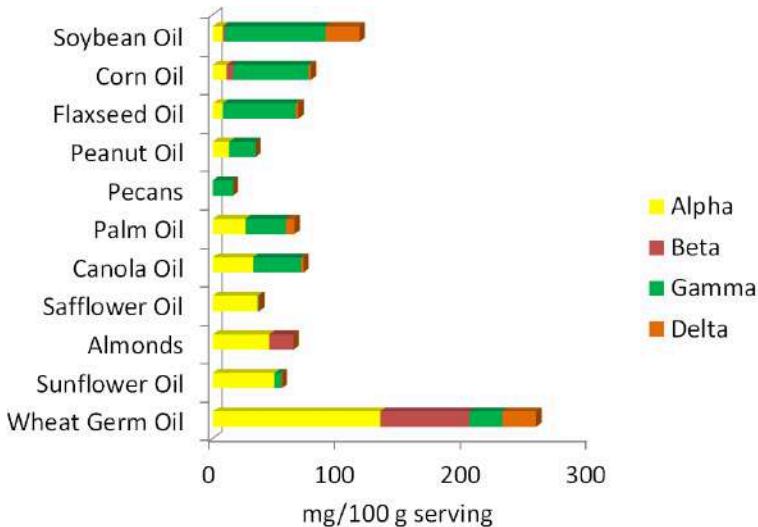


Figure 9.231 Tocopherol distribution in plant products<sup>1</sup>

Three-fourths of the oil Americans consume is soybean oil. As a result, it is estimated that we consume 2-4 times more gamma-tocopherol than alpha-tocopherol. Europeans consume more olive, sunflower, and canola oil and thus are believed to consume at least 2 times more alpha-tocopherol than gamma-tocopherol<sup>1</sup>.

Despite Americans' higher intake of gamma tocopherol compared to other countries, our serum concentrations do not differ much as illustrated in the table below.

Table 9.231 International serum gamma-tocopherol and alpha-tocopherol concentrations (uM/L)<sup>1</sup>

<b>Location</b>	<b>Gamma-tocopherol</b>	<b>Alpha-tocopherol</b>
USA 1*	2-7	15-20
USA 2	5.4	22.3
USA 3	2.5	21.8
Costa Rica	2.7	28.6-31.8
France	1.05-1.28	26.7
Ireland	1.74-1.87	26.3
The Netherlands	2.3	23.9-25.5
Spain	0.88-1.14	27.4-28.3
Italy	1.29	24.3
Sweden	3.2	23.8
Lithuania	1.64	21.7
Austria	1.48	21.1

There are 3 different studies that have reported serum levels in the United States.

Tissue concentrations, for the most part, also indicate a greater accumulation of alpha-tocopherol than gamma-tocopherol as shown in the table below.

Table 9.232 Tissue gamma-tocopherol and alpha-tocopherol concentrations (nM/g)<sup>1</sup>

<b>Tissue</b>	<b>Gamma-tocopherol</b>	<b>Alpha-tocopherol</b>
Skin	180	127
Adipose	176	440
Muscle	107	155

## Reference

- Wagner KH, Kamal-Eldin A, Elmadafa I. (2004) Gamma-tocopherol—an underestimated vitamin? Ann Nutr Metab 48(3): 169-188.

## 9.24 Vitamin E Deficiency & Toxicity

Vitamin E deficiency is extremely rare. Depletion studies require years on a vitamin E-deficient diet to cause deficiency<sup>1</sup>. Deficiency primarily occurs in people with lipid malabsorption problems or Ataxia with Isolated Vitamin E Deficiency (AVED). Individuals with AVED have a mutation in their alpha-TTP that prevents it from functioning correctly. The primary symptoms of vitamin E deficiency are neurological problems.

High levels of vitamin E intake do not result in a noted toxicity. However, higher levels of intake of alpha-tocopherol (like achieved by taking supplements) are associated with decreased blood coagulation. In particular, hemorrhagic stroke has been linked to high alpha-tocopherol intake levels. The link below shows that in this condition a blood vessel ruptures or leaks in the brain.

---

### Web Link

Hemorrhagic Stroke (inactive link as of 08/31/2020)

---

It is believed that this increased bleeding risk is due to a alpha-tocopherol metabolite that has anti-vitamin K activity. This potential antagonism will be described more in the vitamin K section.

### References & Links

1. DRI (2000) Dietary reference intakes for vitamin C, vitamin E, selenium, and carotenoids.

### Link

Hemorrhagic Stroke - <http://heart.arizona.edu/heart-health/preventing-stroke/lowering-risks-stroke>

## 9.25 Vitamin E DRI & IUs

Before 2001, all forms of vitamin E contributed to the RDA, using a measure called alpha-tocopherol equivalents. In 2001, the Dietary Reference Intake (DRI) committee decided only 2R forms of alpha-tocopherol should be used to estimate the requirement, because these forms bind to alpha-TTP. Thus, other forms of vitamin E (gamma-tocopherol, tocotrienols etc.) do not count toward the requirement and the unit is now mg of alpha-tocopherol. As a result, soybean, corn, and flaxseed oils, which are good sources of gamma-tocopherol, are no longer considered to be good sources of vitamin E. The figure below is a reminder of the tocopherol content of different nuts and oils.

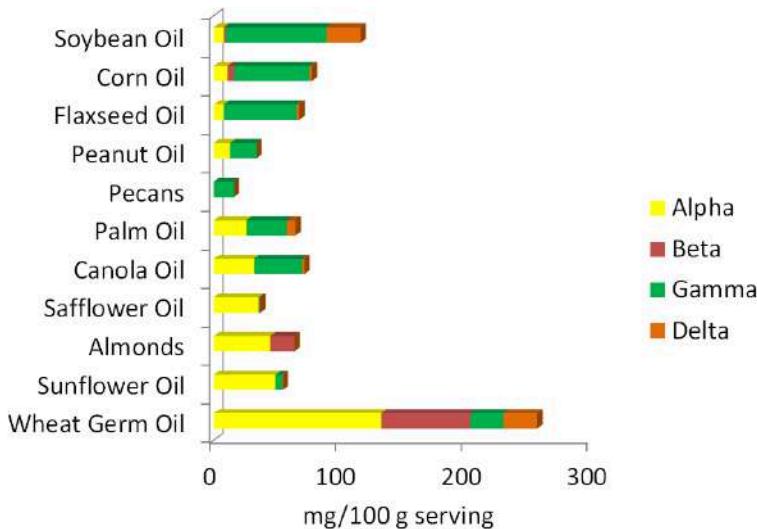


Figure 9.251 Only the yellow bars count toward the 2001 DRI requirement!

Another level of complexity is added by the introduction of international units (IU). IUs are a unit that are used to describe the bioactivity of different compounds, including 4 vitamins: A, D, E, and

C. It would be less confusing if these units were not used. However, most supplements use IUs. IUs are not as common on food items.

For vitamin E, IUs are specific for alpha-tocopherol and adjusted for the molecular weight of the different forms (alpha-tocopherol acetate etc.). The conversion factors for converting IU to mg of alpha-tocopherol are:

0.67 for RRR-alpha-tocopherol (and its esters)  
0.45 for all-rac-alpha-tocopherol (and its esters)

Here are some example calculations showing how to use these conversion factors:

Example 1. For a supplement containing 100 IU of RRR-alpha tocopherol:

$$100 \text{ IU} \times 0.67 = 67 \text{ mg alpha-tocopherol}$$

Example 2. For a supplement containing 100 IU of all-rac-alpha tocopherol:

$$100 \text{ IU} \times 0.45 = 45 \text{ mg alpha-tocopherol}$$

### References & Links

1. Wagner KH, Kamal-Eldin A, Elmadafa I. (2004) Gamma-tocopherol—an underestimated vitamin? *Ann Nutr Metab* 48(3): 169–188.
2. DRI (2000) Dietary reference intakes for vitamin C, vitamin E, selenium, and carotenoids.
3. <https://ods.od.nih.gov/factsheets/VitaminE-HealthProfessional/>

## 9.3 Vitamin C

Vitamin C is well-known for being a water-soluble antioxidant. Humans are one of the few mammals that don't synthesize vitamin C, making it an essential micronutrient. Other mammals that don't synthesize vitamin C include primates, guinea pigs, and other less prevalent species<sup>1</sup>.

Vitamin C's scientific names are ascorbic acid or ascorbate and the oxidized form is dehydroascorbic acid or dehydroascorbate. The structure of vitamin C is shown below.

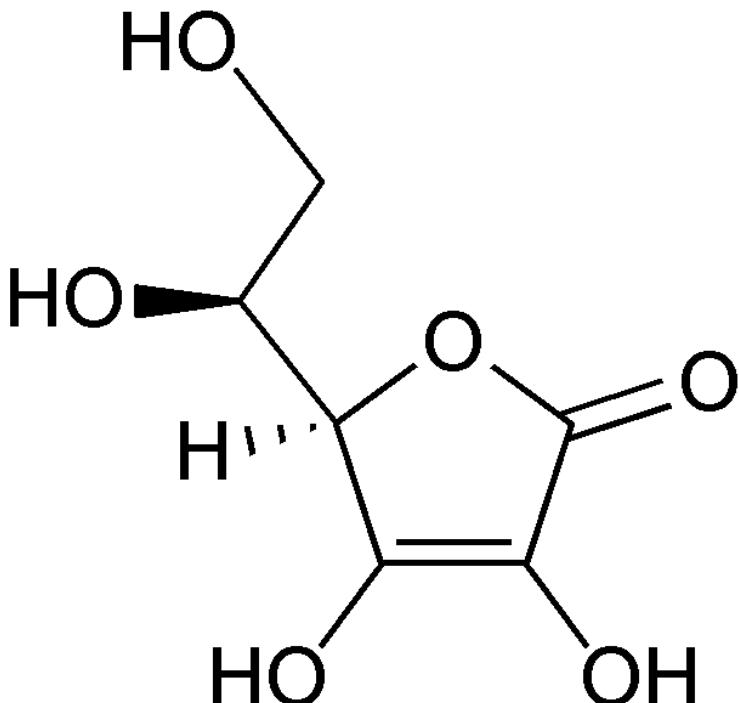


Figure 9.31 Structure of ascorbic acid2

When ascorbic acid is oxidized, it forms semidehydroascorbate (1 degree of oxidation) and then dehydroascorbate (2 degrees of oxidation). The structure of dehydroascorbic acid is shown below.

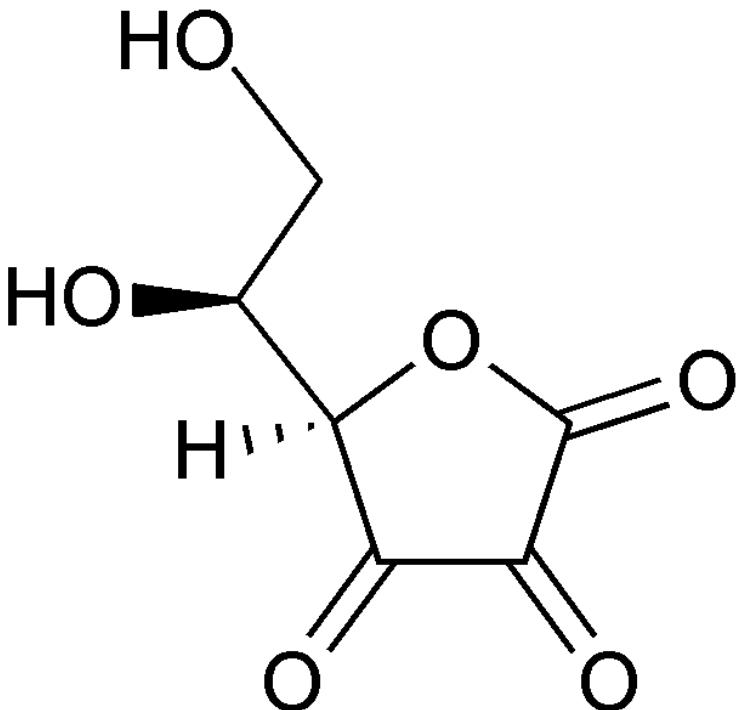


Figure 9.32 Structure of dehydroascorbic acid3

The figure below shows the reaction through which ascorbic acid can stabilize or quench 2 free radicals. The 2 circled hydrogens are lost and replaced by double bonds when ascorbic acid is oxidized to dehydroascorbic acid. Reducing dehydroascorbic acid back to ascorbic acid is the opposite reaction.

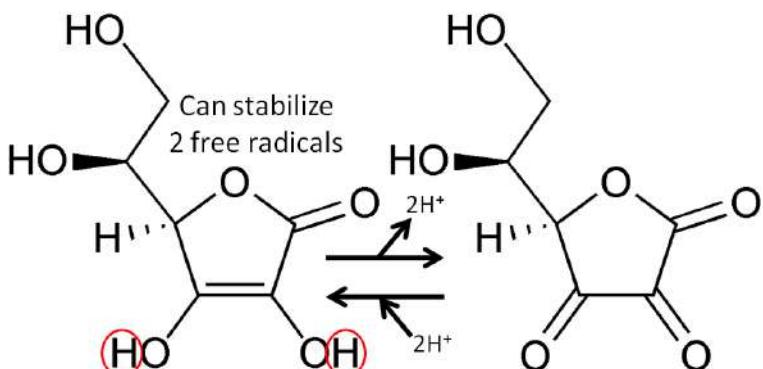


Figure 9.33 The oxidation-reduction reaction between ascorbic acid (left) and dehydroascorbic acid (right)<sup>2,3</sup>

Ascorbic acid is believed to be a part of an antioxidant network (shown below) where it is oxidized to reduce alpha-tocopherol radicals. Dehydroascorbic acid can be reduced by thioredoxin reductase, a selenoenzyme, to regenerate ascorbic acid.

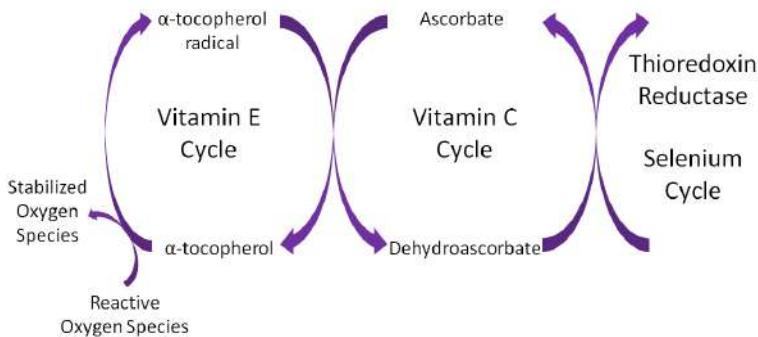


Figure 9.34 The theorized antioxidant network<sup>4</sup>

### Subsections:

- 9.31 Absorption and Tissue Accumulation of Vitamin C
- 9.32 Enzymatic Functions

### 9.33 Vitamin C Deficiency – Scurvy

### 9.34 Vitamin C Toxicity, Linus Pauling, & the Common Cold

#### References & Links

1. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:Ascorbic\\_acid\\_structure.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Ascorbic_acid_structure.png)
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Dehydroascorbic\\_acid.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Dehydroascorbic_acid.png)
4. Packer L, Weber SU, Rimbach G. (2001) Molecular aspects of alpha-tocotrienol antioxidant action and cell signalling. *J Nutr* 131(2): 369S-373S.

## 9.31 Vitamin C Absorption & Tissue Accumulation

Vitamin C is found in foods primarily as ascorbic acid (80–90%), but dehydroascorbic acid (10–20%) is also present. The bioavailability of vitamin C is high at lower doses as shown below, but drops to less than 50% at higher doses.

Table 9.311 Bioavailability of vitamin C1

Dose (mg)	% Bioavailability
200	112
500	73
1250	49

Ascorbic acid is actively absorbed by the sodium vitamin C cotransporter (SVCT) 1. This active transport is driven by the sodium electrochemical gradient created by sodium-potassium ATPase. Ascorbic acid then diffuses into the capillary and ultimately enters general circulation. Vitamin C generally circulates as ascorbic acid.

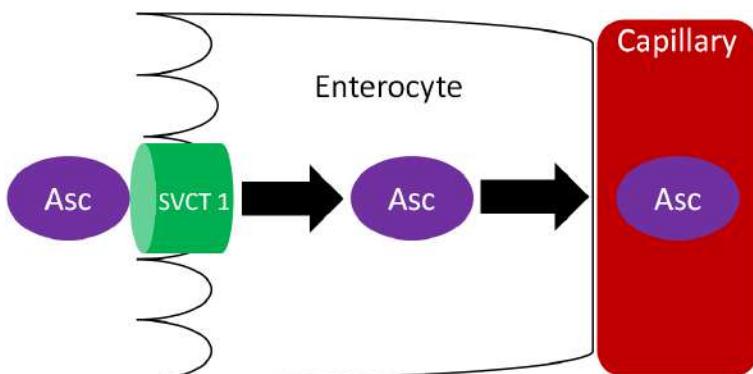


Figure 9.311 Ascorbic acid (Asc) absorption

### Accumulation

Most water-soluble vitamins are not stored in the body. Vitamin C is not stored, but is accumulated in certain tissues in the body where it can be 5-100 times higher than found in the plasma<sup>2</sup>. The table below shows the concentrations of vitamin C in different tissues and fluids.

Table 9.312 Human tissue & fluid ascorbic acid concentrations<sup>1</sup>

Organ/ Tissue	Vitamin C Concentration*	Organ/Tissue	Vitamin C Concentration*
Pituitary Gland	40-50	Lungs	7
Adrenal Gland	30-40	Skeletal Muscle	3-4
Eye Lens	25-31	Testes	3
Liver	10-16	Thyroid	2
Brain	13-15	Cerebrospinal Fluid	3.8
Pancreas	10-15	Plasma	0.4-1
Spleen	10-15	Saliva	0.1-9.1
Kidneys	5-15		

\* mg/100 g wet tissue, mg/100 mL fluids

How does the body accumulate such high levels of vitamin C?  
There are 2 primary mechanisms:

1. Ascorbic Acid (Ascorbate) uptake using sodium-dependent vitamin C transporter (SVCT) 1 or 2
2. Ascorbic Acid (Ascorbate) Recycling

#### **Ascorbic Acid (Ascorbate) transport using sodium-dependent vitamin C transporter (SVCT) 1 or 2**

As shown below, SVCT 1 and SVCT 2 transport ascorbic acid or ascorbate into the cell against the concentration gradient (represented by the orange wedge in the figure below). Like absorption, this uptake is driven by the action of sodium-potassium ATPase. This mechanism is saturable, meaning that at high concentrations it reaches a threshold where it cannot take up ascorbic acid any faster. Thus, there is a limit to how much can be taken up through this mechanism<sup>3</sup>.

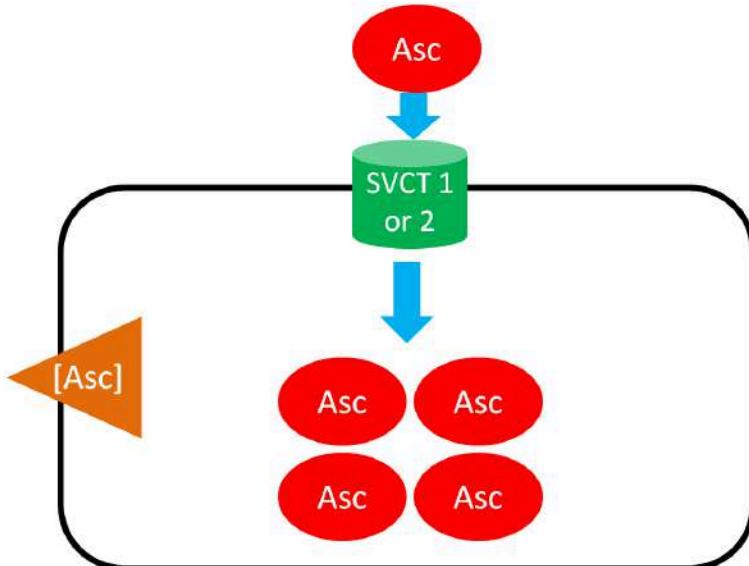


Figure 9.312 Ascorbic acid (Asc) uptake using SVCT 1 and 2 against the ascorbic acid concentration gradient<sup>3</sup>

### Ascorbic Acid (Ascorbate) Recycling

In ascorbic acid recycling, ascorbic acid is oxidized to dehydroascorbic acid (DHA). DHA is then transported into the cell moving with its concentration gradient using GLUT1 or 3. Once inside the cell, DHA is reduced back to ascorbic acid, thus maintaining the DHA gradient. As a result, the cell is able to accumulate high levels of ascorbic acid<sup>3</sup>. The figure below depicts ascorbic acid recycling.

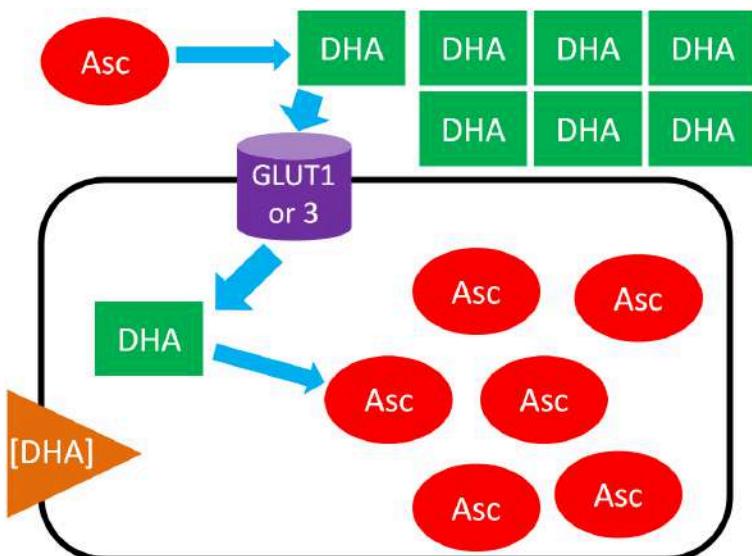


Figure 9.313 Ascorbic acid recycling<sup>3</sup>

### References & Links

1. Shils ME, Shike M, Ross AC, Caballero B, Cousins RJ, editors. (2006) Modern nutrition in health and disease. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
2. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
3. Li Y, Schellhorn H. (2007) New developments and novel

### 9.32 Enzymatic Functions

In addition to its antioxidant function, vitamin C is also a cofactor for a number of enzymes. The enzymes proline hydroxylase and lysyl hydroxylase are important in the formation of the protein collagen. Hydroxylase means that the enzymes add alcohol (hydroxyl, -OH) to the amino acids proline and lysine, as shown below.

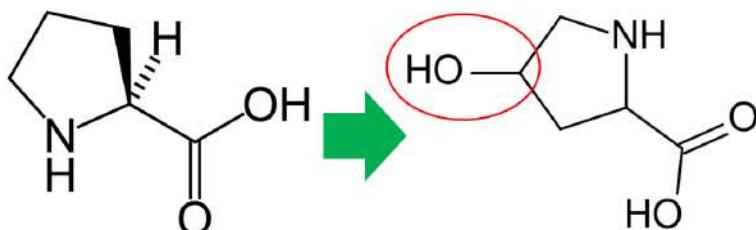


Figure 9.321 Prolyl hydroxylase adds an alcohol group (circled) to proline forming hydroxyproline1,2

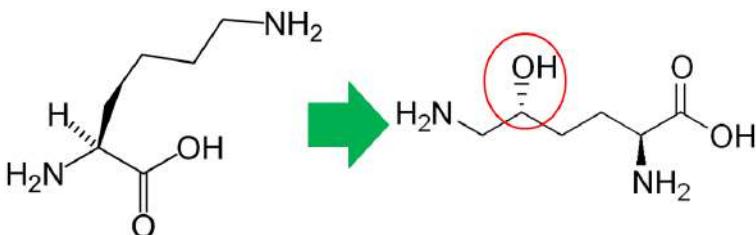


Figure 9.322 Lysyl hydroxylase adds an alcohol group (circled) to lysine forming hydroxylysine3,4

As shown below, prolyl and lysyl hydroxylases require ferrous iron

( $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ ) to function. But in the course of the hydroxylating proline or lysine, ferrous iron ( $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ ) is oxidized to ferric iron ( $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ ). Ascorbic acid is required to reduce  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  to  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ , forming semidehydroascorbic acid in the process. With  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ , the enzyme is then able to continue to hydroxylate proline and lysine.

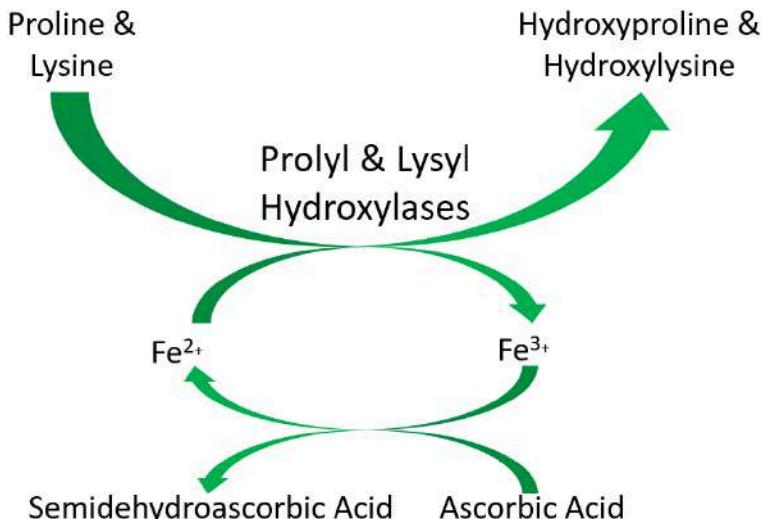


Figure 9.323 Ascorbic acid reduces iron so that it can continue to serve as a cofactor for prolyl and lysyl hydroxylases

Why should you care about collagen formation? Because collagen is estimated to account for 30% or more of total body proteins<sup>5</sup>. Collagen contains a number of hydroxylated prolines and lysines that are needed for collagen strands to properly cross-link. This cross-linking is important for collagen to wind together like a rope, forming the strong triple helix known as tropocollagen. This process is shown in the following animation, as well as in the figure below.

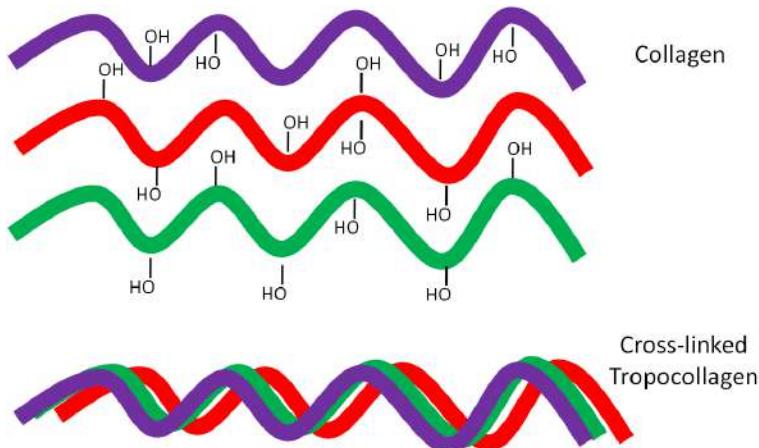


Figure 9.324 Production of cross-linked tropocollagen in the presence of adequate vitamin C

But if there isn't enough ascorbic acid available, the collagen strands are underhydroxylated and instead of forming strong tropocollagen, the underhydroxylated collagen is degraded as shown below.

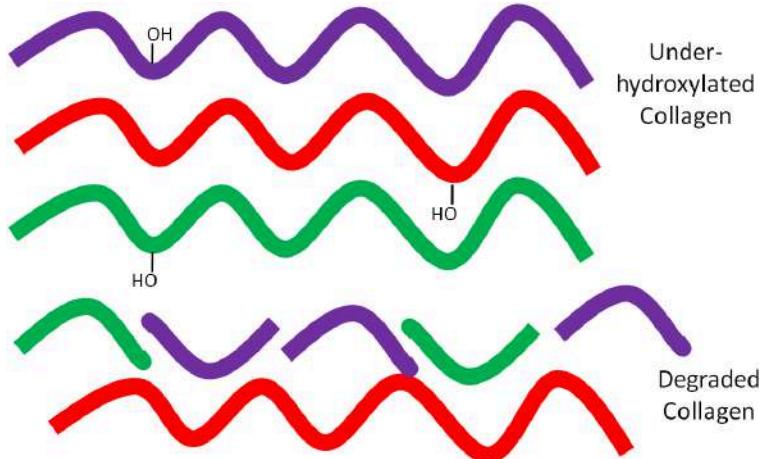


Figure 9.325 Production of underhydroxylated collagen

This weak collagen then results in the symptoms seen in the vitamin C deficiency, scurvy, that will be discussed in the next subsection.

Ascorbic Acid is also needed for:

Carnitine synthesis

Tyrosine synthesis and catabolism

Serotonin (neurotransmitter) synthesis

Other hormone and neurotransmitter synthesis<sup>6</sup>

The figure below shows how ascorbic acid is needed for dopamine hydroxylase, which ultimately produces the hormone epinephrine.

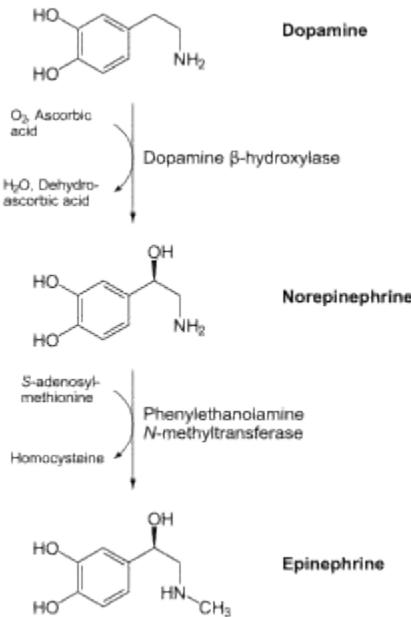


Figure 9.326 Dopamine beta-hydroxylase requires ascorbic acid to produce norepinephrine<sup>7</sup>

## References & Links

1. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proline#/media/File:Prolin\\_Proline.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proline#/media/File:Prolin_Proline.svg)

2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:Hydroxyproline\\_structure.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Hydroxyproline_structure.svg)
3. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lysine#/media/File:L-lysine-  
monocation-2D-skeletal.png](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lysine#/media/File:L-lysine-monocation-2D-skeletal.png)
4. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Hydroxylysine.png>
5. Di Lullo G, Sweeney S, Korkko J, Ala-Kokko L, San Antonio J. (2002) Mapping the ligand-binding sites and disease-associated mutations on the most abundant protein in the human, type I collagen. *The Journal of Biological Chemistry* 277(6): 4223-4231.
6. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
7. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:Catecholamines\\_biosynthesis.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Catecholamines_biosynthesis.svg)

### **9.33 Vitamin C Deficiency (Scurvy)**

Why should you care about the functions of vitamin C? Because they explain the symptoms of vitamin C deficiency. While it is rare in the United States, vitamin C deficiency, known as scurvy, displays symptoms that are a result of weak collagen, that in turn, weakens connective tissue throughout the body. Symptoms of scurvy include bleeding gums, pinpoint hemorrhages, and corkscrew hairs as shown in the figure and link below.



Figure 9.331 Bleeding gums that occur in scurvy1

---

**Web Link**

---

[Corkscrew Hairs](#)

---

Additional symptoms include impaired wound and fracture healing, easy bruising, and loose or decaying teeth. Scurvy can be fatal if not treated. Scurvy was the first discovered nutrition deficiency in 1746 by James Lind, who is shown below.



Figure 9.332 Dr. James Lind discovered that scurvy was caused by a nutrition deficiency<sup>3</sup>

Keep in mind as you read the description below that suggesting scurvy was due to a diet deficiency, at that time, sounded like flu was caused by not consuming green beans. Sounds pretty crazy, right?

Lind was a surgeon on a British navy ship. Frequently during voyages the sailors would develop scurvy for reasons that weren't

understood at the time. It was known that citrus fruits could cure or prevent scurvy, but it was believed this was due to their acidity. Lind performed clinical trials comparing citrus juice to dilute sulfuric acid and vinegar and found that only citrus juice caused the sailors to recover, as depicted in the link below. As a result of the discovery, the British sailors became known as “Limeys” because they would drink lime juice to prevent the development of the disease<sup>4</sup>.

---

#### **Web Link**

Curing Scurvy

---

#### **References & Links**

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Scorbutic\\_gums.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Scorbutic_gums.jpg)
2. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:James\\_lind.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:James_lind.jpg)
4. Carpenter K. (2003) A short history of nutritional science: Part 3 (1912-1944). J Nutr 133(10): 638-645.

#### **Links**

Corkscrew Hairs – <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/imagepages/2345.htm>

Curing Scurvy – <http://ericbakker.com/wp-content/uploads/2015/05/scurvy.png>

#### **9.34 Vitamin C Toxicity, Linus Pauling & the Common Cold**

Vitamin C does not have a toxicity per se, but in some people over 2 grams/day can lead to diarrhea and gastrointestinal distress. In addition, high intake of vitamin C increases excretion of uric acid (urate) and oxalic acid (oxalate). The structure of these 2 compounds are shown below.

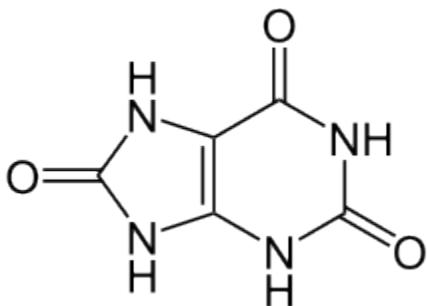


Figure 9.341 Structure of uric acid1

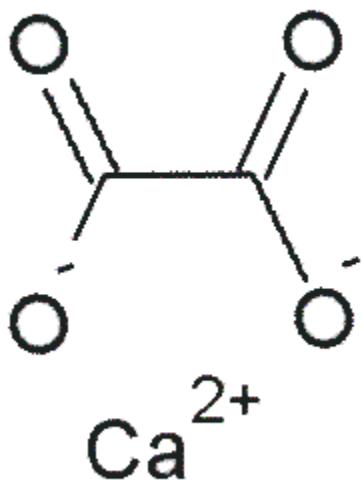
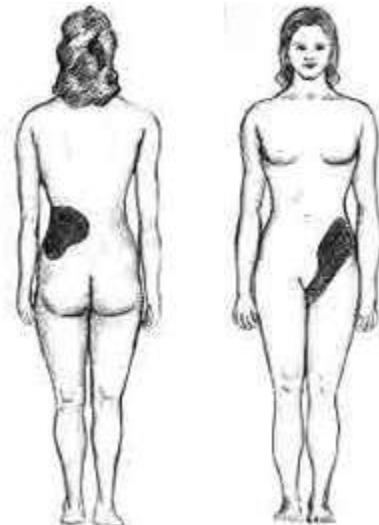


Figure 9.342 Structure of calcium oxalate2

These compounds are the primary components of 2 types of kidney

stones<sup>3</sup>. The figures below show the most common sites of pain in someone with kidney stones.



*Figure 9.343 Kidney stones normally cause pain in the shaded areas<sup>4</sup>*

The following video describes what kidney stones are and the symptoms that can occur if someone has kidney stones. The second link shows some pictures of kidney stones.

---

#### **Web Links**

[Video: Kidney Stones \(1:16\)](#)  
[Kidney Stones](#)

---

Calcium oxalate is one of the primary forms of kidney stones with uric acid stones being more rare<sup>3</sup>. However, a link between excretion of these compounds and actual stone formation hasn't been established. Nevertheless, high-dose vitamin C supplementation should be approached with some caution, since it is not clear whether it increases the risk of forming kidney stones<sup>5</sup>.

### **Linus Pauling and the common cold**

The person who popularized taking megadoses of vitamin C was Dr. Linus Pauling. Dr. Pauling was a chemist, and is the only person to receive 2 unshared Nobel Prizes. The Nobel Prize is a prestigious award, and Dr. Pauling was close to solving the structure of DNA. This would have likely netted him another Nobel prize, but Watson and Crick beat him to it.

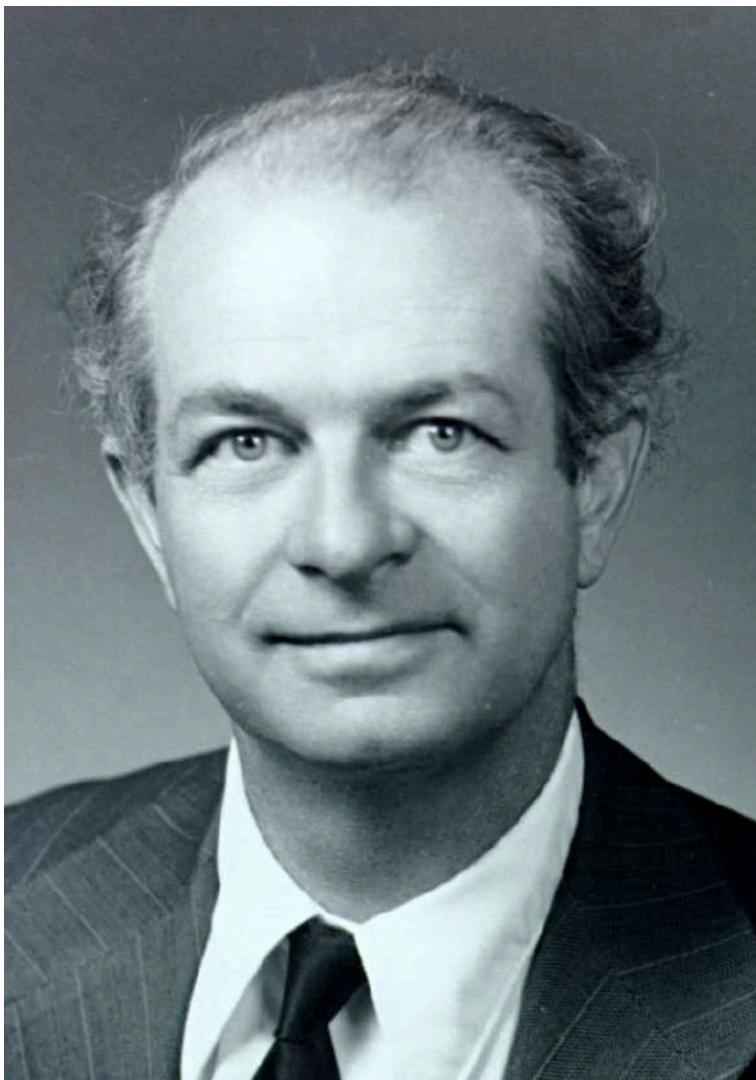


Figure 9.344 Linus Pauling<sup>6</sup>

Later in his life Pauling became convinced that megadoses of vitamin C could prevent the common cold. In 1970 his book Vitamin

C and the Common Cold was released and became a bestseller. Later he came to believe that vitamin C could prevent cardiovascular disease, cancer, and combat aging<sup>7</sup>. However, critics of his beliefs countered that all megadose supplementation was doing was creating “expensive urine”. This refers to the fact that the RDA is only 75-90 mg/day for adults and Pauling recommended taking 1-2 grams of vitamin C daily<sup>8</sup>. Thus, with vitamin C being water-soluble, most of the vitamin C that people on the regimen were paying to consume was being excreted in the urine, thus making it “expensive”.

A recent review of vitamin C and colds found that routine megadoses of vitamin C do not reduce the risk of the common cold in most individuals. However, there is some evidence that it might benefit people exposed to brief periods of severe physical exercise (marathon runners) or cold environments (skiers and soldiers in subarctic conditions). There has been little research conducted in children, so it is not known whether vitamin C supplementation is beneficial in this age group<sup>9</sup>.

### **References & Links**

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:Harns%C3%A4ure\\_Ketoform.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Harns%C3%A4ure_Ketoform.svg)
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Calcium\\_oxalate.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Calcium_oxalate.png)
3. [https://www.niddk.nih.gov/health-information/urologic-  
diseases/kidney-stones](https://www.niddk.nih.gov/health-information/urologic-diseases/kidney-stones)
4. <https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Pos-renal.png>
5. Massey L, Liebman M, Kynast-Gales S. (2005) Ascorbate increases human oxaluria and kidney stone risk. *J Nutr* 135(7): 1673-1677.
6. [https://www.flickr.com/photos/oregonstateuniversity/  
5711642694](https://www.flickr.com/photos/oregonstateuniversity/5711642694)
7. <http://lpi.oregonstate.edu/lpbio/lpbio2.html>
8. [http://www.health.harvard.edu/newsletter\\_article/  
excerpts\\_from\\_vitamin\\_c\\_and\\_the\\_common\\_cold\\_by\\_linus\\_pauling](http://www.health.harvard.edu/newsletter_article/excerpts_from_vitamin_c_and_the_common_cold_by_linus_pauling)

9. Hemilä H, Chalker E, Douglas B. Vitamin C for preventing and treating the common cold. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews* 2007, Issue 3. Art. No.: CD000980. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000980.pub3.

### **Video**

Kidney Stones – <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=16ewFJ-iQtw>

### **Links**

Kidney Stones – <http://www.herringlab.com/photos/index.html>

## **9.4 Selenium**

Selenium can be divided into 2 categories: organic and inorganic. The organic forms contain carbon, while the inorganic forms do not. The primary inorganic forms of selenium are selenite ( $\text{SeO}_3$ ) and selenate ( $\text{SeO}_4$ ). Selenite and selenate are not commonly found alone in nature; they are usually complexed with sodium to form sodium selenite ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SeO}_3$ ) and sodium selenate ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SeO}_4$ ).

Selenomethionine is the most common organic form of selenium. The structure of selenomethionine is shown above the structure of the amino acid methionine in the figure below.

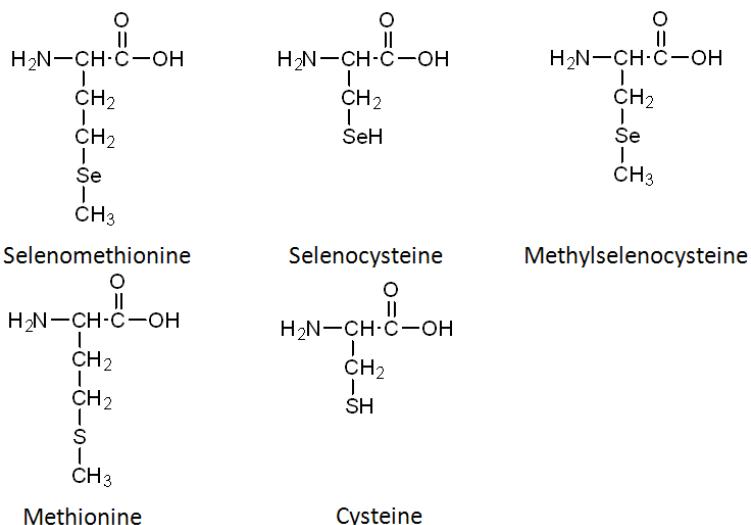


Figure 9.41 Structures of organic forms of selenium and similar sulfur-containing amino acids

In comparing the structures of selenomethionine or methionine, you can see that the only difference is that selenium has been substituted for the sulfur (S) atom in methionine. Selenocysteine is considered the 21st amino acid by some, because there is a codon that directs its insertion into selenoproteins. Like selenomethionine versus methionine, the only difference between selenocysteine and cysteine is the substitution of selenium for sulfur. The last organic form is methylselenocysteine (aka Se-methylselenocysteine). Notice that its structure is like selenocysteine, but with a methyl group added (like the name suggests).

The selenium content of plants is dependent on the soil where they are grown. As shown below, soil selenium levels vary greatly throughout the United States, meaning that the selenium content of plant foods also greatly vary.

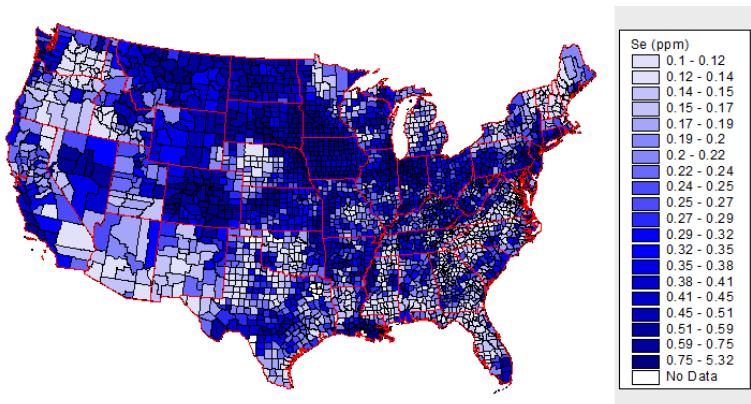


Figure 9.42 United States soil selenium levels2

The above map is interactive, so to see the soil selenium levels in a certain county or state, click on it in the link below.

---

#### Web Link

[USGS Soil Selenium Levels](#)

---

Inorganic forms of selenium are commonly used in supplements. Selenomethionine is the most common organic form of selenium in supplements and food. It is found in cereal grains such as wheat, corn, and rice as well as soy. Yeast are typically used to produce selenomethionine for supplements.

It should be noted that selenomethionine accumulates at much higher levels in the body than other forms of selenium. This is because it can be nonspecifically incorporated into body proteins in place of methionine. However, despite accumulating at higher levels, selenomethionine is less effective than the methylselenocysteine in decreasing cancer incidence or growth in animal models<sup>3</sup>. However, methylselenocysteine is not commonly consumed, because it is a form that plants accumulate to prevent selenium from becoming toxic to themselves. Thus, plants need to

be grown in the presence of high selenium levels to accumulate meaningful amounts of methylselenocysteine.

Subsections:

#### 9.41 Selenoprotein

#### 9.42 Selenium Absorption, Excretion, Toxicity & Its Questionable Deficiency

### References & Links

1. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
2. <http://tin.er.usgs.gov/geochem/doc/averages/se/usa.html>
3. Lindshield B, Ford N, Canene-Adams K, Diamond A, Wallig M, et al. (2010) Selenium, but not lycopene or vitamin E, decreases growth of transplantable dunning R3327-H rat prostate tumors. PloS One 5(4): e10423-e10423.

### Link

USGS Soil Selenium Levels – <http://tin.er.usgs.gov/geochem/doc/averages/se/usa.html>

#### 9.41 Selenoproteins

As mentioned earlier, selenium's antioxidant function is not due to the mineral itself, but a result of selenoproteins. This is illustrated in the figure below, where the different colored circles represent amino acids in the crescent shaped enzyme. In most enzymes, the mineral is a cofactor that is external to the enzyme, as shown on the left. Selenoenzymes contain selenocysteine as an amino acid in the active site of the enzyme. Thus, in selenoenzymes, selenium does not serve as a cofactor, which is different than most minerals required for enzyme function.

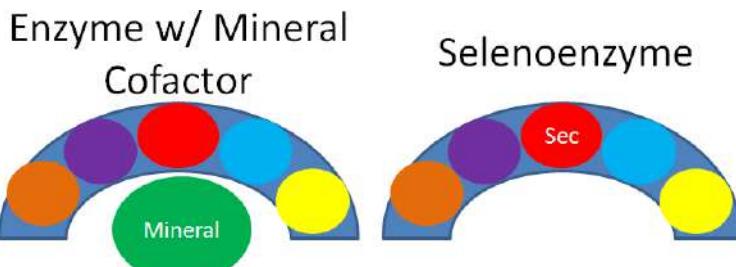


Figure 9.411 Enzyme with a mineral cofactor versus a selenoenzyme

25 human selenoproteins, containing the amino acid selenocysteine, have been identified. The following table lists these selenoproteins along with their function.

Table 9.411 The 25 Human Selenoproteins1-3

---

<b>Selenoprotein</b>	<b>Function</b>
Glutathione peroxidase 1 (GPX1)	Antioxidant enzyme
Glutathione peroxidase 2 (GPX2)	Antioxidant enzyme
Glutathione peroxidase 3 (GPX3)	Antioxidant enzyme
Glutathione peroxidase 4 (GPX4)	Antioxidant enzyme
Glutathione peroxidase 6 (GPX6)	Antioxidant enzyme
Iodothyronine 5'-deiodinase-1 (DI1)	Plasma T3 production
Iodothyronine 5'-deiodinase-2 (DI2)	Local T3 production
Iodothyronine 5'-deiodinase-3 (DI3)	T3 degradation
Thioredoxin reductase (TR1)	Antioxidant enzyme
Thioredoxin reductase (TR2)	Antioxidant enzyme
Thioredoxin reductase (TR3)	Antioxidant enzyme
Selenophosphate synthetase 2 (SPS2)	Selenophosphate synthesis
Selenoprotein 15 (Sep15)	Unknown
Selenoprotein H (SepH)	Unknown
Selenoprotein I (SepI)	Unknown
Selenoprotein K (SepK)	Unknown
Selenoprotein M (SepM)	Unknown
Selenoprotein N (SepN)	Unknown
Selenoprotein O (SepO)	Unknown
Selenoprotein P (SepP)	Unknown
Selenoprotein R (SepR)	Unknown
Selenoprotein S (SepS)	Unknown
Selenoprotein T (SepT)	Unknown
Selenoprotein V (SepV)	Unknown
Selenoprotein W (SepW)	Unknown

---

Hopefully from looking at the table, you see that the glutathione peroxidase enzymes and thioredoxin reductases are antioxidant enzymes. The iodothyronine 5'-deiodinases are involved in the metabolism of thyroid hormones, which will be discussed further in

the iodine section. For the vast majority of the other selenoproteins, their function isn't known, so they were named selenoprotein and given a letter. As described earlier and shown below, glutathione peroxidase converts hydrogen peroxide into water.

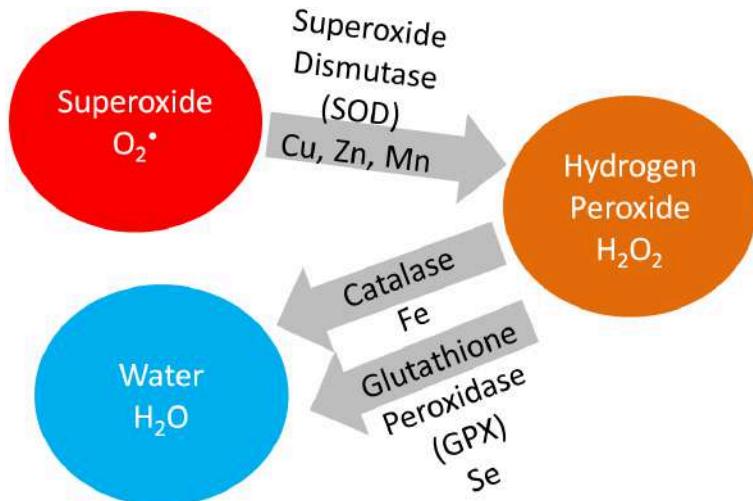


Figure 9.412 Antioxidant enzymes that use minerals as cofactors

Remember that thioredoxin reductase can regenerate ascorbate from dehydroascorbate in the theorized antioxidant network (shown below).

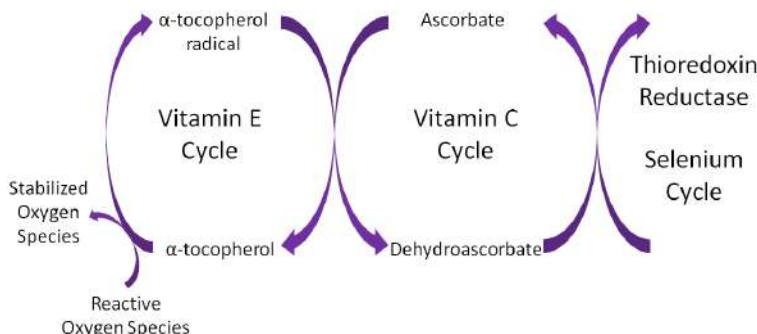


Figure 9.413 The theorized antioxidant network<sup>4</sup>

## **References & Links**

1. Gladyshev V, Kryukov G, Fomenko D, Hatfield D. (2004) Identification of trace element-containing proteins in genomic databases. *Annu Rev Nutr* 24: 579–596.
2. Beckett G, Arthur J. (2005) Selenium and endocrine systems. *J Endocrinol* 184(3): 455–465.
3. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
4. Packer L, Weber SU, Rimbach G. (2001) Molecular aspects of alpha-tocotrienol antioxidant action and cell signalling. *J Nutr* 131(2): 369S-373S.

## **9.42 Selenium Absorption, Excretion, Toxicity & Its Questionable Deficiency**

Selenium is highly absorbed. Thus, selenium levels in the body are not regulated by absorption, but rather by urinary excretion. Organic selenium forms may be absorbed slightly better than inorganic forms, as one study found that 98% of a dose of selenomethionine was absorbed, compared to 84% of selenite1.

Selenium is primarily excreted in the urine, but at high levels it can be expired, producing garlic odor breath.

Selenium toxicity can be a problem, especially for animals living in or around a body of water in an area with high soil selenium levels. This is because runoff from the soil causes selenium to collect in the water in high levels and then starts working its way up the food chain and causing problems, as shown in the following link.

---

### **Web Link**

[Selenium Toxicity](#)

---

In humans, the initial symptoms are nausea, fatigue, and diarrhea. If continued, the person may

develop hair and nail brittleness, rash or skin lesions, and nervous system abnormalities.

The questionable selenium deficiency is Keshan disease. This disease occurred primarily in the mountainous regions of China, causing heart lesions. Below is a topographical map of China to give you an idea of what areas are mountainous.

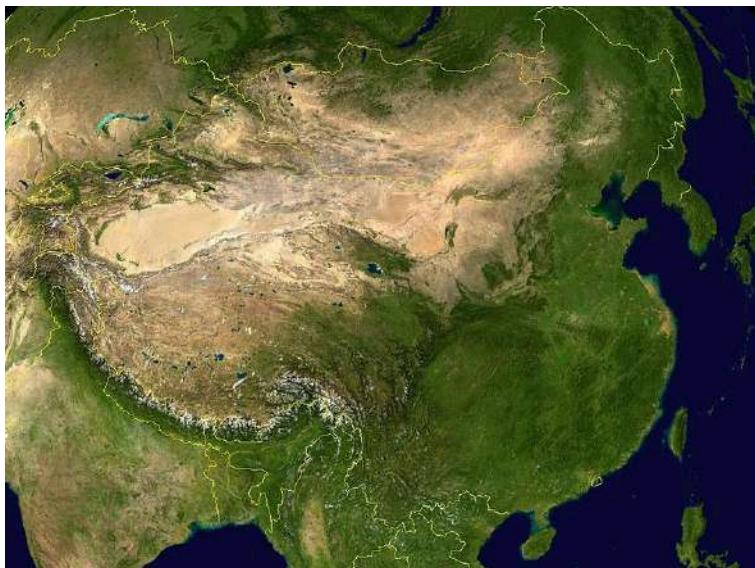


Figure 9.421 Topographical map of China2

You can see in the link below the areas where Keshan disease occurred. For the most part, you can see that these 2 areas overlay.

---

#### **Web Links**

---

##### Distribution of Keshan Disease

However, sodium selenate supplementation failed to totally

eradicate Keshan disease like you would expect if it was caused by selenium deficiency. The incidence of Keshan disease also fluctuated seasonally and annually, which is unusual for a deficiency and more consistent of an infectious disease. Research found coxsackievirus in the heart of Keshan disease victims. They isolated this virus and used it to perform the experiment illustrated below.

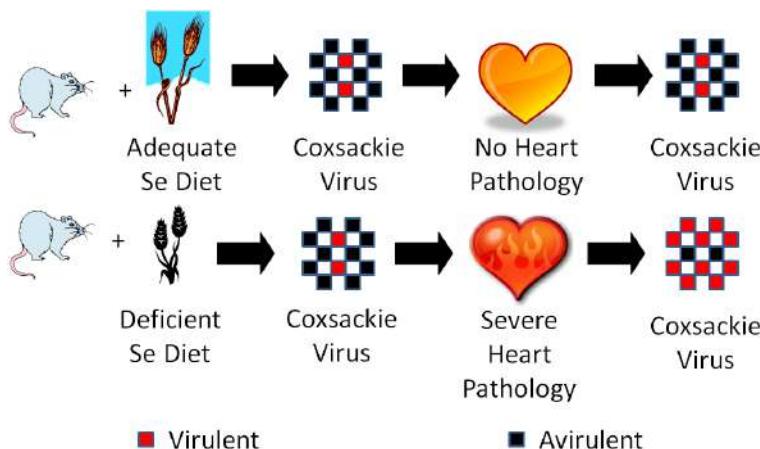


Figure 9.422 Keshan disease experiment3

One group of mice was fed an adequate selenium diet and another group a deficient selenium diet. They were then infected with coxsackievirus that was mostly avirulent, but also contained some virulent viruses. A virulent virus is one that causes a disease, and an avirulent virus is one that doesn't cause a disease (some vaccines use avirulent viruses). After a period of time, they found that the selenium deficient animals developed severe heart pathology, while the selenium adequate animals did not develop heart pathology. They then isolated the virus from the hearts of the mice from both groups and found that the coxsackievirus from the deficient animals hearts had become mostly virulent<sup>3</sup>. They then took it one step further as shown in the figure below.

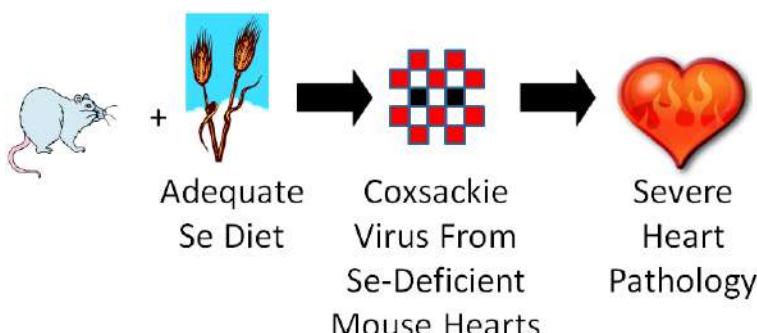


Figure 9.423 Keshan disease experiment continued3

They took the isolated virus from the selenium-deficient mouse hearts and infected selenium adequate animals with it. The selenium adequate animals developed the severe heart pathology like the selenium-deficient animals had previously.

What's going on? They found mutations in the virus from the selenium-deficient animals that they believe caused it to become virulent. They believe that high oxidative stress in these animals leads to mutations in the virus, causing it to become virulent.

Who cares? Research has found similar results with vitamin E. Researchers are also examining the effects on other viruses such as influenza (flu) and HIV. If they find a similar phenomenon occurring in other viruses, it means that you and your friend who eats a horrible diet (eats no fruit and vegetables) could be exposed to a virus. You don't know you were exposed because your immune system fights off the virus. However, your friend gets sick. He/she can serve as a host in which the virus mutates making it more virulent, which when you're exposed a second time, may make you sick.

### References & Links

1. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.

2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:China\\_100.78713E\\_35.63718N.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:China_100.78713E_35.63718N.jpg)
3. Beck M, Handy J, Levander O. (2004) Host nutritional status:  
The neglected virulence factor. Trends Microbiol 12(9): 417-423.

### **Links**

Selenium Toxicity - [http://www.sci.sdsu.edu/salton/  
SeTooMuchTooLittle.html](http://www.sci.sdsu.edu/salton/SeTooMuchTooLittle.html)

Distribution of Keshan Disease - [http://pubs.acs.org/cen/80th/  
selenium.html](http://pubs.acs.org/cen/80th/selenium.html)

# Macronutrient Metabolism

## Micronutrients

The macronutrient metabolism vitamins and minerals are:

- Thiamin
- Riboflavin
- Niacin
- Pantothenic Acid
- Vitamin B6
- Biotin
- Vitamin B12
- Vitamin C
- Iodine
- Manganese
- Magnesium

All but three of these will be covered in this section. Vitamin B12 will be covered in the one-carbon metabolism chapter, vitamin C was covered in the antioxidant chapter, and magnesium is going to be covered in the electrolyte chapter. We're left with iodine, manganese, and many of the B vitamins. We'll cover the 2 minerals followed by the B vitamins with the order for the sections as follows:

- 10.1 Iodine
- 10.2 Manganese
- 10.3 Thiamin
- 10.4 Riboflavin
- 10.5 Niacin
- 10.6 Pantothenic Acid
- 10.7 Vitamin B6
- 10.8 Biotin

## 10.1 Iodine

Why is iodine first in this chapter? Not only is it the only non-B vitamin in this chapter, but there is also a connection between selenium (last antioxidant in the previous chapter) and iodine. Iodine's only, yet critical, function is that it is required for thyroid hormone synthesis. The figure below shows that the thyroid gland is a butterfly-shaped organ found in the neck. The parathyroid glands are also found within the thyroid gland.

### Thyroid and Parathyroid Glands

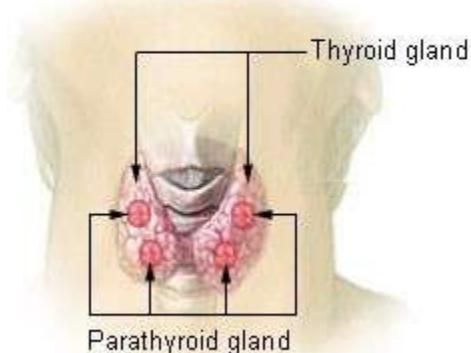


Figure 10.11 Location of thyroid and parathyroid glands<sup>1</sup>

Iodine is found in foods primarily as iodide ( $I^-$ ), some bread dough has iodate ( $IO_3^-$ ) added to help with gluten cross-linking<sup>2</sup>. This used to be more commonly used in the past than it is now. Like selenium, iodide concentrations of the soil vary greatly, causing food concentrations to greatly fluctuate. Sea water is high in iodine, thus foods of marine origin, such as seaweed and seafood, are good dietary sources of iodine. Dairy products also tend to be good sources of iodide because it is added to cattle feeds. Cattle receive

iodine-containing medications, and iodide-containing sanitizing solutions are used in dairy facilities<sup>3,4</sup>.

For most Americans, we consume ample iodine through the consumption of iodized salt. Consumption of 1/2 teaspoon of iodized salt meets the RDA for iodine. There is a global logo for iodized salt. However, I must admit that I don't recall ever seeing it myself.

The other link below is to a page that contains a scorecard map that depicts access to iodized salt worldwide. It also contains a Youtube video that displays the reduction in iodine deficiency over the last 2 decades.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Global Iodized Salt Icon](#)  
[Global Iodine Scorecard](#)

---

Salt is iodized with either potassium iodide (KI) or potassium iodate (KIO<sub>3</sub>). The positives of each are:

- Potassium iodide
  - + Less expensive
  - + Higher iodine content (76% vs. 59% for KIO<sub>3</sub>)
  - + More soluble
- Potassium Iodate
  - + More stable

The U.S. uses potassium iodide, but the form, and amount, used varies from country-to-country. Most Americans' salt intake comes from processed foods, many of which are made with non-iodized salt. Iodine is well absorbed (~90%). Some dietary compounds interfere with thyroid hormone production or utilization. These compounds are known as goitrogens<sup>5</sup>. However, it is not believed that goitrogens are of clinical importance unless there is a coexisting iodine deficiency<sup>5</sup>.

Some examples of foods that contain goitrogens are<sup>3,4,6</sup>:

- Cassava



Figure 10.12 Cassava plants are typically grown in tropical and subtropical environments<sup>6</sup>



Figure 10.13 The cassava roots are what are typically eaten, but first they must be peeled. These are unprocessed<sup>7</sup>

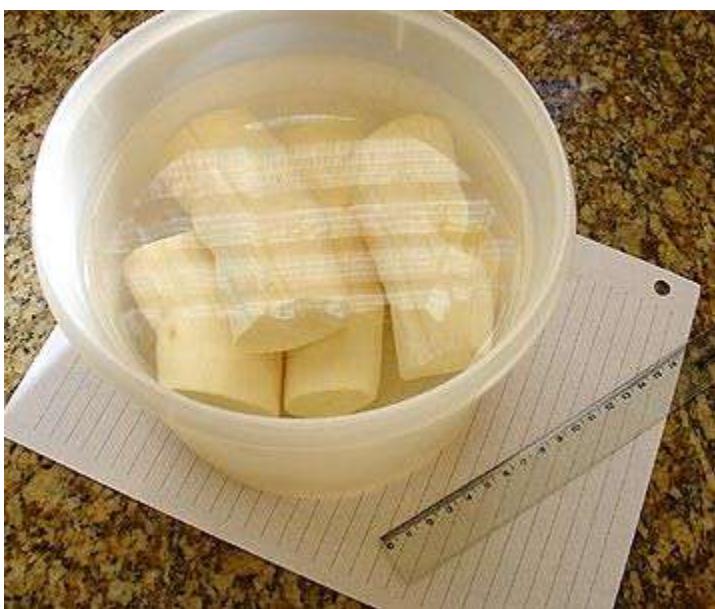


Figure 10.14 Peeled cassava roots8

Millet



Figure 10.15 Millet growing in a field9



Figure 10.16 Millets10

Cruciferous Vegetables (broccoli, cabbage, Brussels sprouts)

Onions

Garlic

Soybeans

Peanuts

Subsections:

10.11 Thyroid Hormone

10.12 Iodine Deficiency & Toxicity

### **References & Links**

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Illu\\_thyroid\\_parathyroid.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Illu_thyroid_parathyroid.jpg)
2. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
3. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
4. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2008) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Thomson Wadsworth.
5. Anonymous. (2001) Dietary reference intakes for vitamin A, vitamin K, arsenic, boron, chromium, copper, iodine, iron, manganese, molybdenum, nickel, silicon, vanadium, and zinc. Washington, D.C.: National Academies Press.
6. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Casava.jpg>
7. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Manihot\\_esculenta\\_dsc07325.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Manihot_esculenta_dsc07325.jpg)
8. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:PeeledCassava.jpg>
9. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Millet#/media/File:Grain\\_millet,\\_early\\_grain\\_fill,\\_Tifton,\\_7-3-02.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Millet#/media/File:Grain_millet,_early_grain_fill,_Tifton,_7-3-02.jpg)
10. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Staple\\_food#/media/File:Pearl\\_millet\\_after\\_combine\\_harvesting.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Staple_food#/media/File:Pearl_millet_after_combine_harvesting.jpg)

### **Links**

Global Iodized Salt Logo – [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Global\\_iodized\\_salt\\_logo.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Global_iodized_salt_logo.jpg)

Global Iodine Scorecard – <http://www.ign.org/scorecard.htm>

## 10.12 Iodine Deficiency & Toxicity

There are two iodine deficiency disorders (IDD): goiter and cretinism. Goiter is a painless deficiency condition that results from the enlargement of the thyroid to help increase its ability to take up iodine. A couple of pictures of goiter are shown below.



Figure 10.121 Pictures of women with goiters<sup>1,2</sup>

A more serious consequence of iodine deficiency occurs during pregnancy to the fetus. Iodine deficiency during this time can lead to the cognitive impairment and stunted growth and known as cretinism. This condition is characterized by severe hypothyroidism, speech loss, and paralysis<sup>3,4</sup>. The following links show some examples of individuals with cretinism.

---

### Web Link

---

### Cretinism

---

The World Health Organization calls iodine deficiency “the world’s most prevalent, yet easily preventable, cause of brain damage<sup>5</sup>.” By saying it is easily preventable, they are referring to the ability of salt iodization to prevent brain development problems. The following New York Times article talks about how salt iodization may be the cheapest way to raise the world’s IQ.

---

### **Web Link**

In Raising the World’s I.Q., the Secret’s in the Salt

---

Iodine toxicity is rare, but like iodine deficiency, it can result in thyroid enlargement, and hypothyroidism or hyperthyroidism. Acute toxicity results in gastrointestinal irritation, abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea<sup>6</sup>.

### **References & Links**

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Kone\\_med\\_stor\\_struma.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Kone_med_stor_struma.jpg)
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Goitre.jpg>
3. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
4. Shils ME, Shike M, Ross AC, Caballero B, Cousins RJ, editors. (2006) Modern nutrition in health and disease. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
5. <http://www.who.int/nutrition/topics/idd/en/>
6. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

### **Links**

Cretinism – <http://www.gsi.ir/Images/MedicalGeology/cretinism1.jpg>

In Raising the World’s I.Q., the Secret’s in the Salt – [http://www.nytimes.com/2006/12/16/health/16iodine.html?\\_r=1&pagewanted=all](http://www.nytimes.com/2006/12/16/health/16iodine.html?_r=1&pagewanted=all)

## 10.2 Manganese

We know far less about manganese than many other minerals. Like many minerals it serves as a cofactor for a number of enzymes that are discussed in more detail below.

The enzyme superoxide dismutase uses manganese as a cofactor to convert superoxide to hydrogen peroxide as shown below.

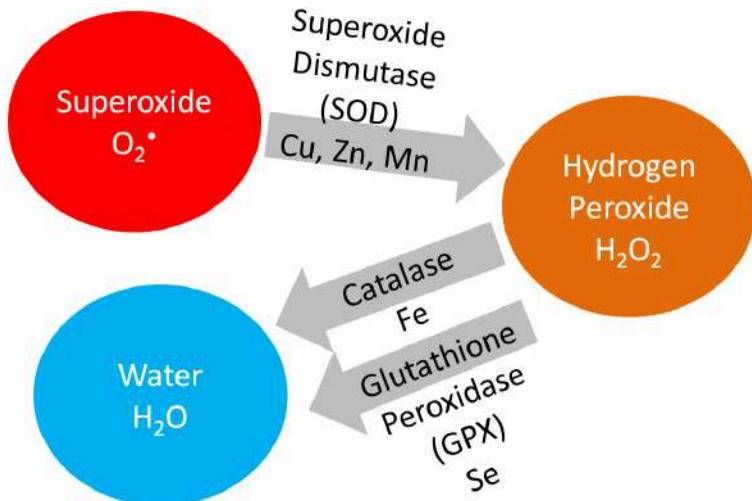


Figure 9.21 Antioxidant enzymes that use minerals as cofactors

In addition, both the enzymes involved in the gluconeogenesis oxaloacetate workaround use manganese as cofactors as shown below.

## Glycolysis in the Cytoplasm

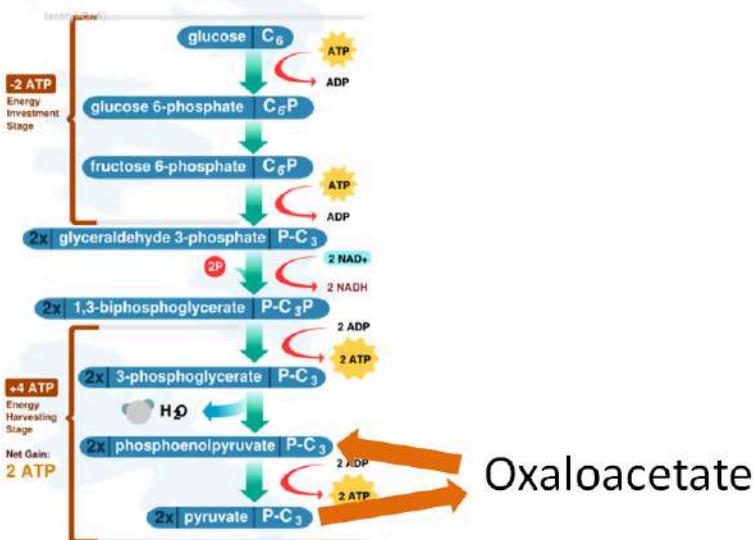


Figure 10.22 Both enzymes of the oxaloacetate workaround in gluconeogenesis use manganese as cofactors<sup>1</sup>

One enzyme in the urea cycle uses manganese as a cofactor.

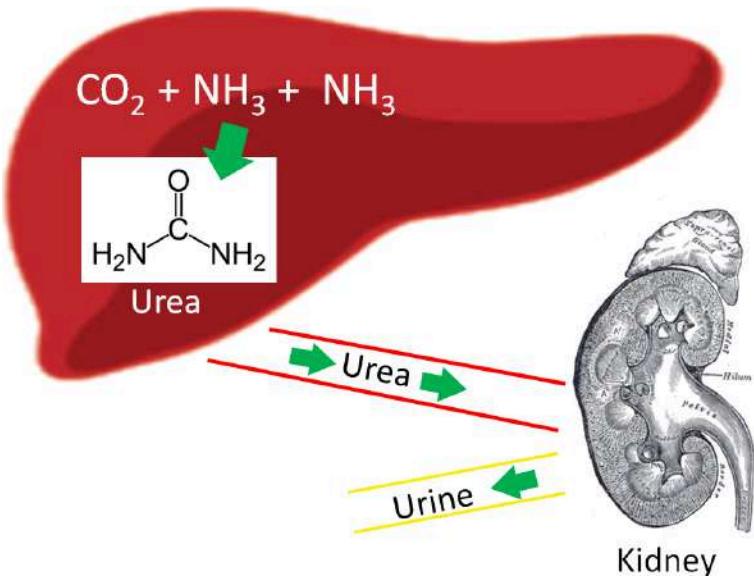


Figure 10.23 Production of urea helps to safely remove ammonia from the body<sup>2-4</sup>

Enzymes critical to the production of proteoglycans, which are essential components of cartilage and bone, use manganese as a cofactor<sup>5</sup>.

## Synovial Joint

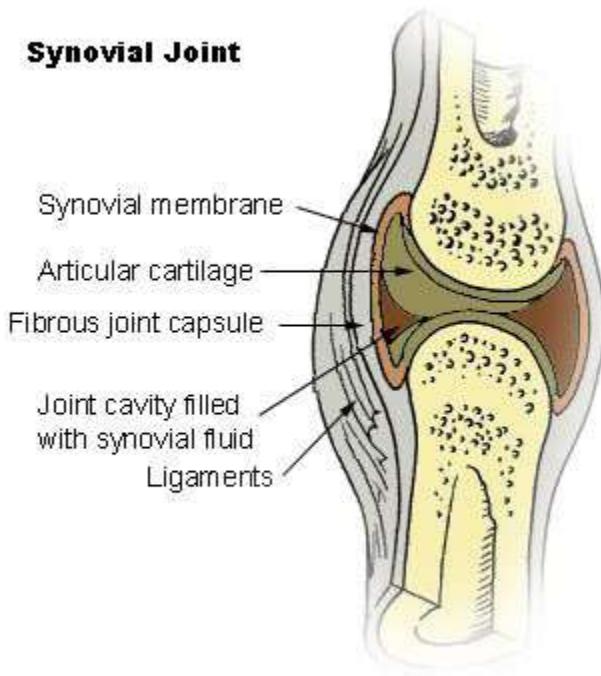


Figure 10.24 Cartilage serves as a cushion between joints<sup>6</sup>

Absorption of manganese is not well understood but is believed to be pretty low (<5%). The main route (90%) of excretion is via bile excreted in feces<sup>5</sup>. Deficiency and toxicities of manganese are extremely rare. The deficiency is so rare in humans that there isn't much information available on the symptoms of the condition. Symptoms in those who were deliberately made deficient include vomiting, dermatitis, changes in hair color, & skeletal defects<sup>5</sup>. Toxicity symptoms include neurological disorders similar to schizophrenia and Parkinson's disease. In Chilean miners exposed to Mn-containing dust the toxicity was named Manganese Madness<sup>7,8</sup>.

### References & Links

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:CellRespiration.svg>
2. <http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Liver.svg>
3. [http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/b0/Kidney\\_section.jpg](http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/b0/Kidney_section.jpg)
4. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Urea.png>
5. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
6. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Illu\\_synovial\\_joint.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Illu_synovial_joint.jpg)
7. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
8. Shils ME, Shike M, Ross AC, Caballero B, Cousins RJ, editors. (2006) Modern nutrition in health and disease. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

## 10.3 Thiamin

Thiamin (Vitamin B1) structurally consists of 2 rings that are bridged together as shown below.

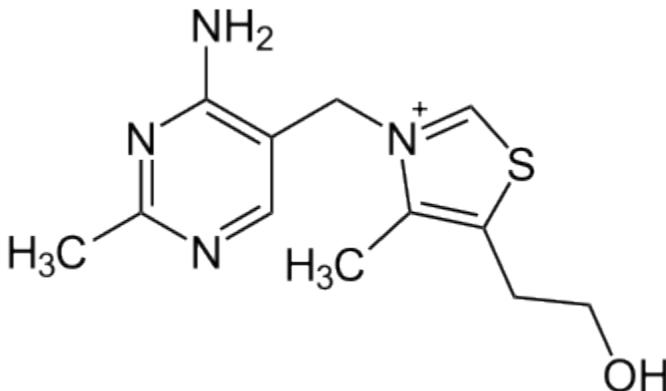


Figure 10.31 Structure of thiamin1

Since it was one of the original vitamins, (remember vitamine), it was originally named thiamine. The -e has since been dropped in its spelling. Thiamin is sensitive to heat, so prolonged heating causes the cleavage of thiamin between the 2 rings destroying its activity<sup>2</sup>.

Like most of the B vitamins, thiamin's primary function is as a cofactor for enzymes. It is not thiamin alone that serves as a cofactor but instead thiamin diphosphate (thiamin + 2 phosphates), which is more commonly referred to as thiamin pyrophosphate (TPP). The structure of thiamin pyrophosphate is shown below.

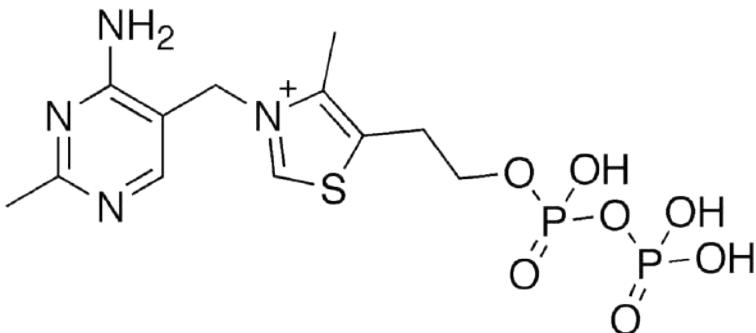


Figure 10.32 Structure of thiamin pyrophosphate (aka thiamin diphosphate)<sup>3</sup>

In plants, thiamin is found in its free form, but in animals it is mostly thiamin pyrophosphate. These phosphates must be cleaved before thiamin is taken up into the enterocyte<sup>4</sup>.

Thiamin uptake and absorption is believed to be an efficient process that is passive when thiamin intake is high and active when thiamin intakes are low<sup>4</sup>. There are two thiamin transporters (THTR), THTR1 and THTR2, that are involved in thiamin uptake and absorption. THTR1 is found on the brush border and basolateral membrane, while THTR2 is only found on the brush border membrane as shown below<sup>5</sup>.

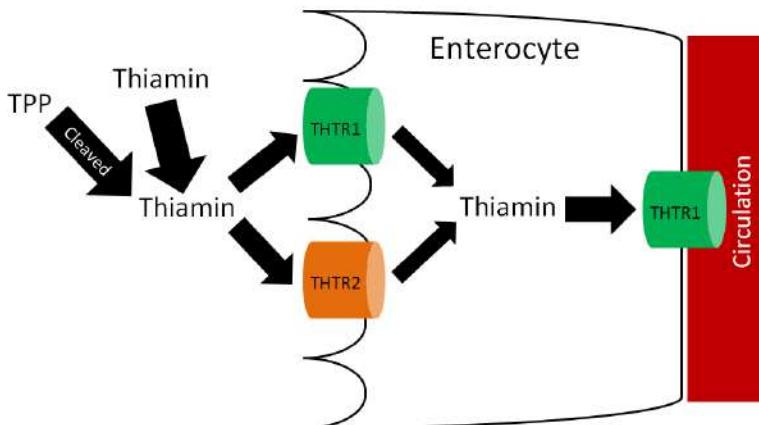


Figure 10.33 Thiamin uptake and absorption

Like most water-soluble vitamins there is little storage of thiamin.

Subsections:

10.31 Thiamin Functions

10.32 Thiamin Deficiency & Toxicity

### References & Links

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Thiamin.svg>
2. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Thiamine\\_diphosphate.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Thiamine_diphosphate.png)
4. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
5. Said H, Mohammed Z. (2006) Intestinal absorption of water-soluble vitamins: An update. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 22(2): 140-146.

## 10.31 Thiamin Functions

There are three functions of thiamin1:

1. Cofactor for decarboxylation reactions (TPP)
2. Cofactor for the synthesis of pentoses (5-carbon sugars) and NADPH (TPP)
3. Membrane and nerve conduction (Not as a cofactor)

### Decarboxylation Reactions

A decarboxylation reaction is one that results in the loss of carbon dioxide ( $\text{CO}_2$ ) from the molecule as shown below.

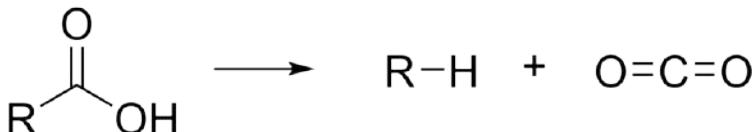


Figure 10.311 Decarboxylation reaction2

The transition reaction and one reaction in the citric acid cycle are decarboxylation reactions that use TPP as a cofactor. The figure below shows the transition reaction and citric acid cycle.

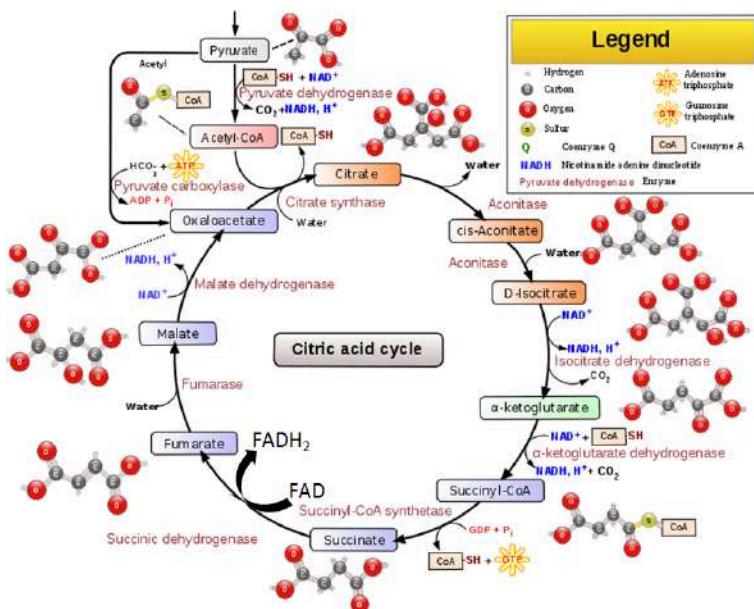


Figure 10.312 The transition reaction and citric acid cycle3

As shown below the conversion of pyruvate to acetyl CoA in the transition reaction is a decarboxylation reaction that requires TPP as a cofactor. CO<sub>2</sub> (circled) is produced as a result of this reaction.

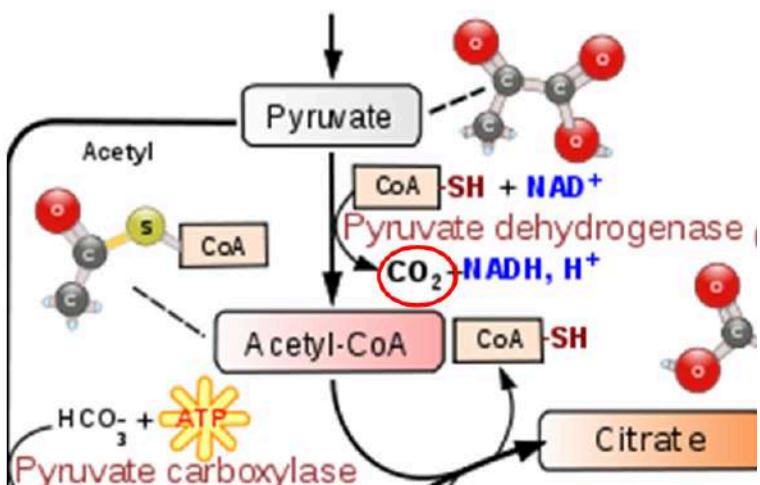


Figure 10.313 The transition reaction requires TPP as a cofactor3

A similar TPP decarboxylation reaction occurs in the citric acid cycle converting alpha-ketoglutarate to succinyl-CoA. CO<sub>2</sub> (circled) is given off as a result of this reaction.

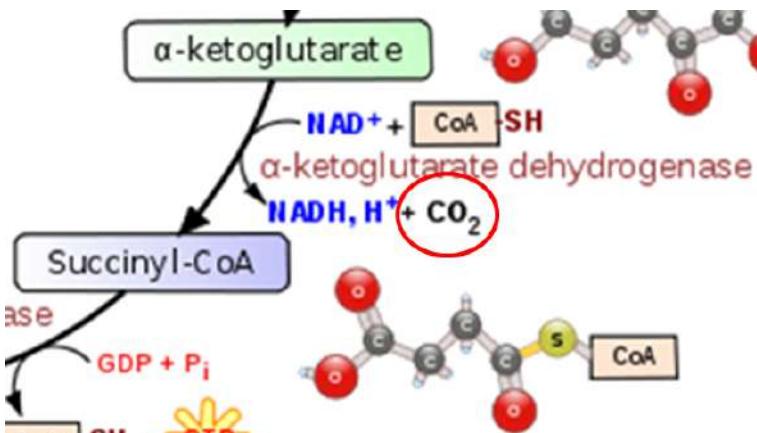


Figure 10.314 Alpha-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase requires TPP as a cofactor3

TPP also functions as a cofactor for the decarboxylation of valine, leucine, and isoleucine (branched-chain amino acids)1.

### Synthesis of Pentoses and NADPH

TPP is a cofactor for the enzyme transketolase. Transketolase is a key enzyme in the pentose phosphate (aka hexose monophosphate shunt) pathway. This pathway is important for converting 6-carbon sugars into 5-carbon sugars (pentose) that are needed for synthesis of DNA, RNA, and NADPH. In addition, pentoses such as fructose are converted to forms that can be used for glycolysis and gluconeogenesis4. Transketolase catalyzes multiple reactions in the pathway as shown below.

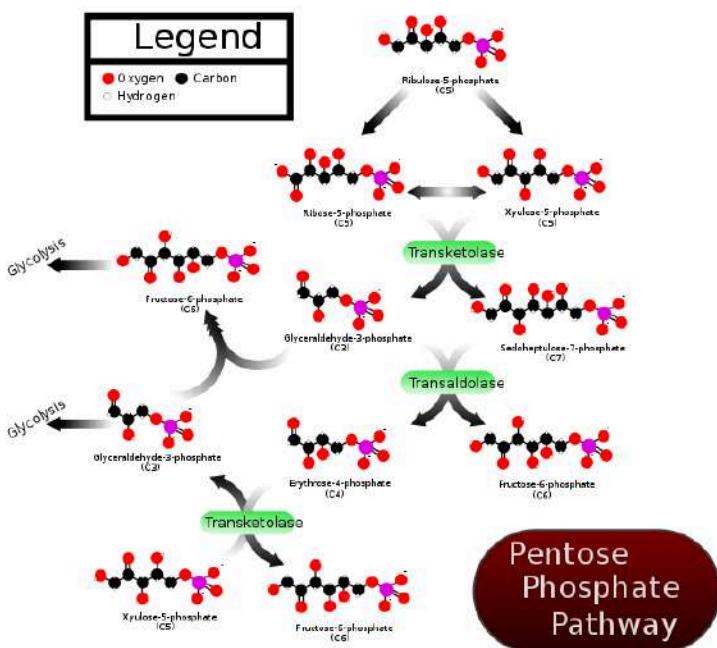


Figure 10.315 Transketolase in the pentose phosphate pathway uses TPP as a cofactor5

### Membrane and Nerve Conduction

In addition to its cofactor roles, thiamin, in the form of thiamin triphosphate (TTP, 3 phosphates), is believed to contribute in some unresolved way to nervous system function1.

### References & Links

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Decarboxylation\\_reaction.png](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Decarboxylation_reaction.png)
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Citric\\_acid\\_cycle\\_with\\_aconitate\\_2.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Citric_acid_cycle_with_aconitate_2.svg)
4. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
5. [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:PPP\\_\(en\).svg](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:PPP_(en).svg)

## 10.32 Thiamin Deficiency & Toxicity

Thiamin deficiency is rare in developed countries, but still occurs in poorer countries where white (aka polished) rice is a staple food. During the polishing process, thiamin, and many other nutrients, are removed. Some people also have a mutation in THTR1 that causes them to become thiamin deficient1. Thiamin deficiency is known as beriberi, which, when translated, means “I can’t, I can’t.” The symptoms of beriberi are illustrated in the link below.

---

#### Web Link

[Beriberi](#)

---

There are two major forms of beriberi: dry and wet. Dry beriberi affects the nervous system, with symptoms such as loss of muscle function, numbness, and/or tingling. Wet beriberi affects the cardiovascular system resulting in pitting edema, along with

enlargement of the heart<sup>1</sup>. A picture of a person with beriberi is shown below.



Figure 10.321 A person suffering from beriberi<sup>2</sup>

Another group that is at risk for thiamin deficiency is alcoholics. There are three reasons why alcoholics are prone to becoming deficient<sup>3</sup>:

1. Alcohol displaces foods that are better sources of thiamin
2. Liver damage decreases TPP formation
3. Increased thiamin excretion

The thiamin deficiency found in alcoholics is known as Wernicke-Korsakoff Syndrome. Symptoms of this condition include paralysis or involuntary eye movement, impaired muscle coordination, memory loss and confusion<sup>3</sup>. The following video shows some of the symptoms of this condition.

---

### **Web Link**

Video: Wernicke-Korsakoff Syndrome (First 1:50)

---

Thiamin toxicity has never been reported as a result of oral intake. Thus, there is little worry about thiamin toxicity<sup>4</sup>.

### **References & Links**

1. <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000339.htm>
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Beriberi\\_USNLM.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Beriberi_USNLM.jpg)
3. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
4. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.

### **Links**

Beriberi – <http://www.moondragon.org/health/graphics/beriberi1.jpg>

Wernicke-Korsakoff Syndrome – <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wDcyBXJAZNM>

## **10.4 Riboflavin**

A student once asked this question:

“I started taking the Mega Man Sport Multi-vitamin from GNC and

about an hour or two after consumption, with a meal, my pee is bright, practically neon yellow. What does that mean?"

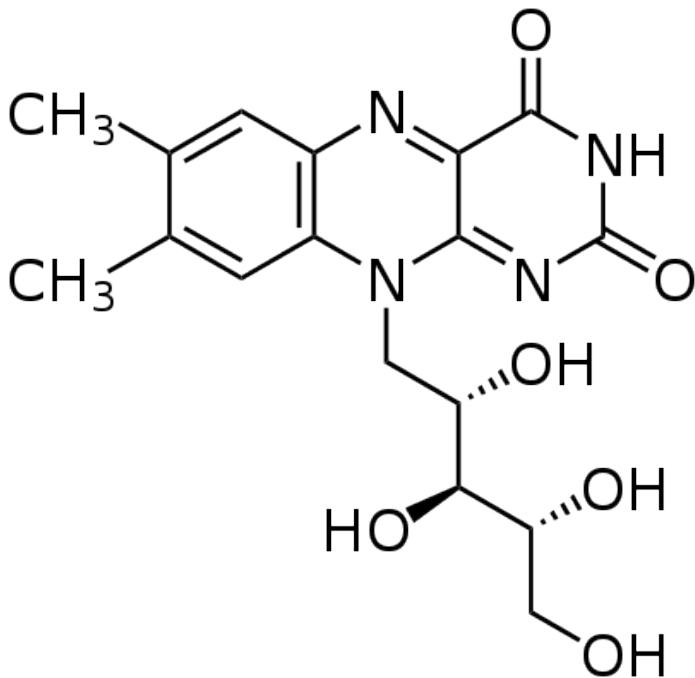
Since this question is leading off the riboflavin section, you have probably surmised that riboflavin is somehow involved. Indeed, flavin means yellow in Latin, and riboflavin is bright yellow as shown below.



Figure 10.41 Riboflavin in solution1

Riboflavin is also a water-soluble B vitamin, so the student was

excreting large amounts of riboflavin in his urine, leading it to become “bright, practically neon yellow.” The structure of riboflavin is shown below.



Riboflavin is important for the production of two cofactors: flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD) & flavin mononucleotide (FMN).

FAD has been introduced before, but structurally you can see where riboflavin is within the compound below.

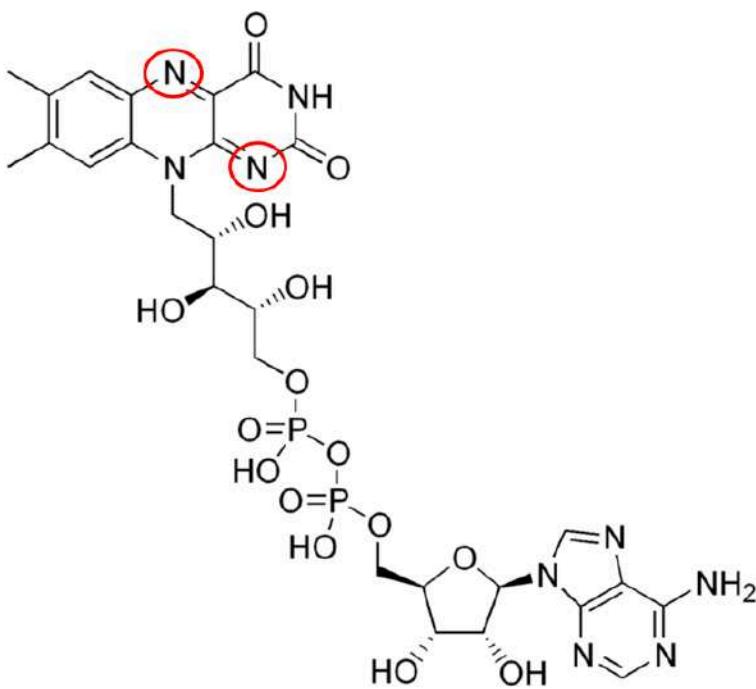


Figure 10.43 Structure of FAD3

The 2 circled nitrogens are the sites that accept hydrogen to become FADH<sub>2</sub> as illustrated below.

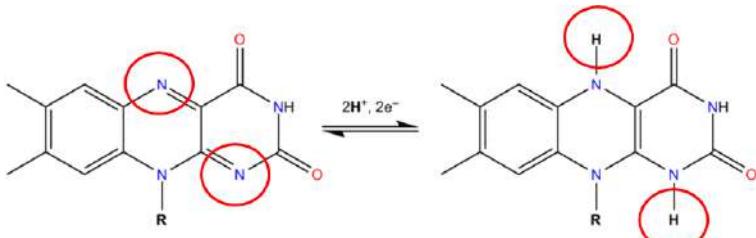


Figure 10.44 Addition of two hydrogens to the rings of FAD to form FADH<sub>2</sub>

The structure of FMN as shown below, is similar to FAD, except that it only contains one phosphate group (versus 2) and doesn't have the ring structures off the phosphate groups that are found in FAD.

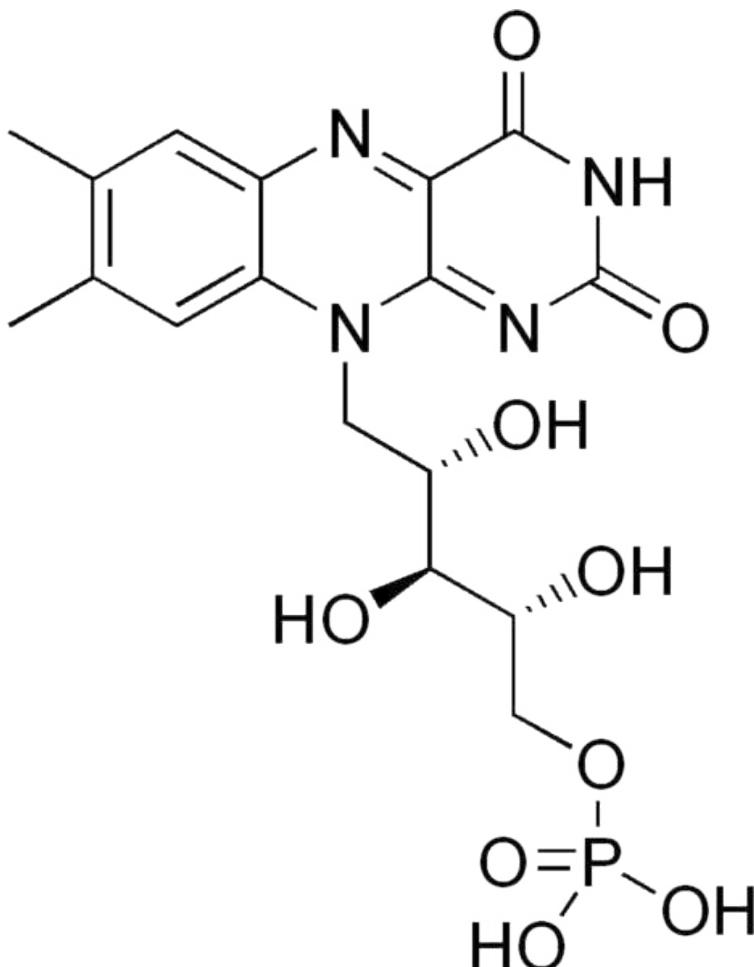


Figure 10.45 The structure of FMN

Riboflavin is photosensitive, meaning that it can be destroyed by light. This was a problem in the old days when the milkman

delivered milk in clear glass bottles. These have now been replaced by cartons or opaque plastic containers to help protect the riboflavin content of the milk.



Figure 10.46 Milk is no longer packaged in clear glass bottles to help protect its riboflavin from light destruction

Riboflavin in foods is free, protein-bound, or in FAD or FMN. Only free riboflavin is absorbed so it must be cleaved, or converted before absorption<sup>6</sup>. Riboflavin is highly absorbed through an unresolved process, though it is believed a carrier is involved<sup>7</sup>. As you would guess from the description above, riboflavin is primarily excreted in the urine.

Subsections:

10.41 Riboflavin Functions

10.42 Riboflavin Deficiency & Toxicity

### **References & Links**

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Riboflavin\\_solution.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Riboflavin_solution.jpg)
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Riboflavin.svg>
3. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/>

- File:Flavin\_adenine\_dinucleotide.png
4. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/>  
File:FAD\_FADH2\_equilibrium.png
  5. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Flavin\\_monomonucleotide.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Flavin_monomonucleotide.png)
  6. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
  7. Said H, Mohammed Z. (2006) Intestinal absorption of water-soluble vitamins: An update. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 22(2): 140-146.

## 10.41 Riboflavin Functions

Riboflavin is required for the production of FAD and FMN. Below are some of the functions of FAD and FMN:

1. Citric Acid Cycle
2. Electron Transport Chain
3. Fatty Acid Oxidation
4. Niacin Synthesis
5. Vitamin B6 Activation
6. Neurotransmitter Catabolism
7. Antioxidant Enzymes

1. **Citric Acid Cycle** – FAD is reduced to FADH<sub>2</sub> in the citric acid cycle when succinate is converted to fumarate by succinic dehydrogenase as circled below.

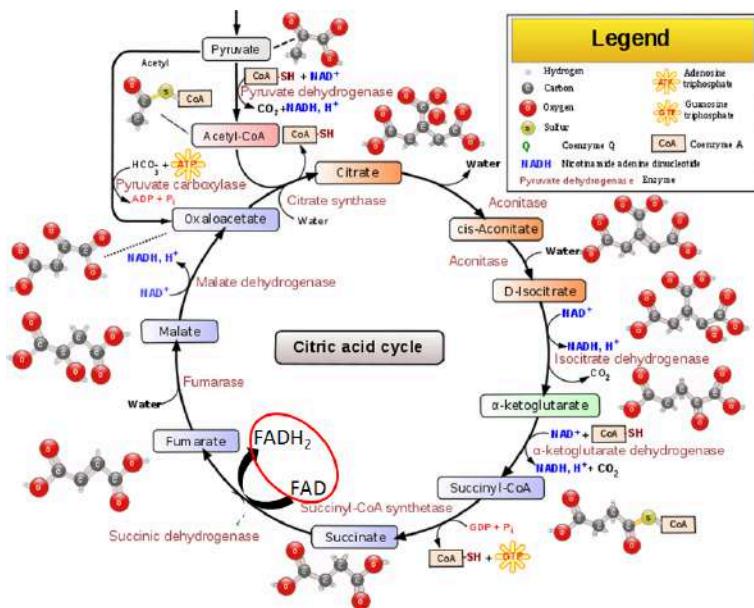


Figure 10.411 The citric acid cycle requires  $\text{FADH}_2$

2. **Electron Transport Chain** – Under aerobic conditions, the electron transport chain is where the  $\text{FADH}_2$  is used to produce ATP. Complex I of the electron transport chain includes an FMN molecule. The electron transport chain is shown below.

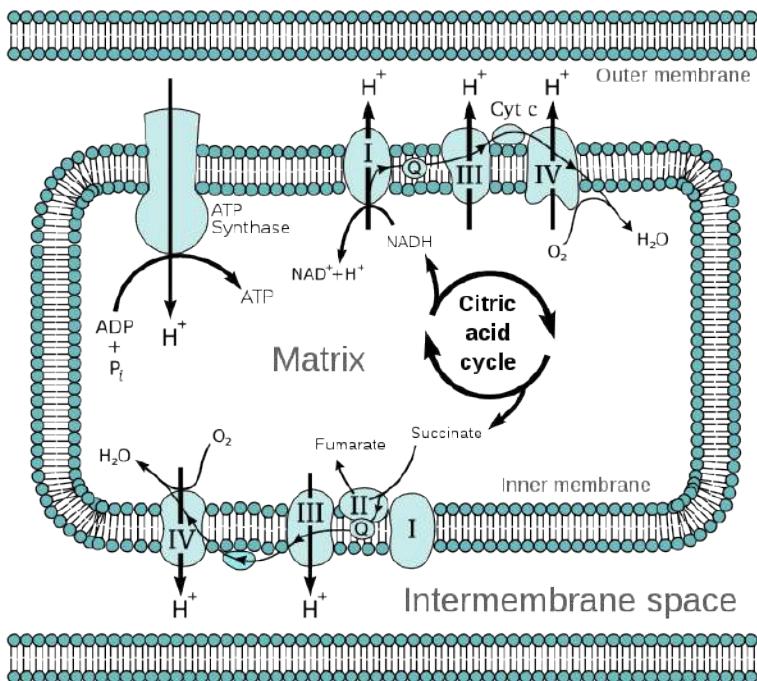


Figure 10.412 Complex I in the electron transport chain contains FMN3

3. **Fatty Acid oxidation** – During fatty acid oxidation FAD is converted to FADH<sub>2</sub> as shown below.

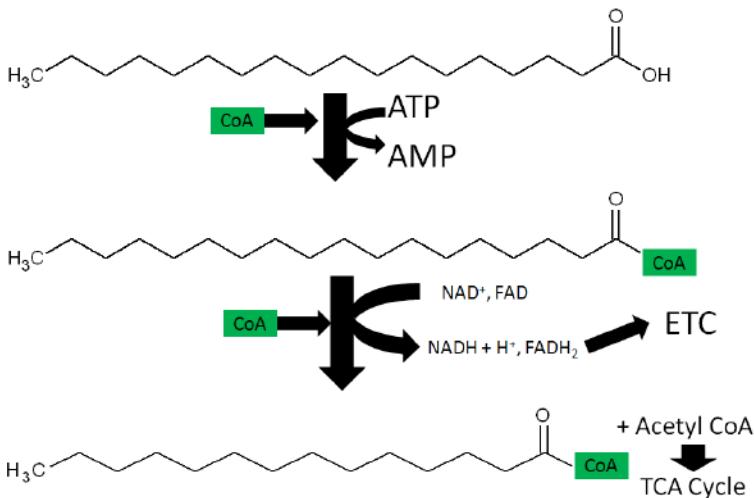


Figure 10.413 Fatty acid oxidation requires FAD

4. **Niacin synthesis** – As you will hear more about in the niacin section, niacin can be synthesized from tryptophan as shown below. An intermediate in this synthesis is kynurenine, and one of the multiple steps between kynurenine to niacin requires FAD.

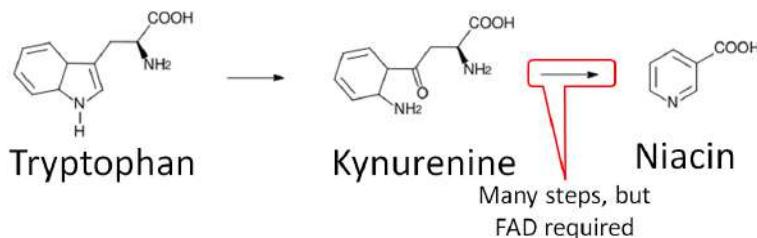


Figure 10.414 Niacin synthesis from tryptophan requires FAD

5. **Vitamin B6 Activation** – The enzyme that creates the active form of vitamin B6 (pyridoxal phosphate) requires FMN.

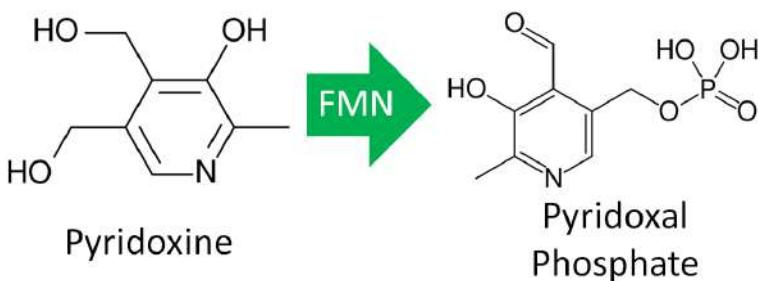


Figure 10.415 Vitamin B6 activation requires FMN5,6

6. **Neurotransmitter Catabolism** – The enzyme monoamine oxidase (MAO) requires FAD. This enzyme shown below is important in the catabolism of neurotransmitters such as dopamine and serotonin.

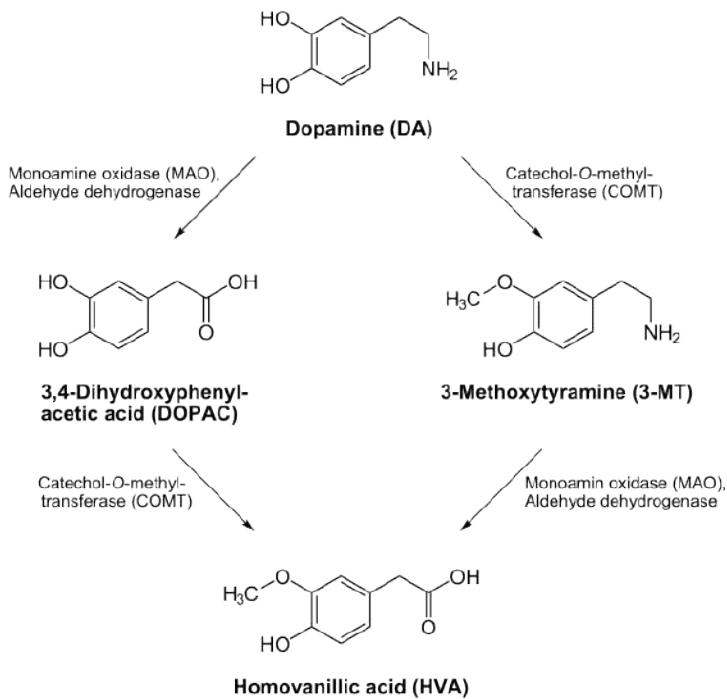
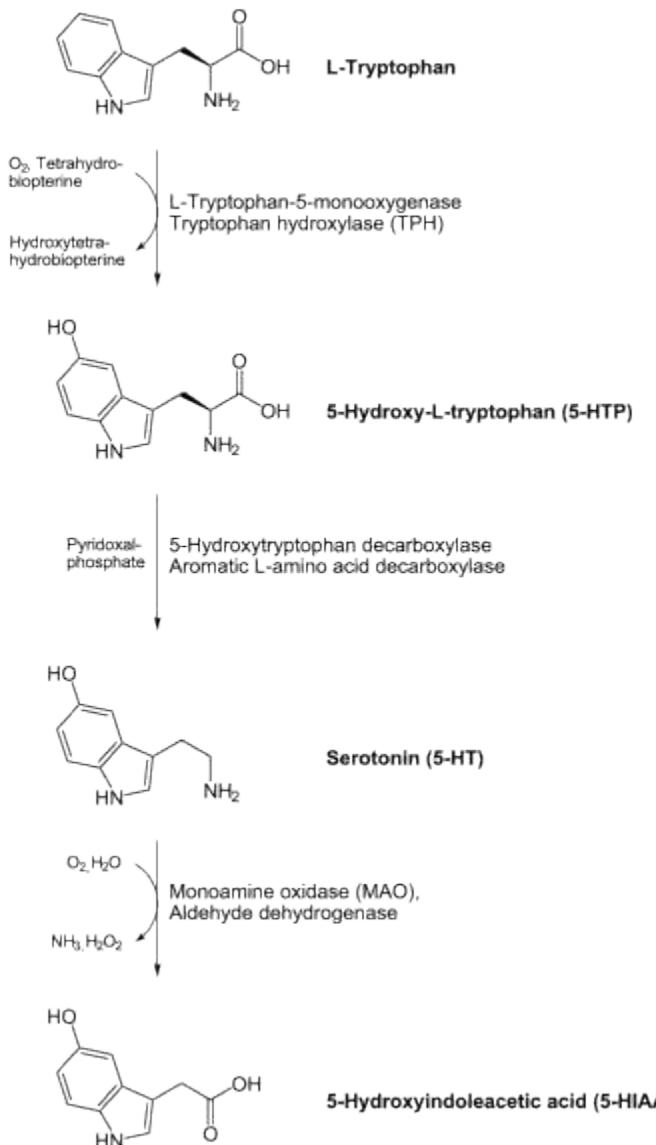


Figure 10.416 Catabolism of dopamine involves monoamine oxidase, an enzyme that requires FAD



**Figure 10.417 Catabolism of serotonin involves monoamine oxidase, an enzyme that requires FAD8**

7. **Antioxidant Enzymes** – The antioxidant enzymes glutathione reductase and thioredoxin reductase both require FAD as a cofactor. Thioredoxin reductase is a selenoenzyme. The function of glutathione reductase is shown in the following link. Glutathione reductase can reduce glutathione that can then be used by the selenoenzyme glutathione peroxidase to convert hydrogen peroxide to water.
- 

#### **Web Link**

[The Glutathione Oxidation Reduction \(Redox\) Cycle](#)

---

In addition to the functions listed above, FAD is also used in folate activation, choline catabolism, and purine metabolism<sup>1</sup>.

#### **References & Links**

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:Citric\\_acid\\_cycle\\_with\\_aconitate\\_2.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Citric_acid_cycle_with_aconitate_2.svg)
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:Mitochondrial\\_electron\\_transport\\_chain%E2%80%94Etc  
4.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Mitochondrial_electron_transport_chain%E2%80%94Etc4.svg)
4. [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/  
File:Nicotinic\\_acid\\_biosynthesis2.png](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Nicotinic_acid_biosynthesis2.png)
5. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Pyridoxine\\_structure.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Pyridoxine_structure.svg)
6. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
Pyridoxal\\_phosphate#/media/File:Pyridoxal-phosphate.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Pyridoxal_phosphate#/media/File:Pyridoxal-phosphate.svg)
7. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:Dopamine\\_degradation.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Dopamine_degradation.svg)
8. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:Serotonin\\_biosynthesis.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Serotonin_biosynthesis.svg)

The Glutathione Oxidation Reduction (Redox) Cycle –  
[http://lpi.oregonstate.edu/infocenter/minerals/selenium/  
gsh.html](http://lpi.oregonstate.edu/infocenter/minerals/selenium/gsh.html)

## 10.42 Riboflavin Deficiency & Toxicity

Ariboflavinosis, riboflavin deficiency, is a rare condition that often occurs with other nutrient deficiencies. The symptoms of this condition are shown in the figure below.

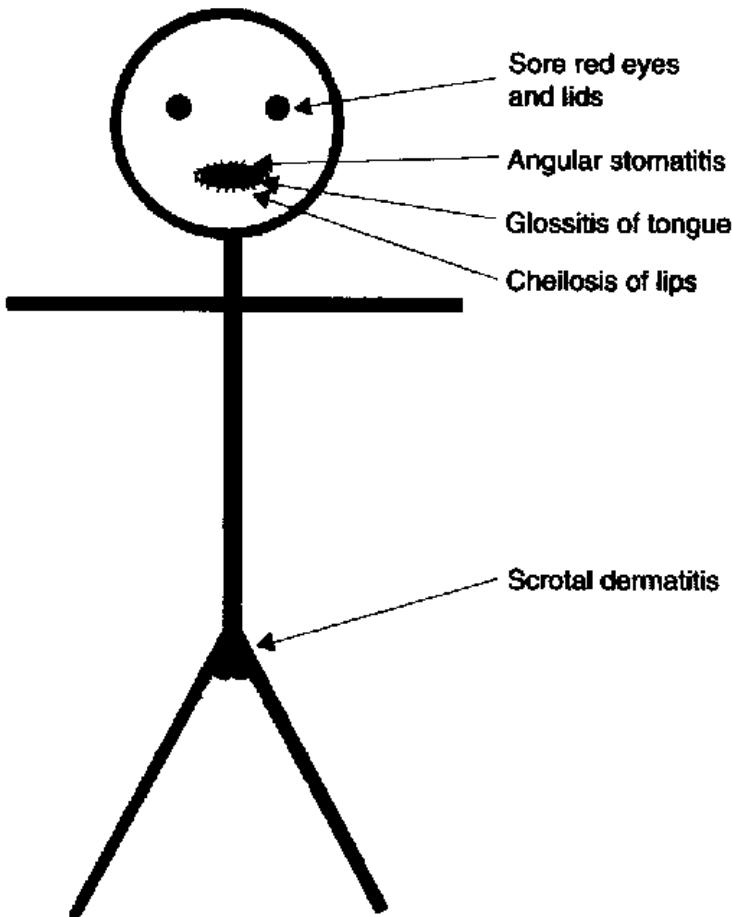


Figure 10.421 The symptoms of riboflavin deficiency1

The most notable symptoms include angular stomatitis (aka angular cheilitis, like cheilosis), which is a lesion that forms at the corners of the mouth as shown below.

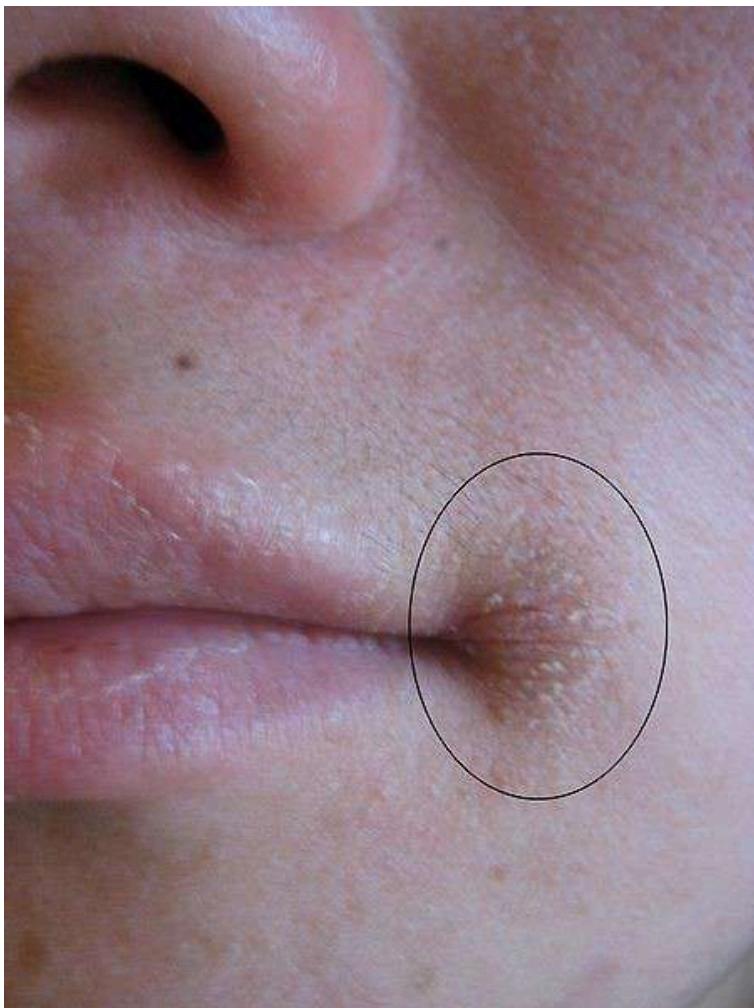


Figure 10.422 Angular Cheilitis2

Glossitis is the inflammation of the tongue, which can be

accompanied by redness or inflammation of the oral cavity. Dermatitis is also frequently a symptom<sup>3,4</sup>.

There has been no toxicity of riboflavin reported.

### References & Links

1. <http://www.fao.org/docrep/W0073e/p206.gif>
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Angular\\_Cheilitis.JPG](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Angular_Cheilitis.JPG)
3. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
4. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

## 10.5 Niacin

There are two forms of niacin: nicotinic acid and nicotinamide (aka niacinamide), that have a carboxylic acid group or amide group, respectively. The structure of nicotinic acid and nicotinamide are shown below.

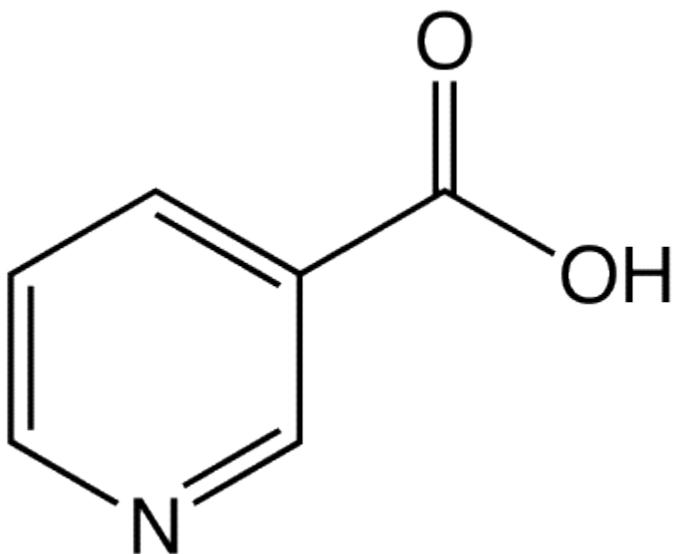


Figure 10.51 Structure of nicotinic acid1

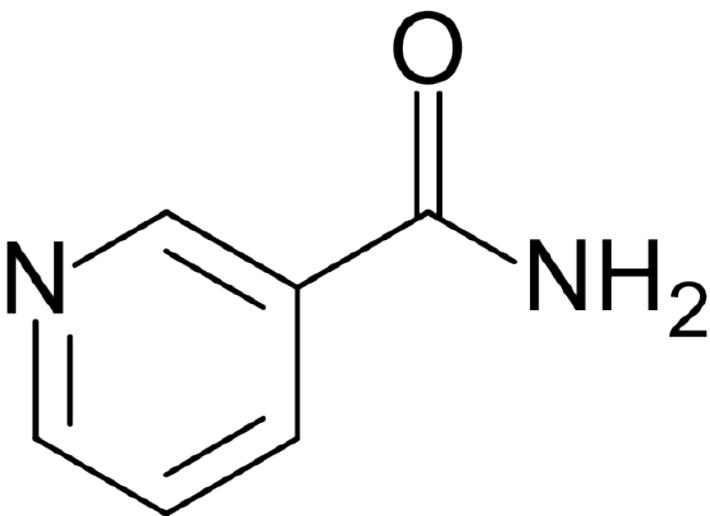


Figure 10.52 Structure of nicotinamide<sup>2</sup>

Niacin is important for the production of two cofactors: nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD) and nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADP<sup>+</sup>). The structure of NAD is shown below; you can clearly see the nicotinamide at the top right of the molecule.

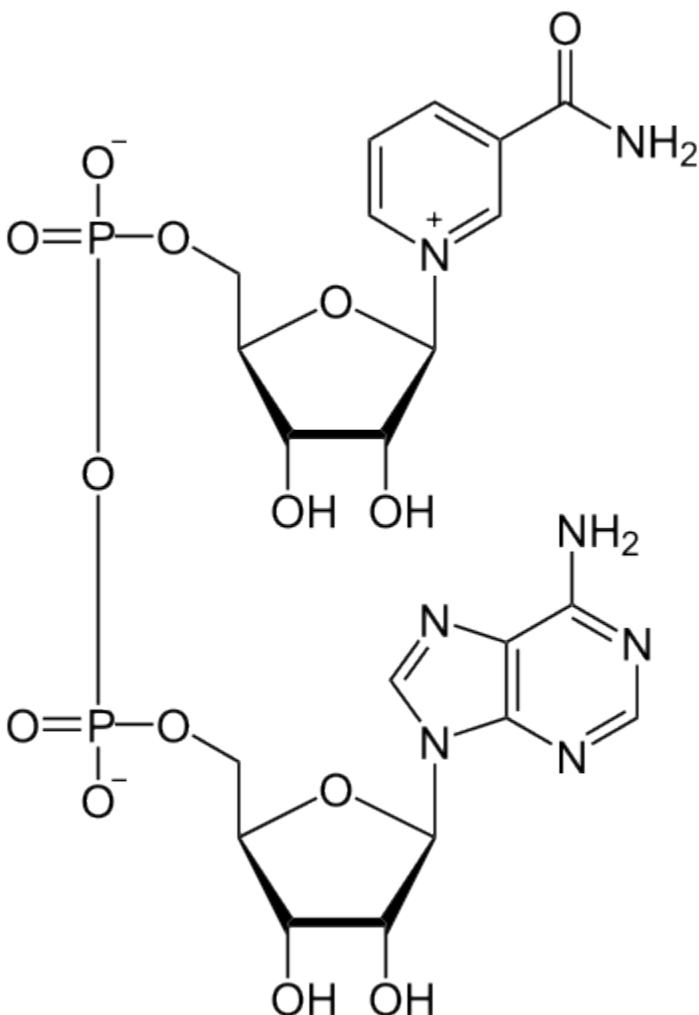


Figure 10.53 Structure of NAD<sup>3</sup>

NAD is reduced to form NADH, as shown below.

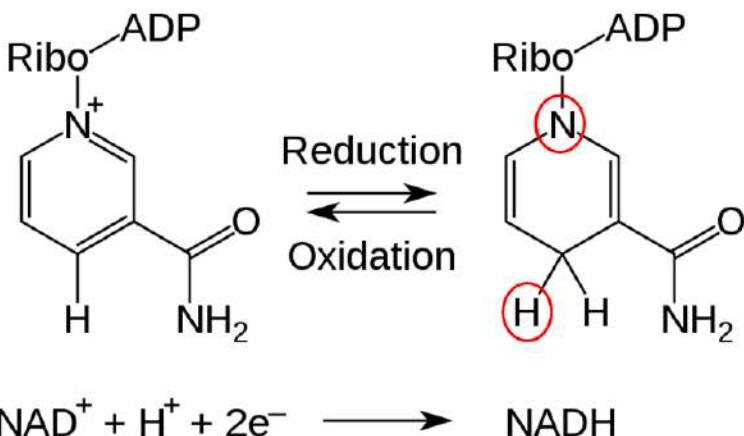


Figure 10.54 Reduction of NAD to NADH

The structure of NADP<sup>+</sup> is exactly the same as NAD, except it has an extra phosphate group off the bottom of the structure, as shown below.

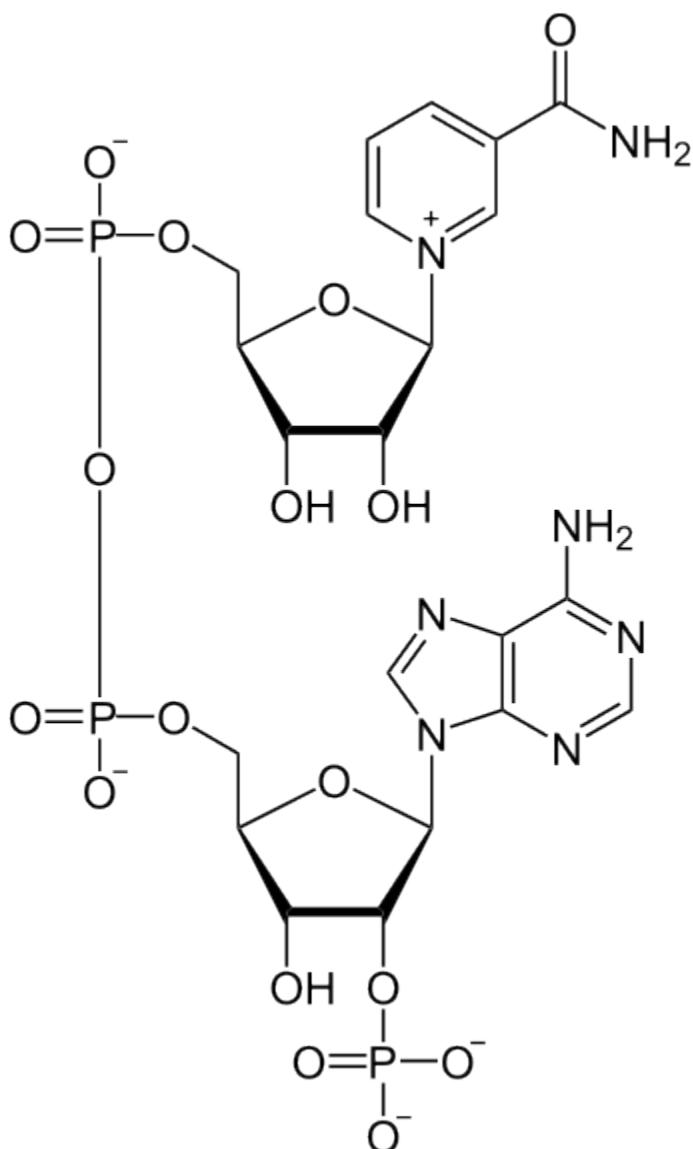


Figure 10.55 Structure of NADP<sup>+</sup>

Like NAD, NADP<sup>+</sup> can be reduced to NADPH.

Niacin is unique in that it can be synthesized from the amino acid tryptophan as shown below. An intermediate in this synthesis is kynureneine. Many reactions occur between this compound and niacin, and riboflavin and vitamin B6 are required for two of these reactions.



Figure 10.56 Tryptophan can be used to synthesize niacin6

To account for niacin synthesis from tryptophan, niacin equivalents (NE) were created by the DRI committee to account for the amount of niacin in foods as well as their tryptophan content. It takes approximately 60 mg of tryptophan to make 1 mg of niacin. Thus, the conversions to niacin equivalents are:

$$1 \text{ mg Niacin} = 1 \text{ NE}$$

$$60 \text{ mg Tryptophan} = 1 \text{ NE}$$

The tryptophan levels of most foods is not known, but a good estimate is that tryptophan is 1% of amino acids in protein7. Thus, lets take peanut butter, smooth style, with salt as an example8.

The peanut butter contains 13.403 mg of niacin and 25.09 g of protein8.

Step 1: Calculate the amount of tryptophan:

$$25.09 \text{ g} \times 0.01 \text{ (the numerical value of 1\%)} = 0.2509 \text{ g of tryptophan}$$

Step 2: Convert Grams to Milligrams

$$0.2509 \text{ g} \times 1000 \text{ mg/g} = 250.9 \text{ mg of tryptophan}$$

Step 3: Calculate NE from tryptophan

$$250.9 \text{ mg of tryptophan}/(60 \text{ mg of tryptophan}/1 \text{ NE}) = 4.182 \text{ NE}$$

Step 4: Add NEs together

$$13.403 \text{ NE (from niacin)} + 4.182 \text{ (from tryptophan)} = 17.585 \text{ NE}$$

Most niacin we consume is in the form of nicotinamide and nicotinic acid<sup>9</sup>, and in general is well absorbed using an unresolved carrier<sup>10</sup>. However, in corn, wheat, and certain other cereal products, niacin bioavailability is low. In these foods, some niacin (~70% in corn) is tightly bound, making it unavailable for absorption. Treating the grains with a base frees the niacin and allows it to be absorbed. After absorption nicotinamide is the primary circulating form<sup>7,9</sup>.

Subsections:

10.51 Niacin Functions

10.52 Niacin Deficiency & Toxicity

**References & Links**

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Niacinstr.png>
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Nicotinamide\\_structure.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Nicotinamide_structure.svg)
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:NAD%2B\\_phys.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:NAD%2B_phys.svg)
4. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:NAD\\_oxidation\\_reduction.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:NAD_oxidation_reduction.svg)
5. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:NADP%2B\\_phys.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:NADP%2B_phys.svg)
6. [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Nicotinic\\_acid\\_biosynthesis2.png](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Nicotinic_acid_biosynthesis2.png)
7. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
8. <http://www.nal.usda.gov/fnic/foodcomp/search/>
9. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
10. Said H, Mohammed Z. (2006) Intestinal absorption of water-soluble vitamins: An update. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 22(2): 140-146.

## 10.51 Niacin Functions

Approximately 200 enzymes require NAD or NADP+. We will go through some selected functions of NAD and NADP+. The following figures and legends show and describe the functions of NAD and NADP+.

## Glycolysis in the Cytoplasm

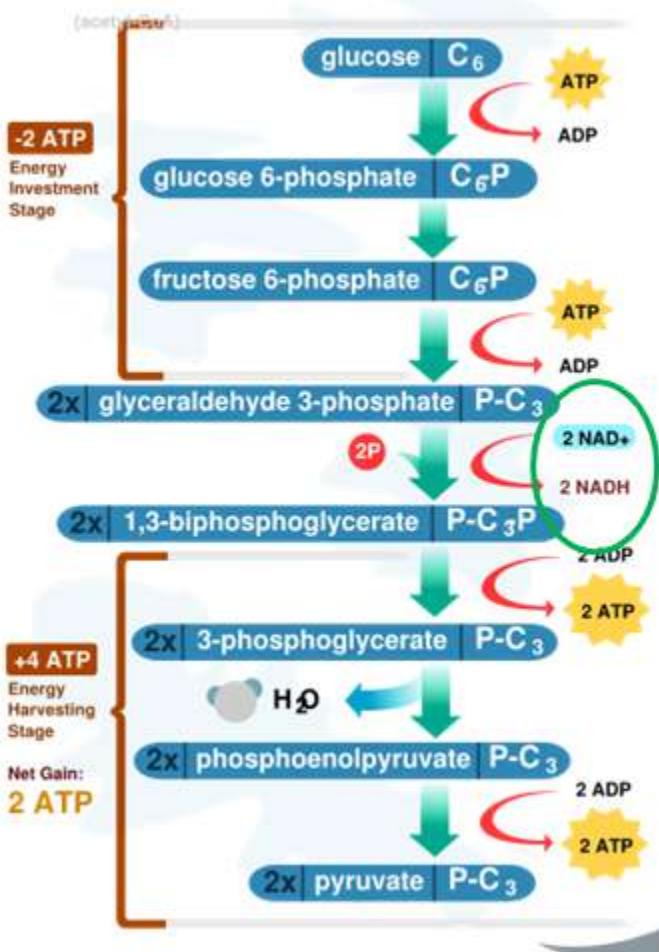


Figure 10.511 NAD is required for glycolysis1

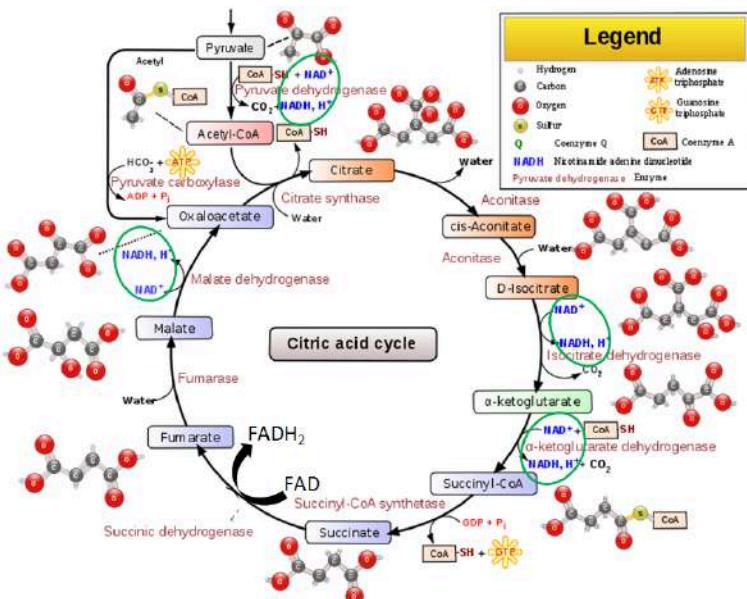


Figure 10.512 NAD is required for the transition reaction and at three different points in the citric acid cycle2

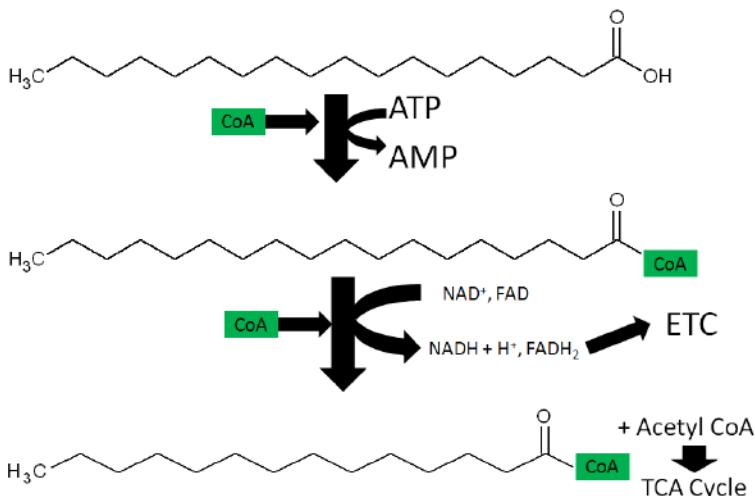
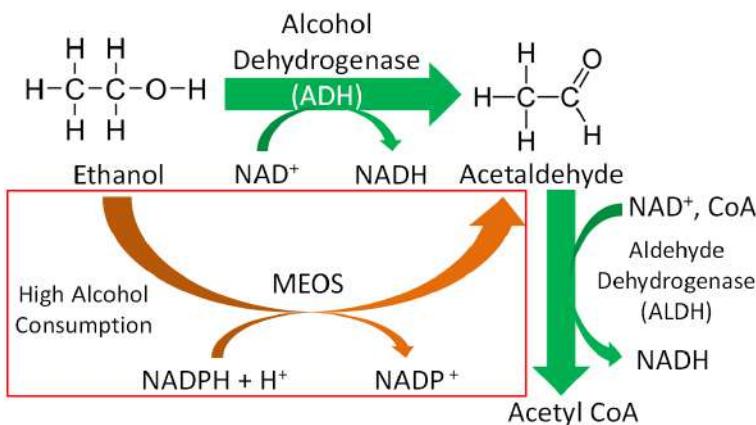


Figure 10.513 NAD is required for fatty acid oxidation



MEOS – Microsomal Ethanol Oxidizing System

Figure 10.514 Alcohol oxidation; NAD is required by alcohol dehydrogenase, and the MEOS uses NADPH<sup>3,4</sup>

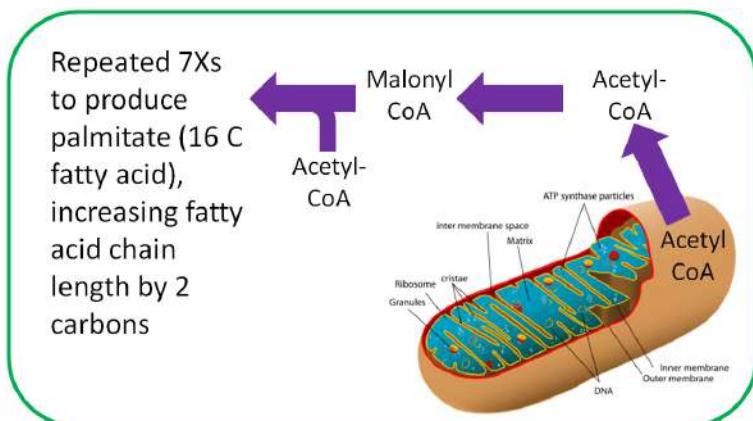


Figure 10.515 Fatty acid synthesis uses NADPH<sup>5</sup>

HMG CoA reductase, the rate-limiting enzyme in cholesterol synthesis, uses NADPH. NADPH is also used by the antioxidant enzyme glutathione reductase as shown in the link below<sup>6</sup>.

---

### **Web Link**

The Glutathione Oxidation Reduction (Redox) Cycle

---

### **References & Links**

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:CellRespiration.svg>
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Citric\\_acid\\_cycle\\_with\\_aconitate\\_2.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Citric_acid_cycle_with_aconitate_2.svg)
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Ethanol\\_flat\\_structure.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Ethanol_flat_structure.png)
4. <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Acetaldehyde#/media/File:Acetaldehyde-2D-flat.svg>
5. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mitochondrion>
6. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

### **Links**

The Glutathione Oxidation Reduction (Redox) Cycle -  
<http://lpi.oregonstate.edu/infocenter/minerals/selenium/gsh.html>

## **10.52 Niacin Deficiency & Toxicity**

Pellagra is a niacin deficiency. This is no longer a common deficiency in developed countries, but was in the U.S. in the early 1900s. This was because corn was a staple crop, meaning it was what people primarily consumed. The bioavailability of niacin from corn is poor unless treated with a base to release the bound niacin. The symptoms of pellagra are the 3 D's:

Dementia  
Dermatitis  
Diarrhea

Some refer to 4 D's in which the 4th D is death if the condition

is not managed. The following pictures show the symptoms of pellagra.

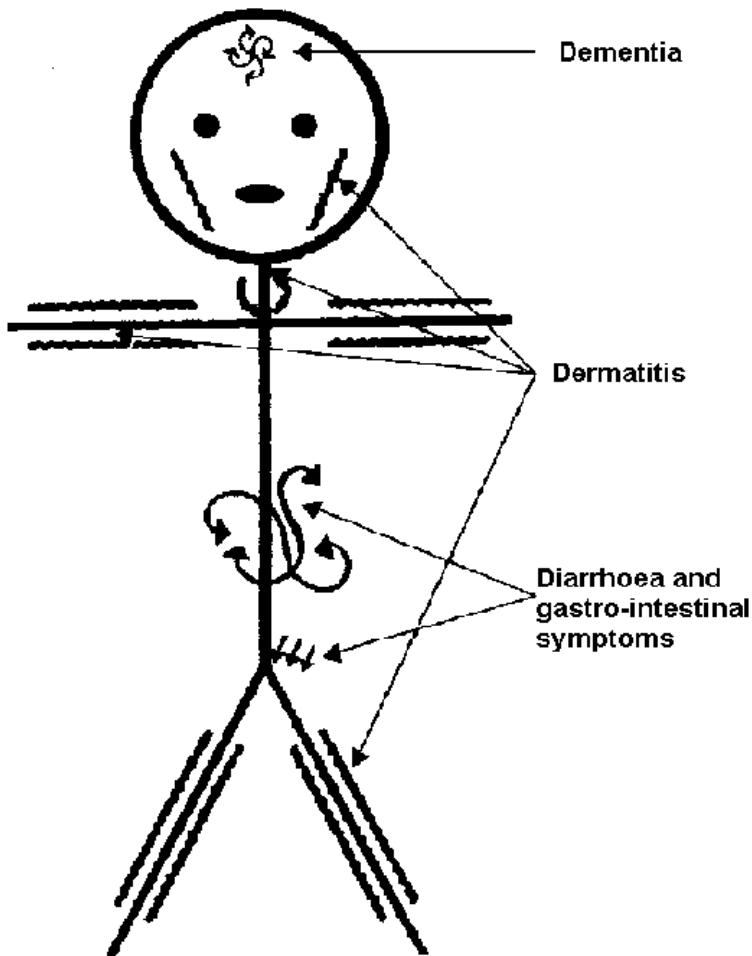


Figure 10.521 The 3 D's of pellagra



Figure 10.522 A man with pellagra; notice the dermatitis on his arms2

The link below shows another picture of a person suffering from dermatitis as a result of pellagra.

---

**Web Link**

Pellagra

---

Dietary niacin toxicity is rare. However, nicotinic acid (not

nicotinamide) can improve people's lipid profiles when consumed at levels far above the RDA. For instance the RDA & upper limit (UL) is 14 or 16 (women & men) and 35 mg (both), respectively. Many people are taking 1-2 grams (up to 6 g/day) to get the benefits in their plasma lipid profiles as shown in the table below<sup>4,5</sup>.

Table 10.521 Effects of nicotinic acid (>1.5 g/day) on plasma lipid profile<sup>3</sup>

Measure	Change
VLDL	↓ 25-40%
LDL	↓ 6-22%
HDL	↑ 18-35%
Total Cholesterol	↓ 21-44%
Triglycerides	↓ 21-44%

It should be pointed out that there are special supplements for this purpose that include a slower release nicotinic acid that helps prevent the toxicity symptoms (nicotinamide is not toxic). A slow (aka long or extended) release form of niacin for people with atherosclerosis is Niaspan®. The link below is to Niaspan's site.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Niaspan®](#)

---

A study found that Niaspan plus a statin was no better than a statin alone in preventing heart attacks, despite improvements in HDL and triglyceride levels. This result challenged the understanding of the importance of HDL and triglyceride levels to heart attack risk. The link below explains this study's results.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Niacin Drugs Don't Reduce Heart Attack Risk](#)

---

The most well known of the toxicity symptoms is "niacin flush",

which is a dilation of capillaries accompanied by tingling that can become painful. This symptom is noted to occur at lower levels than the other toxicity symptoms<sup>6</sup>. Other symptoms include:

Gastrointestinal Distress

Liver Damage

A nicotinic acid receptor GPR109A, which is present in adipocytes and immune cells, is believed to mediate niacin flush, but the beneficial effects on lipid profiles do not appear to be mediated by it<sup>7,8</sup>. It is not clear at this time the mechanism of action for the improvements in lipid profiles<sup>7</sup>. Thus, nicotinic acid supplementation can improve lipid profile and lead to niacin flush, while nicotinamide supplementation does not result in either outcome.

### References & Links

1. <http://www.fao.org/docrep/w0073e/p184.gif>
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Pellagra\\_NIH.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Pellagra_NIH.jpg)
3. Gille A, Bodor E, Ahmed K, Offermanns S. (2008) Nicotinic acid: Pharmacological effects and mechanisms of action. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol* 48: 79-106.
4. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
5. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
6. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2008) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Thomson Wadsworth.
7. Ginsberg HN, Reyes-Soffer G.. (2013) Niacin: A long history, but a questionable future. *Curr Opin Lipidol.* 24: 475-479.
8. Liu D, Wang X, Kong L, Chen Z. (2015) Nicotinic acid regulates glucose and lipid metabolism through lipid-independent pathways. *Curr Pharm Biotechnol.* 16: 3-10.

### Links

Pellagra - [http://www.pathguy.com/lectures/  
mcgill\\_pellagra.jpg](http://www.pathguy.com/lectures/mcgill_pellagra.jpg)  
Niaspan® - <http://www.niaspan.com/>  
Niaspan® Health Care Professional's Site -  
<http://www.niaspanpro.com/>  
Niacin Drugs Don't Reduce Heart Attack Risk -  
[http://www.nytimes.com/2011/05/27/health/policy/  
27heart.html](http://www.nytimes.com/2011/05/27/health/policy/27heart.html)

## 10.6 Pantothenic Acid

Pantothenic acid has two roles in the body:

1. It is part of coenzyme A (CoA)
2. It is part of acyl carrier protein

### 1. Coenzyme A

The structure of pantothenic acid is shown alone below and circled within coenzyme A.

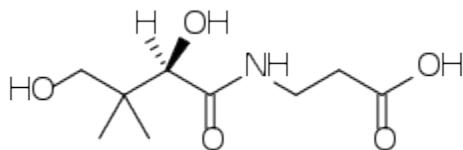


Figure 10.61 The structure of pantothenic acid1

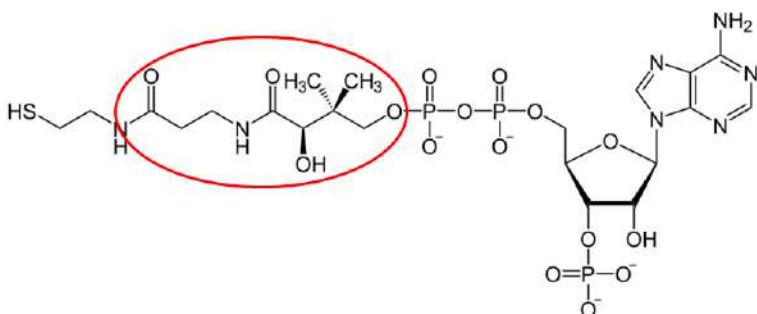


Figure 10.62 The structure of coenzyme A (CoA) with the pantothenic acid circled<sup>2</sup>

The functions of CoA are shown and described below<sup>3</sup>.

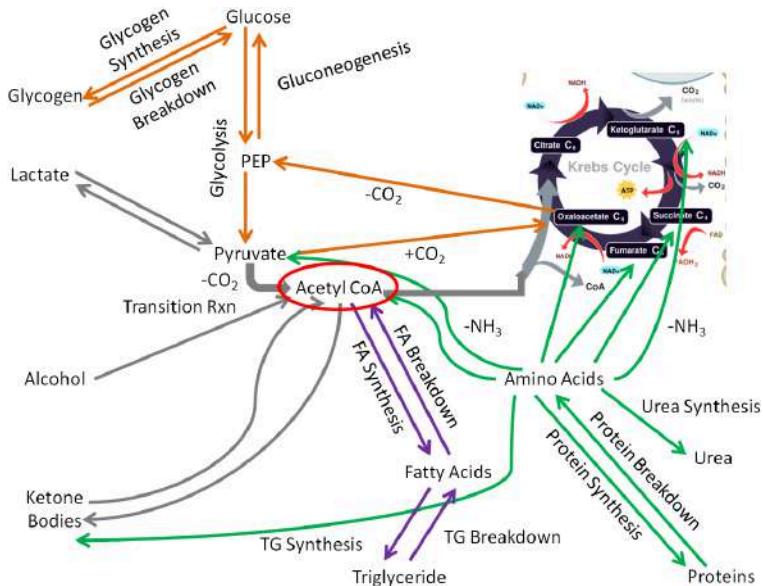


Figure 10.63 Acetyl-CoA is a central point in metabolism, and contains CoA<sup>4</sup>

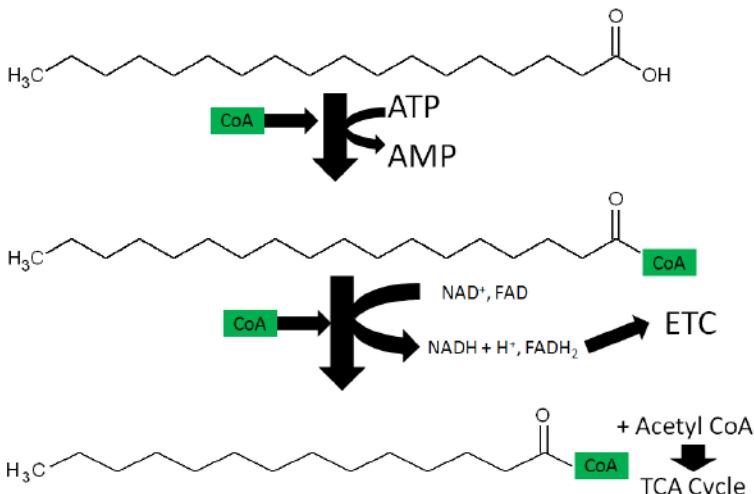


Figure 10.64 CoA is used in fatty acid oxidation. The fatty acid is activated by adding CoA, forming acyl-CoA.

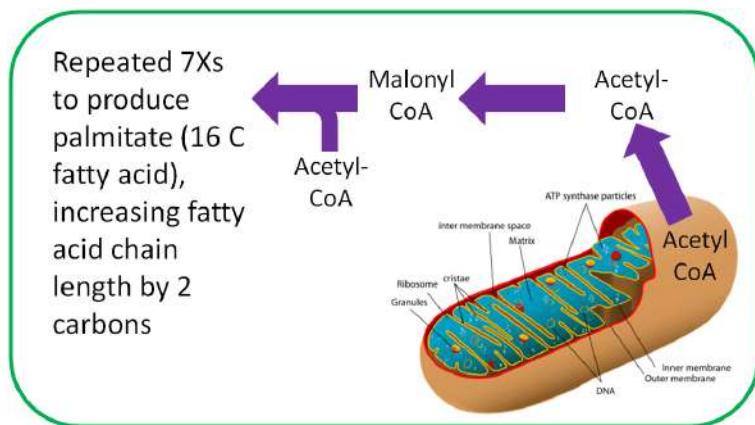


Figure 10.65 Fatty acid synthesis uses CoA5

## 2. Acyl Carrier Protein

Acyl carrier protein, is also important in fatty acid synthesis3.

Most pantothenic acid in food is found as CoA, which is cleaved prior to absorption. It is then taken up into the enterocyte through the sodium-dependent multivitamin transporter (SMVT) as shown below. Approximately 50% of pantothenic acid is absorbed; it is excreted primarily in urine3.

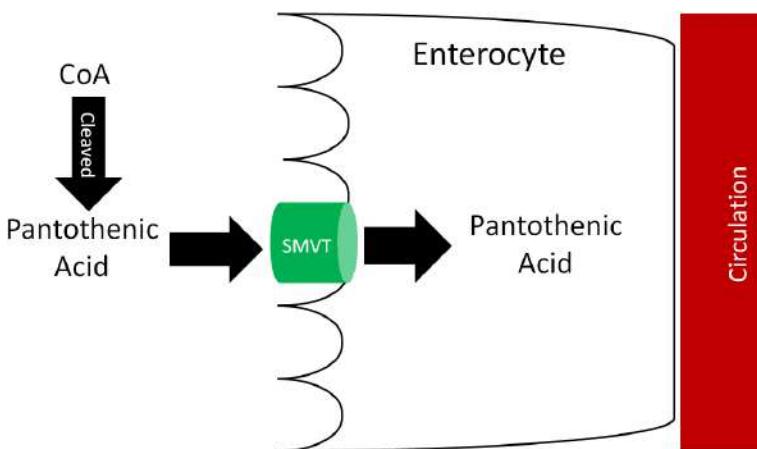


Figure 10.66 The absorption of pantothenic acid

Deficiency of pantothenic acid is very rare. Pantothenic acid supplementation did relieve the symptoms (burning feet and numbness of toes) of “burning feet syndrome” in prisoners in World War II6. It is believed pantothenic acid deficiency was the cause of this syndrome. Other symptoms noted are vomiting, fatigue, weakness, restlessness, and irritability3. No toxicity has been reported.

#### References & Links

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:Pantothenic\\_acid\\_structure.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Pantothenic_acid_structure.svg)
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Coenzym\\_A.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Coenzym_A.svg)
3. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and

- human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
- 4. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:CellRespiration.svg>
  - 5. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Animal\\_mitochondrion\\_diagram\\_en\\_%28edit%29.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Animal_mitochondrion_diagram_en_%28edit%29.svg)
  - 6. Shils ME, Shike M, Ross AC, Caballero B, Cousins RJ, editors. (2006) Modern nutrition in health and disease. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

## 10.7 Vitamin B6

Vitamin B6 is composed of three compounds: pyridoxine, pyridoxal, and pyridoxamine. Pyridoxine contains a methylhydroxyl group (-CH<sub>3</sub>OH), pyridoxal an aldehyde (-CHO), and pyridoxamine an aminomethyl group (-CH<sub>3</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>), as shown below.

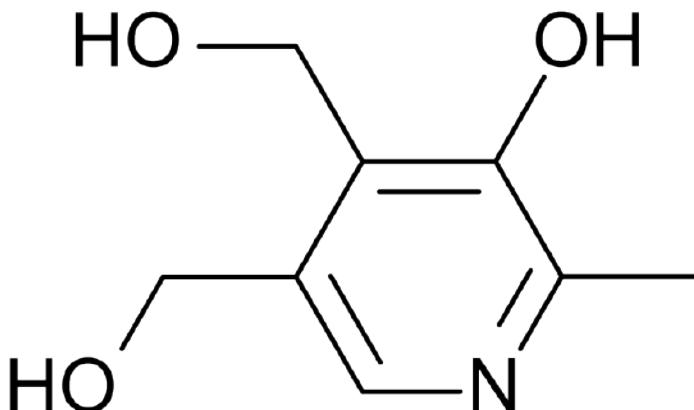


Figure 10.71 Structure of pyridoxine1

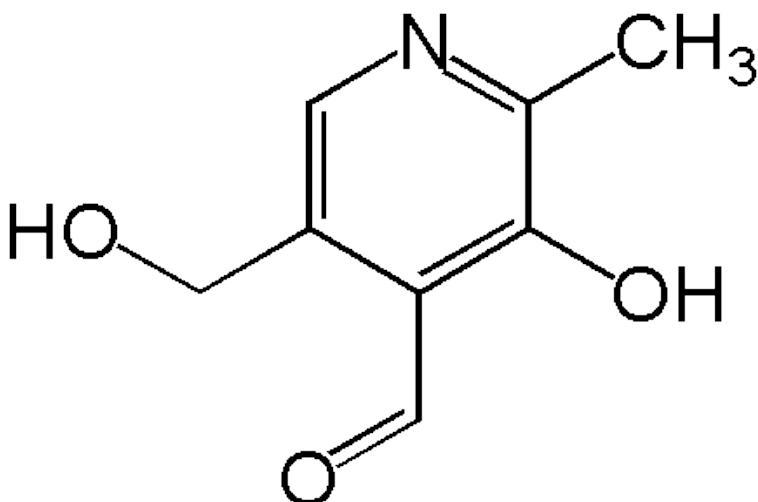


Figure 10.72 Structure of pyridoxal 2-oxime

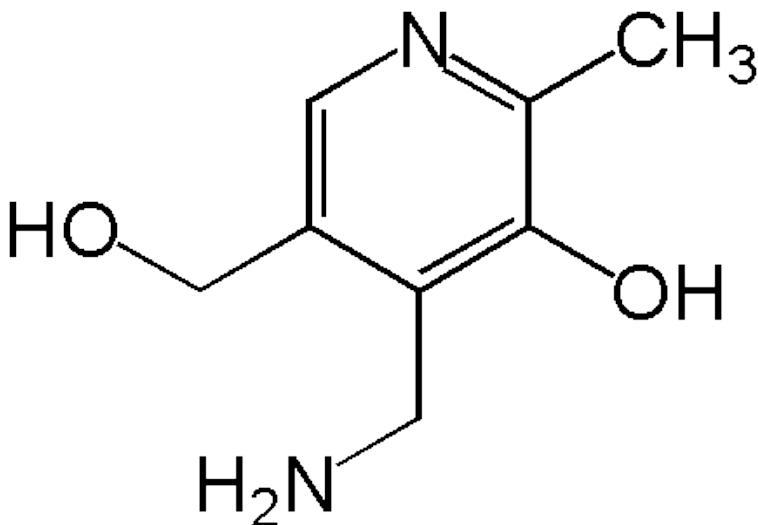


Figure 10.73 Structure of pyridoxamine 3-oxime

All three forms can be activated by being phosphorylated. The phosphorylated forms can be interconverted to the active, or the cofactor form of vitamin B6, pyridoxal phosphate (PLP). This active form has a phosphate group added in place of a hydroxyl group. The enzyme that catalyzes this reaction requires FMN (riboflavin cofactor), as shown below.

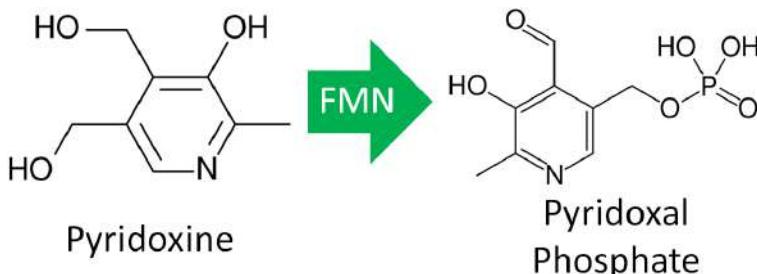


Figure 10.74 Vitamin B6 activation<sup>1,4</sup>

In animal products, vitamin B6 is found in its cofactor forms, PLP and pyridoxamine phosphate (PMP). The latter cofactor is less common than PLP. In plants, vitamin B6 is primarily found as pyridoxine, with up to 75% being pyridoxine glucoside, which is believed to be the plant storage form<sup>6</sup>. Pyridoxine glucoside has a glucose added to pyridoxine as shown below.

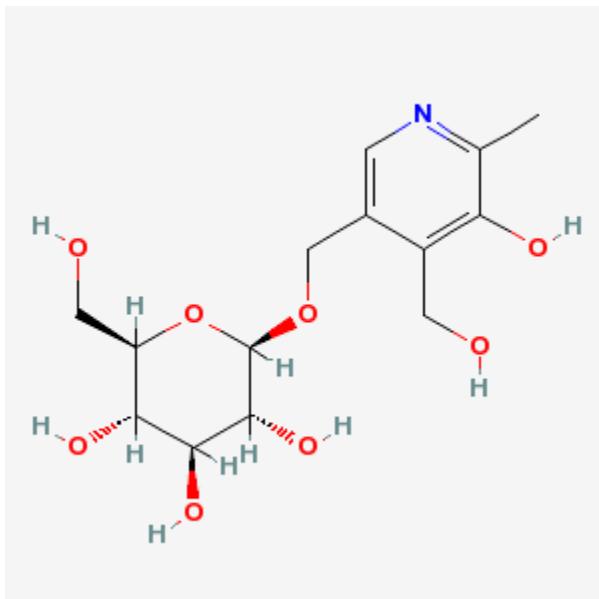


Figure 10.75 Structure of pyridoxine glucoside<sup>5</sup>

Vitamin B6 is well absorbed from foods (~75%) through passive diffusion. PLP and PMP are dephosphorylated before uptake into the enterocyte. Some of the pyridoxamine glucoside is cleaved to form free pyridoxine, but some pyridoxine glucoside is absorbed intact. Pyridoxine glucoside absorption is lower (~50%) than pyridoxine alone. The primary circulating forms of vitamin B6 are pyridoxal and PLP. Vitamin B6 is primarily excreted in the urine, and like many other B vitamins, vitamin B6 is destroyed during cooking or heating<sup>6</sup>.

Subsections:

10.71 Vitamin B6 Functions

10.72 Vitamin B6 Deficiency & Toxicity

**References & Links**

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Pyridoxine\\_structure.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Pyridoxine_structure.svg)

2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Pyridoxal.png>
3. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Pyridoxamine.png>
4. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pyridoxal\\_phosphate#/media/File:Pyridoxal-phosphate.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pyridoxal_phosphate#/media/File:Pyridoxal-phosphate.svg)
5. [http://pubchem.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/summary/summary.cgi?cid=440188&loc=ec\\_rcs](http://pubchem.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/summary/summary.cgi?cid=440188&loc=ec_rcs)
6. Shils ME, Shike M, Ross AC, Caballero B, Cousins RJ, editors. (2006) Modern nutrition in health and disease. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

## 10.71 Vitamin B6 Functions

PLP is a cofactor for over 100 different enzymes, most are involved in amino acid metabolism. In fact, without PLP, all amino acids would be essential because we would not be able to synthesize nonessential amino acids. Below are some of the functions of PLP and PMP1:

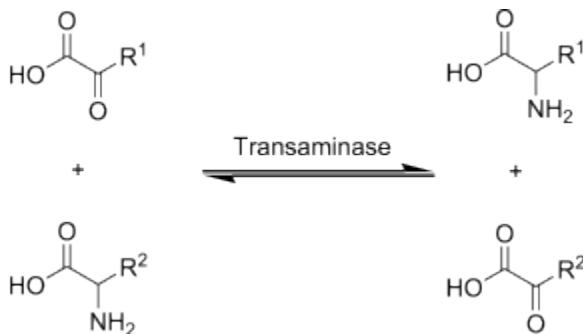


Figure 10.71 Transaminases require PLP or PMP2

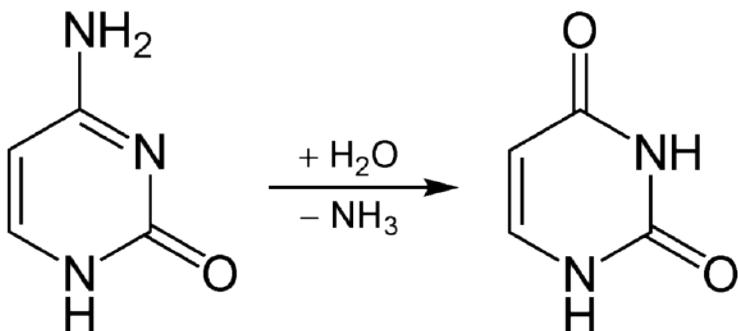


Figure 10.712 Some deaminases require PLP

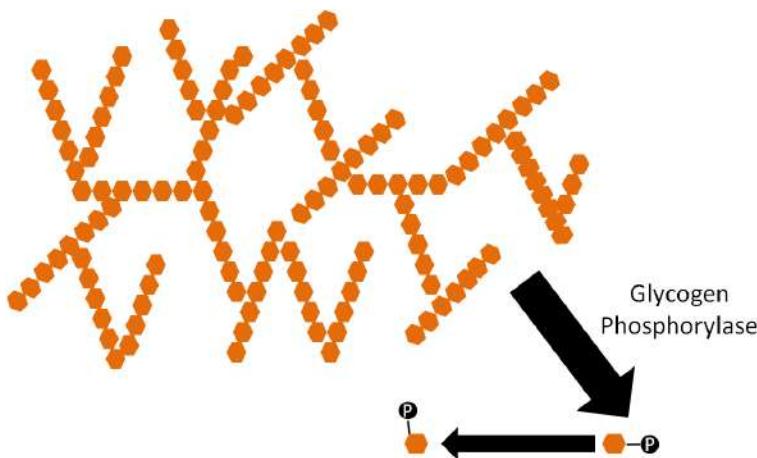


Figure 10.713 Glycogen phosphorylase requires PLP

PLP is required for decarboxylase enzymes that are involved in the synthesis of the neurotransmitters GABA, serotonin, histamine, and dopamine. As an example, DOPA decarboxylase uses PLP to convert L-DOPA to dopamine as shown below1.

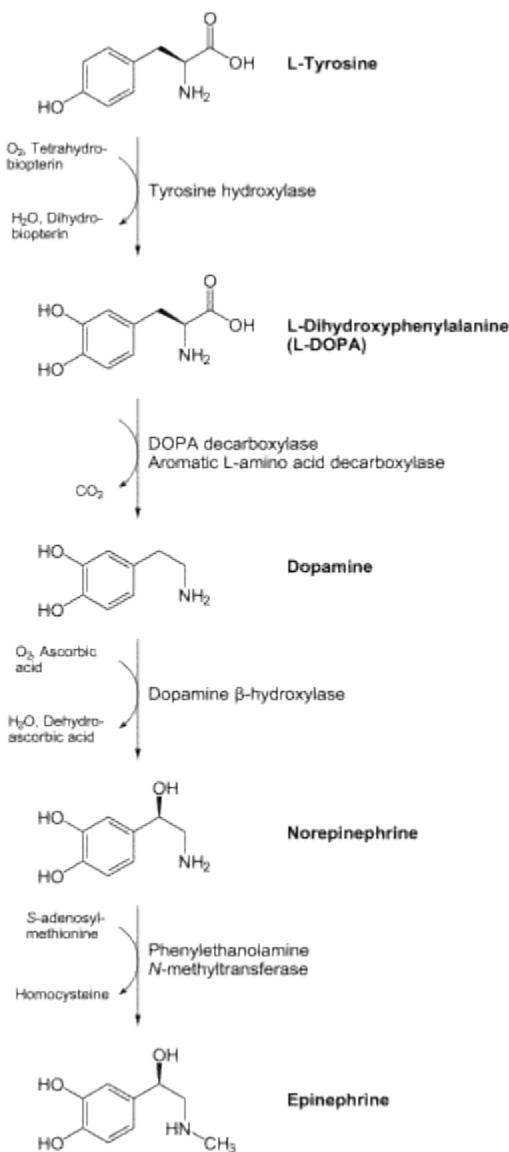


Figure 10.714 DOPA decarboxylase uses PLP to synthesize dopamine4

PLP is also required by gamma-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) synthetase that is involved in heme synthesis, as shown below. Heme will be discussed in more detail in the iron section.

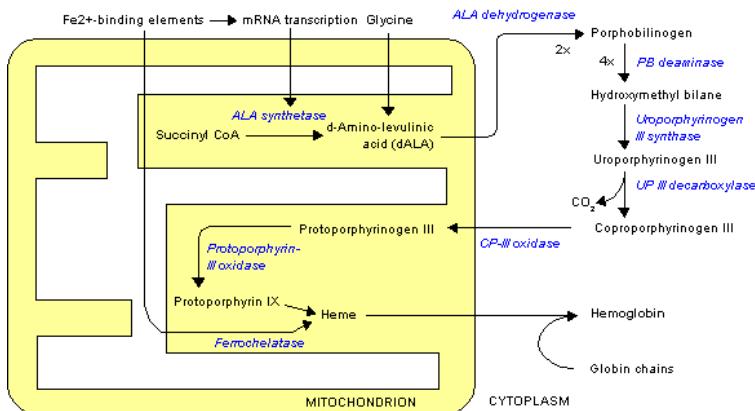


Figure 10.715 ALA synthetase uses PLP in the heme synthesis pathway5

PLP is also used in one of the multiple reactions that occurs between kynurenine and niacin in its synthesis from tryptophan.



Figure 10.716 PLP is required for niacin synthesis from tryptophan6

In addition, PLP is also involved in:

Carnitine Synthesis  
1-Carbon Metabolism

### References & Links

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and

- human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
- 2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Transaminierung.svg>
  - 3. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:DesaminierungCtoU.png>
  - 4. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Catecholamines\\_biosynthesis.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Catecholamines_biosynthesis.svg)
  - 5. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Heme\\_synthesis.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Heme_synthesis.png)
  - 6. [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Nicotinic\\_acid\\_biosynthesis2.png](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Nicotinic_acid_biosynthesis2.png)

## 10.72 Vitamin B6 Deficiency & Toxicity

Vitamin B6 deficiency is rare, but symptoms include:

Skin or scalp ailments (seborrheic dermatitis)

Microcytic hypochromic anemia (small cells, low color)

Convulsions

Depression

Confusion

Given what we know about the functions of vitamin B6 most of these symptoms make sense.

The microcytic hypochromic anemia is a result of decreased heme synthesis. The neurological symptoms are due to the decreased production of neurotransmitters<sup>1</sup>.

Vitamin B6, unlike many of the B vitamins, can produce toxicity. High doses of vitamin B6, taken for an extended period of time, can lead to neurological damage<sup>2</sup>. There are some potential uses of vitamin B6 supplementation that are important to be done with consultation with a physician.

One of the conditions that people take vitamin B6 for is carpal tunnel syndrome. The following video does a nice job of explaining and showing how this condition occurs.

---

### Web Link

---

Video: Carpal Tunnel Syndrome (1:02)

---

While the evidence is not conclusive, it appears that vitamin B6 supplementation may be beneficial to those suffering from carpal tunnel syndrome and may be tried alone, or in combination with other complementary treatments, before surgery is undertaken<sup>3,4</sup>.

Morning sickness that occurs early in pregnancy is another condition where vitamin B6 supplementation is utilized. The evidence again is not clear on whether it is beneficial<sup>5,6</sup>, but The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists suggests that vitamin B6 may be tried first to treat nausea and vomiting during pregnancy<sup>7</sup>. In 2013, the FDA approved doxylamine-pyridoxine (Diclegis) for use in pregnancy<sup>8</sup>. It is not known exactly what causes morning sickness, but it is believed that lower circulating vitamin B6 levels are associated with increased morning sickness severity<sup>9</sup>.

The last condition that vitamin B6 is commonly supplemented for is premenstrual syndrome (PMS). A systematic literature review found that it is inconclusive whether vitamin B6 supplementation is beneficial in managing PMS<sup>10</sup>.

## References & Links

1. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
2. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
3. Ryan-Harshman M, Aldoori W. (2007) Carpal tunnel syndrome and vitamin B6. Canadian Family Physician 53(7): 1161-1162.
4. Aufiero E, Stitik T, Foye P, Chen B. (2004) Pyridoxine hydrochloride treatment of carpal tunnel syndrome: A review. Nutr Rev 62(3): 96-104.
5. Koren G, Maltepe C. (2006) Preventing recurrence of severe morning sickness. Canadian Family Physician 52(12): 1545-1546.
6. Tan P, Yow C, Omar S. (2009) A placebo-controlled trial of oral pyridoxine in hyperemesis gravidarum. Gynecol Obstet Invest 67(3): 151-157.
7. <http://www.acog.org/Patients/FAQs/Morning-Sickness-Nausea-and-Vomiting-of-Pregnancy>

8. Slaughter SR, Hearns-Stokes R, van der Vlugt T, Joffe HV. (2014) FDA approval of doxylamine-pyridoxine therapy for use in pregnancy. *N Engl J Med.* 370: 1081-1083.
9. Wibowo N, Purwosunu Y, Sekizawa A, Farina A, Tambunan V, Bardosono S. (2012) Vitamin B6 supplementation in pregnant women with nausea and vomiting. *116:* 206-210.
10. Whelan A, Jurgens T, Naylor H. (2009) Herbs, vitamins and minerals in the treatment of premenstrual syndrome: A systematic review. *The Canadian Journal of Clinical Pharmacology* 16(3): e407-e429.

### Video

Carpal Tunnel Syndrome - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=rewDQgqU5Hg>

## 10.8 Biotin

The 2 primary dietary forms of biotin are free biotin and biocytin (aka biotinyllysine)<sup>1</sup>. The structure of biotin is shown below.

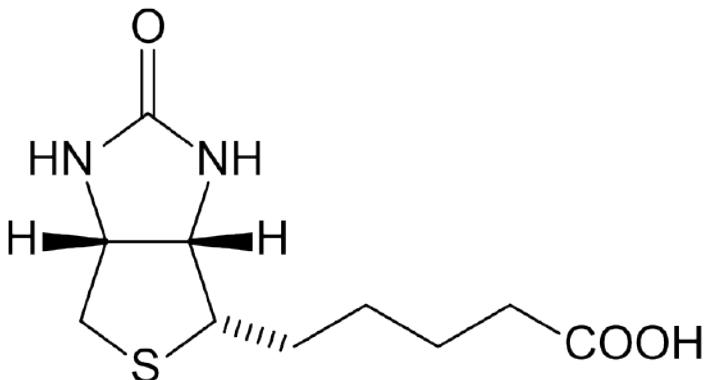


Figure 10.81 Structure of biotin<sup>2</sup>

Biocytin is biotin bound to lysine as seen in its structure below.

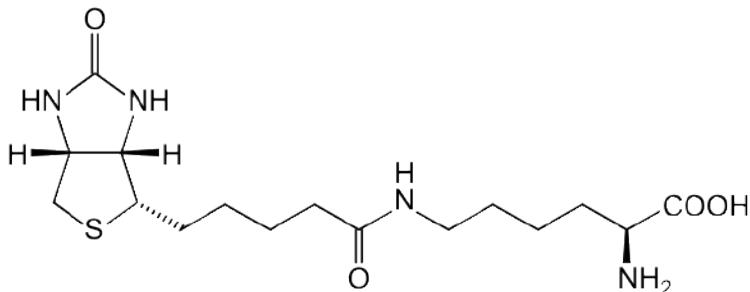


Figure 10.82 Structure of biocytin3

Free biotin is believed to be highly absorbed. Before uptake, biocytin is acted on by the enzyme biotinidase, forming free biotin and lysine. Free biotin is then taken up into the enterocyte through the sodium-dependent multivitamin transporter (SMVT), as shown below<sup>1,4,5</sup>.

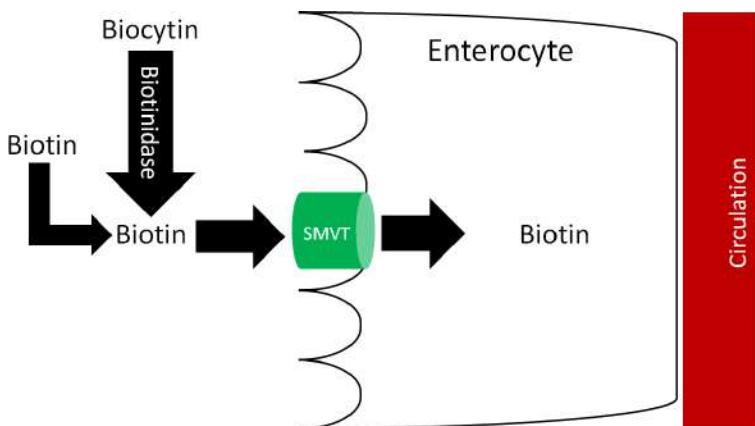


Figure 10.83 Free biotin is taken up into the enterocyte by the SMVT.

Most biotin is excreted in the urine.

Subsections:

10.81 Biotin Functions

10.82 Epigenetics

10.83 Biotin Deficiency & Toxicity

### **References & Links**

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Biotin\\_structure.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Biotin_structure.svg)
3. <http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Biocytin.svg>
4. Said H, Mohammed Z. (2006) Intestinal absorption of water-soluble vitamins: An update. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 22(2): 140-146.
5. Zempleni J, Wijeratne SSK, Hassan Y. (2009) Biotin. *Biofactors* 35(1): 36-46.

## **10.81 Biotin Functions**

Biotin is an important cofactor for carboxylase enzymes. As the name sounds, these enzymes add carboxylic acid groups (-COOH) to whatever compound they act on. In fatty acid synthesis, biotin is required by the enzyme that forms malonyl CoA from acetyl-CoA, as shown below<sup>1</sup>.

Repeated 7Xs  
to produce  
palmitate (16 C  
fatty acid),  
increasing fatty  
acid chain  
length by 2  
carbons

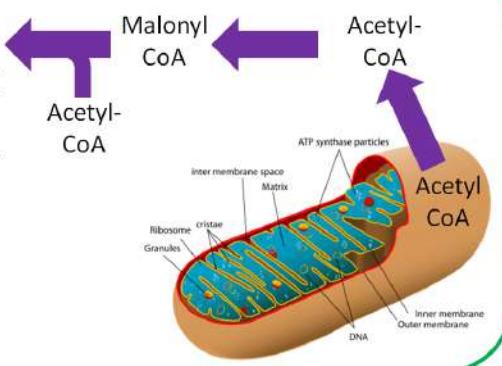


Figure 10.811 The conversion of acetyl CoA to malonyl CoA in fatty acid synthesis requires biotin2

Another biotin-requiring carboxylase is one that converts pyruvate to oxaloacetate in gluconeogenesis as shown below1.

## Glycolysis in the Cytoplasm

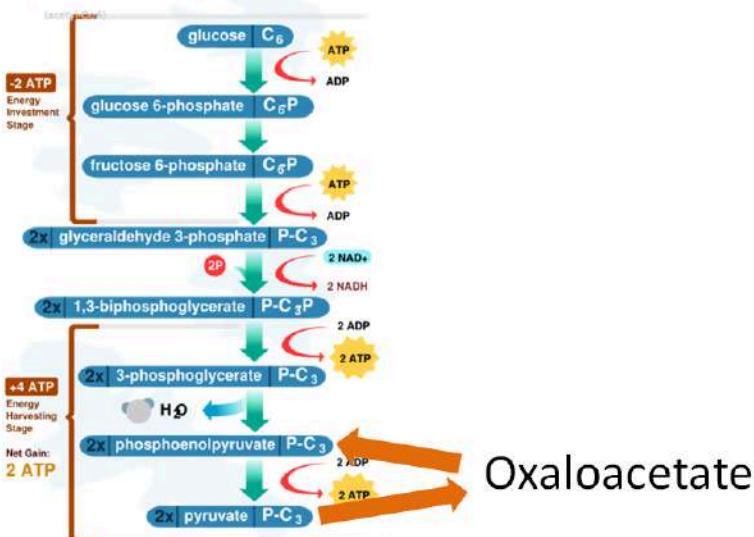


Figure 10.812 Biotin is required for conversion of pyruvate to oxaloacetate in the oxaloacetate workaround of gluconeogenesis (like glycolysis in reverse with oxaloacetate workaround)<sup>3</sup>

In addition to these two functions, biotin is also important for histone biotinylation and the breakdown of isoleucine, leucine, methionine, and threonine<sup>1</sup>.

Histone biotinylation is an epigenetic modification that is described in the next section.

Biotin is an effective treatment for brittle nail syndrome, but it has not been shown to improve healthy nails<sup>4</sup>. There is little evidence to suggest that biotin improves healthy hair as well<sup>5</sup>.

### References & Links

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:Animal\\_mitochondrion\\_diagram\\_en\\_%28edit%29.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Animal_mitochondrion_diagram_en_%28edit%29.svg)

3. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:CellRespiration.svg>
4. Scheinfeld N, Dahdah MJ, Scher R. (2007) Vitamins and minerals: their role in nail health and disease. 6(8): 782-787.
5. Famenini S, Goh C. (2014) Evidence for supplemental treatments in androgenetic alopecia. 13(7): 809-812.

## 10.82 Epigenetics

What is epigenetics? Epigenetics means “above the genome.” The nucleotide sequence of the human genome is known, and there is surprisingly little difference between individuals. However, the 2 main epigenetic modifications play a major role in determining what genes are expressed:

DNA methylation

Histone modification

These epigenetic modifications are illustrated in the following link.

---

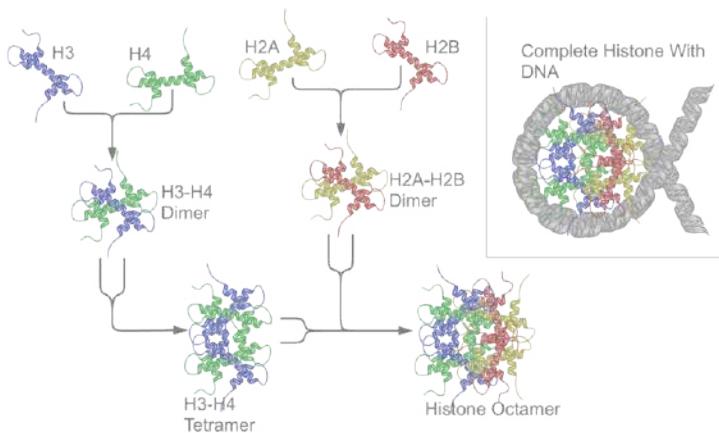
### Web Link

[Epigenetic modifications\(inactive link as of 09/08/2020\)](#)

---

DNA methylation is the addition of a methyl group to a DNA base, which decreases gene transcription. Conversely, demethylation increases gene transcription.

DNA does not exist simply as long strands of double helix, instead it is packaged and shaped so that it can fit in the nucleus of our cells. The first part of this packaging is that DNA is wrapped around proteins called histones as shown below.



*Figure 10.821 DNA is wrapped around histones1*

Histone modification occurs when there are additions or subtractions to the histones themselves. The most common is acetylation (addition of an acetyl group) or deacetylation of histones. The structure of acetyl is shown below.

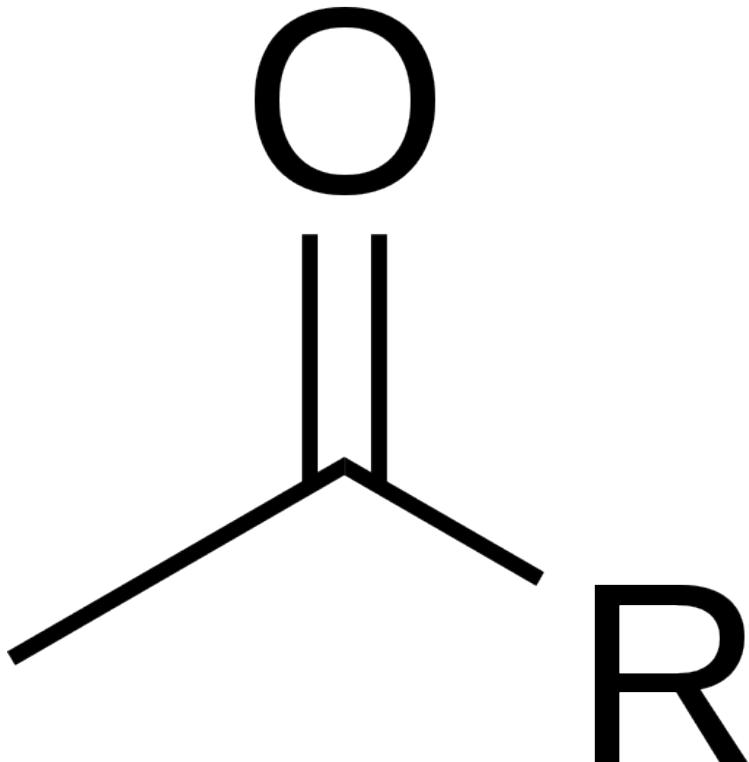


Figure 10.822 Structure of acetyl2

Histone acetylation causes the DNA structure to open up so that transcription can occur. Histone deacetylation causes the DNA to become more tightly packed, preventing transcription from occurring.

Together, these modifications to DNA and histones are known as the epigenetic code. The following two videos do a good job explaining epigenetics and tying together its two different methods of modification:

---

## **Web Links**

Video: A Tale of Two Mice (4:39)  
Video: Histone Modifications (2:18)

---

How does this relate to biotin? Histones can be biotinylated, or have biotin added to the histone. However, it should be noted that histone biotinylation is rare (<0.001% of human histones H3 and H4), so it is questionable how much impact this action has<sup>3</sup>.

## **References & Links**

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Nucleosome\\_structure.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Nucleosome_structure.png)
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Acetyl.svg>
2. Kuroshi T, Rios-Avila L, Pestinger V, Wijeratne SSK, Zempleni J. (2011) Biotinylation is a natural, albeit rare, modification of human histones. Mol Genet Metab, 104, 537-545.

## **Links**

Epigenetic modifications – <http://www.nature.com/nature/journal/v441/n7090/images/441143a-i2.0.jpg>

## **Videos**

A Tale of Two Mice – <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=OOiCu5kzGxg>  
Histone Modifications – <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=eYrQ0EhVCYA>

## **10.83 Biotin Deficiency & Toxicity**

Biotin deficiency is very rare. Symptoms of biotin deficiency include:

Skin rash

Hair loss

Neurological Impairments

There are a couple of ways that a person could develop a deficiency in biotin. First, a very small number of people are born with a mutation in biotinidase that results in them not being able to cleave biocytin for absorption<sup>1</sup>. Another way is through the consumption of raw eggs. Drinking raw eggs is not something that

most people do. However, some people do it to imitate Sylvester Stallone's movie character Rocky, who consumed them as part of his boxing training regimen. If you are not familiar with this movie the link below shows you how Rocky consumed his raw eggs.

---

### **Web Link**

Video: Rocky Raw Eggs (1:21)

---

The potential problem with consuming raw eggs routinely is that raw egg whites contain a protein called avidin which binds biotin and prevents its absorption. However, it would take more than two dozen egg whites consumed daily over many months to cause a deficiency, making this an unlikely occurrence<sup>2</sup>. Cooking denatures avidin and prevents it from binding biotin, meaning that cooked eggs are not a concern.

No toxicity of biotin has been reported.

### **References & Links**

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
2. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2008) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Thomson Wadsworth.

### **Videos**

Rocky Raw Eggs - <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NhkdlHSKo9s>

# One-Carbon Metabolism

## Micronutrients

Three B vitamins are involved in what is known as 1-carbon metabolism. This is the movement of 1 carbon units, generally methyl groups ( $\text{CH}_3$ ). It is similar to the movement of the amino group that occurs in transamination. As shown in the figure below, folate, vitamin B12, and vitamin B6 are the B vitamins involved in 1-carbon metabolism.

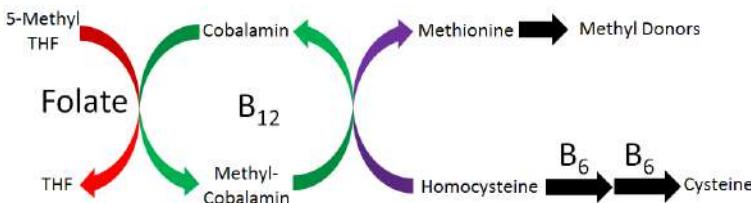


Figure 11.1 One-carbon metabolism depiction. 5-methyl tetrahydrofolate (THF) donates a methyl group to cobalamin forming methylcobalamin. Methylcobalamin donates a methyl group to homocysteine, forming methionine (amino acid). Alternatively, vitamin B6 can be utilized to convert homocysteine into cysteine.

Vitamin B6 has been covered already in the previous chapter, so this chapter is going to focus on folate and vitamin B12. We will examine this figure in pieces, so that hopefully by the time this chapter is completed, you will understand the role of all these vitamins in 1-carbon metabolism.

Sections:

- 11.1 Folate & Folic Acid
- 11.2 Vitamin B12
- 11.3 B Vitamins, Homocysteine, & Cardiovascular Disease

## 11.1 Folate & Folic Acid

Folate is a B vitamin that exists in either its reduced form (folate) or oxidized form (folic acid). When folate is used in this section, we are referring to the reduced form, not the vitamin itself. Another key distinction between the 2 terms is that folic acid refers to the synthetic form, while folate refers to the natural form. Folic acid is only found in certain foods because they have been fortified with it, not because they produce it. The structure of folic acid is shown below.

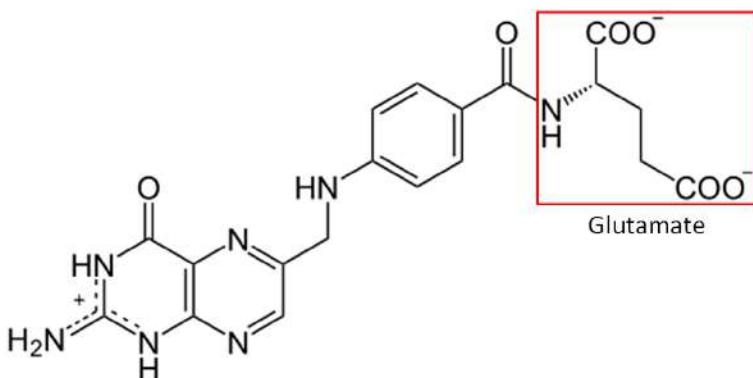


Figure 11.11 Structure of Folic Acid<sup>1</sup>

Another key difference between folate and folic acid is the number of glutamates in their tails. Notice that glutamate is boxed in the structure of folic acid above. Folic acid always exists as a monoglutamate, meaning it only contains 1 glutamate. On the other hand, about 90% of the folate found in foods are polyglutamates, meaning there is more than 1 glutamate in their tail. Folic acid is more stable than folate, which can be destroyed by heat, oxidation, and light<sup>2</sup>. Table 11.11 summarizes the key differences between folate and folic acid.

Table 11.11 Comparison of folate to folic acid

<b>Folate</b>	<b>Folic Acid</b>
Reduced Form	Oxidized Form
Natural	Synthetic
Polyglutamate	Monoglutamate
	More Stable

The bioavailability of folate was believed to be much lower than folic acid.<sup>3</sup> To account for these differences, the DRI committee created dietary folate equivalents (DFEs) to set the DRIs<sup>4</sup>. DFEs are defined as follows:

1 DFE = 1 ug food folate = 0.6 ug food folic acid = 0.5 ug folic acid on an empty stomach

$$\text{DFE} = \text{ug food folate} + (\text{ug folic acid} \times 1.7)$$

The 1.7 came from research suggesting that folic acid from food was 85% bioavailable, compared to 50% for folate ( $85\% / 50\% = 1.7$ )<sup>4</sup>. This was established in 1998 by the DRI committee, and it is likely that these conversions & the requirements will change based on the newer evidence suggesting folate's bioavailability from food is higher (80% of folic acid) than previously believed<sup>3</sup>. With this data, the new conversion factor for folic acid would be 1.25 ( $100\% / 80\%$ ). This conversion factor means that food folate levels are probably contributing more towards our dietary needs than currently being estimated by the DFE, but the DRI for folate/folic acid has not been updated.

Before folate (polyglutamates) can be taken up into the enterocyte, the extra glutamates must be cleaved prior to uptake into the enterocyte by the reduced folate transporter (RFT, aka reduced folate carrier)<sup>5-7</sup>. Folic acid, because it is a monoglutamate, requires no cleavage for uptake before it is taken up through the RFT. Once inside the enterocyte, the monoglutamate form is methylated and transported into circulation through an unresolved carrier<sup>5</sup>. This series of events is depicted in the figure below.

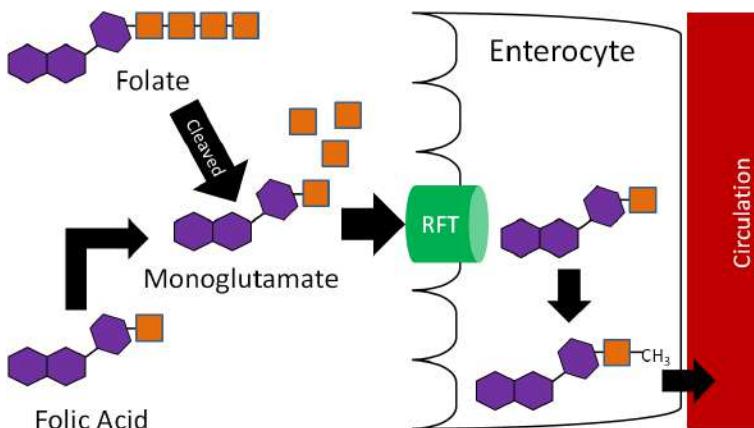


Figure 11.12 The uptake and absorption of folate and folic acid (orange boxes represent glutamate)

Thus, the methylated monoglutamate form is the circulating form. This is transported to the liver where it is converted back to the polyglutamate form for storage. Folate is excreted in both the urine and feces<sup>5</sup>.

#### Subsections:

##### 11.11 Folate Functions

##### 11.12 Folate Deficiency & Toxicity

#### References & Links

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Folat.svg>
2. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
3. Winkels R, Brouwer I, Siebelink E, Katan M, Verhoef P. (2007) Bioavailability of food folates is 80% of that of folic acid. Am J Clin Nutr 85(2): 465-473.
4. Anonymous. (1998) Dietary reference intakes for thiamin, riboflavin, niacin, vitamin B6, folate, vitamin B12, pantothenic acid, biotin, and choline. Washington D.C.: National Academies

Press.

5. Shils ME, Shike M, Ross AC, Caballero B, Cousins RJ, editors. (2006) Modern nutrition in health and disease. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
6. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
7. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.

## 11.11 Folate Functions

The major function of folate is that it participates in 1-carbon metabolism. As described earlier, this is the transfer of 1-carbon units from 1 compound to another. The cofactor form of folate is tetrahydrofolate (THF). As is shown in the figure below, in order for THF to be formed, a methyl group is transferred to cobalamin (vitamin B12) from 5-methyl THF (THF plus a methyl group), forming methyl-cobalamin. You can see this on the left side of the figure below.

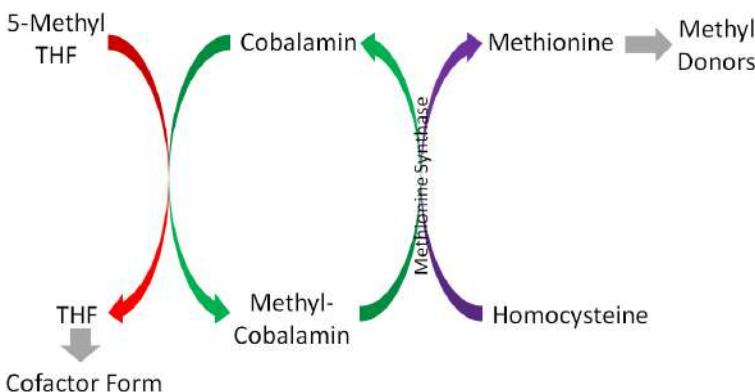


Figure 11.11 One-carbon metabolism

There are 2 major cofactor functions of THF1:

1. DNA Synthesis

THF is required for the synthesis of DNA bases (purines and pyrimidines)1. As shown in the link below, N10-formyl-THF (a form of THF) is needed in 2 reactions (3 and 9) in purine synthesis.

---

**Web Link**

[Purine Synthesis](#)

---

2. Amino Acid Metabolism

THF is a cofactor for enzymes that metabolize histidine, serine, glycine, and methionine1. The following link shows that THF is a cofactor for serine hydroxymethyltransferase, the enzyme that converts serine to glycine.

---

**Web Link**

[Serine to Glycine](#)

---

**References & Links**

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

**Links**

Purine Synthesis – <http://themomedicalbiochemistrypage.org/images/purinesynthesis.jpg>

Serine to Glycine – <http://themomedicalbiochemistrypage.org/images/glycine-synthesis.jpg>

## 11.12 Folate Deficiency & Toxicity

Folate deficiency is a vitamin deficiency that affects some Americans. The hallmark symptom of folate deficiency is megaloblastic (aka macrocytic) anemia. Megaloblastic anemia, as the name suggests, is characterized by large, nucleated (most red blood cells do not have a nucleus), immature red blood cells. This occurs because folate is needed for DNA synthesis; without it red blood cells are not able to divide properly<sup>1</sup>. As a result, fewer and poorer functioning red blood cells are produced that cannot carry oxygen as efficiently as normal red blood cells<sup>2</sup>.

A maternal folate deficiency can lead to neural tube defects in infants. The exact cause of neural tube defects is unknown, but folate supplementation has been shown to decrease the incidence of neural tube defects<sup>3</sup>. The most common of these neural tube defects is spina bifida (1 out of 2500 babies born in the United States), which is a failure of the neural tube to close and the spinal cord and its fluid protrude out the infant's back, as shown below<sup>4,5</sup>.

### Spina Bifida (Open Defect)

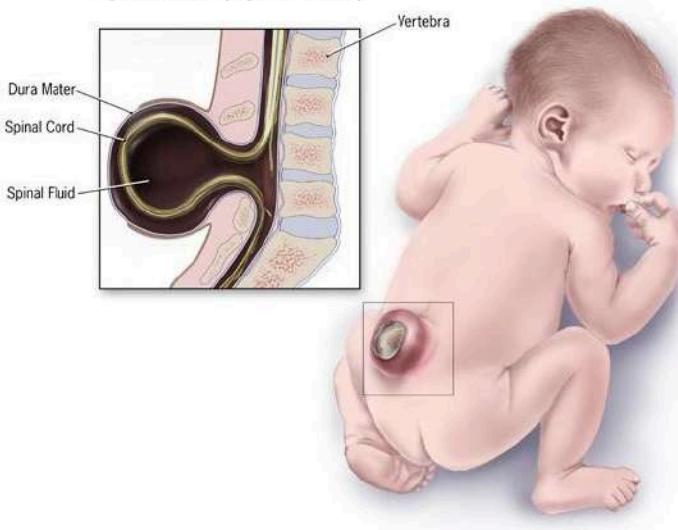


Figure 11.121 Spina bifida6

The neural tube closes 21-28 days after conception<sup>1</sup>, and with 50% of pregnancies estimated to be unplanned, many women aren't aware they are pregnant during this period<sup>1,2</sup>. Thus, it is recommended that women of childbearing age consume 400 ug of folic acid daily<sup>1</sup>. In addition, in 1998 the FDA mandated that all refined cereals and grains be fortified with 140 ug folic acid /100 grams of product<sup>7</sup>. As you can see below, spina bifida prevalence rates declined during the optional fortification years and declined further once fortification became mandatory in the United States.

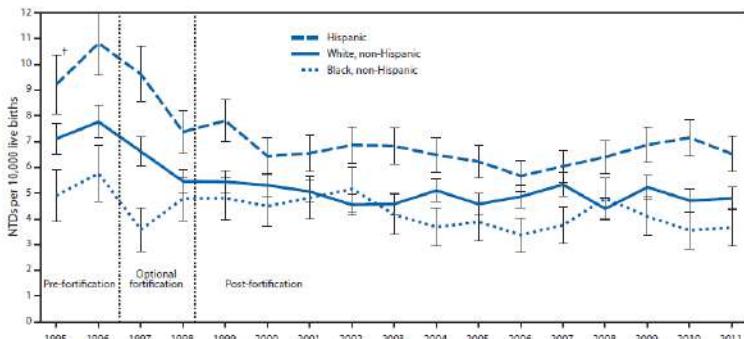


Figure 11.122 Neural tube defect prevalence 1995-2011\*

However, more recent research has found that folic acid supplementation begun before conception reduced the occurrence and severity of neural tube defects<sup>9</sup>.

The following link is an interesting account of the history that led up to the folic acid fortification. It is debatable whether folic acid fortification was fully responsible for the decrease in spina bifida rates shown above, but the rates are lower than they were pre-fortification. The second link is to the announcement that in 2016 the FDA approved the fortification of corn masa flour.

### Web Link

Folic Acid Fortification: Fact and Folly([inactive link as of 09/08/2020](#))  
FDA Approves Folic Acid Fortification of Corn Masa Flour

Folate/Folic acid is not toxic, but it can mask a vitamin B12 deficiency and prevent its diagnosis. This effect will be discussed further in the vitamin B12 deficiency section.

### References & Links

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

2. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2008) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Thomson Wadsworth.
3. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
4. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/birthdefects/SpinaBifida.htm>
5. <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/imagepages/19087.htm>
6. <https://www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/spinabifida/facts.html>
7. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
8. <http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm6401a2.htm>
9. Bergman JEH, Otten E, Verheij JBGM, de Walle HEK. (2016) Folic acid supplementation influences the distribution of neural tube defect subtypes: A registry-based study. Reprod Toxicol. 59:96-100.

### **Link**

Folic Acid Fortification: Fact and Folly – <http://www.fda.gov/AboutFDA/WhatWeDo/History/ProductRegulation/SelectionsFromFDLIUpdateseriesonFDHistory/ucm091883.htm>

FDA Approves Folic Acid Fortification of Corn Masa Flour – <https://www.fda.gov/NewsEvents/Newsroom/PressAnnouncements/ucm496104.htm>

## **II.2 Vitamin B<sub>12</sub>**

Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> is unique among vitamins in that it contains an element (cobalt) and is found almost exclusively in animal products. Neither plants nor animals can synthesize vitamin B<sub>12</sub>. Instead, vitamin B<sub>12</sub> in animal products is produced by microorganisms within the animal that the products came from. Animals consume the microorganisms in soil or bacteria in ruminant animals that produce

vitamin B121. Some plant products, such as fermented soy products (tempeh, miso) and the sea algae supplement, spirulina, are advertised as being good sources of B12. However, fermented soy products are not a reliable vitamin B12 source<sup>2</sup> and spirulina contains a pseudovitamin B12 compound that is not bioavailable<sup>3</sup>. For vegans, supplements, nutritional yeast, and fortified products like fortified soy milk can help them meet their vitamin B12 needs<sup>4</sup>.

Vitamin B12's scientific name is cobalamin, which makes sense when you consider it contains cobalt and many amine groups, as shown in the figure below.

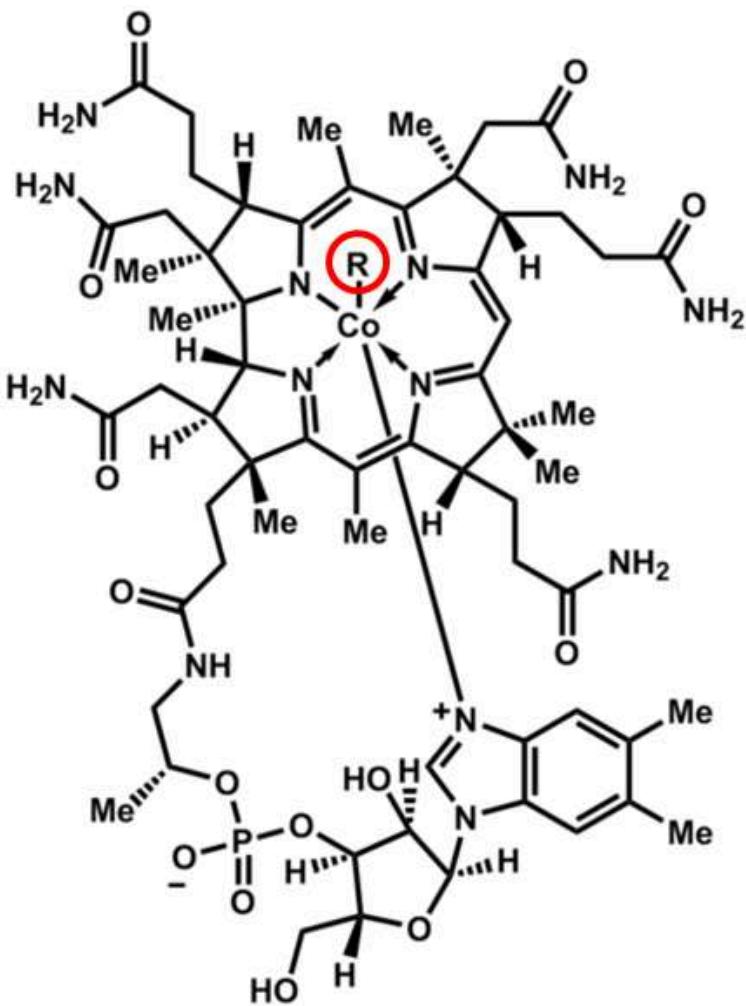


Figure 11.21 Structure of vitamin B12 (cobalamin)5

The other feature that is important in cobalamin is the circled R group. This is what differs between the different cobalamins, whose names and R groups are shown in the following table.

Table 11.21 Different cobalamin forms

R Group	Name
CN	Cyanocobalamin
OH	Hydroxocobalamin
H <sub>2</sub> O	Aquocobalamin
NO <sub>2</sub>	Nitritocobalamin
5'-deoxyadenosyl	Adenosylcobalamin*
CH <sub>3</sub>	Methylcobalamin*

#### \*Cofactor Forms

The 2 cofactor forms are adenosylcobalamin and methylcobalamin. We can convert most cobalamins into these 2 cofactor forms. Most foods contain adenosylcobalamin, hydroxocobalamin, or methylcobalamin<sup>6</sup>. The most common form found in supplements is cyanocobalamin, with some also using methylcobalamin<sup>7</sup>. Cyanocobalamin is a synthetic form of the vitamin B12.

The uptake, absorption, and transport of vitamin B12 is a complex process. The following descriptions explain, and figures illustrate, this process.

Vitamin B12 is normally bound to protein in food. Salivary glands in the mouth produce haptocorrin (formerly known as R protein), which travels with the food into the stomach. In the stomach, acid converts pepsinogen into pepsin, and the protein intrinsic factor is released from the parietal cells<sup>1,8</sup>.

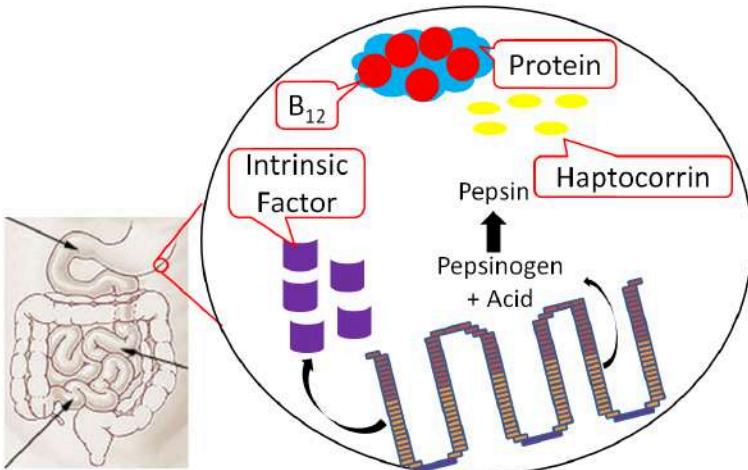


Figure 11.22 Vitamin B12 in the stomach part 18,9

As pepsin frees B<sub>12</sub> from protein, haptocorrin binds to the newly freed vitamin B<sub>12</sub> (haptocorrin + B<sub>12</sub>). Intrinsic factor escapes digestion and, along with haptocorrin + B<sub>12</sub>, exits the stomach and enters the duodenum<sup>1,8</sup>.

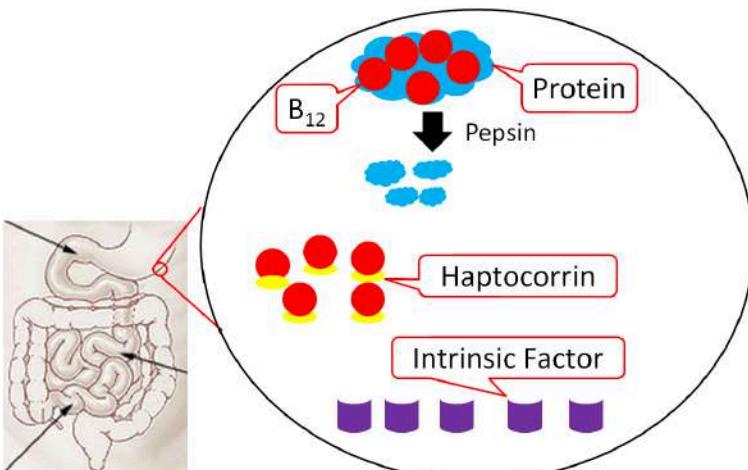


Figure 11.23 Vitamin B12 in the stomach part 28,9

In the duodenum, pancreatic proteases break down haptocorrin, and again vitamin B12 is freed. Intrinsic factor then binds vitamin B12 (intrinsic factor + B12); intrinsic factor + B12 continues into the ileum to prepare for absorption<sup>1,8</sup>.

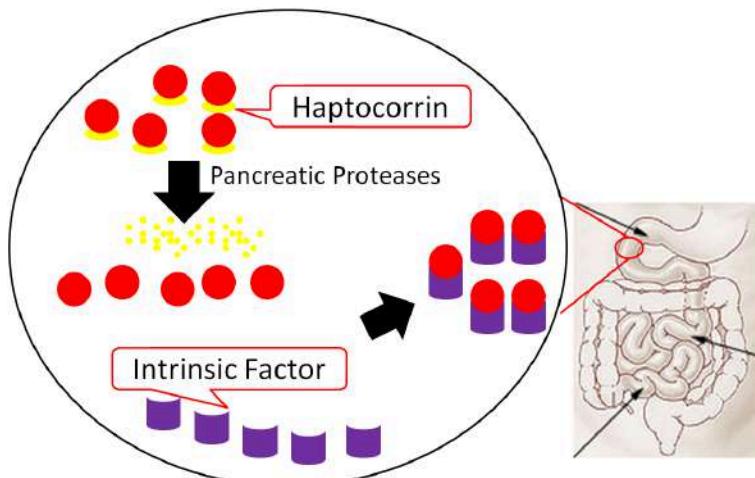


Figure 11.24 Vitamin B12 in the duodenum<sup>8,9</sup>

In the ileum, intrinsic factor + B12 is believed to be endocytosed by cubulin (aka intrinsic factor receptor), forming an endosome inside the enterocyte. Intrinsic factor is broken down in the enterocyte, freeing vitamin B12. The free vitamin B12 is then bound to transcobalamin II (TC II + B12); TC II + B12 moves into circulation<sup>8</sup>.

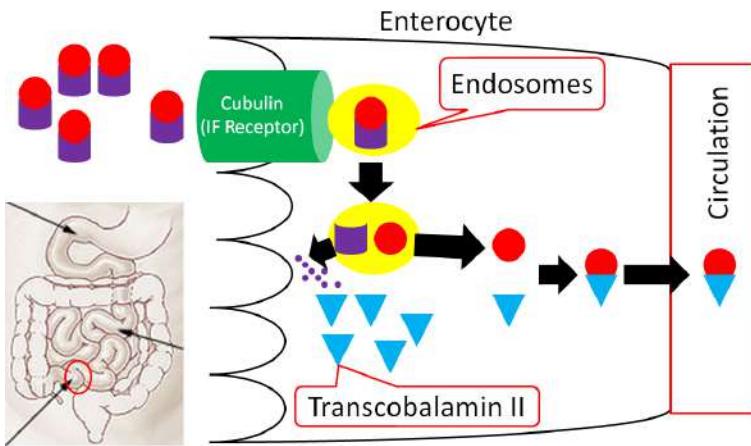


Figure 11.25 Vitamin B12 absorption<sup>8,9</sup>

The liver is the primary storage site for vitamin B12. Unlike most other water-soluble vitamins, the liver is able to maintain significant stores of vitamin B12. Uptake into the liver occurs through the binding of TC II + B12 to the TC II Receptor and the endocytosis of both the compound and the receptor<sup>8</sup>. Vitamin B12 is once again freed after degradation of TC II. Vitamin B12 is primarily stored in the liver as adenosylcobalamin<sup>6,8</sup>.

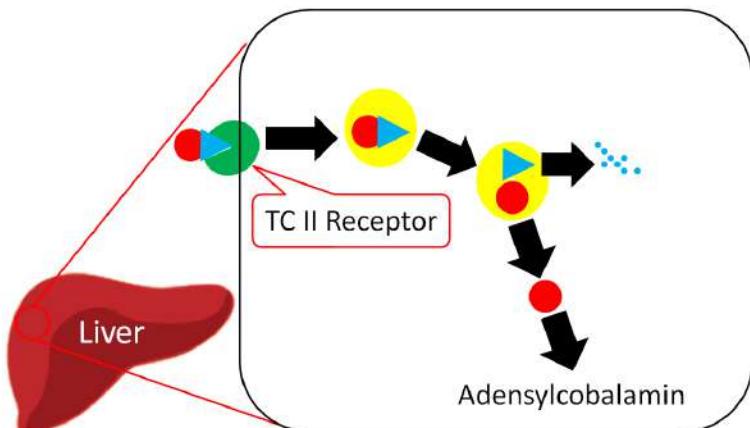


Figure 11.26 Hepatic uptake and storage of vitamin B12

The overall bioavailability of vitamin B12 is believed to be approximately 50%<sup>3</sup>, with the different cobalamin forms having similar bioavailabilities<sup>7</sup>. Sublingual supplements of vitamin B12 have been found to be equally efficacious as oral supplements<sup>7</sup>. Excretion occurs mostly through bile, with little loss in urine<sup>6</sup>.

Subsections:

11.21 Vitamin B12 Functions

11.22 Vitamin B12 Deficiency & Toxicity

### **References & Links**

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
2. Craig W, Mangels A. (2009) Position of the american dietetic association: Vegetarian diets. *J Am Diet Assoc* 109(7): 1266-1282.
3. Watanabe F. (2007) Vitamin B12 sources and bioavailability. *Exp Biol Med* 232(10): 1266-1274.
4. <http://www.vrg.org/nutrition/b12.php>
5. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Cobalamin.png>
6. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and

- human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
7. <https://ods.od.nih.gov/factsheets/VitaminB12-HealthProfessional/>
  8. Shils ME, Shike M, Ross AC, Caballero B, Cousins RJ, editors. (2006) Modern nutrition in health and disease. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
  9. [http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Illu\\_small\\_intestine\\_catal%C3%A00.png](http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Illu_small_intestine_catal%C3%A00.png)

## 11.21 Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> Functions

Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> is a cofactor for 2 enzymes:

1. Methionine synthase
2. Methylmalonyl mutase

### Methionine Synthase

Methionine synthase is an important enzyme in 1-carbon metabolism that uses methylcobalamin as its cofactor and converts homocysteine to methionine by adding a methyl group. Methionine then is converted to other compounds that serve as methyl donors, as shown below<sup>1</sup>.

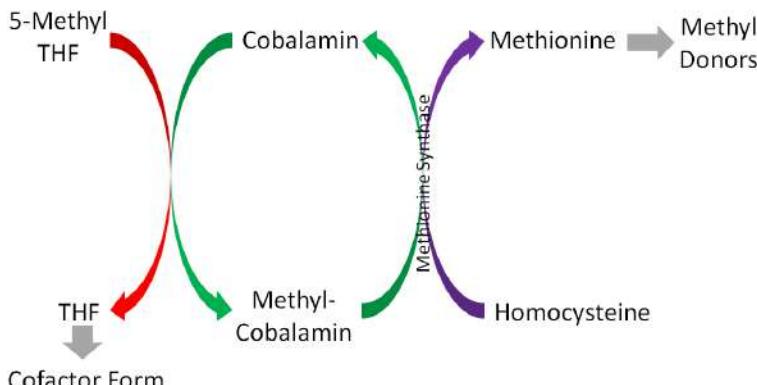


Figure 11.211 One-carbon metabolism

These methyl donors can donate methyl groups for methylating DNA, an epigenetic modification<sup>1</sup>.

### Methylmalonyl mutase

This enzyme uses adenosylcobalamin as its cofactor, and is important in the breakdown of odd chain fatty acids (5 carbons etc.). As you know, odd chain fatty acids are less common than even chain fatty acids, but this enzyme is required to properly handle these less common fatty acids<sup>1</sup>.

### Demyelination

In addition to its role as a cofactor for enzymes, vitamin B12 is also important for preventing degradation of the myelin sheath that surrounds neurons, as shown below.

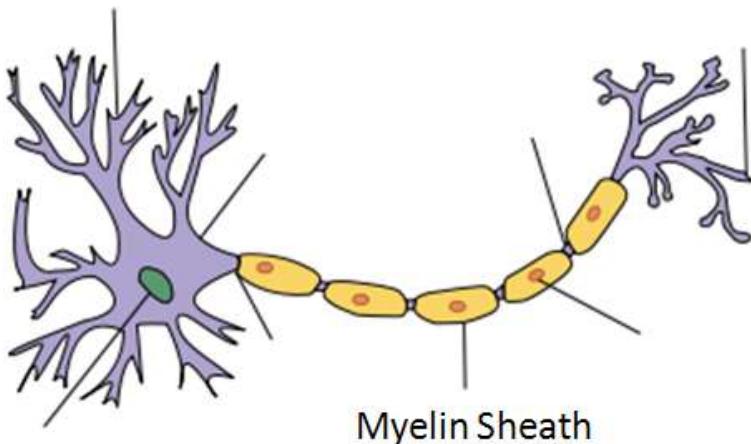


Figure 11.212 Vitamin B12 is needed to maintain the myelin sheath that surrounds neurons<sup>2</sup>

The mechanism through which vitamin B12 prevents demyelination is not known<sup>3</sup>.

### References & Links

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-

Hill.

2. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Myelin#/media/File:Neuron\\_Hand-tuned.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Myelin#/media/File:Neuron_Hand-tuned.svg)
3. <http://lpi.oregonstate.edu/infocenter/vitamins/vitaminB12/>

## 11.22 Vitamin B12 Deficiency & Toxicity

There are 2 primary symptoms of vitamin B12 deficiency:

Megaloblastic (Macrocytic) Anemia

Neurological Abnormalities

### **Megaloblastic (Macrocytic) Anemia**

This is the same type of anemia that occurs in folate deficiency that is characterized by fewer, enlarged, immature red blood cells. In vitamin B12 deficiency, this can occur because there is not enough cobalamin to convert 5-methyl THF to THF (illustrated in Figure 11.211). Thus, THF is not available for normal DNA synthesis and the red blood cells do not divide correctly.

### **Neurological Abnormalities**

Vitamin B12 deficiency also results in nerve degeneration and abnormalities that can often precede the development of anemia. These include a decline in mental function and burning, tingling, and numbness of legs. These symptoms can continue to worsen and deficiency can be fatal1.

The most common cause of vitamin B12 deficiency is pernicious anemia, a condition of inadequate intrinsic factor production that causes poor vitamin B12 absorption. This condition is common in people over the age of 50 because they have the condition atrophic gastritis2. Atrophic gastritis is a chronic inflammatory condition that leads to the loss of glands in the stomach, as shown in the figure in the following link.

---

#### **Web Link**

---

[Atrophic Gastritis](#)

---

The loss of glands leads to decreased intrinsic factor production. It is estimated that ~6% of those age 60 and over are vitamin B12

deficient, with 20% having marginal status<sup>3</sup>. In addition to the elderly, vegans are also at risk for vitamin B12 deficiency because they do not consume animal products. However, the deficiency may take years to develop in adults because of stores and recycling of vitamin B12. Deficiency has the potential to occur much quicker in infants or young children on vegan diets because they do not have stores that adults do<sup>4</sup>.

### **Folate/Folic Acid masking vitamin B12 deficiency**

As mentioned above, folate and vitamin B12 lead to the same megaloblastic (macrocytic) anemia. If high levels of folate or folic acid (most of the concern is with folic acid since it is fortified in foods and commonly taken in supplements) is given during vitamin B12 deficiency, it can correct this anemia. This is referred to as masking because it does not rectify the deficiency, but it “cures” this symptom. This is problematic because it does not correct the more serious neurological problems that can result from vitamin B12 deficiency. There are some people who are concerned about the fortification of cereals and grains with folic acid because people who are B12 deficient might not develop macrocytic anemia, which makes a vitamin B12 deficiency harder to diagnose<sup>2</sup>.

No toxicity of vitamin B12 has been reported.

### **References & Links**

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
2. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2008) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Thomson Wadsworth.
3. Allen L. (2009) How common is vitamin B-12 deficiency? Am J Clin Nutr 89(2): 693S-696S.
4. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

### **Links**

Atrophic Gastritis – <http://book-med.info/gastritis/12812>

## 11.3 B Vitamins, Homocysteine & Cardiovascular Disease

Homocysteine is a sulfur containing, non-proteinogenic (not used for making proteins) amino acid whose structure is shown in the figure below.

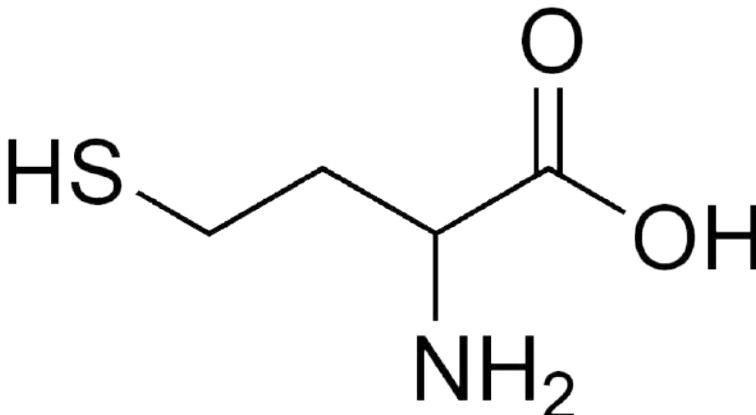


Figure 11.31 Structure of homocysteine1

Elevated circulating homocysteine levels have been found in people with cardiovascular disease. Folate, vitamin B6, and vitamin B12 contribute to the conversion of homocysteine to methionine by providing methyl groups, thereby decreasing homocysteine levels, as illustrated in the figure below. Thus, based on these facts, it was hypothesized that intake of these B vitamins may decrease the risk of cardiovascular disease.

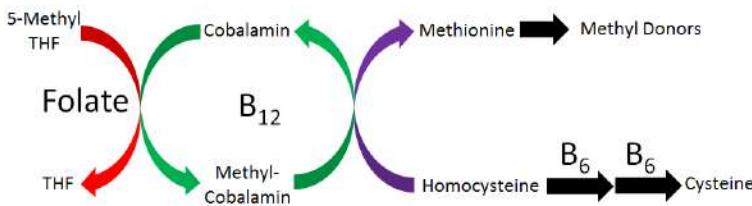


Figure 11.32 One-carbon metabolism

Research has found that intake of these B vitamins does decrease circulating homocysteine levels. However, most studies have not found that it results in improved cardiovascular disease outcomes<sup>2-4</sup>. It is debated why B vitamin intake has not resulted in improved outcomes. Some think it is because the studies have not focused on individuals with elevated homocysteine levels<sup>2</sup>, while others believe that homocysteine is a biomarker or indicator of cardiovascular disease, not a causative or contributing factor to cardiovascular disease development<sup>3</sup>.

### References & Links

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Homocysteine\\_racemic.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Homocysteine_racemic.png)
2. Abraham J, Cho L. (2010) The homocysteine hypothesis: Still relevant to the prevention and treatment of cardiovascular disease? Cleve Clin J Med 77(12): 911-918.
3. Cacciapuoti F. (2011) Hyper-homocystinemia: A novel risk factor or a powerful marker for cardiovascular diseases? pathogenetic and therapeutical uncertainties. J Thromb Thrombolysis 32(1): 82-88.
4. Martai-Carvajal AJ, Sola J, Lathyris D. (2015) Homocysteine-lowering interventions for preventing cardiovascular events. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 1:CD006612.

# Blood, Bones & Teeth Micronutrients

This chapter is a collection of vitamins and minerals that are involved in the structure or function of blood, bones and teeth. The individual sections are:

- 12.1 Vitamin D
- 12.2 Calcium
- 12.3 Phosphorus
- 12.4 Fluoride
- 12.5 Vitamin K
- 12.6 Vitamin A
- 12.7 Iron
- 12.8 Zinc
- 12.9 Copper

## 12.1 Vitamin D

Vitamin D is unique among the vitamins in that it is part vitamin, part hormone. It is considered part hormone for two reasons: (1) we have the ability to synthesize it, and (2) it has hormone-like functions. The amount synthesized, however, is often not enough to meet our needs. Thus, we need to consume this vitamin under certain circumstances, meaning that vitamin D is a conditionally essential micronutrient.

There are two major dietary forms of vitamin D: the form produced mainly by plants and yeast is vitamin D<sub>2</sub> (ergocalciferol), and the form mainly made by animals is vitamin D<sub>3</sub> (cholecalciferol). The mainly terms in the previous sentence are because lichens, a symbiotic relationship between 2 bacteria and a fungus, are able

to synthesize vitamin D3, and are being utilized some now commercially as described in the following article.

---

### Web Link

Veggie D3 maker explores novel production process to secure future funding supplies

---

The structures of these two forms are shown below. Notice that the only difference is the presence of a double bond in D2 that is not in D3.

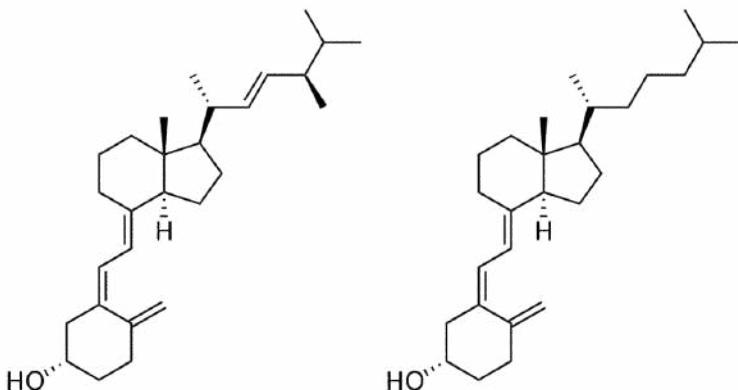


Figure 12.11 Structure of vitamin D<sub>2</sub> (ergocalciferol) and vitamin D<sub>3</sub> (cholecalciferol)1,2

We synthesize vitamin D<sub>3</sub> from cholesterol, as shown below. In the skin, cholesterol is converted to 7-dehydrocholesterol. In the presence of UV-B light, 7-dehydrocholesterol is converted to vitamin D<sub>3</sub>. Synthesized vitamin D will combine with vitamin D-binding protein (DBP) to be transported to the liver. Dietary vitamin D<sub>2</sub> and D<sub>3</sub> is transported to the liver via chylomicrons and then taken up in chylomicron remnants. Once in the liver, the enzyme 25-hydroxylase (25-OHase) adds a hydroxyl (-OH) group at the 25th carbon, forming 25-hydroxy vitamin D (25(OH)D, calcidiol). This is

the circulating form of vitamin D, thus 25(OH)D blood levels are measured to assess a person's vitamin D status. The active form of vitamin D is formed with the addition of another hydroxyl group by the enzyme 1alpha-hydroxylase (1alpha-OHase) in the kidney, forming 1,25 hydroxy vitamin D ( $1,25(\text{OH})_2\text{D}$ ). The synthesis and activation of vitamin D is shown in the figures below.

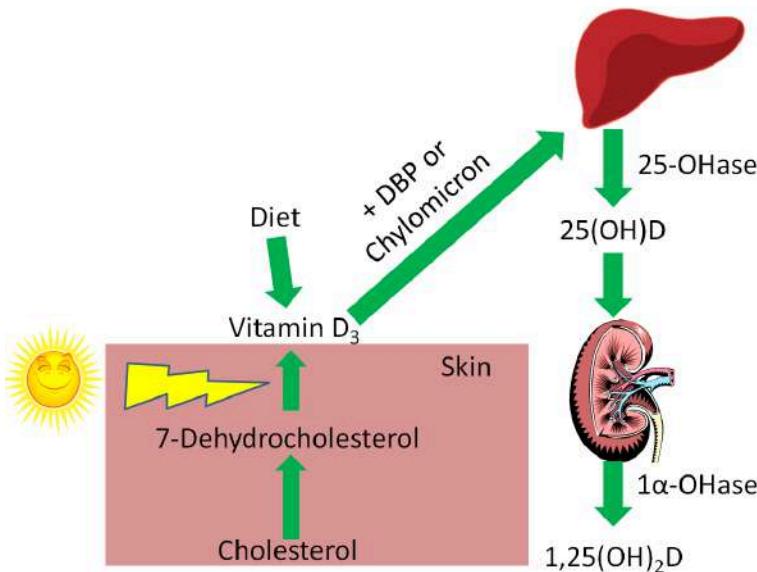


Figure 12.12 Vitamin D synthesis and activation4

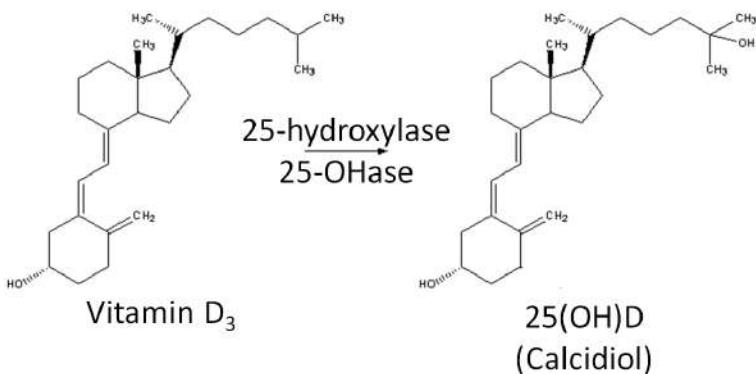


Figure 12.13 Synthesis of 25(OH)D (calcidiol) from vitamin D<sub>3</sub> by 25-hydroxylase5,6

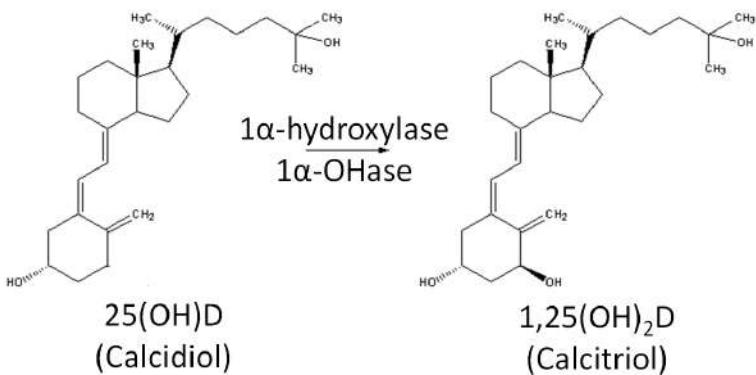


Figure 12.14 Synthesis of 1,25(OH)<sub>2</sub>D (calcitriol) from 25(OH)D by 1alpha-hydroxylase6

However, there are a number of other tissues that have been found to have 1alpha-hydroxylase activity. Therefore, these tissues can activate circulating 25(OH)D to 1,25(OH)<sub>2</sub>D for their own use.

Vitamin D<sub>2</sub> and D<sub>3</sub> were once thought to be equivalent forms of vitamin D, but research has found that D<sub>3</sub> supplementation increases 25(OH)D levels more than D<sub>2</sub> supplementation<sup>7,8</sup>.

Subsections:

- 12.11 Environmental Factors That Impact Vitamin D3 Synthesis
- 12.12 Dietary or Supplemental Vitamin D
- 12.13 Response to Low Blood Calcium
- 12.14 Response to High Blood Calcium
- 12.15 Vitamin D Receptor
- 12.16 Vitamin D Deficiency, Toxicity, & Insufficiency

**References & Links**

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Ergocalciferol.svg>
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Cholecalciferol.svg>
3. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
4. <http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Liver.svg>
5. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vitamin\\_D#/media/File:Reaction\\_-\\_cholecalciferol\\_to\\_calcidiol.png](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vitamin_D#/media/File:Reaction_-_cholecalciferol_to_calcidiol.png)
6. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vitamin\\_D#/media/File:Reaction\\_-\\_calcidiol\\_to\\_calcitriol.png](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vitamin_D#/media/File:Reaction_-_calcidiol_to_calcitriol.png)
7. Lehmann U, Hirch F, Stangl GI, Hinz K, Westphal S, Dierkes J. (2013) Bioavailability of vitamin D2 and D3 in Healthy Volunteers, a randomized placebo-controlled trial. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab.* 98(11): 4339-4345.
8. Tripkovic L, Wilson LR, Hart K, Johnsen S, de Lusignan S, Smith CP, Bucca G, Penson S, Chope G, Elliott R, Hypponen E, Berry JL Lanham-New SA. (2017) Daily supplementation with 15 µg vitamin D2 compared with vitamin D3 to increase wintertime 25-hydroxyvitamin D status in healthy South Asian and white European women: a 12-wk randomized, placebo-controlled food-fortification trial. *Am J Clin Nutr* 106 (2): 481-490.

**Link**

Veggie D3 maker explores novel production process to secure future funding supplies – <https://www.nutraingredients-usa.com/Article/2012/03/13/Veggie-vitamin-D3-maker-explores-novel-production-process-to-secure-future->

[supplies?utm\\_source=newletter\\_daily&utm\\_medium=email&utm\\_campaign=Newsletter%2BDaily&c=yazB%2FDHFv2VlvQJ3xinVgQ%3D%3D](https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC9500333/)

## 12.11 Environmental Factors That Impact Vitamin D<sub>3</sub> Synthesis

There are a number of environmental factors that affect vitamin D<sub>3</sub> synthesis:

Latitude

Season

Time of Day

Skin Color

Age

Clothing

Sunscreen

### **Latitude**

The latitude a person is at affects that person's ability to synthesize vitamin D<sub>3</sub>. There is an inverse relationship between distance from the equator and UV light exposure. Thus, with increased distance from the equator (increased latitude), there is decreased UV light exposure and vitamin D<sub>3</sub> synthesis. The link below shows the latitude and longitude lines of the United States.

---

### **Web Link**

[United States Latitude and Longitude Lines](https://www.esri.com/arcgis/rest/services/ESRI/MapServer/13/operations/latlong)

---

### **Seasons**

Seasons also make a difference in vitamin D<sub>3</sub> synthesis. In Boston (42° N), vitamin D synthesis only occurs from March–October, because during late fall and winter not enough UV-B reaches the earth's surface to synthesize vitamin D<sub>3</sub>. However, in Los Angeles

(34° N), vitamin D<sub>3</sub> synthesis occurs year round<sup>2</sup>. The difference is the angle of the sun relative to latitude and how many UV-B photons are absorbed before they reach the earth's surface<sup>1</sup>.



Figure 12.111 Seasons are also an important factor affecting vitamin D<sub>3</sub> synthesis

### Time

Time of day is also an important factor in affecting vitamin D<sub>3</sub> synthesis. Vitamin D<sub>3</sub> synthesis increases in the morning before peaking at noon, then declines the rest of the day<sup>1</sup>.



Figure 12.112 Time of day is an important factor for vitamin D3 synthesis

### Skin pigmentation

Another factor that plays an important role in vitamin D3 synthesis is skin pigmentation. Skin color is the result of increased production of the pigment melanin, as shown in the link below.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Melanin](#)

---

Very dark skin color can provide a sun protection factor (SPF) 8-30 for those individuals who never burn<sup>2</sup>. These individuals will require approximately 5- to 10-times greater sunlight exposure than a light-skinned, white person to synthesize the same amount of vitamin D3<sup>2,3</sup>.

#### **Age**

Age also plays a factor in vitamin D3 synthesis. Aging results in decreased 7-dehydrocholesterol concentrations in the skin, resulting in an approximately 75% reduction in the vitamin D3 synthesis capability by age 70<sup>3</sup>.



Figure 12.114 Aging decreases vitamin D synthesis

### Clothing

Clothing is another factor that influences vitamin D<sub>3</sub> synthesis. More clothing means that less sun reaches your skin, and thus less vitamin D<sub>3</sub> synthesis.



Figure 12.115 Which of these 2 do you think is synthesizing less vitamin D?

### Sunscreen, “Sensible Sun Exposure”, and Tanning

There is quite a spirited debate on sunscreen, sun exposure, skin cancer, and vitamin D synthesis. On one side are the vitamin D researchers, on the other side are dermatologists. Vitamin D research found that SPF 8 sunscreen almost totally blocked vitamin D3 synthesis<sup>4</sup>. However, the SPF value equals  $1/(# \text{ photons that reaches your skin})$  meaning that SPF 30 means  $1/30$  UV photons reach your skin. Thus, vitamin D3 synthesis shouldn't be totally blocked. In addition, studies indicate that consumers apply 1/2 or less of the amount required to get the listed SPF protection<sup>4</sup>. Researchers recommend sun exposure on the face, arms, and hands for 10-15 minutes 2-3 times per week between 10 AM-3 PM<sup>2,5</sup>. However, dermatologists do not like "sensible sun exposure" because this is also the peak time for harmful sun exposure. Dermatologists say that "sensible sun exposure" appeals to those who are looking for a reason to support tanning and are at highest risk (primarily young, fair-skinned females) of sun damage. They argue that vitamin D can be provided through supplementation<sup>3</sup>.

What about tanning beds? Not all tanning beds provide UV-B rays that are needed for vitamin D3 synthesis. In fact, some advertise that they only use UV-A rays that are safer, even though this is not the case<sup>6</sup>. Virtually every health organization advises against using tanning beds, because the risks are far greater than the potential benefits<sup>6,7</sup>.

## References & Links

1. Shils ME, Shike M, Ross AC, Caballero B, Cousins RJ, editors. (2006) Modern nutrition in health and disease. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
2. Holick M. (2008) Vitamin D: A D-lightful health perspective. Nutr Rev 66(10 Suppl 2): S182.
3. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
4. Gilchrest B. (2008) Sun exposure and vitamin D sufficiency. Am J Clin Nutr 88(2): 570S.
5. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009)

- Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
6. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2011) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
  7. McGuire M, Beerman KA. (2011) Nutritional sciences: From fundamentals to food. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.

### Links

United States Latitude and Longitude Lines –  
<http://modernsurvivalblog.com/survival-skills/basic-map-reading-latitude-longitude/>

Melanin – <http://www.nytimes.com/imagepages/2007/08/01/health/adam/9620Melanin.html>

## 12.12 Dietary or Supplemental Vitamin D

Because of the possible double-edged sword of sun exposure for synthesizing vitamin D<sub>3</sub>, consuming vitamin D from the diet or supplements is the alternative.

However, there are a limited number of food naturally rich in vitamin D. Good sources of vitamin D are fatty fish (salmon, tuna, etc.) and their oils (such as cod liver oil). The amount in fatty fish varies greatly with wild-caught salmon being the highest. One study showed that farmed salmon contained almost 75% less vitamin D than wild-caught salmon<sup>1</sup>. It is not known whether this disparity exists between other types of farmed and wild-caught fish varieties.

Table 12.121 Vitamin D content of fish<sup>1</sup>

<b>Fish</b>	<b>Vitamin D (IU/oz)</b>
Blue Fish	280 ± 68
Cod	104 ± 24
Grey Sole	56 ± 36
Farmed Salmon	240 ± 108
Wild Salmon	988 ± 524
Farmed Trout	388 ± 212
Tuna	404 ± 440

Like vitamin C, E, and A, international units (IU) are also used for vitamin D.

For vitamin D the conversions are:

1 ug of D3 = 40 IU

1 ug of 25-OH-D = 200 IU<sup>2</sup>

Thus, since not many foods contain vitamin D, many brands of milk have been fortified with vitamin D2 or D3 (100 IU/8 oz) since the 1930s<sup>3</sup>. However, the actual measured amount of vitamin D in many brands of milk is far less than stated on their labels<sup>4,5</sup>. Part of this problem stems from a lack of a standardized method for measuring vitamin D in the past. Without standardized analysis, there inevitably was a wide range of variation from lab to lab in the reported amount of vitamin D.

Another issue with relying on dairy products to provide vitamin D is the common problem of lactose intolerance. Lactose intolerant individuals don't have lactase, the enzyme needed to break down lactose. Common symptoms of this condition include:

Abdominal Pain

Abdominal Bloating

Gas

Diarrhea

Nausea<sup>6</sup>

Lactose intolerance is a fairly common problem worldwide, as shown in the map below.

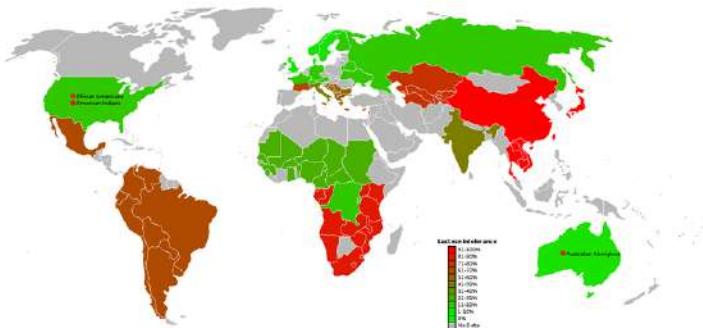


Figure 12.121 Lactose intolerance worldwide (red high, green low)7

The following table shows the percent of people who are lactose intolerant by race:

Table 12.122 Lactose intolerance rates8

Race or ethnicity	% Lactose Intolerant
Southeast Asian	98%
Native Americans	62-100%9
Asian Americans	90%
Alaskan Eskimo	80%
African-American Adults	79%
Mexicans (rural communities)	74%
North American Jews	69%
Greek Cypriots	66%
Cretans	56%
Mexican American Males	55%
Indian Adults	50%
African-American Children	45%
Indian Children	20%
Descendants of N. Europeans	5%

Thus, you can see that many people are lactose intolerant. Coincidentally, many of these people have darker pigmented skin, meaning that they have an increased risk of vitamin D deficiency/insufficiency because they require greater sun exposure to synthesize adequate amounts of vitamin D3.

Other foods that are sometimes fortified are breakfast cereals and orange juice. Despite the fact that orange juice doesn't contain fat, and vitamin D is fat-soluble, vitamin D is quite bioavailable in orange juice<sup>10</sup>.

Vitamin D in supplements is found as vitamin D2 or D3. However, based on the recent evidence suggesting that D2 isn't as beneficial as D3, many are being reformulated to contain D3<sup>11</sup>.

### **References & Links**

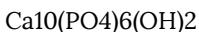
1. Lu Z, Chen TC, Zhang A, Persons KS, Kohn N, et al. (2007) An evaluation of the vitamin D3 content in fish: Is the vitamin D content adequate to satisfy the dietary requirement for vitamin D? *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol* 103(3-5): 642.
2. Anonymous. (1997) Dietary reference intakes for calcium, phosphorus, magnesium, vitamin D, and fluoride. Washington, D.C.: National Academies Press.
3. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
4. Holick MF, Shao Q, Liu WW, Chen TC. (1992) The vitamin D content of fortified milk and infant formula. *New England Journal of Medicine*, the 326(18): 1178.
5. Faulkner H, Hussein A, Foran M, Szijarto L. (2000) A survey of vitamin A and D contents of fortified fluid milk in ontario. *J Dairy Sci* 83(6): 1210.
6. <http://digestive.niddk.nih.gov/ddiseases/pubs/lactoseintolerance/>
7. [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:World\\_map\\_of\\_lactose\\_intolerance.png](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:World_map_of_lactose_intolerance.png)
8. [http://nutrigenomics.ucdavis.edu/?page=Information/Concepts\\_in\\_Nutrigenomics/Lactose\\_Intolerance](http://nutrigenomics.ucdavis.edu/?page=Information/Concepts_in_Nutrigenomics/Lactose_Intolerance)

9. McBean LD, Miller GD. (1998) Allaying fears and fallacies about lactose intolerance. *J Am Diet Assoc* 98(6): 671.
10. Tangpricha V, Koutkia P, Rieke S, Chen T, Perez A, et al. (2003) Fortification of orange juice with vitamin D: A novel approach for enhancing vitamin D nutritional health. *Am J Clin Nutr* 77(6): 1478.
11. <https://ods.od.nih.gov/factsheets/VitaminD-HealthProfessional/>

## 12.13 Response to Low Blood Calcium

One of the major functions of vitamin D is to assist in maintaining blood calcium concentrations. The other major regulators of blood calcium levels are 2 hormones: parathyroid hormone (PTH) and calcitonin, which are released from the parathyroid glands and thyroid glands, respectively. Bone serves as the calcium depot, or reservoir, if there is a sufficient concentration in the body. In bone, calcium is found in hydroxyapatite crystals on a collagen matrix.

The chemical formula of hydroxyapatite is:



Calcium and phosphorus are either jointly deposited (deposition) or jointly liberated (resorption) from bone hydroxyapatite to maintain/achieve blood calcium concentrations. Osteoblasts are bone cells that are responsible for bone formation or depositing hydroxyapatite. Osteoclasts are the bone cells that are responsible for breaking down or resorption of bone. An easy way to remember the function of these cells is:

Osteoblasts “build” bone

Osteoclasts “chew” bone

Bone resorption is the process of liberating calcium and phosphorus from hydroxyapatite.

Bone deposition is the process of depositing calcium and phosphorus in bone as hydroxyapatite.

## Response to Low Blood Calcium

The parathyroid senses low blood calcium concentrations and releases PTH. These steps are designed to maintain consistent blood calcium levels, but also affects phosphate (phosphorus) levels. PTH has 3 effects:

1. Increases bone resorption
2. Decreases calcium and increases phosphorus urinary excretion
3. Increases  $1,25(\text{OH})_2\text{D}$  activation in the kidney<sup>1,2</sup>

The first effect of PTH is increased bone resorption. Hydroxyapatite must be broken down to release both calcium and phosphate. This effect is illustrated below.

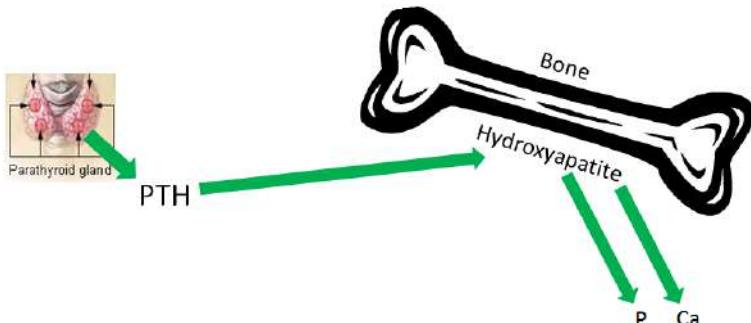


Figure 12.131 PTH effect 1: increased bone resorption<sup>3</sup>

The second effect of PTH is decreased calcium excretion in urine. This is a result of increased calcium reabsorption by the kidney before it is excreted in urine. Kidney phosphate reabsorption is decreased, meaning the net effect is less calcium, but more phosphate in urinary excretion, as shown in the figure below.

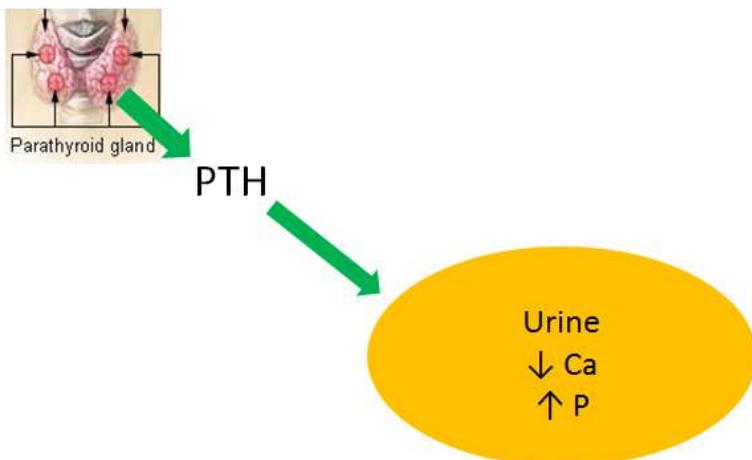


Figure 12.132 PTH effect 2: decreased calcium, increased phosphorus excretion3

The 3rd effect of PTH is that it increases  $1,25(\text{OH})_2\text{D}$  activation in the kidney, by increasing 1alpha-hydroxylase levels. The  $1,25(\text{OH})_2\text{D}$  then increases calcium and phosphorus absorption in the small intestine to help raise blood calcium levels, as shown below. This mechanism will be discussed in more detail in the vitamin D receptor subsection.

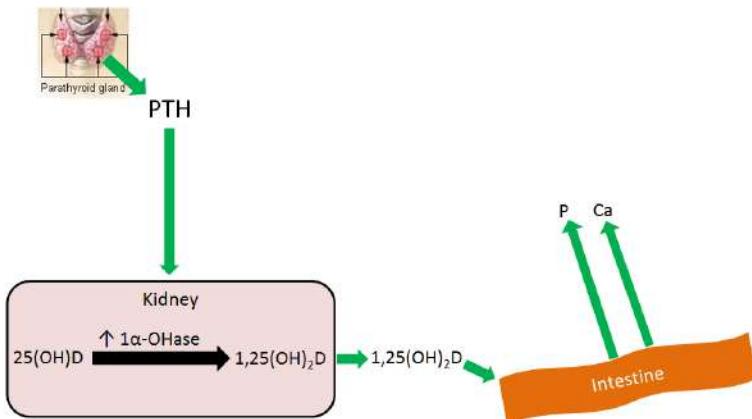


Figure 12.133 PTH effect 3: increased  $1,25(\text{OH})_2\text{D}$  activation3

Overall PTH causes more calcium and phosphate to be leached from bone, and absorbed from the intestine, into the blood. Coupled with decreased calcium and increased phosphate urinary excretion, means that blood calcium levels rise without a marked rise in phosphate levels, as depicted in the figure below.

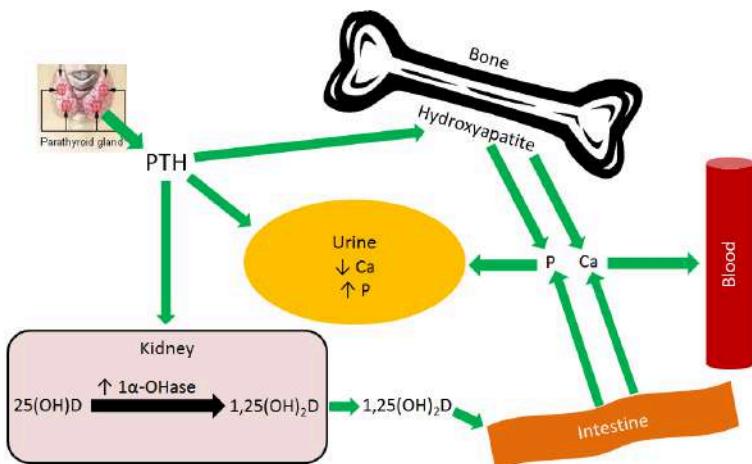


Figure 12.134  $1,25(\text{OH})_2\text{D}$  increased calcium and phosphorus absorption3

## References & Links

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2011) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Illu\\_thyroid\\_parathyroid.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Illu_thyroid_parathyroid.jpg)

## 12.15 Vitamin D Receptor

Vitamin D, along with vitamin A, are unique among the vitamins because they have nuclear receptors. Many steroid hormones have nuclear receptors. The following figure illustrates the action of a nuclear hormone receptor.

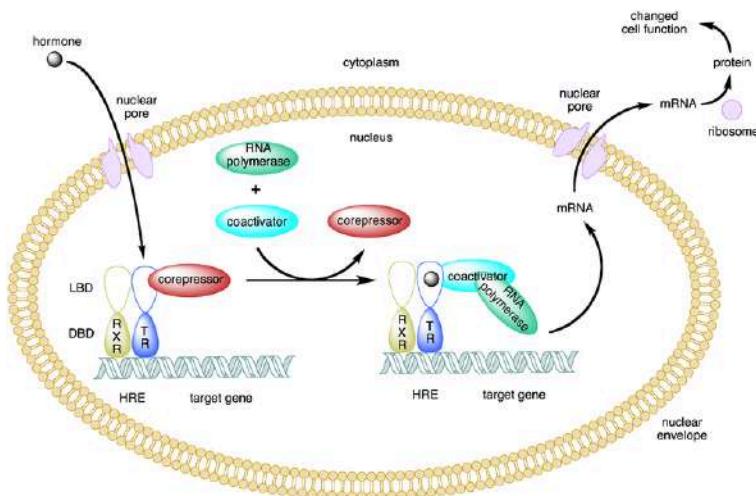


Figure 12.151 Nuclear hormone receptors action1

In the figure above of the hormone (in this case thyroid hormone), the receptor's ligand (something that binds to the receptor), enters the nucleus and binds to the thyroid hormone receptor (TR). The TR has paired (formed a dimer) with the retinoid X receptor (RXR) on the hormone response element (HRE) in the promoter of target genes. The HRE for thyroid hormone is the thyroid hormone response element. Target genes are those whose transcription is altered by the hormone binding to its receptor on the response element. The mRNA produced then leaves the nucleus where it is translated into protein.

Vitamin A and D have nuclear receptors that act in the same fashion as nuclear hormone receptors. The video below very clearly explains the action of a nuclear hormone receptor. A thorough explanation of the nuclear Vitamin D receptor follows.

---

### Web Link

---

Video: Steroid Hormone Receptors (0:42)

---

1,25(OH)2D is considered to be the active form of vitamin D because it is the form that binds to the vitamin D receptor (VDR). Like the thyroid hormone example above, there is a vitamin D response element (VDRE) in the promoter of specific vitamin D target genes. In the figure below, 25(OH)D, the major circulating form of vitamin D, is usually transported through the blood to the kidney by vitamin D binding protein (DBP). Again, the kidney converts 25(OH)D to 1,25(OH)2D by use of the enzyme 1alpha-hydroxylase. 1,25(OH)2D (bound to DBP) moves from the kidney , or the tissue itself, into the nucleus. It then binds to the vitamin D receptor (VDR), that is dimerized to the RXR on the vitamin D response element of the target gene. Consequently, this then increases transcription of mRNA. The mRNA then moves into the cytoplasm to synthesize specific proteins. This process is shown in the figure below.

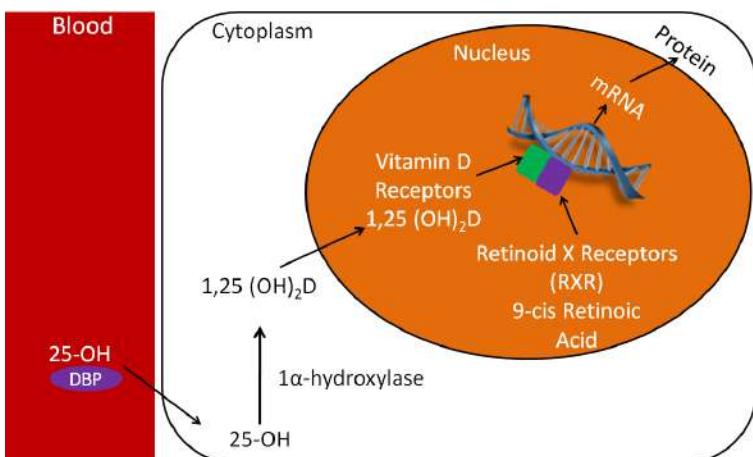


Figure 12.152 Vitamin D receptor and a generic target gene

It's through this action that  $1,25(\text{OH})_2\text{D}$  is able to increase calcium absorption. In this case, the target gene is the calcium-binding protein calbindin. Thus, increased  $1,25(\text{OH})_2\text{D}$  leads to increased calbindin mRNA. This then leads to increased calbindin protein levels. Calbindin will be discussed in more detail in the calcium section.

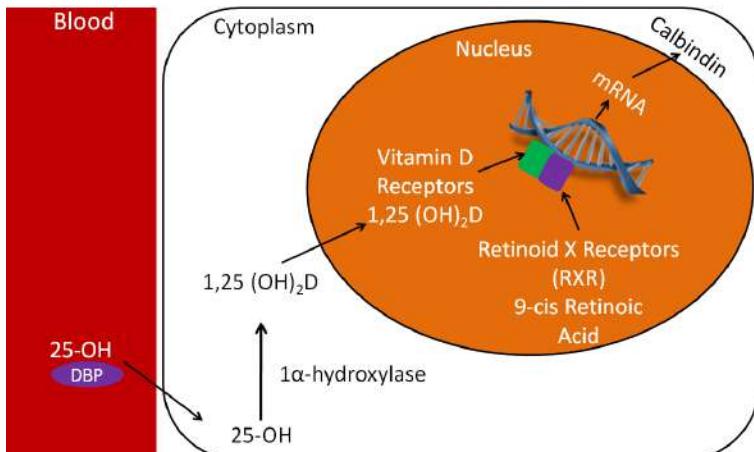


Figure 12.153 Vitamin D receptor and calbindin

## References & Links

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File>Type\\_ii\\_nuclear\\_receptor\\_action.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File>Type_ii_nuclear_receptor_action.png)

## Video

Steroid Hormone Receptor – [http://www.youtube.com/  
watch?v=Dxyq8GAWbpo](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Dxyq8GAWbpo)

## 12.16 Vitamin D Deficiency, Toxicity & Insufficiency

Rickets is a vitamin D deficiency in infants and children. A lack of vitamin D leads to decreased bone mineralization, causing the bones to become weak. The bones then bow under pressure, leading to the characteristic bowed legs, as seen below.

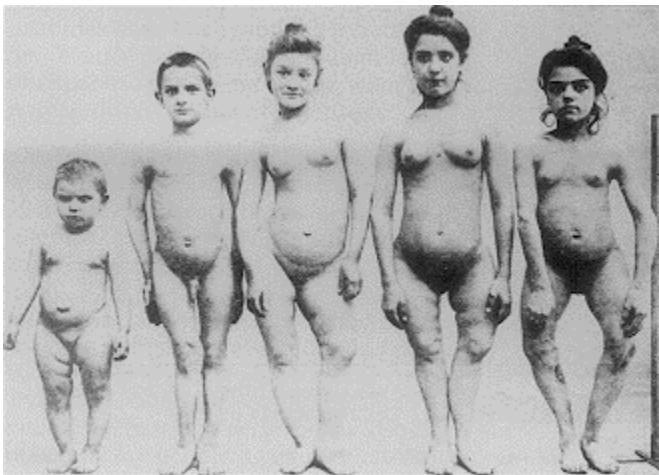


Figure 12.161 Children suffering from rickets1



Figure 12.162 X-ray from child suffering from rickets2

Another characteristic symptom of rickets is rachitic rosary, or beaded ribs. The beading occurs at the areas where cartilage meets bone on the rib cage, as shown in the link below3.

---

**Web Link**

Rachitic Rosary

---

Osteomalacia is a vitamin D deficiency in adults and results in poor

bone mineralization. The bone becomes soft, resulting in bone pain and an increased risk of fractures<sup>3</sup>.

While rickets and osteomalacia are fairly rare in the United States, it is believed that vitamin D insufficiency might be much more widespread. Insufficiency means that the level of intake, or body status, is suboptimal (neither deficient nor optimal). The figure below illustrates this concept.

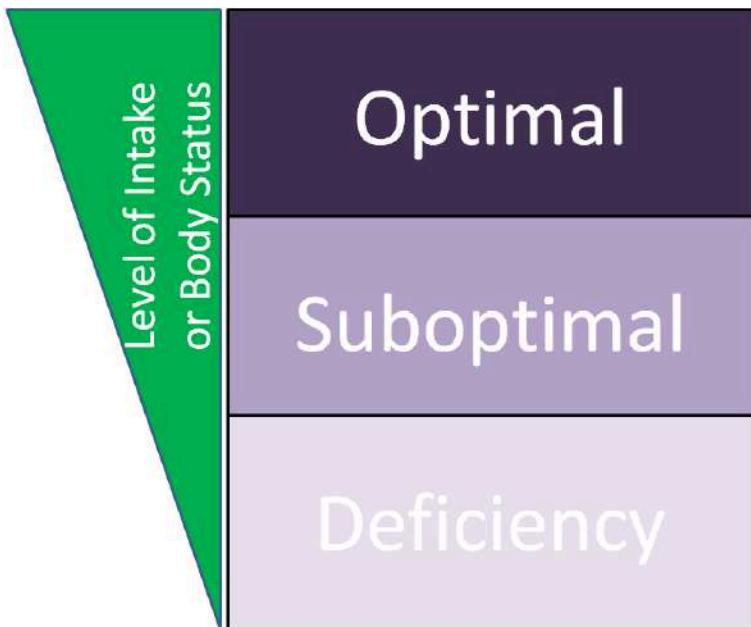


Figure 12.163 Illustration of insufficient or suboptimal levels

Suboptimal/insufficient means intake, or status, is higher than deficient, but lower than optimal. Thus, higher intake levels will provide additional benefits. The functions of vitamin D are growing by the day due to increased research discoveries. These functions now include benefits beyond bone health, further supporting the importance of vitamin D. In late 2010, an RDA for vitamin D was established (was an Adequate Intake before). This made it, along

with calcium, the first micronutrients to have their DRIs revised<sup>4</sup>. The RDA for vitamin D is 3 times higher than the previous AI. Many believe these are more reasonable levels, while others think that the new RDA is still not high enough. This belief, that many people's vitamin D intake/status is suboptimal, is challenged by a recent review described in the link below that found that vitamin D did not reduce osteoporosis risk. In addition, a recent meta-analysis (second link) concluded that "there is probably no benefit to expect from vitamin D supplementation in normally healthy people."

---

### **Web Link**

Vitamin D Ineffective for Preventing Osteoporosis  
Limits of Vitamin D Supplements

---

Vitamin D from supplements can become toxic. You cannot develop vitamin D toxicity from sun exposure, because the sunlight degrades a precursor of vitamin D3 in the skin<sup>5</sup>. Vitamin D toxicity results in hypercalcemia or high blood calcium levels. These become problematic because it can lead to the calcification of soft tissues.

### **References & Links**

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Rickets\\_USNLM.gif](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Rickets_USNLM.gif)
2. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:XrayRicketsLegssmall.jpg>
3. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2011) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
4. <http://iom.nationalacademies.org/Reports/2010/Dietary-Reference-Intakes-for-Calcium-and-Vitamin-D.aspx>
5. Shils ME, Shike M, Ross AC, Caballero B, Cousins RJ, editors. (2006) Modern nutrition in health and disease. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

### **Links**

Rachitic Rosary – [http://1.bp.blogspot.com/\\_ZWqgYBROGHw/S9r9rOb8thI/AAAAAAAAbAh4/y8uHS9m42MU/s1600/18111.jpg](http://1.bp.blogspot.com/_ZWqgYBROGHw/S9r9rOb8thI/AAAAAAAAbAh4/y8uHS9m42MU/s1600/18111.jpg)

Vitamin D Ineffective for Preventing Osteoporosis –

<http://well.blogs.nytimes.com/2013/10/17/vitamin-d-ineffective-for-preventing-osteoporosis/?>

Limits of Vitamin D Supplements -  
<http://well.blogs.nytimes.com/2013/12/11/limits-of-vitamin-d-supplements/?>

## 12.2 Calcium

Calcium is a macromineral and the most abundant mineral in the body. The reason for calcium's abundance is its distribution in the skeleton, which contains 99% of the calcium in the body.

Subsections:

- 12.21 Calcium Absorption
- 12.22 Calcium Bioavailability
- 12.23 Calcium Functions
- 12.24 Calcium Deficiency & Toxicity

### 12.21 Calcium Absorption

Calcium is taken up into the enterocyte through Transient Receptor Potential V6 (TRPV6), a calcium channel found on the brush border. Calbindin is the calcium binding protein that facilitates uptake through TRPV6 and transport across the enterocyte. Ca<sup>2+</sup>-Mg<sup>2+</sup> ATPase functions to pump calcium out of the enterocyte and into circulation and to pump magnesium into the enterocyte, as shown below<sup>1</sup>.

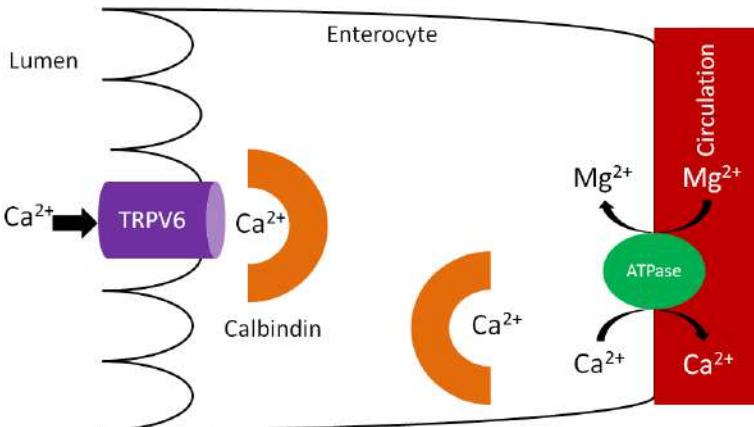


Figure 12.211 Calcium uptake and absorption

As we have previously discussed, increased 1,25(OH)2D synthesis in the kidney causes increased binding to the vitamin D receptor, which increases calbindin synthesis. Increased calbindin ultimately increases calcium uptake and absorption.

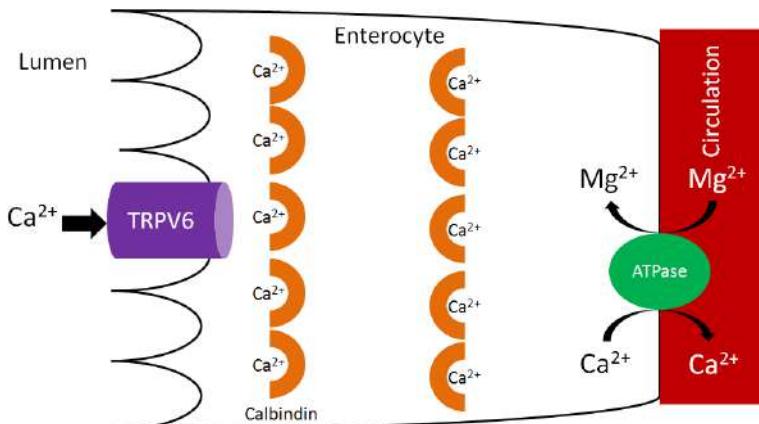


Figure 12.212 Increased calbindin increases calcium absorption

There are a couple of calcium-binding compounds that inhibit its absorption. Therefore, even though some foods are good sources of calcium, the calcium is not very bioavailable. Oxalate, found in high levels in spinach, rhubarb, sweet potatoes, and dried beans, is the most potent inhibitor of calcium absorption<sup>2</sup>. Recall that calcium oxalate is one of the compounds that makes up kidney stones. Based on this understanding, it should not be a surprise that formation of this compound inhibits calcium absorption.

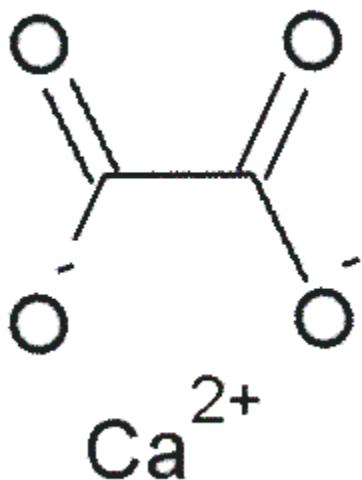


Figure 12.213 Structure of calcium oxalate<sup>3</sup>

Another inhibitor of calcium absorption is phytate. Phytate is found in whole grains and legumes<sup>3</sup>.

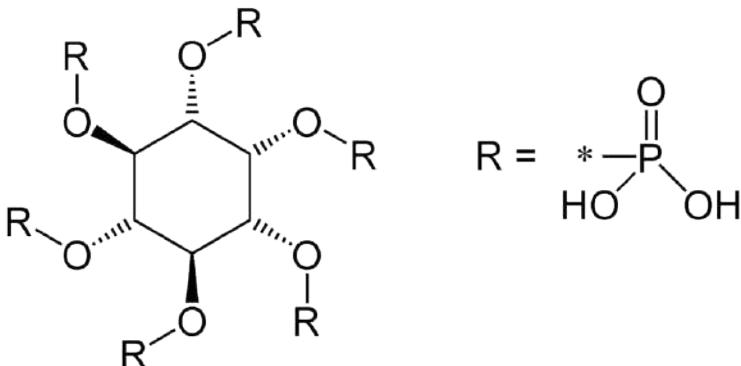


Figure 12.214 Structure of phytate4

## References & Links

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. Shils ME, Shike M, Ross AC, Caballero B, Cousins RJ, editors. (2006) Modern nutrition in health and disease. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Calcium\\_oxalate.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Calcium_oxalate.png)
4. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Phytic\\_acid.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Phytic_acid.png)

## 12.23 Calcium Functions

Calcium in hydroxyapatite is a major component of bones and teeth.

There are also a number of non-bone functions of calcium. Calcium is an intracellular signaling molecule. Because of this, intracellular calcium is tightly controlled, primarily stored within organelles.

Non-bone functions include:

**Neurotransmitter release**

Neurotransmitter release is stimulated by the opening of voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels. This stimulates the synaptic vesicle to fuse with the axon membrane and release the neurotransmitter into the synapse, as shown below1.

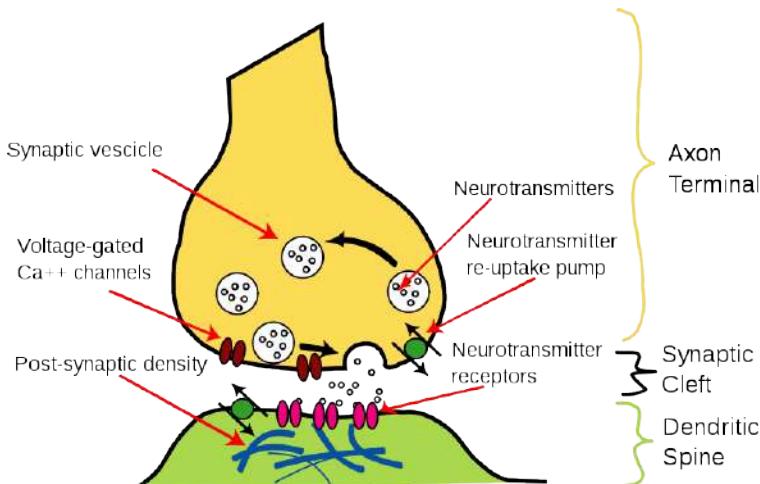


Figure 12.231 Calcium regulates neurotransmitter release2

## Muscle contraction

Calcium is released in muscle cells, where it binds to the protein troponin, changes its shape, and removes the tropomyosin blockade of actin active sites so that contraction can occur3. This can be seen in the following animation and figure (same link).

---

### Web Link

[Muscle contraction](#)

---

## Hormone release

Calcium acts as an intracellular messenger for the release of hormones, such as insulin. The link below shows how in the beta cells of the pancreas, the opening of voltage-gated calcium channels

stimulates the insulin granules to fuse with the beta cell membrane to release insulin.

---

### Web Link

[Insulin release](#)

---

### Blood Clotting

As will be discussed more in the vitamin K section, calcium binding to activated Gla proteins is important in the blood clotting cascade.

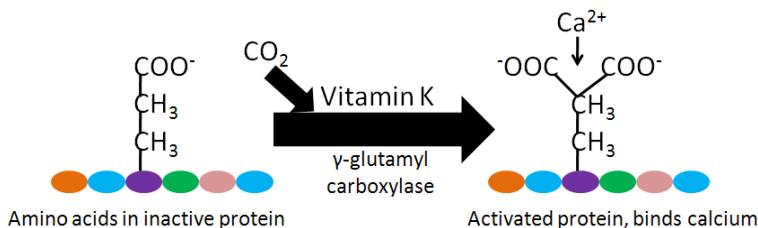


Figure 12.232 Calcium bind to Gla proteins. Adapted from reference 4

### Enzyme regulation

The binding of calcium to calcium-binding proteins also regulates the action of a number of enzymes<sup>4</sup>.

### References & Links

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:Synapse\\_Illustration\\_unlabeled.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Synapse_Illustration_unlabeled.svg)
3. [http://legacy.owensboro.kctcs.edu/GCaplan/anat/Notes/  
API%20Notes%20J%20%20Muscle%20Contraction.htm](http://legacy.owensboro.kctcs.edu/GCaplan/anat/Notes/API%20Notes%20J%20%20Muscle%20Contraction.htm)
4. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

## **Links**

Muscle contraction - <http://legacy.owensboro.kctcs.edu/GCaplan/anat/Notes/>

API%20Notes%20J%20%20Muscle%20Contraction.htm

Insulin release - <http://www.dolcera.com/wiki/images/Image11.jpeg>

## **12.24 Calcium Deficiency & Toxicity**

Because of the large amount of calcium in bones, deficiency is rare<sup>1</sup>. Hypocalcemia (low serum calcium levels in blood) can result in tetany (involuntary muscle contractions)<sup>2</sup>. In addition, calcium deficiency in children can lead to rickets, which is a vitamin D deficiency. While not a deficiency, low calcium intake can lead to decreased bone mineral density and the conditions osteopenia and osteoporosis. How these differ from osteomalacia and normal bone is illustrated and described below. There are two different bone components that we will consider to understand what is happening in the bone. Matrix is the scaffolding onto which mineral is deposited. Mineral is at it sounds, the mineral that is deposited on the matrix.

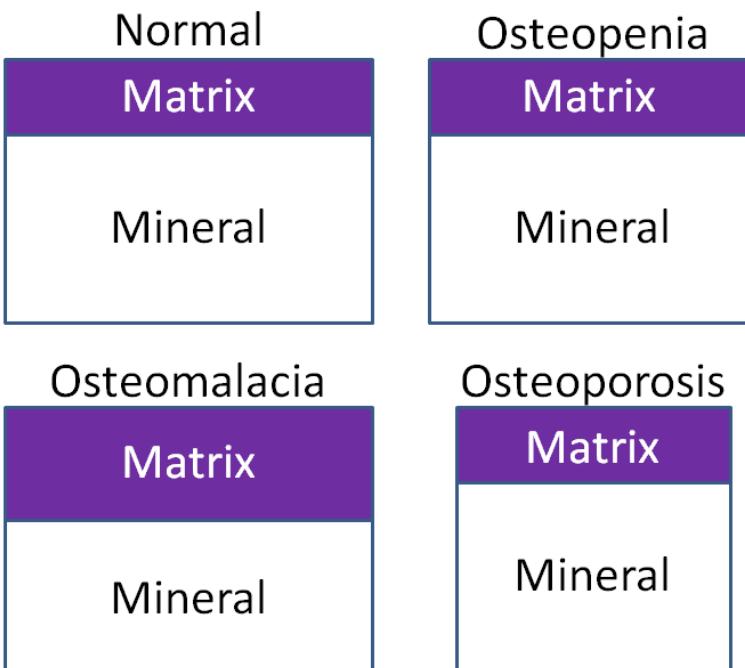


Figure 12.241 Bone states; the width of each figure represents the bone mass. The height of the matrix and mineral boxes represents the relative proportion for matrix to mineral in the bone. Adapted from reference 3.

Osteomalacia – Bone mass is normal, but the matrix to mineral ratio is increased, meaning there is less mineral in bone.

Osteopenia – Bone mass is decreased, but the matrix to mineral ratio is not altered from normal bone. This condition is intermediate in between normal and osteoporosis.

Osteoporosis – Bone mass is further decreased from osteopenia, but the matrix to mineral ratio is not altered from normal bone<sup>3</sup>.

To prevent osteoporosis it is important to build peak bone mass, 90% of which is built in females by age 18 and age 20 in males, but can continue to increase until age 30. After that time, bone mass starts to decrease. For women after menopause, bone mass

decreases dramatically because of the decrease in estrogen production, as shown in the link below<sup>5</sup>.

---

**Web Link****Bone Mass**

---

Combining the decrease after menopause along with the fact that women have lower bone mass to begin with, helps further explain why osteoporosis is more common in females. A measure of bone status is bone mineral density. As the name indicates, bone mineral density is a measure of the amount of mineral in bone. Dual energy X-ray absorptiometry (DEXA) accurately measures bone mineral density using a small amount of radiation. A DEXA is shown in the figure below.



Figure 12.242 DEXA scanner6

A person lies down on the table and the arm of the machine moves slowly over them.

From the scan, a bone mineral density t-score is generated. As shown below, normal bone mineral density has a t-score of greater

than -1, low bone mass is from -1 to -2.5, and osteoporosis is a t-score of less than -2.5 as illustrated in the figure in the link below.

---

### **Web Link**

[Bone Mineral Density T-Scores](#)

---

There are other methods of measuring bone mineral density, such as peripheral DEXA and ultrasound. These typically are done on the wrist or heel, but are not as accurate because that one area might not reflect the bone mineral density in other parts of the body<sup>7</sup>.

Calcium toxicity is rare, occurring in those with hyperparathyroidism or high calcium supplementation levels. Like vitamin D, toxicity can lead to calcification of soft tissues<sup>7</sup>. In addition, a very high intake of calcium can lead to kidney stone formation.

### **References & Links**

1. Shils ME, Shike M, Ross AC, Caballero B, Cousins RJ, editors. (2006) Modern nutrition in health and disease. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
2. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
3. Sambrook, P. Bone structure and function in normal and disease states <http://v5.books.elsevier.com/bookscat/samples/9780443070150/9780443070150.pdf>
4. <http://nof.org/articles/7>
5. [http://www.niams.nih.gov/Health\\_Info/Bone/Osteoporosis/bone\\_mass.asp](http://www.niams.nih.gov/Health_Info/Bone/Osteoporosis/bone_mass.asp)
6. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Bone\\_density\\_scanner.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Bone_density_scanner.jpg)
7. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

### **Link**

Bone Mass - [http://drugline.org/img/term/bone-mass-density-2046\\_2.gif](http://drugline.org/img/term/bone-mass-density-2046_2.gif)

Bone Mineral Density T-Scores -  
<http://www.orthopaedicsurgeon.com.sg/wp-content/uploads/2011/11/t-scores-large.gif>

## 12.3 Phosphorus

We have already talked about how blood phosphate levels are regulated in the body by PTH, calcitonin, and  $1,25(\text{OH})_2\text{D}$ . Animal products are rich sources of phosphate. Plant products contain phosphorus, but some is in the form of phytic acid (phytate). In grains, over 80% of the phosphorus is phytate. This structure is shown below1.

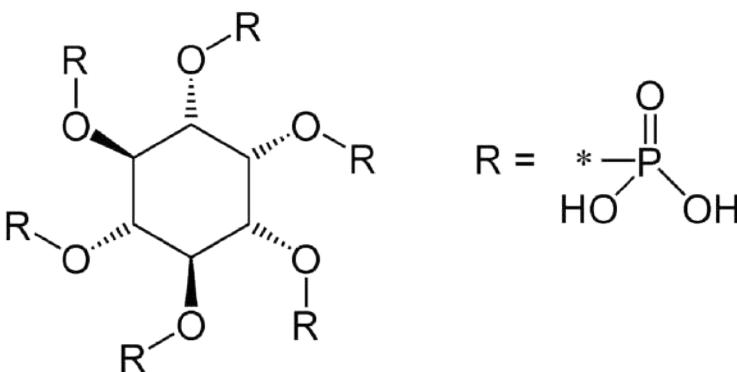


Figure 12.31 Structure of phytic acid2

The bioavailability of phosphorus from phytate is poor (~50%) because we lack the enzyme phytase3. Nevertheless, ~50-70% of phosphorus is estimated to be absorbed from our diet1. Another source of phosphorus is phosphoric acid that is used to acidify

colas. Colas are caramel-colored, carbonated soft drinks that contain caffeine, such as Coca-Cola, Pepsi, etc. Epidemiological studies have found that soft drink consumption is associated with decreased bone mineral densities, particularly in females<sup>4,5</sup>. It has been hypothesized that phosphoric acid plays some role in this effect, but there is limited evidence to support this belief.

Most phosphorus is excreted in the urine.

Phosphorus deficiency is rare, but can hinder bone and teeth development. Other symptoms include muscle weakness, rickets, and bone pain<sup>6</sup>. Toxicity is also rare, but it causes low blood calcium concentrations and tetany<sup>1</sup>.

Subsection:

### 12.31 Phosphorus Functions

#### References & Links

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Phytic\\_acid.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Phytic_acid.png)
3. Phosphorus. Linus Pauling Institute Micronutrient Information Center. <http://lpi.oregonstate.edu/mic/minerals/phosphorus#reference10>
4. Tucker K, Morita K, Qiao N, Hannan M, Cupples LA, et al. (2006) Colas, but not other carbonated beverages, are associated with low bone mineral density in older women: The framingham osteoporosis study. Am J Clin Nutr 84(4): 936-942.
5. Libuda L, Alexy U, Remer T, Stehle P, Schoenau E, et al. (2008) Association between long-term consumption of soft drinks and variables of bone modeling and remodeling in a sample of healthy german children and adolescents. Am J Clin Nutr 88(6): 1670-1677.
6. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

## 12.31 Phosphorus Functions

Phosphorus has a number of functions in the body<sup>1</sup>.

Phosphate is a component of hydroxyapatite in bones and teeth, as described earlier.

Non-bone functions include:

### Phosphorylation

Phosphates are used to activate and deactivate a number of proteins. In addition, compounds are also frequently phosphorylated, like the monosaccharides shown below.

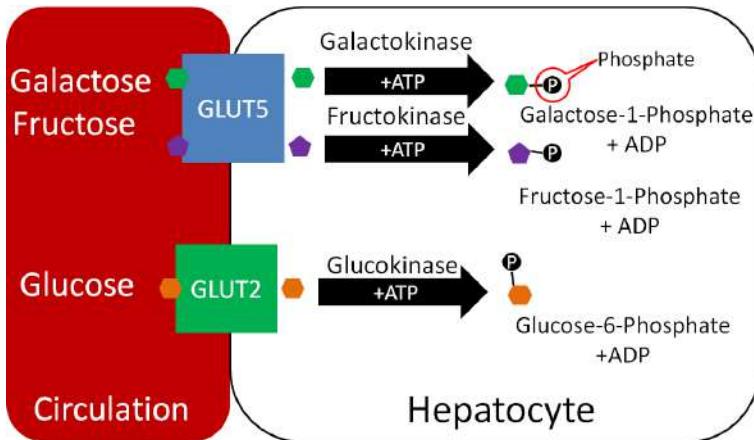


Figure 12.311 Uptake of monosaccharides into the hepatocyte

### Phospholipids

Phosphates are a component of phospholipids, as shown below.

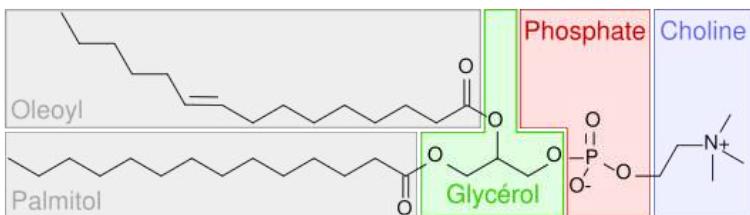


Figure 12.312 Structure of phosphatidylcholine (lecithin)2

### DNA/RNA

DNA/RNA have a phosphate backbone as shown below.

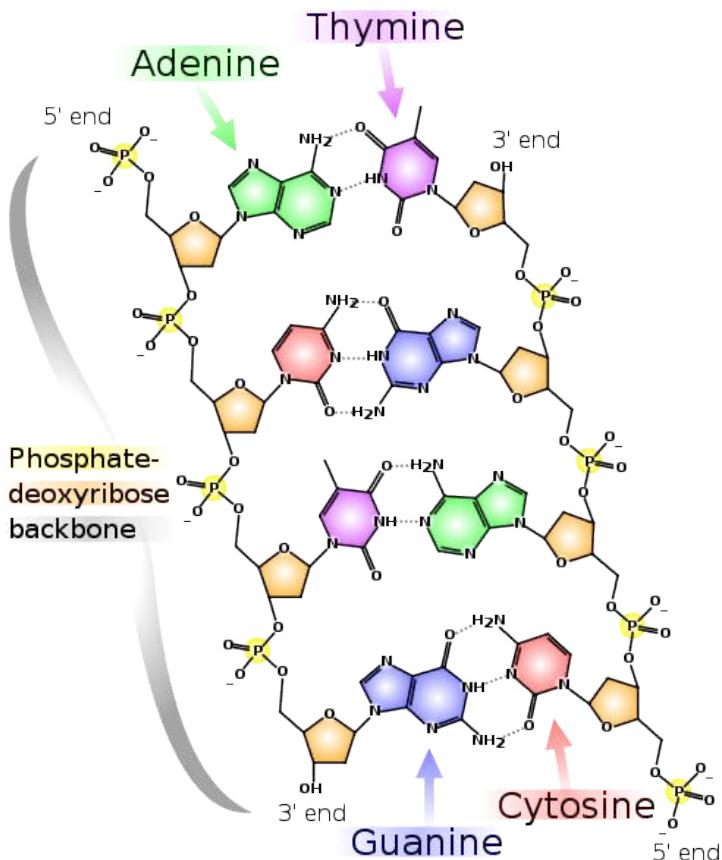


Figure 12.313 Structure of DNA3

## ATP

The major energy currency, ATP, stores energy in its phosphate bonds.

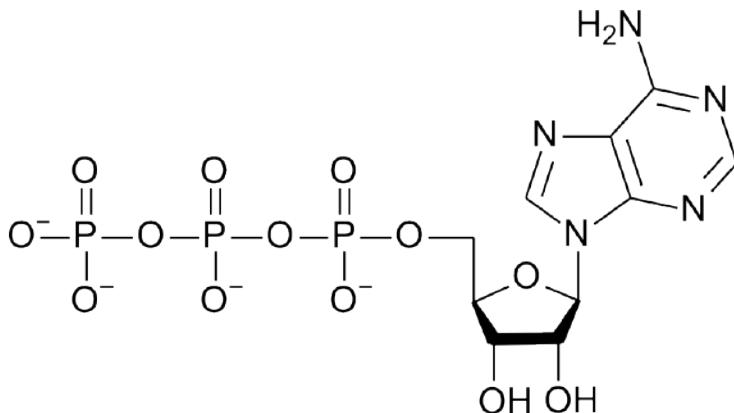


Figure 12.314 Structure of ATP4

### Secondary Messengers

The intracellular secondary messengers cyclic AMP (cAMP) and inositol triphosphate (IP<sub>3</sub>) both contain phosphate. The action of these secondary messengers can be seen in the links below.

---

#### Web Links

cAMP([inactive link as of 09/08/2020](#))  
IP<sub>3</sub>([inactive link as of 09/08/2020](#))

---

Other functions of phosphate include:

Acid/Base Balance

Intracellular Anion

#### References & Links

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. [http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Popc\\_details.svg](http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Popc_details.svg)
3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:DNA\\_chemical\\_structure.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:DNA_chemical_structure.svg)

4. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:ATP\\_structure.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:ATP_structure.svg)

## Links

cAMP - <http://courses.washington.edu/conj/gprotein/cyclicamp.htm>(inactive link as of 09/08/2020)

IP3 - <http://courses.washington.edu/conj/gprotein/ip3.htm>(inactive link as of 09/08/2020)

## 12.4 Fluoride

Fluoride is a nonessential mineral. It is not required by the body and it is not widely found in the food supply. The majority of what we consume comes from fluoridated water. Other good non-dietary sources are fluoridated toothpaste and dental rinses<sup>1</sup>. Absorption of fluoride is near 100% for both dietary and non-dietary forms and it is rapidly excreted in the urine<sup>2</sup>.

Fluoride alters the mineralization of bones and teeth. It does this by replacing hydroxyl (OH) ions in hydroxyapatite ( $\text{Ca}_{10}(\text{PO}_4)_6(\text{OH})_2$ ) , forming fluorohydroxyapatite. Fluorohydroxyapatite is more resistant to acid degradation than hydroxyapatite, leading to fewer cavities<sup>2</sup>.

Since it is a nonessential mineral, there is no fluoride deficiency. However, fluoride can be quite toxic. Acute toxicity symptoms from large intakes of fluoride include<sup>1</sup>:

Nausea

Vomiting

Diarrhea

Convulsions

Chronic toxicity results in an irreversible condition known as fluorosis, characterized by the mottling and pitting of teeth as shown below.



Fluorosis before Treatment

After Treatment(Porcelain Laminate Veneers)

Figure 12.41 Fluorosis3

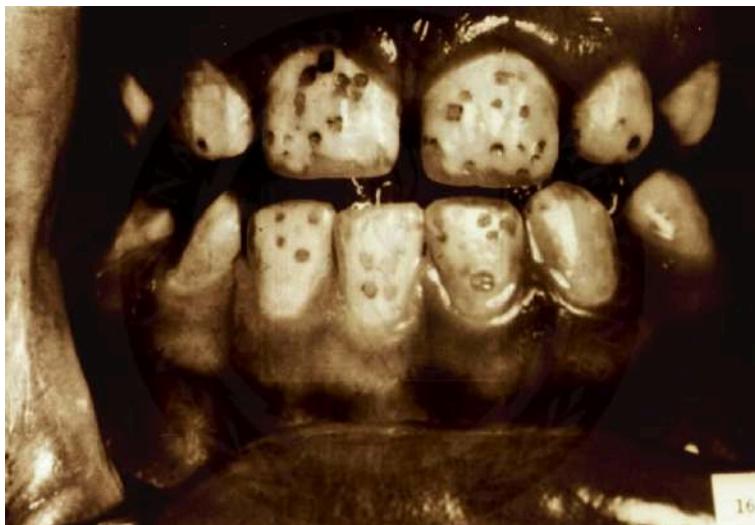
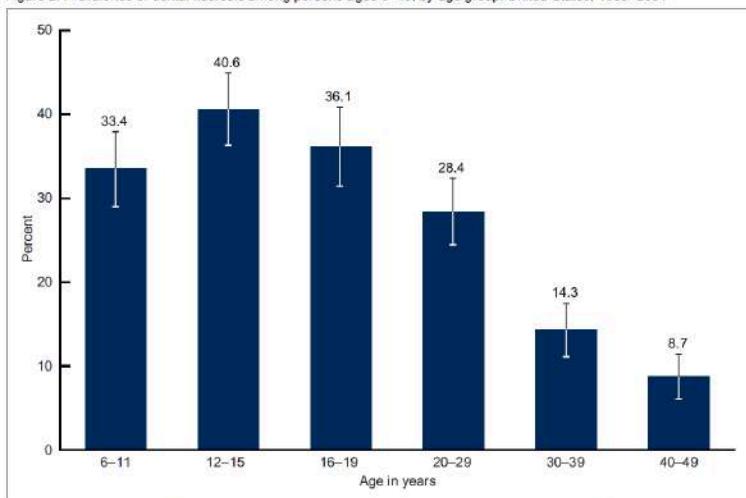


Figure 12.42 Severe case of fluorosis4

As you can see from the figure below, fluorosis is more prevalent in the United States than most people would probably believe.

Figure 2. Prevalence of dental fluorosis among persons aged 6–49, by age group: United States, 1999–2004



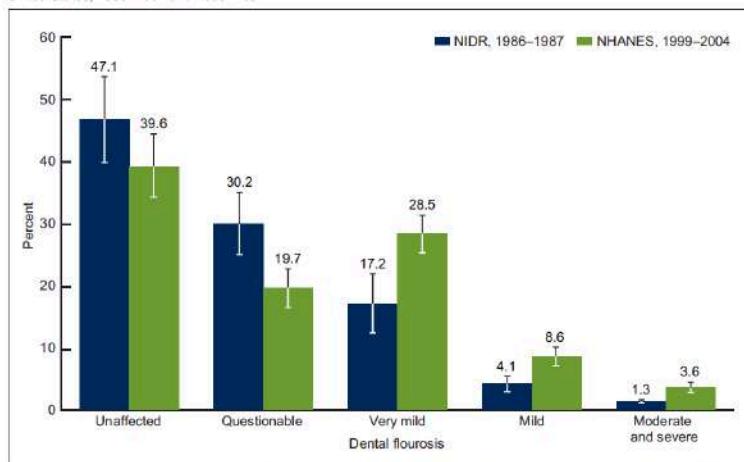
NOTES: Dental fluorosis is defined as having very mild, mild, moderate, or severe forms and is based on Dean's Fluorosis Index. Error bars represent 95% confidence intervals.

SOURCE: CDC/NCHS, National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, 1999–2004.

Figure 12.43 Fluorosis prevalence by age in the United States<sup>5</sup>

A comparison of the prevalence of fluorosis in US children, ages 12–15, indicates an increase from the late 1980s to the early 2000s<sup>5</sup>.

Figure 3. Change in dental fluorosis prevalence among children aged 12–15 participating in two national surveys: United States, 1986–1987 and 1999–2004



NOTES: Dental fluorosis is defined as having very mild, mild, moderate, or severe forms and is based on Dean's Fluorosis Index. Percentages do not sum to 100 due to rounding. Error bars represent 95% confidence intervals.

SOURCES: CDC/NCHS, National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, 1999–2004 and National Institute of Dental Research, National Survey of Oral Health in U.S. School Children, 1986–1987.

Figure 12.44 Change in dental fluorosis in 12–15 year-old US children<sup>5</sup>

There is debate as to whether water should be fluoridated. The following links are examples of just how conflicted the U.S. is. The first is a New York Times article on this topic. There is also an article about Portland's decision to begin fluoridating its water in 2014. The third article is about a bill introduced by a Kansas lawmaker concerned about the effects of water fluoridation. Salina, Kansas, which is home to one of Kansas State University's campuses, voted last November to not rescind its policy of fluoridating its water, as described in the fourth link.

### Web Links

Fluoridation Debate, Redux  
Portland Approves Fluoridation by '14  
Fluoride to Stay in Salina Water

### References & Links

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
2. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
3. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Fluorosisb%26a.jpg>
4. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dental\\_fluorosis#/media/File:FluorosisFromNIH.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dental_fluorosis#/media/File:FluorosisFromNIH.jpg)
5. Beltran-Aguilar, ED, Barker, L, Dye, BA. (2010) Prevalence and Severity of Dental Fluorosis in the United States, 1999–2004. <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/databriefs/db53.htm>

## Links

Fluoridation Debate, Redux – <http://www.nytimes.com/2012/03/18/opinion/sunday/fluoridation-debate-redux.html?>

Portland Approves Fluoridation by '14 – <http://www.nytimes.com/2012/09/13/us/portland-approves-adding-fluoride-to-water-by-14.html?>

Fluoride to Stay in Salina Water – <http://www.salina.com/1d3c8158-0a31-5c90-b5b4-98afdda9ce92.html>

## 12.5 Vitamin K

There are 3 forms of vitamin K. Phylloquinone (K1), the plant form of vitamin K, is the primary dietary form of vitamin K. Its structure is shown below.

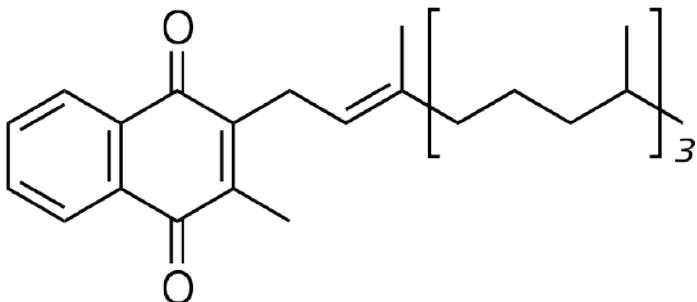


Figure 12.51 Structure of phylloquinone (K1), the 3 outside of the brackets indicates that the structural unit inside the brackets is repeated 3 times<sup>1</sup>

Green leafy vegetables, broccoli, Brussels sprouts, and asparagus are foods that are good sources of phylloquinone<sup>2</sup>.

Another form of vitamin K, menaquinone (K2), is synthesized by bacteria in the colon. Menaquinone comprises ~10% of absorbed vitamin K every day and can also be found in small amounts in animal products. Its structure is shown below<sup>3</sup>.

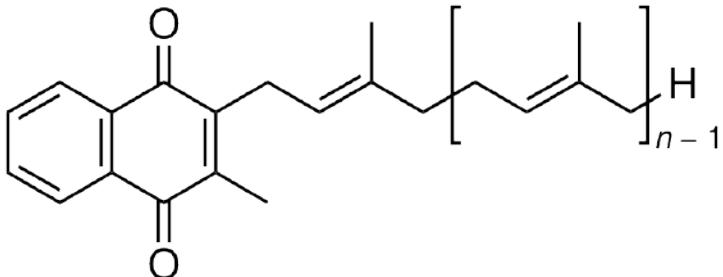


Figure 12.52 Structure of menaquinone (K2). Menaquinones have side chains of varying length<sup>4</sup>

In the structure above, if it was menaquinone-8, there would be 7 (8-1) repeating units of the structure inside the brackets above.

The synthetic form of vitamin K is menadione (K3), whose structure is shown below.

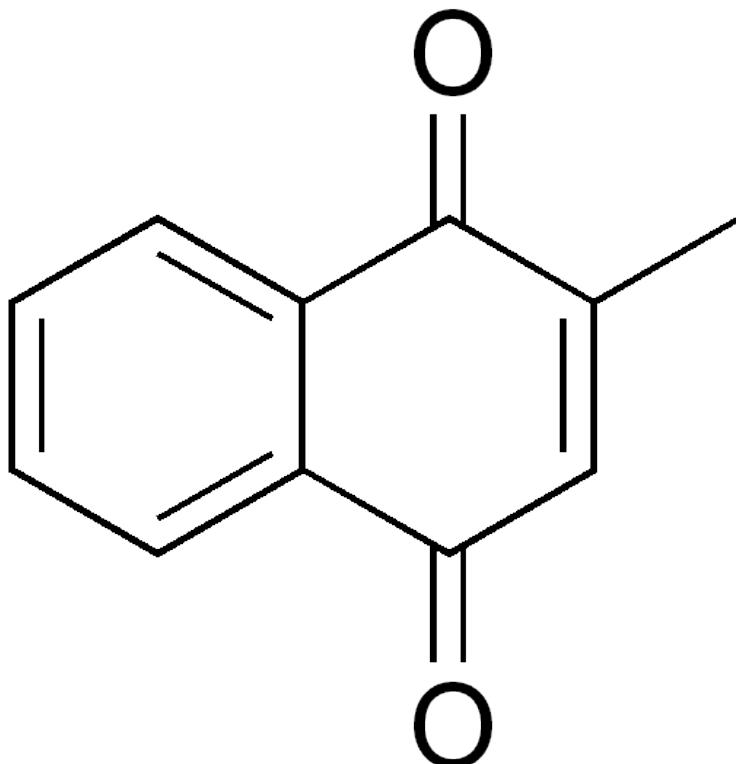


Figure 12.53 Structure of menadione (K3)<sup>5</sup>

A tail, similar to the one found in menaquinone, has to be added to menadione for it to be biologically active.

Vitamin K is absorbed like other fat-soluble substances. Approximately 80% of phylloquinone and menaquinone are incorporated into chylomicrons and stored primarily in the liver<sup>2,6</sup>.

Once metabolized, vitamin K is primarily excreted via bile in the feces, with a lesser amount excreted in urine<sup>6</sup>.

Subsections:

12.51 Vitamin K Functions

12.52 Vitamin K Deficiency & Toxicity

### References & Links

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:Phylloquinone\\_structure.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Phylloquinone_structure.svg)
2. McGuire M, Beerman KA. (2011) Nutritional sciences: From fundamentals to food. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
3. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
4. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Menaquinone.svg>
5. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Menadione.png>
6. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

## 12.51 Vitamin K Functions

Vitamin K is a cofactor for carboxylation reactions that add a CO<sub>2</sub> to the amino acid, glutamic acid (glutamate), in certain proteins. The structure of glutamic acid is shown below.

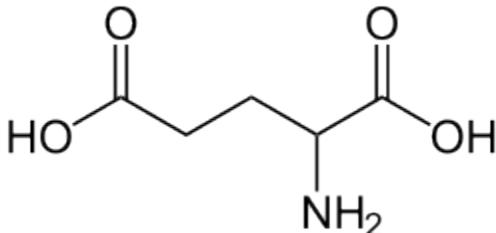


Figure 12.511 Structure of glutamic acid<sup>1</sup>

The enzyme, gamma-glutamyl carboxylase, uses a vitamin K cofactor to convert glutamic acid to gamma-carboxyglutamic acid (Gla). Gla proteins are those that contain glutamic acid(s) that have been converted to gamma-carboxyglutamic acid(s). The formation of Gla proteins allows the 2 positive charges of calcium to bind between the 2 negative charges on the carboxylic acid groups ( $\text{COO}^-$ ) in the Gla. The binding of calcium activates these proteins<sup>2-4</sup>.

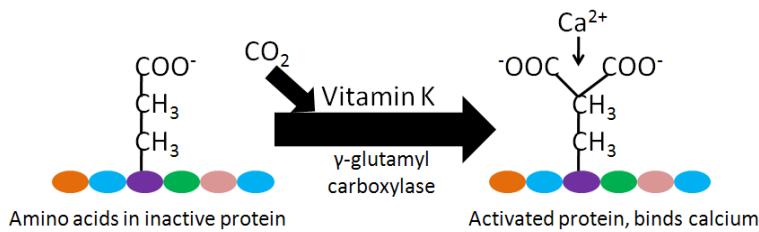


Figure 12.512 Gamma-glutamyl carboxylase converts glutamic acid to gamma-carboxyglutamic acid (Gla).

Gla proteins are important in blood clotting. Blood clotting occurs through a cascade of events, as shown in the following 2 videos. The animation below gives an overview of blood clotting, the video is a fun depiction of the blood clotting cascade.

---

#### Web Links

Hemostasis Animation  
[Video: The Clotting Cascade \(1:20\)](#)

---

Within the blood clotting cascade, there are a number of potential Gla proteins, as shown in the figure below.

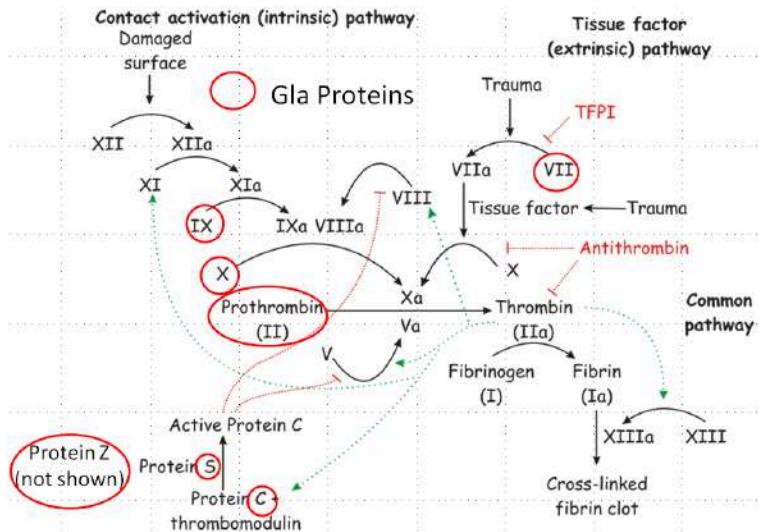


Figure 12.513 Blood clotting cascade with potential Gla proteins circled<sup>5</sup>

If these proteins within the blood clotting cascade are not activated to Gla, the cascade does not proceed as normal, leading to impaired blood clotting. After being used as a cofactor by gamma-glutamyl carboxylase to produce a Gla protein, vitamin K becomes vitamin K epoxide. Vitamin K epoxide needs to be converted back to vitamin K to serve as a cofactor again. Warfarin (Coumadin) and dicumarol are a couple of blood thinning drugs that inhibit this regeneration of vitamin K. This reduces the amount of Gla in the blood clotting proteins ,thus reducing the clotting response. The structure of warfarin and dicumarol are shown below<sup>5</sup>.

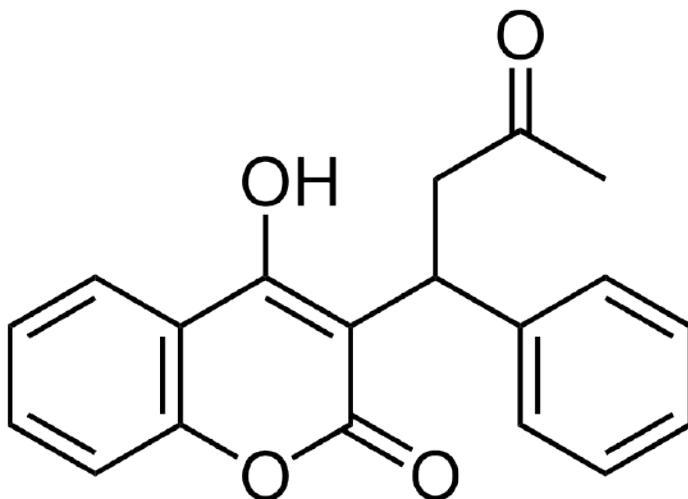


Figure 12.514 Structure of warfarin<sup>7</sup>

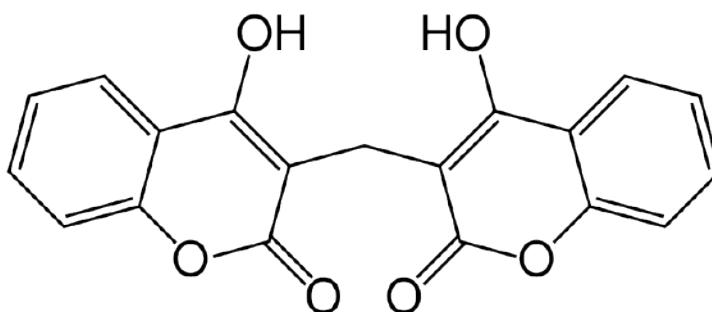


Figure 12.515 Structure of dicumarol<sup>8</sup>

The following coumadin rap song video gives further information on warfarin.

---

## **Web Link**

Video: Coumadin Rap Song (3:44)

---

Vitamin K may also be important for bone health. There are 3 Gla proteins found in bone: osteocalcin, matrix Gla protein (MGP), and protein S6. Osteocalcin is a major bone protein, constituting 15–20% of all non-collagen proteins in bone. However, overall, the function of these 3 proteins in bone is not known<sup>2,3</sup>. Some research suggests that higher vitamin K status or intake decreases bone loss, but it is still not clear whether vitamin K truly is important for bone health<sup>9</sup>.

## **References & Links**

1. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Glutamic\\_acid#/media/  
File:Glutamic\\_Non-ionic.png](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Glutamic_acid#/media/File:Glutamic_Non-ionic.png)
2. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
3. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
4. McGuire M, Beerman KA. (2011) Nutritional sciences: From fundamentals to food. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
5. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Coagulation\\_full.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Coagulation_full.svg)
6. Shils ME, Shike M, Ross AC, Caballero B, Cousins RJ, editors. (2006) Modern nutrition in health and disease. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
7. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Warfarin.svg>
8. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Dicumarol.svg>
9. Shea MK, Booth S. (2008) Update on the role of vitamin K in skeletal health. Nutr Rev 66(10): 549–557.

## **Videos**

Hemostasis Animation- [http://www.mhhe.com/biosci/esp/2002\\_general/Esp/folder\\_structure/tr/m1/s7/trm1s7\\_3.htm](http://www.mhhe.com/biosci/esp/2002_general/Esp/folder_structure/tr/m1/s7/trm1s7_3.htm)

The Clotting Cascade - <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NJm4DE-tVuY&feature=related>

Coumadin Rap Song - [http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Mfk05IFFW48&feature=watch\\_response](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Mfk05IFFW48&feature=watch_response)

## 12.52 Vitamin K Deficiency & Toxicity

Vitamin K deficiency is rare, but can occur in newborn infants. They are at higher risk, because there is poor transfer of vitamin K across the placental barrier, their gastrointestinal tracts do not contain vitamin K producing bacteria, and breast milk is generally low in vitamin K1. As a result, it is recommended (and widely practiced) that all infants receive a vitamin K injection within 6 hours of birth<sup>2</sup>.

Prolonged antibiotic treatment (which kills bacteria in the gastrointestinal tract) and lipid absorption problems can also lead to vitamin K deficiency<sup>3</sup>. Vitamin K deficient individuals have an increased risk of bleeding or hemorrhage. Remember that high levels of alpha-tocopherol intake can also interfere with vitamin K's blood clotting function. It is believed that an alpha-tocopherol metabolite, with similar structure to the vitamin K quinones, antagonizes the action of vitamin K.

Phylloquinone and menaquinone have no reported toxicities. However, menadione can cause liver damage<sup>1</sup>.

### References & Links

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
3. McGuire M, Beerman KA. (2011) Nutritional sciences: From fundamentals to food. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.

## 12.6 Vitamin A

There are 3 forms of vitamin A (retinol, retinal, and retinoic acid) that collectively are known as retinoids. Retinol is the alcohol (OH) form, retinal is the aldehyde (COH) form, and retinoic acid is the carboxylic acid (COOH) form, as shown in the figure below (areas of difference are indicated by red).

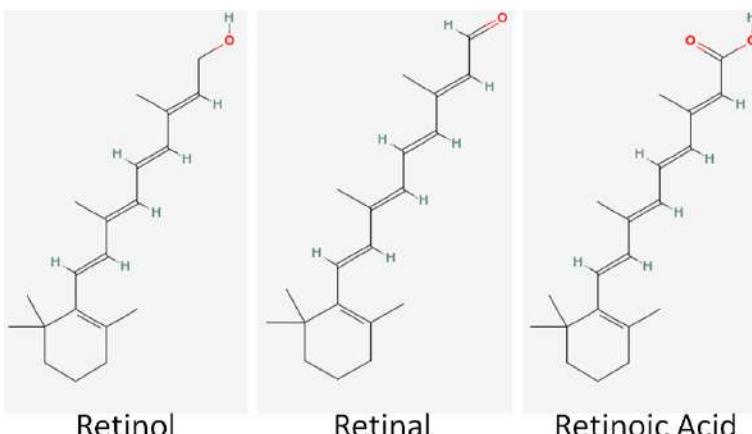


Figure 12.61 Structure of the retinoids

Among these different retinoids, retinol and retinal are fairly interchangeable. Either form is readily converted to the other. However, only retinal is used to form retinoic acid, and this is a one-way reaction. Thus, once retinoic acid is formed it can't be converted back to retinal, as shown in the figure below.

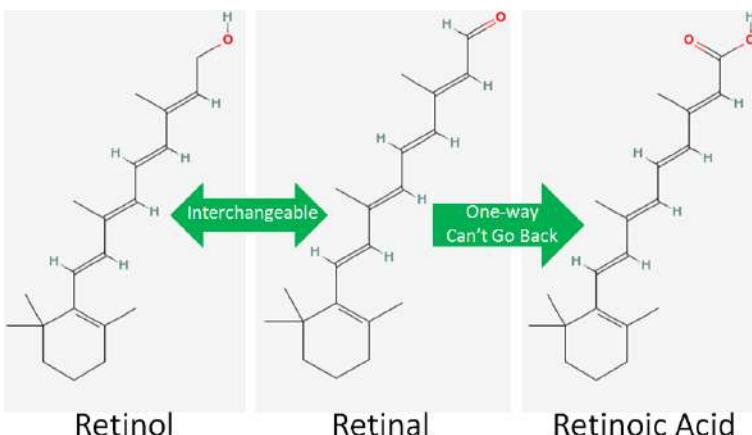


Figure 12.62 Metabolism of retinoids1

There are 2 primary dietary sources of vitamin A:

Retinyl/retinol esters (Animal Products)

Provitamin A Carotenoids (Plants)

Preformed vitamin A means that the compound is a retinoid. Preformed vitamin A is only found in animal products (carrots are not a good source of preformed vitamin A). Most retinol in animal products is esterified, or has a fatty acid added to it, to form retinyl esters (aka retinol esters). The most common retinyl ester is retinyl palmitate (retinol + the fatty acid palmitate) whose structure is shown below.

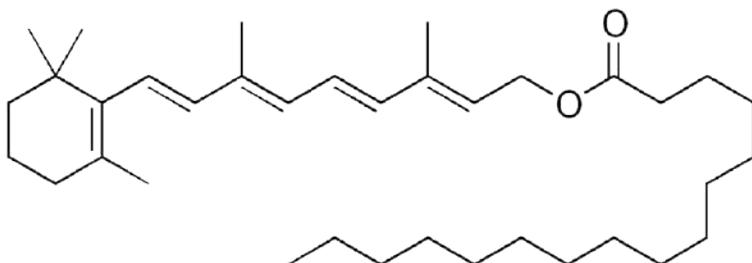


Figure 12.63 Retinyl palmitate2

Provitamin A is a compound that can be converted to vitamin A in the body, but currently isn't in vitamin A form. The next section will talk about carotenoids, some of which are provitamin A compounds.

International units are also used for vitamin A, such that:

1 IU = 0.3 ug retinol or 0.6 ug beta-carotene

Subsections:

12.61 Carotenoids

12.62 Vitamin A Uptake, Absorption, Transport & Storage

12.63 Vitamin A Nuclear Receptors

12.64 Vitamin A Functions

12.65 Vitamin A Deficiency & Toxicity

### **References & Links**

1. Structures from Pubchem <http://pubchem.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/>
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Retinyl\\_palmitate.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Retinyl_palmitate.png)

## **12.61 Carotenoids**

Carotenoids are 40-carbon compounds that are found throughout nature. Animals do not produce carotenoids, thus any found in animals came from consumed plants or microorganisms. There are more than 600 natural carotenoids. However, the 6 main ones found in the diet and in the body are<sup>1</sup>:

Beta-carotene

Alpha-carotene

Beta-cryptoxanthin

Lutein

Zeaxanthin

Lycopene

Many carotenoids are pigments, meaning they are colored. The table below gives the color of some of these carotenoids, as well as some food sources.

Table 12.611 Carotenoids' color and food sources

Carotenoid	Color	Food Sources
Beta-carotene	Orange	Carrots, Sweet Potatoes, Leafy Greens
Lycopene	Red	Tomatoes, Watermelon, Pink Grapefruit
Lutein/Zeaxanthin	Yellow	Kale, Corn, Egg Yolks, Spinach

Carotenoids can be further classified as provitamin A or non-provitamin A. Provitamin A carotenoids are those that can be cleaved to form retinal, while the non-provitamin A carotenoids cannot. The structure and classification of the 6 major carotenoids are shown below.

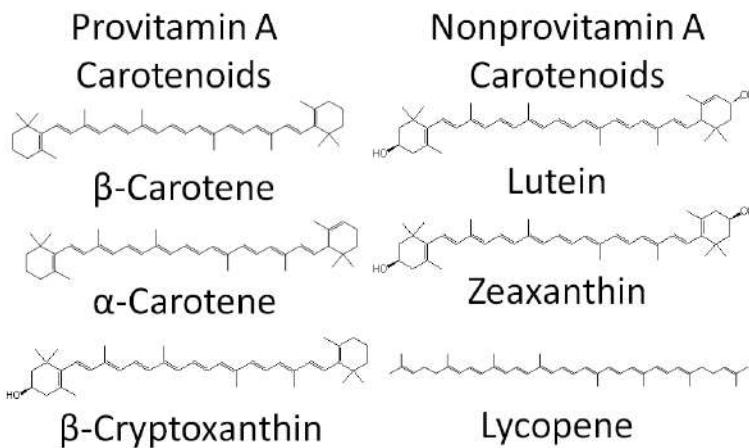


Figure 12.611 Structure and classification of the 6 major carotenoids

After provitamin A carotenoids are taken up into the enterocyte, some are cleaved to form retinal. In the case of symmetrical beta-carotene, it is cleaved in the center to form 2 retinal molecules as shown below.

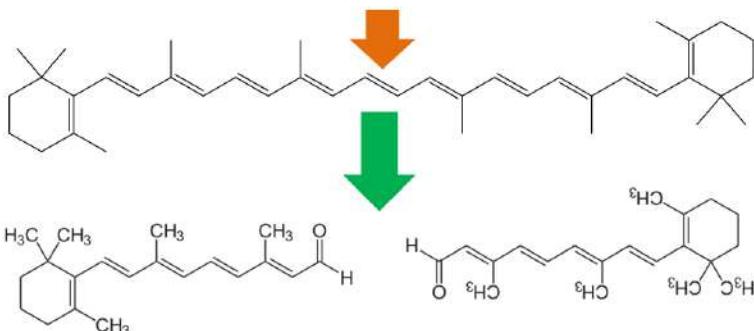


Figure 12.612 Cleavage of beta-carotene 2 to retinal molecules2

Alpha-carotene and beta-cryptoxanthin are asymmetrical, thus they can be used to form only 1 retinol.

To help account for the fact that retinol can be made from carotenoids, the DRI committee made retinol activity equivalents (RAE) that take into account the bioavailability and bioconversion of the provitamin A carotenoids.

1 ug RAE

= 1 ug of retinol

= 2 ug of supplemental beta-carotene

= 12 ug of dietary beta-carotene

= 24 ug of alpha-carotene or beta-cryptoxanthin3

### References & Links

1. Lindshield BL, Erdman JW. (2006) Carotenoids. In: Bowman BA, Russell RM, editors. Present Knowledge in Nutrition. Washington, D.C.: International Life Sciences Institute. pp. 184-197.r
2. <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Retinal#/media/File:All-trans-Retinal2.svg>
3. Anonymous. (2001) Dietary reference intakes for vitamin A, vitamin K, arsenic, boron, chromium, copper, iodine, iron, manganese, molybdenum, nickel, silicon, vanadium, and zinc.

## 12.62 Vitamin A Uptake, Absorption, Transport & Storage

The uptake, absorption, transport, and storage of vitamin A and carotenoids are summarized in the figure below.

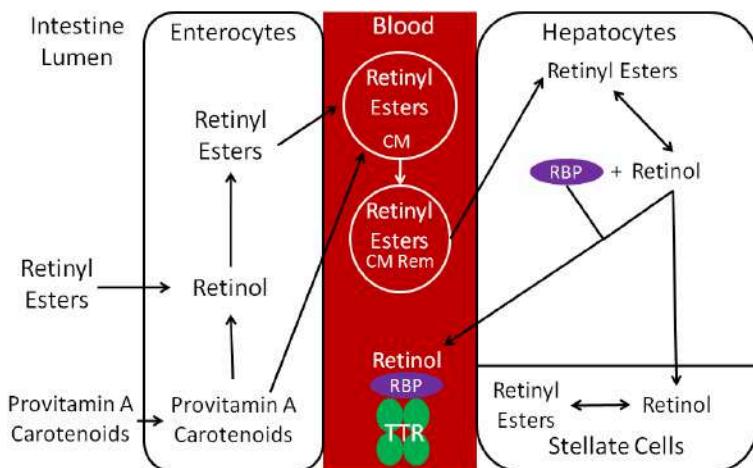


Figure 12.621 Vitamin A uptake, absorption, transport, and storage. Adapted from reference 1

Esters are removed by esterases so that free retinol can be taken up into the enterocyte. Preformed vitamin A is highly bioavailable (70-90%) if consumed with some fat<sup>2</sup>. Carotenoids have a much lower bioavailability, which varies based on the carotenoid and matrix it is in when consumed. Once provitamin A carotenoids are taken up into the enterocytes, they are: (1) cleaved to retinal and then converted to retinol or (2) absorbed intact and incorporated into chylomicrons.

Retinol in the enterocyte is esterified, forming retinyl esters. The retinyl esters are packaged into chylomicrons (CM) and enter the lymph system. Once the chylomicrons reach circulation, triglycerides are cleaved off to form chylomicron remnants (CM Rem). These are taken up by hepatocytes, where the retinyl esters are de-esterified to form retinol. The liver is the major storage site of vitamin A. For storage, the retinol will be transported from the hepatocytes to the stellate cells and converted back to retinyl esters, the storage form of vitamin A.

If vitamin A is needed to be released into circulation, retinol will combine with retinol binding protein (RBP). Retinol + RBP are then bound to a large transport protein, transthyretin (TTR). It is believed that retinol + RBP would be filtered out by the kidney and excreted in urine if it was not bound to TTR1.

After it is further metabolized, 60% of vitamin A is excreted in the urine, 40% in feces2.

### References & Links

1. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier. Stipanuk
2. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

## 12.63 Vitamin A Nuclear Receptors

Vitamin A, like vitamin D, has a nuclear receptor. Vitamin A technically has two nuclear receptors, the retinoic acid receptors (RARs) and retinoid X receptors (RXRs). Vitamin A, like polyunsaturated fatty acids, can be found in trans and cis forms, depending on the conformation of its double bonds. The ligand for RARs is all-trans-retinoic acid, and the ligand for RXRs is 9-cis retinoic acid.

As shown in the figure below, all-trans retinol is brought to the cell by RBP and TTR. All-trans retinol is converted to all-trans-retinal, and then to all-trans-retinoic acid. RAR and RXR are paired, or dimerized, on the retinoic acid response element (RARE) in the promoter region of target genes. The binding of all-trans retinoic acid causes the transcription and ultimately the translation of target proteins. This is why all-trans-retinoic acid is the active form of vitamin A because it is the ligand for RARs, leading to many of the biologic effects attributed to vitamin A.

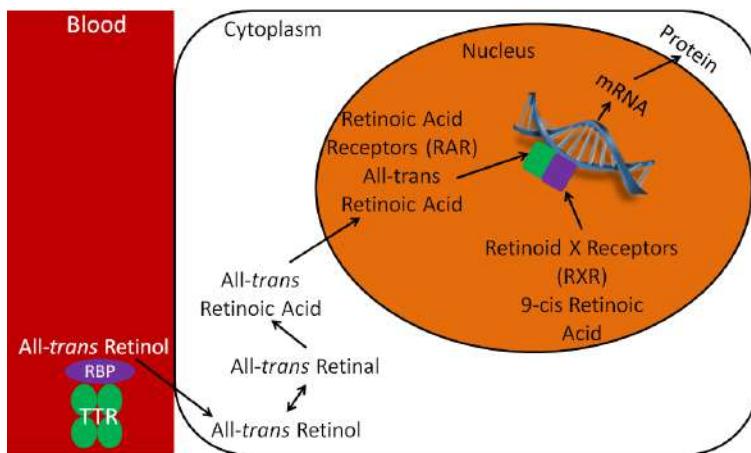


Figure 12.631 All-trans retinoic acid and retinoid X receptors

## No References

## 12.64 Vitamin A Functions

Vitamin A has a number of important functions in the body.

### Vision

The retina is the inner back lining of the eye that takes visual

images and turns them into nerve signals that are sent to the brain to form the images that we “see”, as shown in the following link1.

---

### **Web Link**

[Retina](#)

---

Inside the retina are the photoreceptor cells, rods and cones. Cones are responsible for color vision, while rods are important for seeing black and white. Within the rods, 11-cis retinal combines with the protein, opsin, to form rhodopsin. When light strikes rhodopsin, the compound splits into opsin and all-trans retinal. This sends a signal to your brain for us to “see”. This process is illustrated in the figure below1.

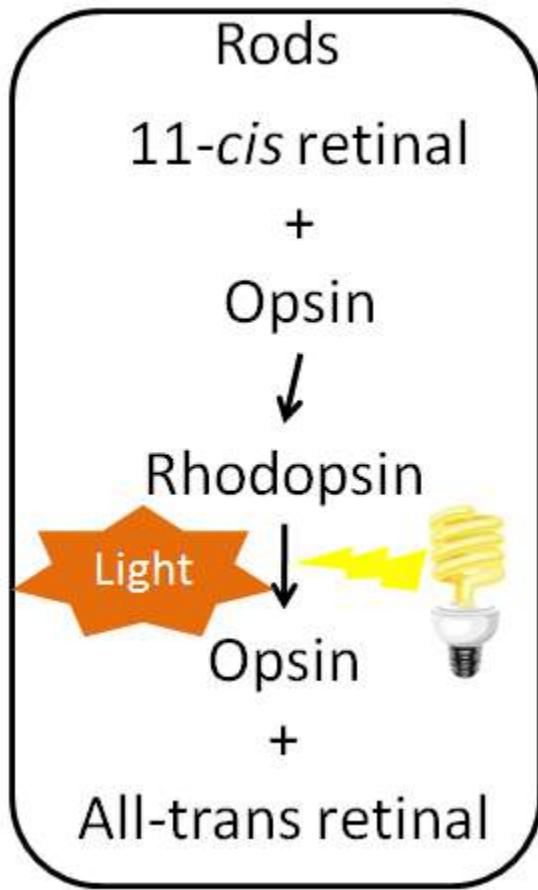


Figure 12.641 Vitamin A in the rod

Most all-trans retinal is converted back to 11-cis retinal through a series of steps so it can continue to be used to form rhodopsin. However, this recycling is not 100% efficient. Vitamin A stores, or continued intake, is required to provide the 11-cis retinal needed to continue to form rhodopsin. Normally, our eyes adapt to darkness by increasing the amount of rhodopsin available so we can see under reduced light conditions<sup>1</sup>. If a person does not have enough

rhodopsin he/she will become night blind, meaning his/her eyes do not adjust, or adjust very slowly, preventing he/she from seeing under limited light conditions. The picture below is an example of what night blindness looks like.



Figure 12.642 The left is normal vision, the right is what someone with night blindness would see2.

### Cell Differentiation

Vitamin A, in particular retinoic acid, is important for cell differentiation, or the ability of stem cells to develop into specialized cells.

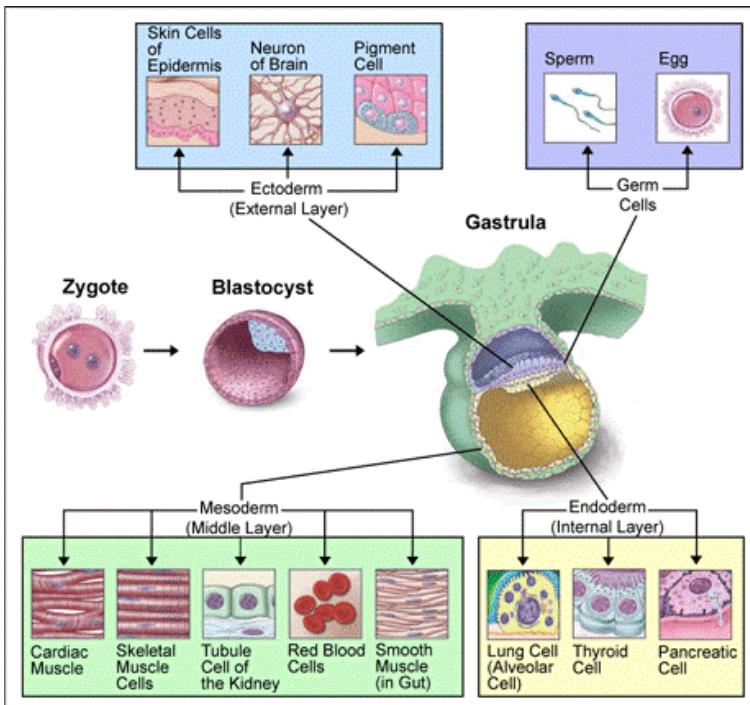


Figure 12.642 Cellular differentiation3

Other functions that vitamin A is important for include:

- Growth and development
- Reproduction
- Immune function

#### References & Links

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
2. [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:P360\\_Onderdendam\\_ged\\_nachtzicht\\_ns\\_nachtblind.jpg](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:P360_Onderdendam_ged_nachtzicht_ns_nachtblind.jpg)

3. <http://www.wikipremed.com/>  
[image.php?img=040601\\_68zzzz334000\\_Cell\\_differentiation\\_68.jpg&image\\_id=334000](http://www.wikipremed.com/index.php?img=040601_68zzzz334000_Cell_differentiation_68.jpg&image_id=334000)

## Links

Retina - <http://webvision.umh.es/webvision/imageswv/Sagschem.jpeg>

## 12.65 Vitamin A Deficiency & Toxicity

Vitamin A deficiency is rare in North America, but is a huge problem in developing countries. In many developing countries, they do not have a stable dietary source of retinoids or provitamin A carotenoids. The figure below gives you an idea of countries where vitamin A deficiency is a problem.



Figure 12.651 Prevalence of vitamin A deficiency worldwide<sup>1</sup>

Often the earliest symptom of vitamin A deficiency is night blindness, due to the insufficient production of rhodopsin. The reason that this is the earliest symptom, is that circulating vitamin A levels are homeostatically-controlled, meaning that they do not

change until after vitamin A stores are exhausted. This means that blood, serum, plasma measurements are going to appear normal until all stores are exhausted. As a result, sensitively assessing someone as vitamin A deficient can be challenging. There are further changes to the eye that occur during vitamin A deficiency, collectively referred to as xerophthalmia, which are shown in the link below.

---

#### **Web Link**

[The eye signs of vitamin A deficiency](#)

---

Ultimately the person can become blind. Vitamin A deficiency is the leading cause of blindness in some parts of the world<sup>2</sup>.

Another symptom of vitamin A deficiency is hyperkeratosis. In this condition, cells overproduce the protein keratin, causing the skin to become rough and irritated, as shown in the link below<sup>2</sup>.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Hyperkeratosis](#)

---

One way to counter vitamin A deficiency in developing countries is for staple crops, like rice and corn, to contain beta-carotene. In the case of rice, Golden Rice was genetically modified to produce beta-carotene. A second generation of golden rice, known as Golden Rice 2, has now been developed. However, politics and regulations have prevented it from being used. This is described in the first link. The second link is a nice figure that details the progress towards Golden Rice being used. The third link describes the issues with how some research with it was conducted. The fourth link is an opinion article that gives you a feel for the opposition to its use.

---

## **Web Links**

[Golden Rice](#)

[Golden Rice Project](#)

[Golden Rice Not So Golden for Tufts](#)

['Golden Rice': A Dengvaxia fiasco waiting to happen](#)

---

There are also corn varieties that have been bred to produce high amounts of beta-carotene, as described in the link below.

---

## **Web Link**

[New Yellow Corn Could Boost Vitamin A, Save Sight](#)

---

Vitamin A can be very toxic and can cause serious symptoms, such as blurred vision, liver abnormalities, skin disorders, and joint pain<sup>2,3</sup>. In addition, research has suggested that people who consume high levels of vitamin A are more prone to bone fractures<sup>2</sup>. Toxic levels of vitamin A are also teratogenic, which means they could cause birth defects.

This is important to keep in mind because a vitamin A derivative isotretinoin (13-cis retinoic acid) is the active ingredient in the oral acne medication, Accutane. Accutane is effective, as you can see in the video below.

---

## **Web Link**

[Video: Accutane \(1:10\)](#)

---

However, due to the number of adverse events reported from its consumption, Accutane was recalled from the US market in 2009<sup>4</sup>. Isotretinoin medications though are still commonly prescribed.

Retin-A is a topical product of all-trans-retinoic acid. Women of childbearing age need to exercise caution when using these products due to the risk of birth defects, should they become pregnant<sup>3</sup>. People should not consume huge doses of vitamin A expecting to get the same effects seen from these 2 medications<sup>5</sup>.

It is important to note that you cannot develop vitamin A toxicity

from consuming too much beta-carotene or other provitamin A carotenoids. Instead, a nontoxic condition known as carotenodermia occurs when large amounts of beta-carotene are consumed, where the accumulation of the carotenoid in the fat below the skin causes the skin to look orange, as shown in the link below.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Carotenodermia](#)

---

#### **References & Links**

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Vitamin\\_A\\_deficiency.PNG](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Vitamin_A_deficiency.PNG)
2. McGuire M, Beerman KA. (2011) Nutritional sciences: From fundamentals to food. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
3. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
4. <http://www.drugwatch.com/accutane/>
5. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2011) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.

#### **Links**

The eye signs of vitamin A deficiency - <http://www.cehjournal.org/article/the-eye-signs-of-vitamin-a-deficiency/>

Hyperkeratosis - [http://api.ning.com/files/pKcbIy8a8fSwvjlw-](http://api.ning.com/files/pKcbIy8a8fSwvjlw-NqcoyW-)  
[h1U9xsjxM86\\*Pg7xe7WAS91frtrQFTTh2oDWcMvbUJ9Mlutm3B9tXk8hjbfmXkeZyJs-7Mi/follicularhyperkeratosis1.jpg](http://api.ning.com/files/pKcbIy8a8fSwvjlw-NqcoyW-h1U9xsjxM86*Pg7xe7WAS91frtrQFTTh2oDWcMvbUJ9Mlutm3B9tXk8hjbfmXkeZyJs-7Mi/follicularhyperkeratosis1.jpg)

Golden Rice - <http://www.goldenrice.org/>  
'Golden Rice': A Dengvaxia fiasco waiting to happen - <http://opinion.inquirer.net/109834/golden-rice-dengvaxia-fiasco-waiting-happen#ixzz53FKBsYGO>

Golden Rice Project - <http://blog.daimonie.com/2017/03/lets-talk-about-gmos-part-two-what-are.html>

New Yellow Corn Could Boost Vitamin A, Save Sight -  
<http://www.npr.org/templates/story/story.php?storyId=18203237>

Carotenodermia - [http://4.bp.blogspot.com/\\_/7hHVSyD26Y/R8xxsFbRc0I/AAAAAAAEEs/I73lzYHNE5k/s1600-h/carotenodermia.jpg](http://4.bp.blogspot.com/_/7hHVSyD26Y/R8xxsFbRc0I/AAAAAAAEEs/I73lzYHNE5k/s1600-h/carotenodermia.jpg)

### Video

Accutane - <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=r93K-w2saPA>

## 12.7 Iron

There are 2 major dietary forms of iron: heme iron and non-heme iron. Heme iron is only found in foods of animal origin, within hemoglobin and myoglobin. The structure of heme iron is shown below.

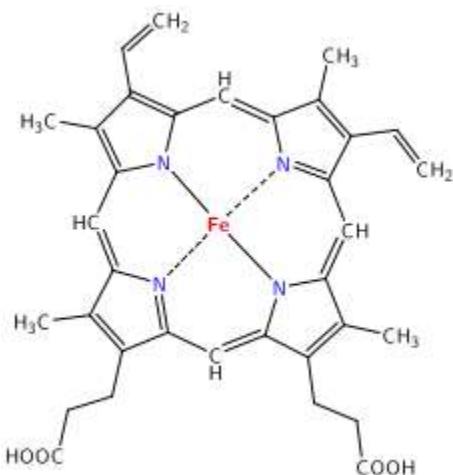


Figure 12.71 Structure of heme iron1

Approximately 40% of iron in meat, fish, and poultry is heme-iron, and the other 60% is non-heme iron<sup>2</sup>.

Non-heme iron is the mineral alone, in either its oxidized or reduced form. The 2 forms of iron are:

Ferric (Fe<sup>3+</sup>, oxidized)

Ferrous (Fe<sup>2+</sup>, reduced)

It is estimated that 25% of heme iron and 17% of non-heme iron are absorbed<sup>2</sup>. Approximately 85-90% of the iron we consume is non-heme iron<sup>2,3</sup>.

In addition to getting iron from food sources, if food is cooked in cast iron cookware, a small amount of iron can be transferred to the food.

Many breakfast cereals are fortified with reduced iron, which looks like iron filings, as the following video shows.

---

### **Web Link**

Video: Iron for breakfast (1:02)

---

While the iron bioavailability of this reduced iron is low, some is absorbed<sup>4</sup>.

### **Supplements**

Most iron supplements use ferrous (Fe<sup>2+</sup>) iron, because this form is better absorbed, as discussed in the next section. The figure below shows the percent of elemental iron in different supplements. This is the percentage of elemental iron that is in each compound.

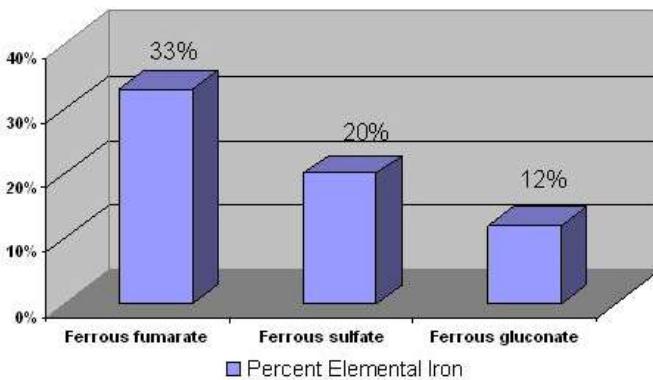


Figure 12.72 Elemental iron in different iron supplements3

Vitamin C does not increase absorption of ferrous supplements because they are already in reduced form, as discussed in the following subsection2. Iron chelates are marketed as being better absorbed than other forms of iron supplements, but this has not been proven5. It is recommended that supplements are not taken with meals, because they are better absorbed when not consumed with food2.

#### Subsections:

- 12.71 Iron Uptake & Absorption
- 12.72 Iron Transport & Storage
- 12.73 Iron Functions
- 12.74 Iron Deficiency & Toxicity

#### **References & Links**

1. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Heme.svg>
2. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2011) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
3. <http://foodfix.ca/health.php#en65>
4. Garcia-Casal M, Layrisse M, Pena-Rosas J, Ramirez J, Leets I, et

- al. (2003) Iron absorption from elemental iron-fortified corn flakes in humans. role of vitamins A and C1-3. Nutr Res 23(4): 451-463.
5. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

### Video

Iron for breakfast - <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=pRK15XSqtAw>

## 12.71 Iron Uptake & Absorption

There are 2 transporters for iron, one for heme iron and one for non-heme iron. The non-heme transporter is the divalent mineral transporter 1 (DMT1), which transports Fe<sup>2+</sup> into the enterocyte. Heme iron is taken up through heme carrier protein 1 (HCP-1), and then metabolized to Fe<sup>2+</sup>. Fe<sup>2+</sup> may be used by enzymes and other proteins or stored in the enterocyte bound to ferritin, the iron storage protein. To reach circulation, iron is transported through ferroportin1,2. This process is summarized in the figure below.

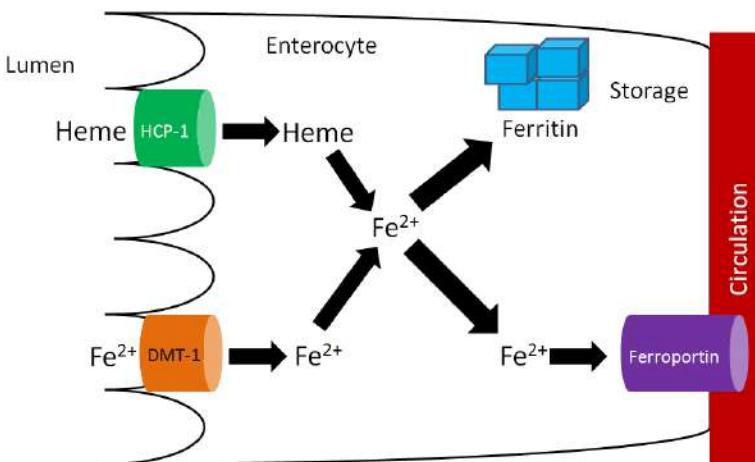


Figure 12.711 Iron uptake into the enterocyte

Since only the reduced form of non-heme iron ( $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ ) is taken up,  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  must be reduced. There is a reductase enzyme on the brush border, duodenal cytochrome b (Dcytb), that catalyzes the reduction of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  to  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ , as shown below. Vitamin C enhances non-heme iron absorption because it is required by Dcytb for this reaction. Thus, if dietary non-heme iron is consumed with vitamin C, more non-heme iron will be reduced to  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  and taken up into the enterocyte through DMT1.

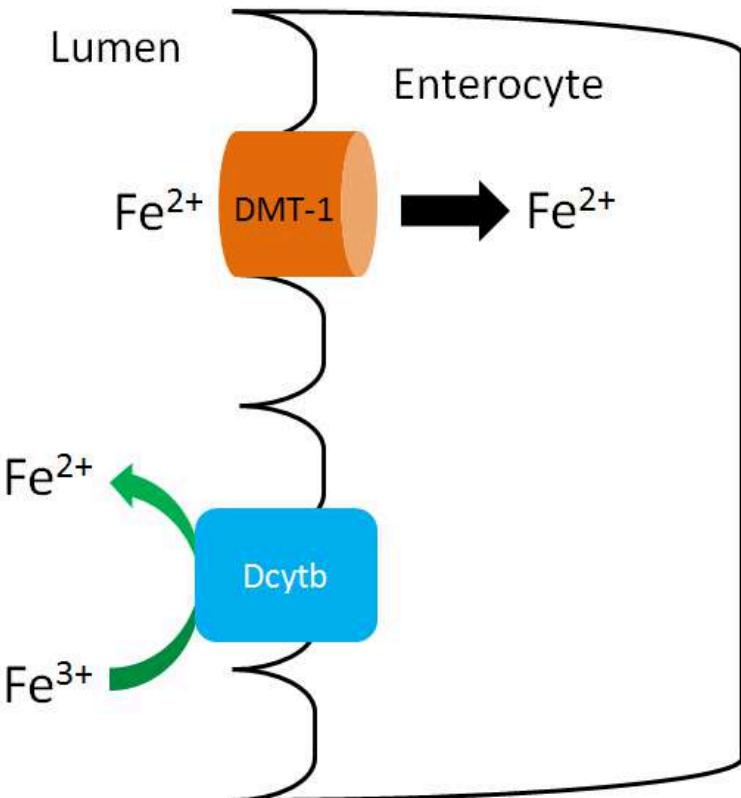


Figure 12.712 Reduction of non-heme iron by Dcytb

In addition to vitamin C, there is an unidentified factor in muscle that enhances non-heme iron absorption if consumed at the same meal<sup>3</sup>. This unidentified factor is referred to as meat protein factor (MPF). The table shows how MPF can increase non-heme iron absorption.

Table 12.711 Non-heme iron absorption from chicken or beef muscle fraction<sup>3</sup>

Mean Fe Absorption (% of Dose)	Egg Albumin	Whole Muscle	Whole Muscle Protein	Heme-Free Muscle Protein
Chicken	8.41	16.43	26.98	36.81
Beef	11.21	31.52	44.15	38.29

Albumin is a protein, so the egg albumin represents a non-meat protein standard for comparison. You can see that absorption is much higher with whole muscle. When only consuming muscle protein, there is a slight increase from muscle itself, and when they look at heme-free muscle iron, absorption is still higher than egg albumin3.

Inhibitors of non-heme iron absorption typically chelate, or bind, the iron to prevent absorption. Phytates (phytic acid), which also inhibit calcium absorption, chelate non-heme iron decreasing its absorption.

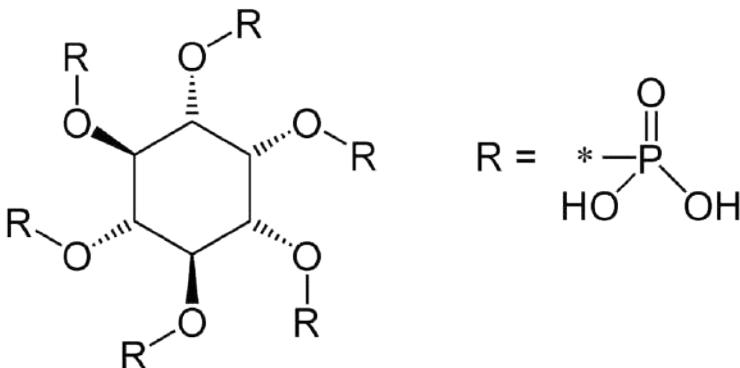


Figure 12.713 Structure of phytic acid4

Other compounds that inhibit absorption are:

Polyphenols (coffee, tea)1

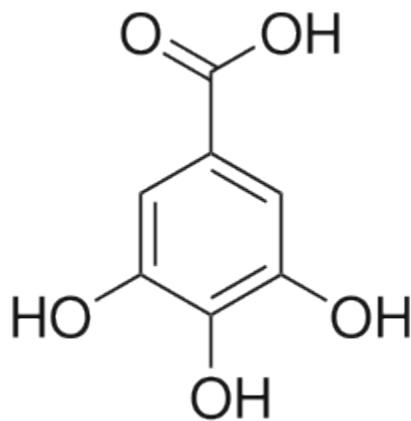


Figure 12.714 Structure of gallic acid, a polyphenol<sup>5</sup>

Oxalate (spinach, rhubarb, sweet potatoes, and dried beans)<sup>2</sup>

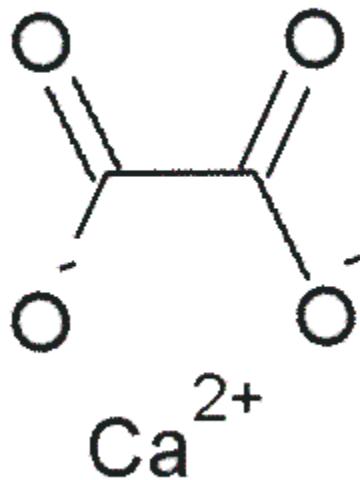


Figure 12.715 Structure of calcium oxalate

Calcium is also believed to inhibit iron uptake.

#### References & Links

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. Shils ME, Shike M, Ross AC, Caballero B, Cousins RJ, editors. (2006) Modern nutrition in health and disease. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
3. Hurrell R, Reddy M, Juillerat M, Cook J. (2006) Meat protein fractions enhance nonheme iron absorption in humans. *J Nutr* 136(11): 2808-2812.
4. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Phytic\\_acid.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Phytic_acid.png)
5. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gallic\\_acid.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gallic_acid.svg)

6. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Calcium\\_oxalate.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Calcium_oxalate.png)

## 12.72 Iron Transport & Storage

Transferrin is the major iron transport protein (transports iron through blood).  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  is the form of iron that binds to transferrin, so the  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  transported through ferroportin must be oxidized to  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ . There are 2 copper-containing proteins that catalyze this oxidation of  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ : hephaestin and ceruloplasmin. Hephaestin is found in the membrane of enterocytes, while ceruloplasmin is the major copper transport protein in blood. Hephaestin is the primary protein that performs this function in a coupled manner (occur together) with transport through ferroportin. This means that the  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  being transported through ferroportin is oxidized by hephaestin. Evidence suggests that ceruloplasmin is involved in oxidizing  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  when iron status is low<sup>1</sup>. Once oxidized,  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  binds to transferrin and is transported to a tissue cell that contains a transferrin receptor. Transferrin binds to the transferrin receptor and is endocytosed, as shown below<sup>2</sup>.

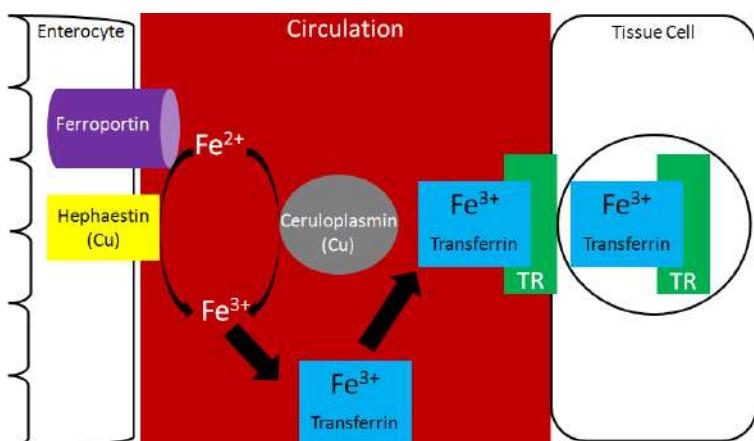


Figure 12.721 Transport and uptake of iron

Once inside cells, the iron can be used for cellular purposes (cofactor for enzyme etc.) or it can be stored in the iron storage proteins ferritin or hemosiderin. Ferritin is the primary iron storage protein, but at higher concentrations, iron is also stored in hemosiderin.

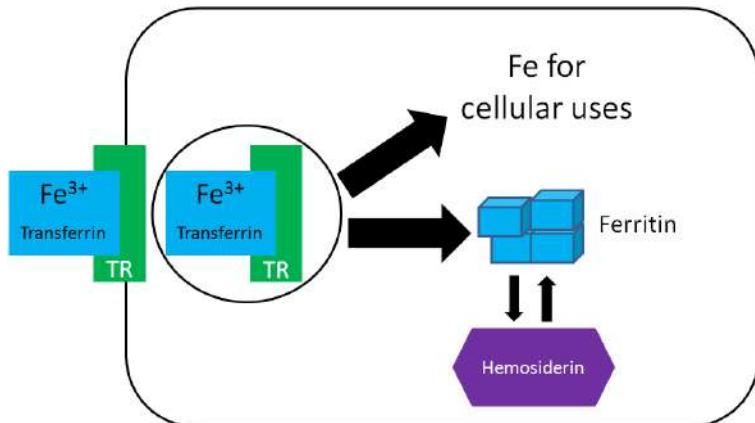


Figure 12.722 Fates of iron within cells

There are 3 major compartments of iron in the body:

1. Functional Iron
2. Storage Iron
3. Transport Iron

Functional iron consists of iron performing some function. There are 3 functional iron subcompartments.

1. Hemoglobin
2. Myoglobin
3. Iron-containing enzymes

The functions of these subcompartments are discussed in the next section.

Iron Stores consist of:

1. Ferritin
2. Hemosiderin

The liver is the primary storage site in the body, with the spleen and bone marrow being the other major storage sites.

Circulating iron is found in transferrin.<sup>3</sup>

The following table shows how much iron is distributed among the different compartments.

Table 12.721 Iron Distribution in adults (mg Fe/kg body weight)<sup>3</sup>

	Men	Women
Functional iron		
Hemoglobin	32	28
Myoglobin	5	4
Fe-containing enzymes	1-2	1-2
Storage iron		
Ferritin and hemosiderin	~11	~6
Transport iron		
Transferrin	0.04	0.04

Hopefully you notice that the majority of iron is in the functional iron compartment. The figure below further reinforces this point, showing that most iron is found in red blood cells (hemoglobin) and tissues (myoglobin).

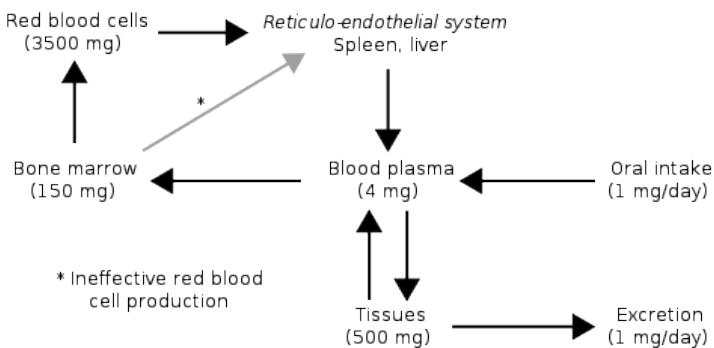


Figure 12.723 Iron distribution in different compartments<sup>4</sup>

Also notice how small oral intake and excretion are compared to the amount found in the different compartments in the body. As a result, iron recycling is really important, because red blood cells only live for 120 days. Red blood cells are broken down in the liver, spleen, and bone marrow and the iron can be used for the same purposes as described earlier: cellular use, storage, or transported to another tissue on transferrin<sup>2</sup>. Most of this iron will be used for heme and ultimately red blood cell synthesis. The figure below summarizes the potential uses of iron recycled from red blood cells.

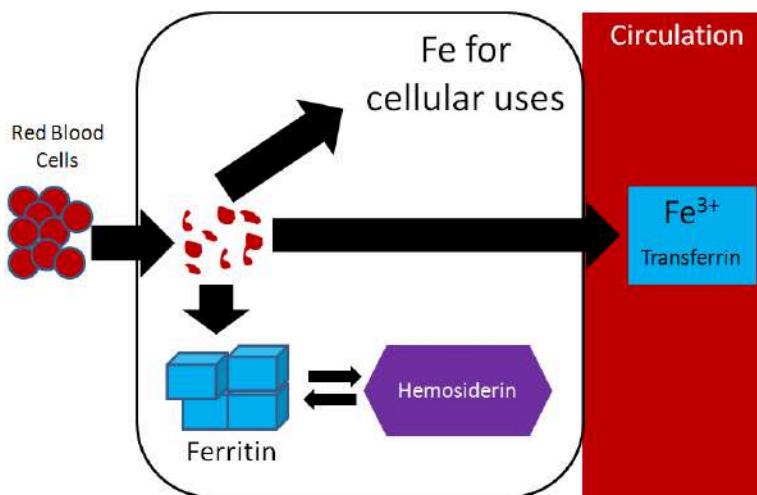


Figure 12.724 Iron recycling from red blood cells

Iron is unique among minerals in that our body has limited excretion ability. Thus, absorption is controlled by the hormone hepcidin. The liver has an iron sensor so when iron levels get high, this sensor signals for the release of hepcidin. Hepcidin causes degradation of ferroportin. Thus, the iron is not able to be transported into circulation5.

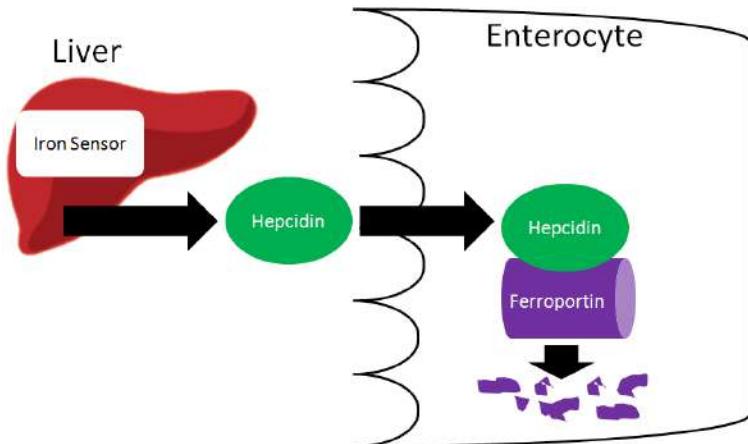


Figure 12.725 Action of hepcidin4

The iron is now trapped in the enterocyte, which is eventually sloughed off and excreted in feces. Thus, iron absorption is decreased through the action of hepcidin.

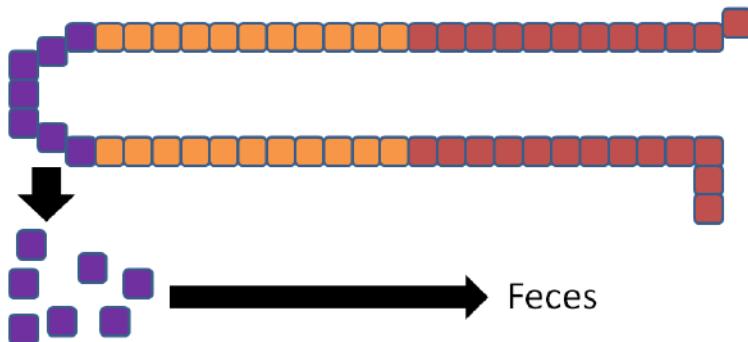


Figure 12.726 Enterocytes are sloughed off the villus and unless digested and their components reabsorbed, they will be excreted in feces

## References & Links

1. Yehuda S, Mostofsky DI (2010) Iron Deficiency and Overload: From Basic Biology to Clinical Medicine. New York, NY. Humana Press.
2. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
3. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
4. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Iron\\_metabolism.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Iron_metabolism.svg)
5. Nemeth E, Ganz T. (2006) Regulation of iron metabolism by hepcidin. Annu Rev Nutr 26: 323-342.

## 12.73 Iron Functions

As we talked about in the previous subsection, there are 3 primary functional iron subcompartments.

1. Hemoglobin
2. Myoglobin
3. Iron-containing enzymes

Hemoglobin contains heme that is responsible for red blood cells' red color. Hemoglobin carries oxygen to tissues. The function of hemoglobin can be seen in the link below.

---

### Web Link

[Hemoglobin](#)

---

Myoglobin is similar to hemoglobin in that it can bind oxygen. However, instead of being found in blood, it is found in muscle. The color of meat products is a result of the state that myoglobin is in, as shown in the link below.

---

**Web Link****Myoglobin & Meat Color**

---

There are a number of enzymes that use iron as a cofactor. We've already talked about two in this class.

Iron is a cofactor for the antioxidant enzyme, catalase, that converts hydrogen peroxide to water, as shown below.

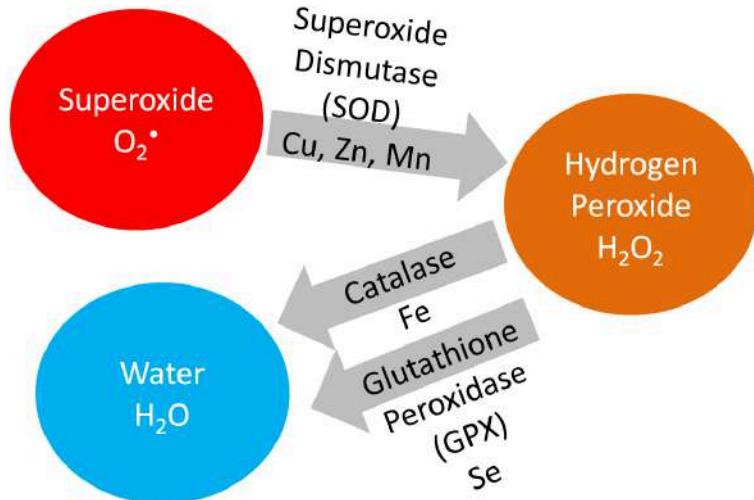


Figure 12.731 Catalase uses iron as a cofactor

Iron is also a cofactor for proline and lysyl hydroxylases that are important in collagen cross-linking. This will be discussed further in the vitamin C section. The function of these enzymes is shown below.

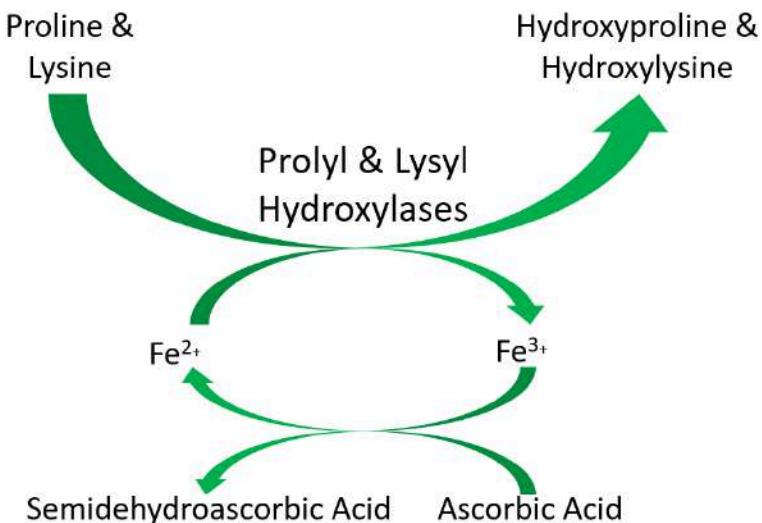


Figure 12.732 Importance of ascorbic acid and iron to proline and lysyl hydroxylases.

Heme iron is also found in cytochromes, like cytochrome c in the electron transport chain as shown below1.

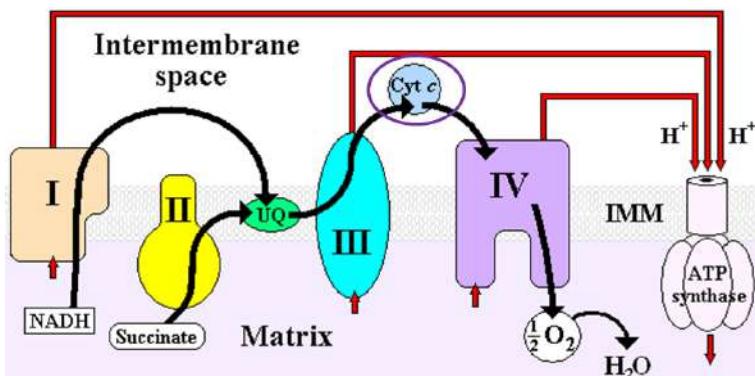


Figure 12.733 Cytochrome c in the electron transport chain contains

### References & Links

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. <http://wikidoc.org/index.php/File:ETC.PNG>

### Links

Hemoglobin – [http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/  
imagepages/19510.htm](http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/imagepages/19510.htm)

Myoglobin & Meat Color –  
<http://meatisneat.files.wordpress.com/2009/09/slide11.jpg>

## 12.74 Iron Deficiency & Toxicity

The levels of iron in the different compartments is illustrated by the figure below. The red above the table is meant to represent the amount of iron in the different compartments. In early negative iron balance stage, iron stores are slightly depleted. Once the stores are almost completely exhausted, this state is referred to as iron depletion. In iron deficiency, stores are completely exhausted and the circulating and functional iron levels are also depleted. In iron anemia, the circulating and functional iron levels are further depleted from iron-deficiency.

- 1 Great measure, but invasive
- 2 Small amount are released from liver, bone, and spleen – proportional to body stores
- 3 Also referred to as total iron-binding capacity



Measure	Normal	Early Negative Iron Balance	Iron Depletion	Iron-Deficient	Iron Anemia
Bone Marrow Iron <sup>1</sup>	2-3	1+	0-1+	0	0
Plasma ferritin <sup>2</sup> ( $\mu\text{g/L}$ )	100 $\pm$ 60	<25	20	10	<10
Transferrin iron-binding capacity <sup>3</sup> ( $\mu\text{g/dL}$ )	330 $\pm$ 30	330-360	360	390	410
Serum Transferrin Saturation (%)	35 $\pm$ 15	30	30	<15	<15
Plasma Iron	115 $\pm$ 50	<120	115	<60	<40

Figure 12.741 Measures of iron status<sup>1-3</sup>

The most common measures of iron status are hemoglobin concentrations and hematocrit (described below) levels. A decreased amount of either measure indicates iron deficiency, but these two measures are among the last to indicate that iron status is depressed. This is because, as you can see in the figure above, circulating iron (plasma iron) levels are not altered until you reach iron deficiency. Thus, other measures are likely better choices<sup>1</sup>.

The hematocrit, as illustrated in the figure below, is a measure of the proportion of red blood cells (erythrocytes) as compared to all other components of blood. The components are separated by a centrifuge. The red blood cells remain at the bottom of the tube. They can be quantified by measuring the packed cell volume (PCV) relative to the total whole blood volume.

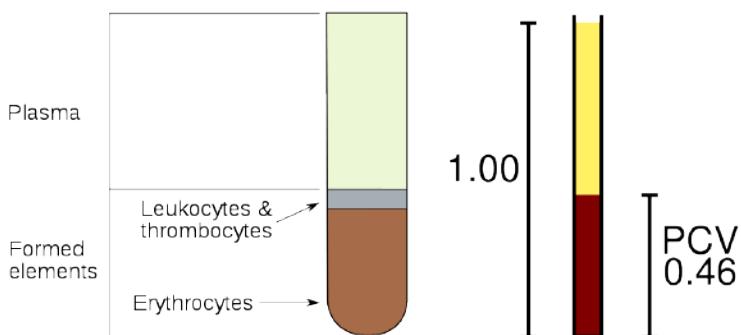


Figure 12.742 Hematocrit figures4,5

One of the best measures of iron status is bone marrow iron, but this is an invasive measure, and is therefore not commonly used. Plasma ferritin, the iron storage protein, is also found in lower amounts in the blood (plasma) and is a good indicator of iron stores. Thus, it is a sensitive measure to determine if someone is in negative iron balance or iron depleted. It is not as useful of a measure beyond this stage because the iron stores have been exhausted for the most part. Transferrin iron binding capacity (aka total iron binding capacity), as it sounds, is a measure of how much iron transferrin can bind. An increase in transferrin iron binding capacity indicates deficiency (>400 indicates deficiency). But the best measure for deficiency or anemia is either percent serum transferrin saturation or plasma iron. A lower % saturation means that less of the transferrin are saturated or carrying the maximum amount of iron that they can handle. Plasma iron is easily understood as the amount of iron within the plasma<sup>1</sup>.

Iron deficiency is the most common deficiency worldwide, estimated to affect 1.6 billion people. In the US, it is less common, but an estimated 10% of toddlers and women of childbearing age are deficient. Iron deficiency often results in a microcytic (small cell), hypochromic (low color) anemia, that is a result of decreased hemoglobin production. With decreased hemoglobin, the red blood

cells cannot carry as much oxygen. Decreased oxygen leads to slower metabolism. Thus, a person with this anemia feels fatigued, weak, apathetic, and can experience headaches<sup>6</sup>. Other side effects include decreased immune function and delayed cognitive development in children<sup>7</sup>.

Those who are particularly at risk are<sup>1,7</sup>:

Women of childbearing age – because of losses due to menstruation

Pregnant women – because of increased blood volume

Vegetarians – because they do not consume heme iron sources

Infants – because they have low iron stores that can quickly be depleted

To give you a better understanding of these risks, it is helpful to look at how much higher the RDAs are for women of reproductive age and pregnant women compared to men<sup>8</sup>.

Women of reproductive age	18 mg/day
---------------------------	-----------

Pregnancy	27 mg/day
-----------	-----------

Men	8 mg/day
-----	----------

To put this in perspective, 3 oz of beef contains ~3 mg of iron. Thus, it can be a challenge for some women to meet the requirement. The RDA committee estimates the iron requirements to be 80% and 70% higher for vegans and endurance athletes, respectively. The increased requirement for endurance athletes is based on loss due to “foot strike hemolysis”, or the increased rupture of red blood cells due to the striking of the foot on hard surfaces<sup>3</sup>.

Iron toxicity is rare in adults, but can occur in children who consume too many supplements containing iron. Symptoms of this acute toxicity include nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea<sup>7</sup>.

50 out of 10,000 newborns in the United States are born with the genetic condition, hemochromatosis. In this condition, there is a mutation in a protein in the enterocyte that prevents the normal decrease of intestinal iron absorption. Without this protein these individuals cannot decrease iron absorption. Since the body cannot

excrete iron, it accumulates in tissues, and ultimately can result in organ failure<sup>1</sup>.

### References & Links

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. Stipanuk MH. (2006) Biochemical, physiological, & molecular aspects of human nutrition. St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.
3. McGuire M, Beerman KA. (2011) Nutritional sciences: From fundamentals to food. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
4. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Illu\\_blood\\_components.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Illu_blood_components.svg)
5. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Packed\\_cell\\_volume\\_diagram.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Packed_cell_volume_diagram.svg)
6. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2011) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
7. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
8. Anonymous. (2001) Dietary reference intakes for vitamin A, vitamin K, arsenic, boron, chromium, copper, iodine, iron, manganese, molybdenum, nickel, silicon, vanadium, and zinc. Washington, D.C.: National Academies Press.

## 12.8 Zinc

Many animal products are good sources of zinc and are estimated to account for 70% of the zinc North Americans' consume<sup>1</sup>. An estimated 15-40% of consumed zinc is absorbed<sup>2</sup>. Zinc is taken up into the enterocyte through the Zir-and Irt-like protein 4 (ZIP4). Once inside the enterocyte, zinc can:

1. Bind to the zinc storage protein thionein. Once thionein has

bound a mineral (or a metal) it is known as metallothionein.

2. Be used for functional purposes.
3. Bind to the cysteine-rich intestinal protein (CRIP) where it is shuttled to a zinc transporter (ZnT). After moving through the basolateral membrane, zinc primarily binds to the circulating protein albumin3.

These functions are represented in the figure below.

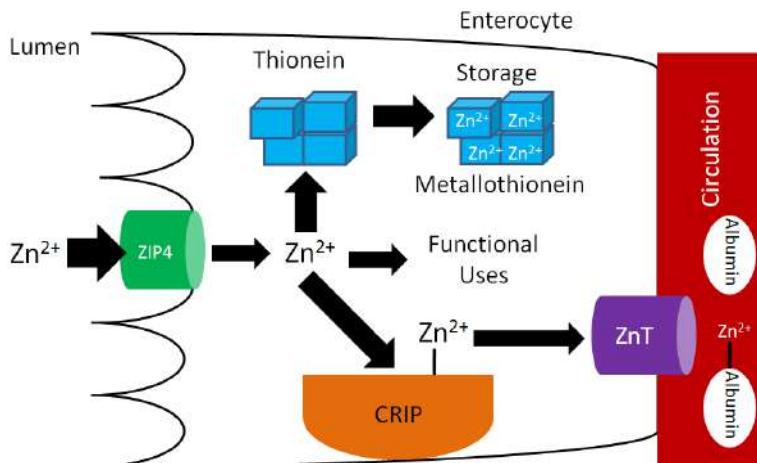


Figure 12.81 Fates of zinc once it is taken up into the enterocyte

The zinc attached to albumin is transported to the liver through the portal vein. There is not a major storage site of zinc, but there are pools of zinc in the liver, bone, pancreas, and kidney1. Zinc is primarily excreted in feces.

There are some similarities between zinc and iron absorption. Increased zinc consumption results in increased thionein synthesis in the enterocyte. As a result, more zinc is bound to thionein (forming metallothionein) and not used for functional uses or transported into circulation, as represented by the thick and thin arrows in the figure below.

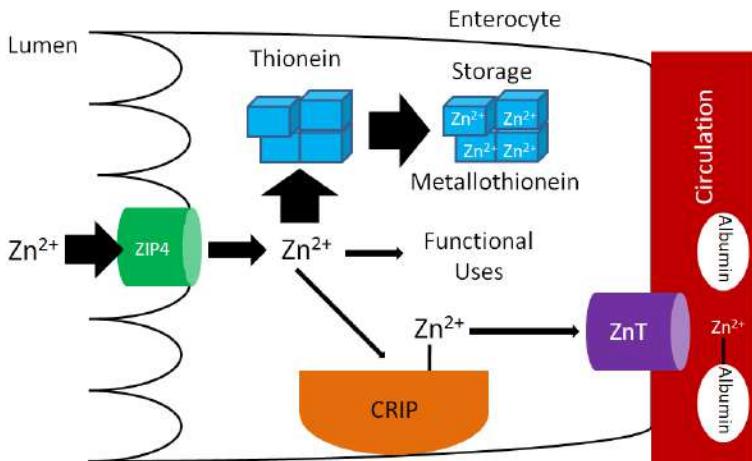


Figure 12.82 Fate of zinc under high zinc status

The enterocytes are then sloughed off preventing the bound zinc from being absorbed.

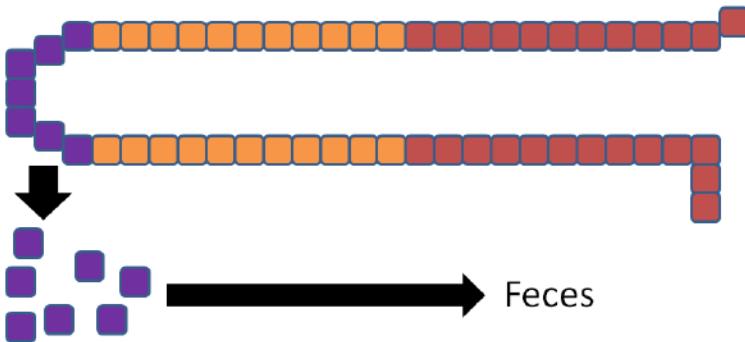


Figure 12.83 Enterocytes are sloughed off and excreted in feces.

There are a number of inhibitors of zinc absorption:

Phytate (phytic acid), which inhibits calcium and iron absorption, also binds to and inhibits zinc absorption<sup>3</sup>.

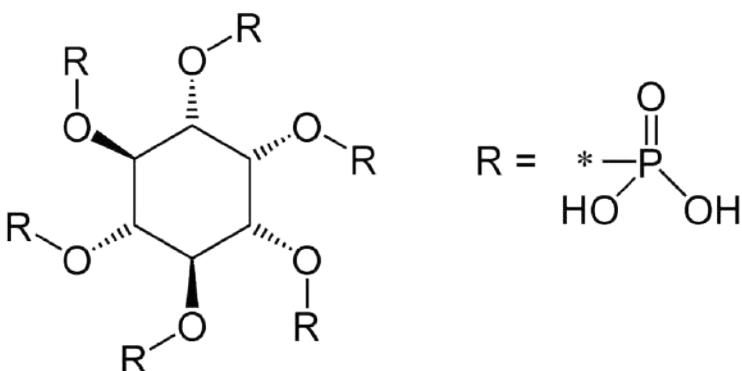


Figure 12.84 Phytic acid structure<sup>4</sup>

Polyphenols (coffee, tea)<sup>3</sup>

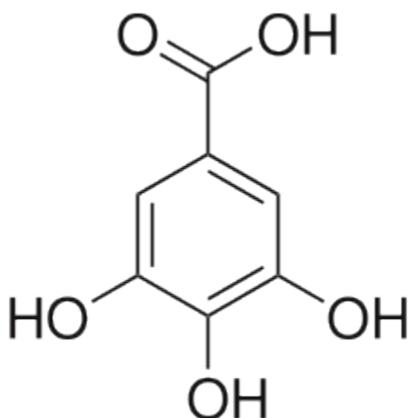


Figure 12.85 Structure of the polyphenol gallic acid<sup>5</sup>

Oxalate (spinach, rhubarb, sweet potatoes, and dried beans)<sup>3</sup>

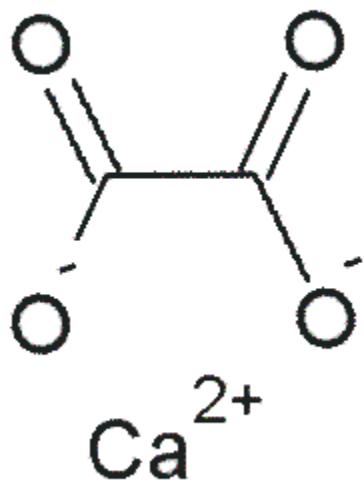


Figure 12.86 Structure of calcium oxalate<sup>6</sup>

Non-heme iron also inhibits zinc absorption.

In supplements, zinc is found as<sup>3,7</sup>:

Zinc oxide – 80% zinc

Zinc chloride – 23% zinc

Zinc sulfate – 23% zinc

Zinc gluconate – 14.3% zinc

Zinc oxide is the least bioavailable form, but since it is 80% zinc, it is commonly used in supplements<sup>7</sup>.

Subsections:

12.81 Zinc Functions

12.82 Zinc Deficiency & Toxicity

**References & Links**

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
2. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2011) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
3. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
4. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Phytic\\_acid.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Phytic_acid.png)
5. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gallic\\_acid.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gallic_acid.svg)
6. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Calcium\\_oxalate.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Calcium_oxalate.png)
7. Bowman BA, Russell RM, editors. (2006) Present knowledge in nutrition. Washington, DC: International Life Sciences Institute Press.

## 12.81 Zinc Functions

Zinc is a cofactor for up to 300 enzymes in the body<sup>1</sup>. Enzymes that use zinc as a cofactor are known as metalloenzymes.

Zinc is a cofactor for the antioxidant enzyme superoxide dismutase that converts superoxide to hydrogen peroxide, as shown below.

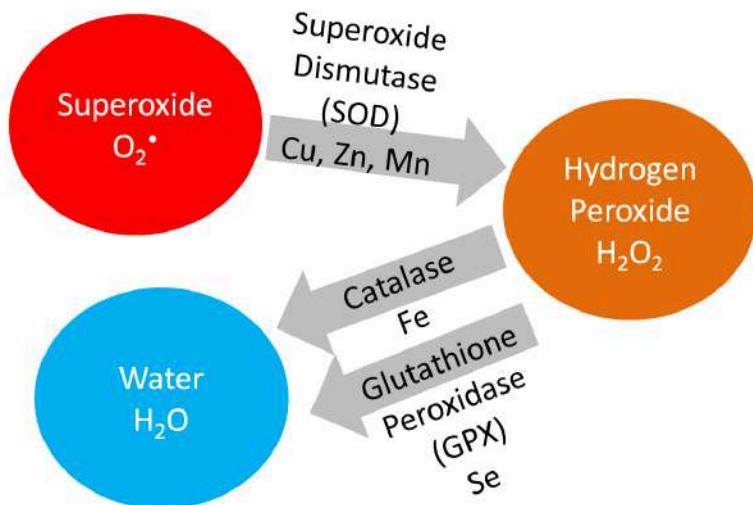
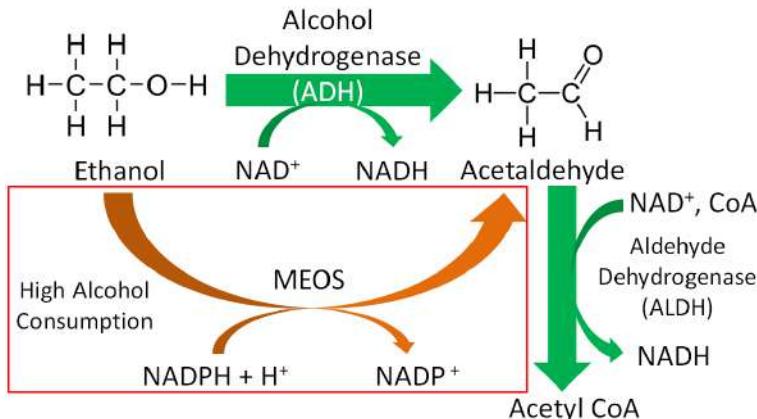


Figure 12.811 Superoxide dismutase uses zinc as a cofactor

Alcohol dehydrogenase uses 4 zincs per enzyme. Its role in ethanol metabolism is shown below2.



MEOS – Microsomal Ethanol Oxidizing System

Figure 12.812 Ethanol metabolism3,4

Delta-aminolevulinic acid dehydratase (ALA dehydrogenase), which is involved in heme synthesis, uses 8 zincs/enzyme to form porphobilinogen, as shown below<sup>2</sup>.

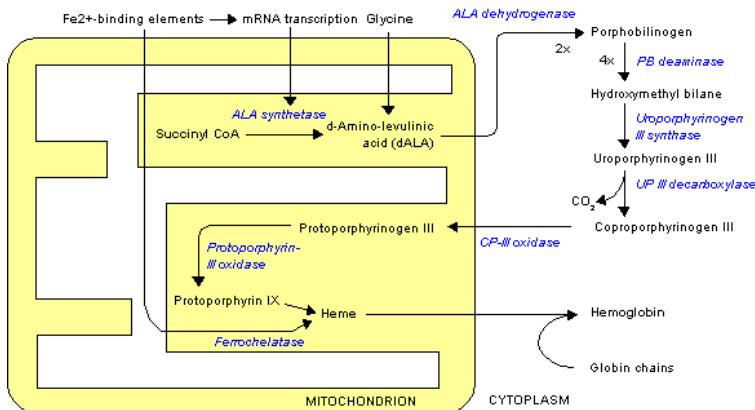


Figure 12.813 ALA dehydrogenase requires zinc in the heme synthesis pathway<sup>5</sup>

The enzyme that cleaves the extra glutamates from folate so that it can be taken up into the enterocyte is a metalloenzyme<sup>2</sup>. The cleavage of folate is shown in the figure below.

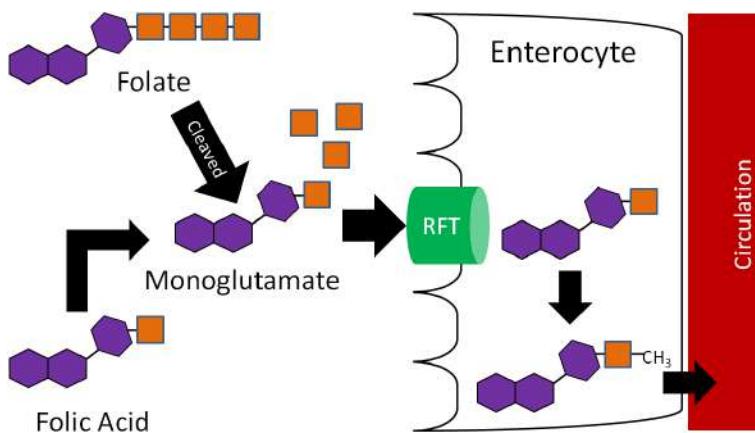


Figure 12.814 The absorption of folate and folic acid

Other notable metalloenzymes include DNA and RNA polymerase2.

Zinc is also important for the formation of zinc fingers in proteins.

Zinc fingers help proteins bind to DNA2.

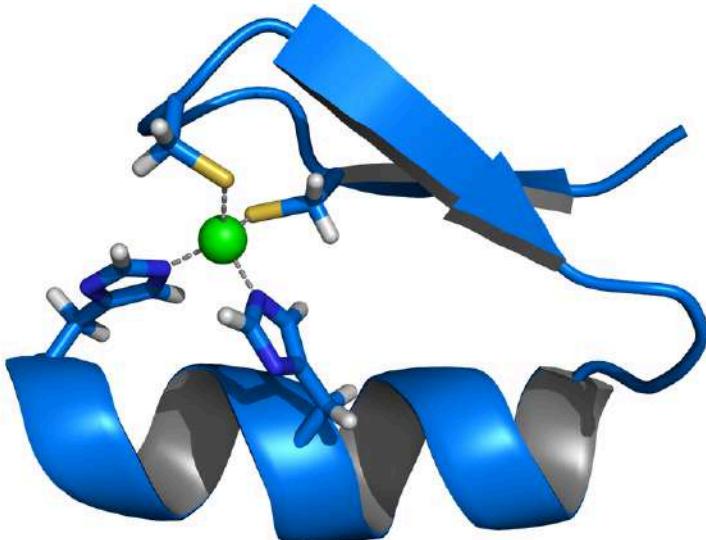


Figure 12.815 Structure of a zinc finger, zinc is the green atom bound in the center6

Zinc is also important for growth, immune function, and reproduction2.

A recent Cochrane review concluded that when taken within 24 hours of the onset of symptoms, that zinc lozenges or syrup results in a significant decrease in the duration and severity of common cold symptoms7. Thus, commonly used zinc lozenges may be an effective way to combat the common cold. However, large amounts of zinc consumption can be problematic for copper and ultimately iron levels in the body, as described in the copper section.

#### References & Links

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009)

- Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
- 2. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
  - 3. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Ethanol\\_flat\\_structure.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Ethanol_flat_structure.png)
  - 4. <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Acetaldehyde#/media/File:Acetaldehyde-2D-flat.svg>
  - 5. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Heme\\_synthesis.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Heme_synthesis.png)
  - 6. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Zinc\\_finger\\_rendered.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Zinc_finger_rendered.png)
  - 7. Singh M, Das RR. (2011) Zinc for the common cold (Review). The Cochrane Collaboration.

## 12.82 Zinc Deficiency & Toxicity

As can be seen on the bottom map in the link below, the risk of zinc deficiency is low in North America, but there are other places in the world where it is much more common.

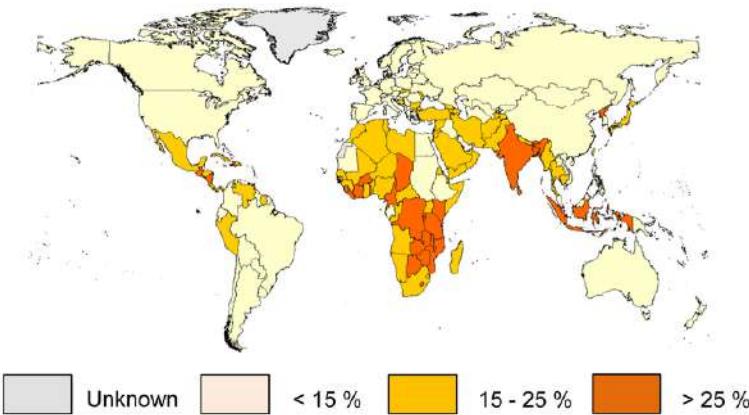


Figure 12.82 Worldwide prevalence of zinc deficiency<sup>1</sup>

At particular risk are children, pregnant women, elderly and the poor<sup>1</sup>. Symptoms of zinc deficiency include<sup>2,3</sup>:

- Growth inhibition
- Delayed sexual maturation
- Dermatitis
- Hair loss
- Impaired immune function
- Skeletal abnormalities

In the link below you can see a picture of an infant with dermatitis caused by zinc deficiency.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Zinc Deficiency Dermatitis](#)

---

Another cause of zinc deficiency is mutation of ZIP4 that results in the condition acrodermatitis enteropathica. Without ZIP4, zinc cannot be taken up efficiently into the enterocyte. This condition is managed by administering very high levels of zinc, some of which is absorbed through other mechanisms<sup>3</sup>.

Zinc toxicity is not common, but an acute toxicity results in<sup>2</sup>:

- Nausea
- Vomiting
- Intestinal cramps
- Diarrhea

Chronic toxicity can result in copper deficiency, as will be discussed in the copper section<sup>3</sup>.

#### **References & Links**

1. Wessells KR, Brown KH. (2012) Estimating the Global Prevalence of Zinc Deficiency: Results Based on Zinc Availability in National Food Supplies and the Prevalence of Stunting. PLoS ONE 7(11): e50568
2. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

3. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

### Links

Zinc Deficiency - <http://www.izincg.org/publications/deficiency>

Zinc Deficiency Dermatitis - <http://img.tfd.com/mosbycam/thumbs/50029X-fx3.jpg>

## 12.9 Copper

Like iron, copper is found in 2 forms:

1. Cupric ( $Cu^{2+}$ ), oxidized
2. Cuprous ( $Cu^{1+}$ ), reduced

$Cu^{1+}$  is the form that is primarily absorbed, thus  $Cu^{2+}$  is reduced to  $Cu^{1+}$  in the lumen. It is believed that, like iron, enzymatic reduction of  $Cu^{2+}$  is stimulated by ascorbate. The exact transporter that takes up the copper into the enterocyte is not known. It may be DMT1 that takes up non-heme iron. Once inside the enterocyte,  $Cu^{1+}$  can:

1. Bind to thionein to form metallothionein. While zinc is a better stimulator of thionein levels, copper is actually a more avid binder to this protein.
2. Be used for functional uses discussed in the next subsection.
3. Transported across the cell by an unknown carrier and then exported by ATP7A, an ATPase transporter.

Like zinc, copper is transported through the portal vein to the liver bound to albumin, as shown below. Albumin has a high affinity for  $Cu^{2+}$ , so  $Cu^{1+}$  is oxidized before transported to albumin through ATP7A, as illustrated below.

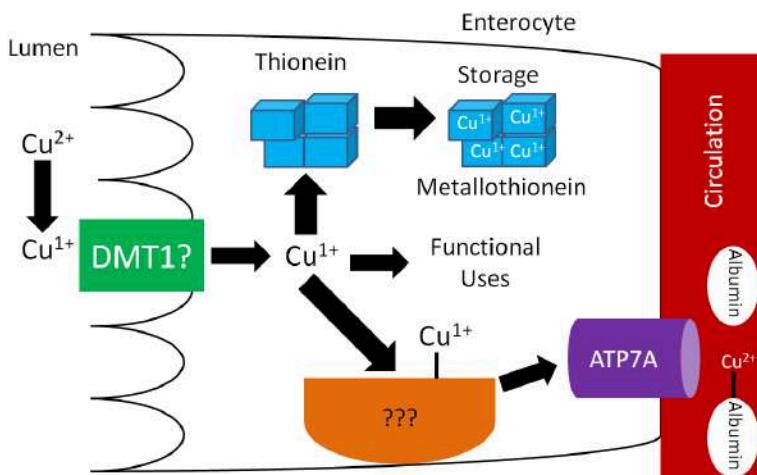


Figure 12.91 Copper absorption

Like zinc, there is not much storage of copper in the body. The liver is the primary site of storage, where copper is taken up through an unknown transporter. If it is going to be stored, it will bind with thionein to form metallothionein. Copper to be sent out to the body is transferred to the copper transport protein ceruloplasmin, which can bind 6 coppers/protein as shown below<sup>1</sup>.

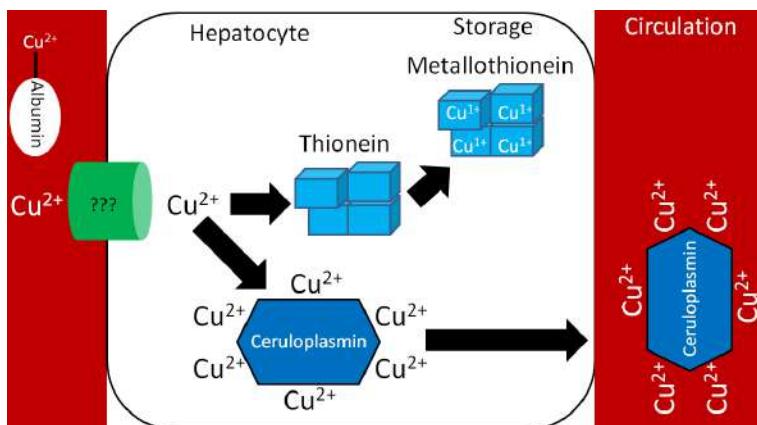


Figure 12.92 Copper in the hepatocyte

Legumes, whole grains, nuts, shellfish, and seeds are good sources of copper<sup>2</sup>. It is estimated that over 50% of copper consumed is absorbed<sup>1</sup>. Copper is primarily excreted in the feces.

There are number of different forms of copper used in supplements:

- Copper sulfate (25% copper)
- Cupric chloride (47% copper)
- Cupric acetate (35% copper)
- Copper carbonate (57% copper)
- Cupric oxide (80% copper)

All of these forms of copper are bioavailable, except cupric oxide. Assays have shown that it is not absorbed at all. Nevertheless, some supplements still use this form of copper<sup>1,3</sup>.

Subsections:

- 12.91 Copper Functions
- 12.92 Copper Deficiency & Toxicity
- 12.93 How High Zinc Intake Can Lead to Iron & Copper Deficiencies

#### **References & Links**

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2011) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
3. Baker DH. (1999) Cupric oxide should not be used as a copper supplement for either animals or humans. J Nutr 129(12): 2278-2279.

## **12.91 Copper Functions**

Copper has a number of functions that are described and shown below.

Two copper-containing proteins, ceruloplasmin and hephaestin,

oxidize  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  to  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ .  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  is the form that binds to transferrin, as shown below1.

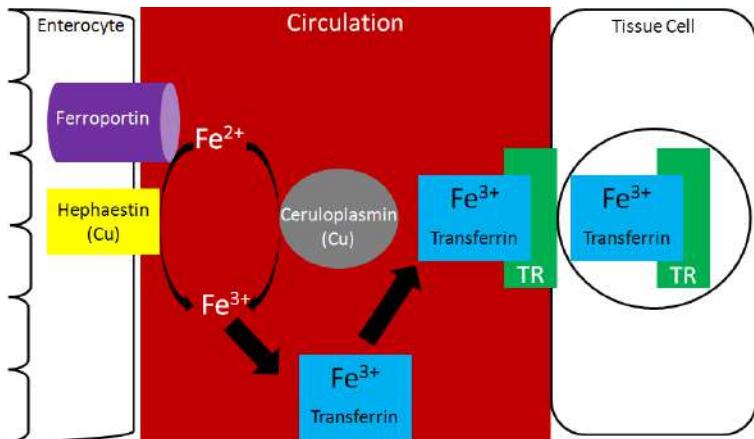


Figure 12.911 Transport and uptake of iron

Because copper is needed for this function, it is important for iron absorption.

Copper is also a cofactor for superoxide dismutase, which converts superoxide to hydrogen peroxide, as shown below.

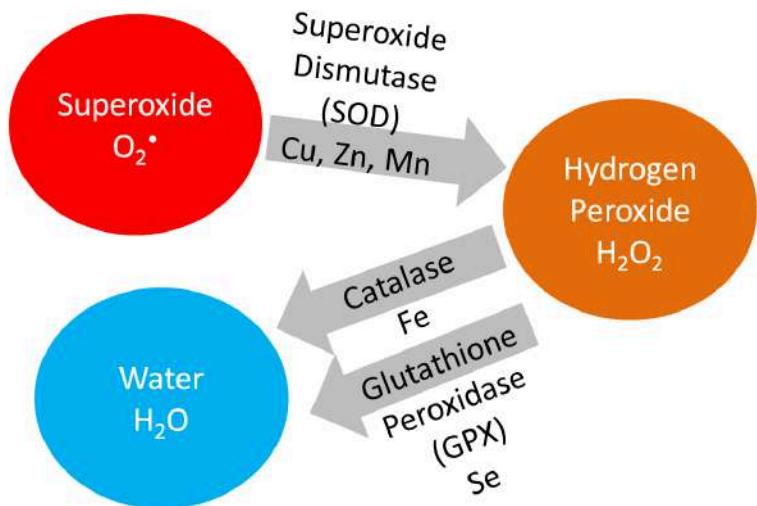


Figure 12.912 Superoxide dismutase uses zinc as a cofactor

Copper is also needed for hormone synthesis. For example, it is a cofactor for dopamine beta-hydroxylase, which converts dopamine to norepinephrine, as shown below<sup>1</sup>.

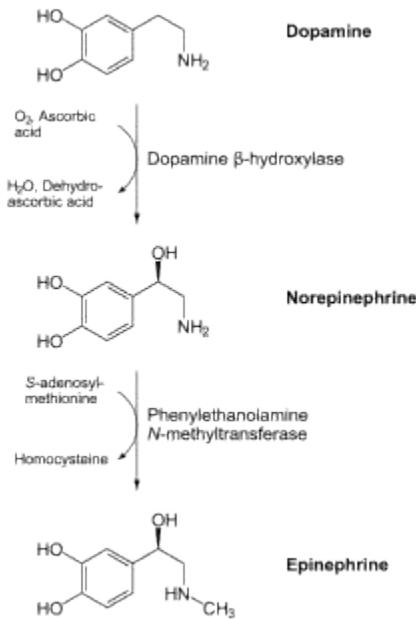


Figure 12.913 Dopamine beta-hydroxylase requires copper2

Hopefully the following example looks vaguely familiar because we talked about this pathway in the the vitamin C functions subsection. Ascorbic acid reduces Cu<sup>2+</sup> back to Cu<sup>1+</sup> so that this enzyme can continue to function, as shown below1. This is analogous to how ascorbic acid reduces Fe<sup>3+</sup> back to Fe<sup>2+</sup> so proline and lysyl hydroxylases can continue to function.

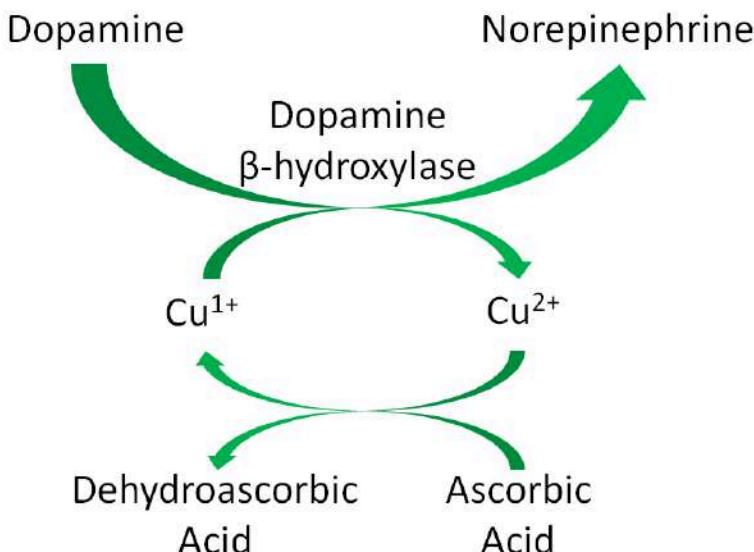


Figure 12.914 Dopamine beta-hydroxylase

Cytochrome c oxidase (complex IV) in the electron transport chain is a copper-containing enzyme that reduces oxygen to form water, as shown below<sup>1</sup>.

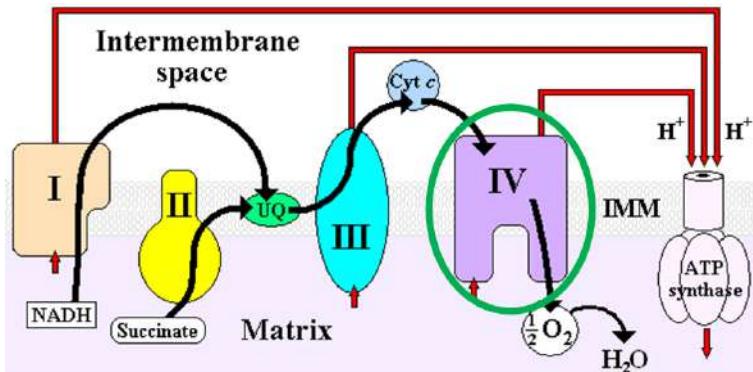


Figure 12.915 Cytochrome c oxidase (complex IV)<sup>3</sup>

Lysyl oxidase, an enzyme that is important for cross-linking between structural proteins (collagen and elastin), requires copper as a cofactor<sup>1</sup>.

### References & Links

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/  
File:Catecholamines\\_biosynthesis.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Catecholamines_biosynthesis.svg)
3. <http://wikidoc.org/index.php/File:ETC.PNG>

## 12.92 Copper Deficiency & Toxicity

Copper deficiency is rare in humans, but results in the following symptoms<sup>1,2</sup>:

Hypochromic anemia

Decreased white blood cell counts leading to decreased immune function

Bone abnormalities

Copper deficiency can result in a secondary iron deficiency, since Fe<sup>2+</sup> cannot be oxidized to Fe<sup>3+</sup> to bind to transferrin. This can cause the hypochromic anemia that occurs in iron deficiency.

Menke's disease is a genetic disorder that results in copper deficiency. It is believed that individuals with this disease have a mutation in ATP7A that prevents copper from leaving the enterocyte, thus preventing absorption<sup>1</sup>.

Copper toxicity is also rare in humans, but acute toxicity results in the following symptoms<sup>1,2</sup>:

Nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal pain

Chronic symptoms include<sup>1,2</sup>:

Brain, liver, and kidney damage

Neurological damage

Wilson's disease is a genetic disorder where a mutation in ATP7B

prevents copper excretion, resulting in copper toxicity. One notable symptom is that individuals with this disease have golden to greenish-brown Kayser-Fleischer rings around the edges of the cornea, as shown in the link below<sup>1,2</sup>.

---

#### **Web Link**

[Kayser-Fleischer rings](#)

---

#### **References & Links**

1. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
2. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

#### **Link**

Kayser-Fleischer rings – <http://www.nejm.org/doi/full/10.1056/NEJMcm1101534#t=article>

## **12.93 How High Zinc Intake Can Lead to Copper & Iron Deficiencies**

As you learned previously, thionein is the storage protein for zinc, but it more avidly binds copper. When it binds a mineral, it becomes metallothionein. High zinc intake results in increased thionein synthesis in the enterocyte. Thus, when an individual is consuming high zinc levels, the enterocyte will have high levels of thionein as shown below.

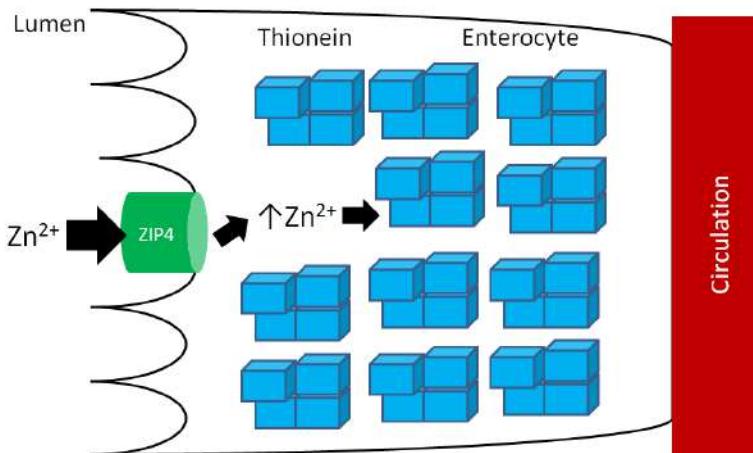


Figure 12.931 Zinc increases thionein production

The high levels of thionein will bind any copper that is taken up into the enterocyte (as metallothionein), “trapping” the copper in the enterocyte and preventing it from being absorbed into circulation, as shown below.

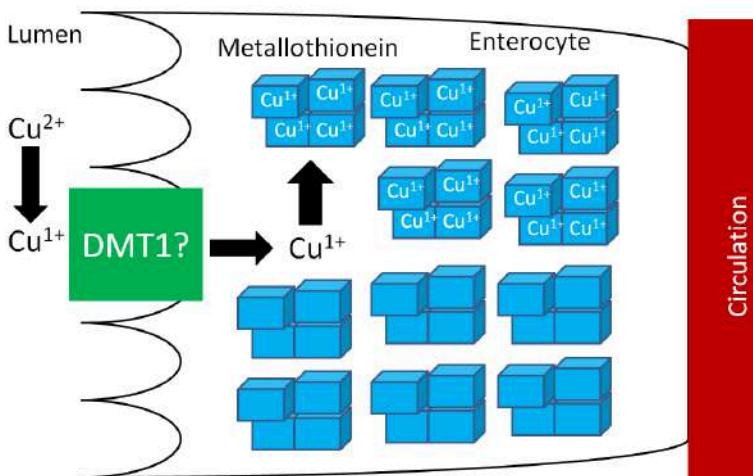


Figure 12.932 Copper taken up into the enterocyte is bound to thionein forming metallothionein.

The enterocytes containing the “trapped” copper move up the crypt and are sloughed off and excreted in feces. The copper consumed essentially is lost from the body through this process.

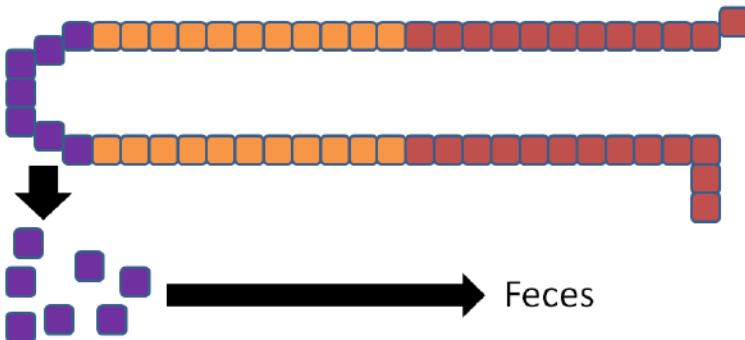


Figure 12.933 Enterocytes are sloughed off and excreted in feces

Without adequate copper being transported to the liver, no ceruloplasmin is produced and released into circulation. The lack of copper further influences iron transport by decreasing ceruloplasmin in circulation and hephaestin (another copper-containing protein) on the membrane of the enterocyte. These 2 proteins normally convert  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  to  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  so that iron can bind to transferrin.

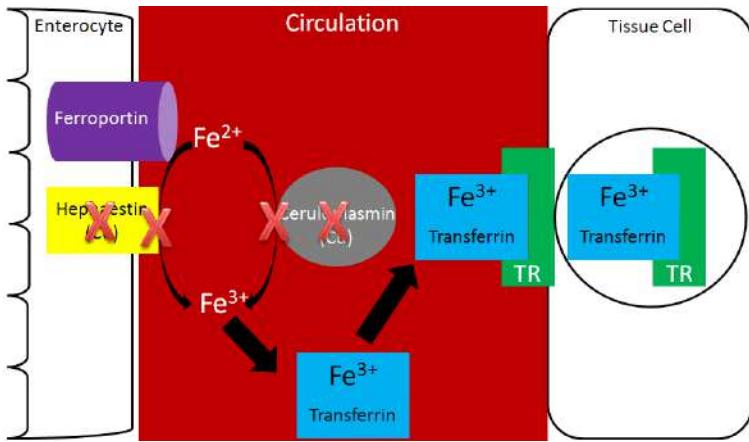


Figure 12.934 Lack of copper means that hephaestin and ceruloplasmin aren't available to oxidize  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  to  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$

Without hephaestin and ceruloplasmin,  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  is not formed from  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ . As a result  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  is “trapped” in the enterocyte because it can't bind to transferrin as shown below.

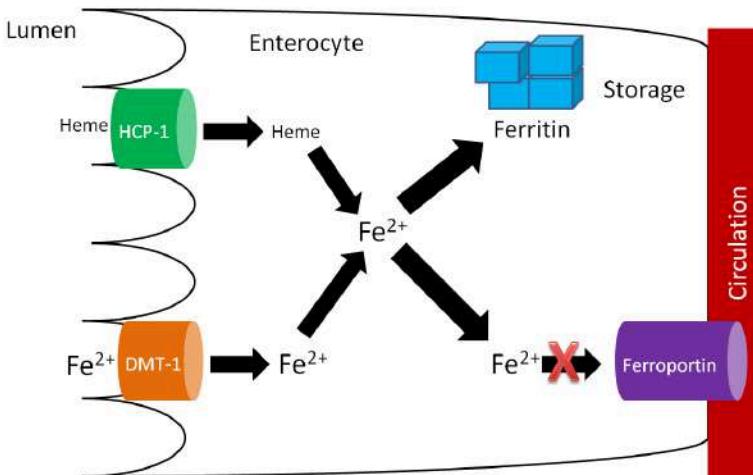


Figure 12.935  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  is trapped in the enterocyte

The enterocytes containing the “trapped” iron move up the crypt and are also sloughed off and excreted in feces. The iron consumed essentially is lost from the body through this process.

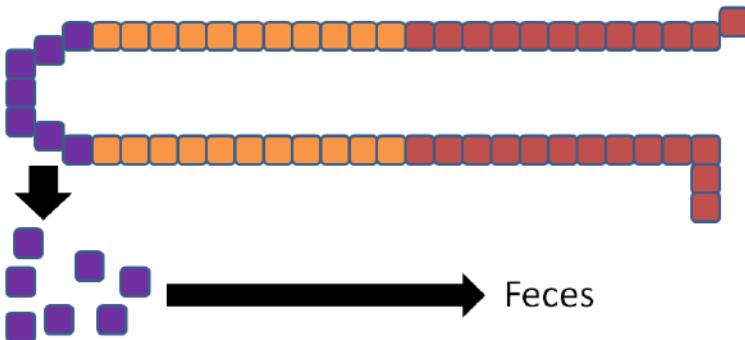


Figure 12.936 Enterocytes are sloughed off and excreted in feces

In summary, high zinc intake increases thionein production, which traps all copper; the lack of copper decreases circulating ceruloplasmin and hephaestin, which causes all iron to be trapped as well. This example illustrates the interconnectedness of zinc, copper, and iron.

#### No References

# Electrolyte Micronutrients

In this chapter, electrolytes will be explained before learning more about the 4 electrolyte micronutrients. Then, hypertension will be discussed, along with the impact of these micronutrients on the condition.

Subsections:

- 13.1 Electrolytes
- 13.2 Sodium
- 13.3 Chloride
- 13.4 Potassium
- 13.5 Magnesium
- 13.6 Hypertension, Salt-Sensitivity & the DASH Diet

## 13.1 Electrolytes

Electrolytes are compounds that separate into ions (molecules with a charge) in water. Electrolytes can be separated into 2 classes:

Cations: ions that have a positive charge

Anions: ions that have a negative charge

The following table summarizes the major intracellular and extracellular electrolytes by giving their milliequivalents (mEq)/L. Milliequivalents are a measure of charge. Thus, a higher value means that the cation or anion is accounting for more charge.

Table 13.11 Major intracellular and extracellular electrolytes (mEq/L)<sup>1,2</sup>

Intracellular

Extracellular

Cations	Anions	Cations	Anions
Potassium (K <sup>+</sup> ) 150	Phosphate (PO <sub>4</sub> <sup>-</sup> ) 104	Sodium (Na <sup>+</sup> ) 142	Chloride (Cl <sup>-</sup> ) 103
Magnesium (Mg <sup>2+</sup> ) 40	Proteins 57		Bicarbonate (HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup> ) 27
	Sulfate (SO <sub>4</sub> <sup>2-</sup> ) 20		Proteins 16

The following figure graphically shows the major intracellular and extracellular cations (green) and anions (red).

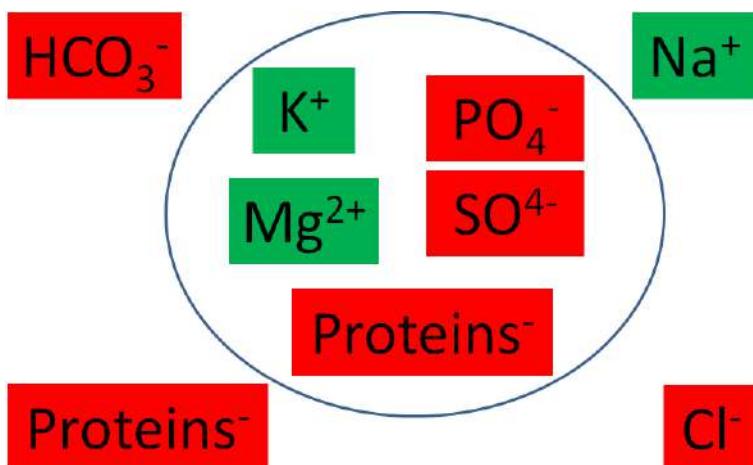


Figure 13.11 Major intracellular and extracellular cations (green) and anions (red)<sup>2</sup>

Electrolytes and proteins are important in fluid balance. Your body is 60% water by weight. Two-thirds of this water is intracellular, or within cells. One-third of the water is extracellular, or outside of cells. One-fourth of the extracellular fluid is plasma, while the other 3/4 is interstitial (between cells) fluid. Thus, when considering total body water, around 66% is intracellular fluid, 25% is interstitial fluid, and 8% is plasma<sup>3,4</sup>.

Fluid distribution between the different compartments are shown below.

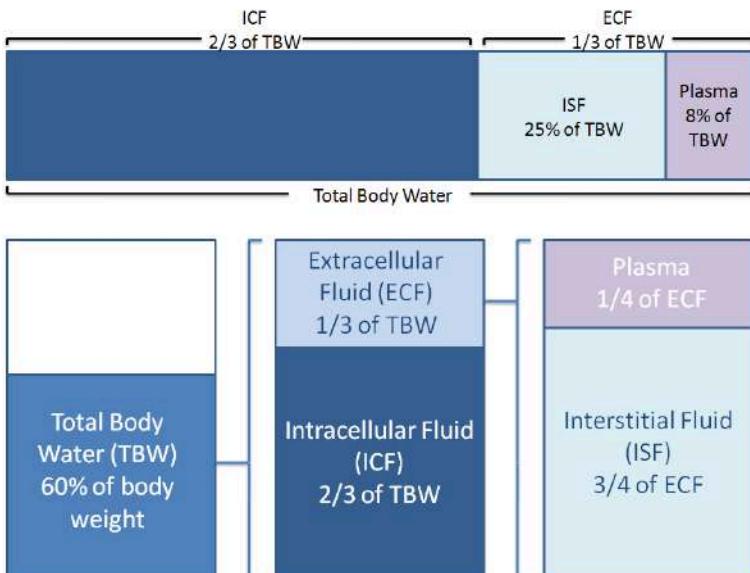


Figure 13.12 Distribution of fluid in the body<sup>3,4</sup>.

## References & Links

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
2. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2011) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
3. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
4. Adapted from <http://www.netterimages.com/image/21248.htm>

## 13.2 Sodium

Salt (NaCl) contributes almost all the sodium that we consume. 75-85% of the salt we consume is from processed foods, 10% is naturally in foods, and added salt contributes 10-15% of total salt intake<sup>1</sup>.

95-100% of consumed sodium is absorbed<sup>2</sup>. Sodium is taken up into the enterocyte through multiple mechanisms before being pumped out of the enterocyte by sodium-potassium ( $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$ ) ATPase. Sodium-potassium ATPase is an active carrier transporter that pumps 3 sodium ions out of the cell and 2 potassium ions into the cell, as shown below.

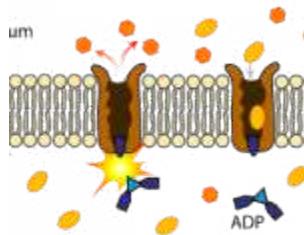


Figure 13.21 Sodium-potassium ATPase (aka sodium-potassium pump), an active carrier transporter<sup>3</sup>

Sodium is the major cation in extracellular fluid.

Sodium has 3 main functions<sup>1</sup>:

1. Fluid balance
2. Aids in monosaccharide and amino acid absorption
3. Muscle contraction and nerve transmission (not discussed further below)

## Fluid balance

The body regulates sodium and fluid levels through a series of processes as shown below. A decrease in plasma volume and blood pressure signals the kidney to release the enzyme renin. Renin activates angiotensin that is converted to angiotensin II. Angiotensin II signals the adrenal glands to secrete the hormone aldosterone. Aldosterone increases sodium reabsorption in the kidney, thus decreasing sodium excretion. These actions cause plasma sodium concentrations to increase, which is detected by the hypothalamus. The hypothalamus stimulates the pituitary gland to release antidiuretic hormone (ADH) that causes the kidneys to reabsorb water, decreasing water excretion. The net result is an increase in blood volume and blood pressure<sup>1</sup>.

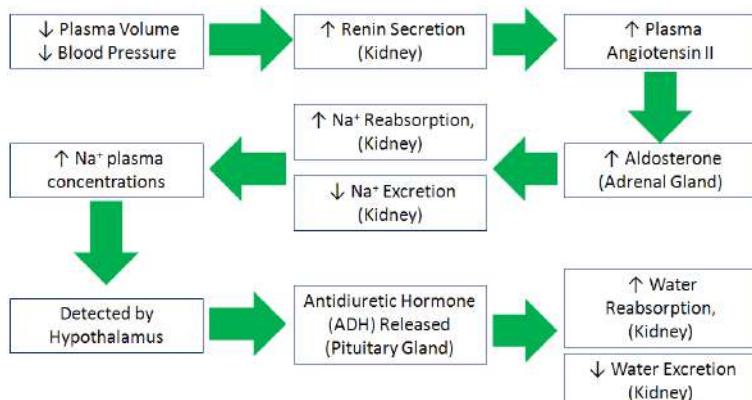


Figure 13.22 Response to decreased plasma volume and blood pressure

## 2. Aids in monosaccharide and amino acid absorption

Glucose and galactose are taken up into the enterocyte by sodium-glucose cotransporter 1 (SGLT1), which requires sodium to be transported along with glucose or galactose.

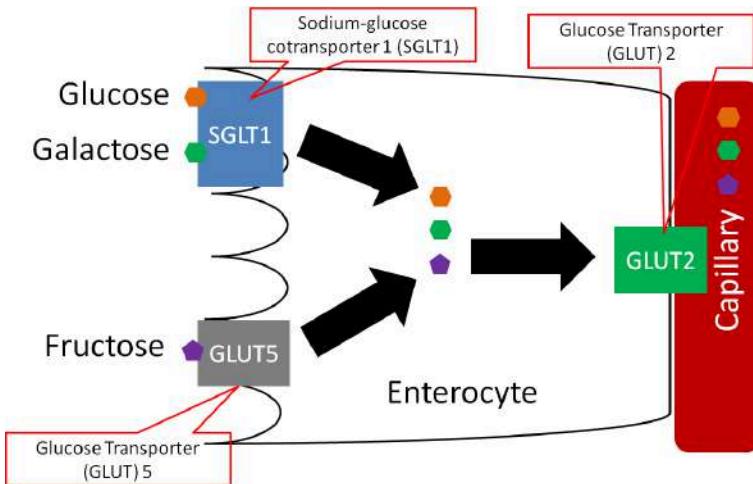


Figure 13.23 Carbohydrate Absorption

Amino acids are taken up and transported into circulation through a variety of amino acid transporters. Some of these transporters are sodium-dependent (require sodium to transport amino acids).

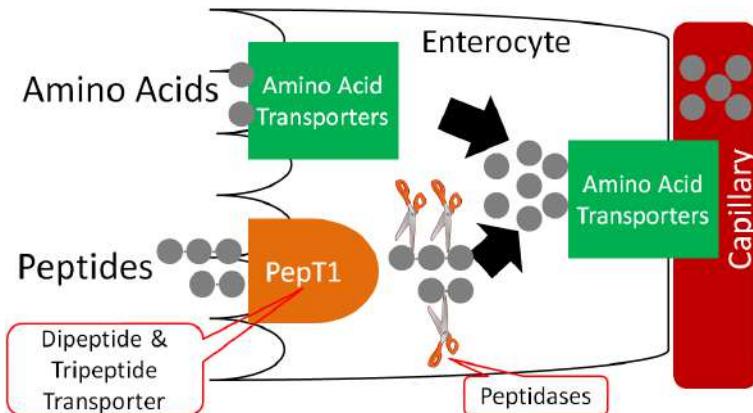


Figure 13.24 Protein absorption

Sodium deficiency is rare, and is normally due to excessive sweating. Sweat loss must reach 2-3% of body weight before sodium losses are a concern<sup>1,2</sup>. This situation can occur in marathon runners and ultra-marathon runners who sweat for many hours straight (without proper liquid intake). Low blood sodium levels (hyponatremia) can result in<sup>1</sup>:

- Headache
- Nausea
- Vomiting
- Fatigue
- Muscle Cramps

Sodium is not toxic, but higher sodium intake increases the risk of developing high blood pressure. High sodium intake also increases calcium excretion, but studies haven't found an increased risk of osteoporosis. High sodium intake may also increase the risk of developing kidney stones (by increasing calcium excretion), because calcium oxalate is the most common form of kidney stone<sup>1</sup>.

### **References & Links**

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
2. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
3. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ATPase#/media/File:Scheme\\_sodium-potassium\\_pump-en.svg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ATPase#/media/File:Scheme_sodium-potassium_pump-en.svg)

## **13.3 Chloride**

Sodium's partner in salt, chloride, is the major extracellular anion. Almost all of the chloride we consume is from salt, and almost all chloride is absorbed. It is excreted in urine like sodium.

Chloride has the following functions<sup>1</sup>:

1. Aids in nerve impulses
2. Component of HCl
3. Released by white blood cells to kill foreign substances
4. Helps maintain acid-base balance

Chloride deficiency is rare, but can occur because of severe diarrhea or vomiting. Other symptoms of this deficiency include<sup>1,2</sup>:

Weakness

Diarrhea and vomiting

Lethargy

Chloride is not toxic, but since it is a part of salt, it is recommended that we restrict our intake to avoid potential increases in blood pressure.

### **References & Links**

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
2. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

## **13.4 Potassium**

Potassium is the major intracellular cation. Good sources of potassium include beans, potatoes (with skin), milk products, orange juice, tomato juice, and bananas<sup>1,2</sup>. Potassium, like sodium and chloride, is well absorbed. Greater than 85% of consumed potassium is absorbed. Potassium is primarily excreted in urine (~90%)<sup>3</sup>.

Potassium is important for:

1. Fluid Balance
2. Nerve transmission and muscle contraction

Increased potassium intake results in decreased calcium excretion. This is the opposite effect of increased sodium intake, which increases calcium excretion<sup>1</sup>.

Potassium deficiency is rare but can be fatal. Symptoms include:

Weakness

Fatigue

Constipation

Irregular heartbeat (can be fatal)

Deficiency can occur in individuals that are on diuretics, drugs that increase urine production, and individuals with eating disorders<sup>1</sup>.

Toxicity is also extremely rare, only occurring if there is a problem with kidney function. Symptoms of toxicity are irregular heartbeat and even cardiac arrest<sup>1</sup>.

### **References & Links**

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
2. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2011) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
3. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.

## **13.5 Magnesium**

Magnesium is an electrolyte, but that is not considered its major function in the body. Green leafy vegetables, beans, nuts, seeds, and whole grains are good sources of magnesium<sup>1,2</sup>. 40-60% of consumed magnesium is absorbed at normal levels of intake. Magnesium is excreted primarily in urine<sup>3</sup>.

55-60% of magnesium in the body is found in bone<sup>3</sup>. Some (30%) of this bone magnesium is believed to be exchangeable, or can be

used to maintain blood concentrations, similar to how calcium in bones can be used to maintain blood concentrations.

Magnesium helps to stabilize ATP and nucleotides by binding to phosphate groups. Magnesium plays a role in over 300 enzymes in the body. Here is a list of some of the physiological processes that magnesium participates in:

- Glycolysis
- TCA cycle
- Fatty acid oxidation (beta-oxidation)
- DNA and RNA transcription
- Nucleotide synthesis
- Muscle contraction

Magnesium deficiency is rare, but can be caused by prolonged diarrhea or vomiting. Symptoms include:

- Irregular heartbeat
- Muscle spasms
- Disorientation
- Seizures
- Nausea
- Vomiting

Magnesium toxicity is also rare but can occur from excessive use of antacids or laxatives. Symptoms include:

- Diarrhea
- Nausea
- Flushing
- Double vision
- Slurred speech
- Weakness
- Paralysis

Magnesium supplements differ in percent of magnesium in the different forms, as shown below.

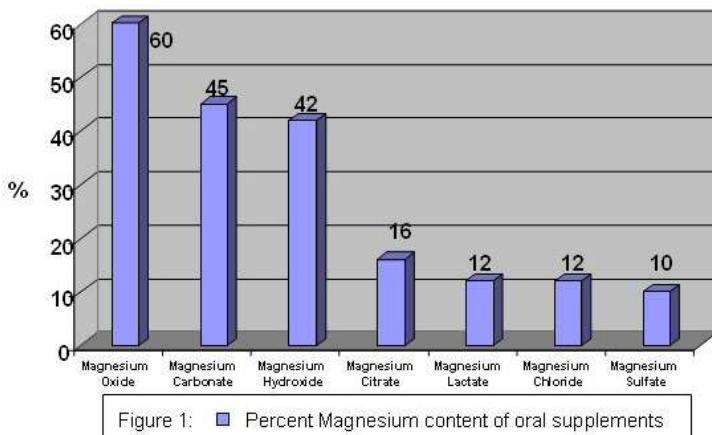


Figure 13.51 Percent magnesium in oral supplements<sup>4</sup>

The bioavailability of magnesium oxide is significantly lower than magnesium chloride, magnesium lactate, and magnesium aspartate. The latter 3 are equally bioavailable<sup>4</sup>.

#### References & Links

1. Byrd-Bredbenner C, Moe G, Beshgetoor D, Berning J. (2009) Wardlaw's perspectives in nutrition. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
2. McGuire M, Beerman KA. (2011) Nutritional sciences: From fundamentals to food. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
3. Gropper SS, Smith JL, Groff JL. (2008) Advanced nutrition and human metabolism. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing.
4. [http://www.health-choices-for-life.com/magnesium\\_supplements.html](http://www.health-choices-for-life.com/magnesium_supplements.html)

## 13.6 Hypertension, Salt-Sensitivity & the DASH Diet

Approximately 27% of American adults have hypertension (high blood pressure), which increases their risk of developing cardiovascular disease<sup>1</sup>. Salt and/or sodium intake is believed to be a major causative factor in the development of hypertension. However, it is now known that not everyone is salt-sensitive. Salt-sensitive means that a person's blood pressure increases with increased salt intake and decreases with decreased salt intake. Approximately 25% of normotensive (normal blood pressure) individuals and 50% of hypertensive individuals are salt-sensitive<sup>2</sup>. Most others are salt-insensitive, and in a small portion of individuals, low salt consumption actually increases blood pressure<sup>1</sup>. Unfortunately, there isn't a clinical method to determine whether a person is salt-sensitive. There are some known characteristics that increase the likelihood of an individual being salt-sensitive. They are<sup>1</sup>:

- Elderly
- Female
- African-American
- Hypertensive
- Diabetic
- Chronic Kidney Disease

There is some evidence now suggesting that there may be negative effects in some people who restrict their sodium intakes to the levels recommended by some organizations. The second link describes a couple of studies that had conflicting outcomes as it relates to the importance of salt reduction in decreasing blood pressure and cardiovascular disease. The third link is to a study that found that higher potassium consumption, not lower sodium consumption, was associated with decreased blood pressure in adolescent teenage girls.

---

## Web Link

Report Questions Reducing Salt Intake Too Dramatically Pour on the Salt? New Research Suggests More Is OK For Teenagers, Potassium May Matter More Than Salt

---

To combat hypertension, the Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension (DASH) diet was developed. This diet emphasizes:

fruits, vegetables, fat-free/low-fat milk and milk products, whole grain products, fish, poultry, nuts

It limits:

red meat, sweets, added sugars, sugar-containing beverages

As a result the diet is high in:

potassium, magnesium, calcium, protein, fiber

The daily goals for the DASH diet are shown below:

BOX 2

## Daily Nutrient Goals Used in the DASH Studies (for a 2,100 Calorie Eating Plan)

<b>Total fat</b>	27% of calories	<b>Sodium</b>	2,300 mg*
<b>Saturated fat</b>	6% of calories	<b>Potassium</b>	4,700 mg
<b>Protein</b>	18% of calories	<b>Calcium</b>	1,250 mg
<b>Carbohydrate</b>	55% of calories	<b>Magnesium</b>	500 mg
<b>Cholesterol</b>	150 mg	<b>Fiber</b>	30 g

\* 1,500 mg sodium was a lower goal tested and found to be even better for lowering blood pressure. It was particularly effective for middle-aged and older individuals, African Americans, and those who already had high blood pressure.  
g – grams; mg – milligrams

Figure 13.61 DASH daily nutrient goals3

To get an idea of what types of foods and how much would be consumed in the diet, an eating plan is shown below.

BOX 4

## DASH Eating Plan—Number of Daily Servings for Other Calorie Levels

Food Groups	Servings/Day		
	1,600 calories/day	2,600 calories/day	3,100 calories/day
Grains*	6	10–11	12–13
Vegetables	3–4	5–6	6
Fruits	4	5–6	6
Fat-free or low-fat milk and milk products	2–3	3	3–4
Lean meats, poultry, and fish	3–6	6	6–9
Nuts, seeds, and legumes	3/week	1	1
Fats and oils	2	3	4
Sweets and added sugars	0	≤2	≤2

\* Whole grains are recommended for most grain servings as a good source of fiber and nutrients.

Figure 13.62 DASH eating plan3

The DASH diet has been shown to be remarkably effective in decreasing blood pressure in those with hypertension. Nevertheless, most people with hypertension aren't following the DASH diet. In fact, evidence from the National Health and Nutrition

Examination Survey found that significantly fewer hypertensive individuals were following the DASH diet in 1999–2004 than during 1988–1994, as shown in the table below4.

Table 13.61 Percent of hypertensive subjects in NHANES trial meeting the DASH goals4

Variable	NHANES 1988–1994 (n = 4336)	NHANES 1999–2004 (n = 3821)	Absolute Change (%)	p-value
DASH Accordance	29.3 ± 1.5	21.7 ± 1.3	-7.6	<0.001
Total Fat	42.9 ± 1.8	35.9 ± 2.0	-7.0	0.01
Saturated Fat	20.6 ± 1.2	20.4 ± 1.4	-0.2	0.94
Protein	43.7 ± 2.0	47.7 ± 1.9	4.0	0.73
Cholesterol	26.4 ± 2.2	24.3 ± 1.6	-2.1	0.44
Fiber	20.2 ± 1.5	12.3 ± 0.9	-7.9	<0.001
Magnesium	14.2 ± 1.3	6.4 ± 0.8	-7.8	<0.001
Calcium	19.0 ± 1.6	17.6 ± 2.0	-1.4	0.58
Potassium	12.7 ± 0.9	11.7 ± 0.9	-1.0	0.46
Sodium	17.8 ± 1.5	14.6 ± 1.3	-3.2	0.21

The main components that contributed to the decrease in DASH diet accordance were total fat, fiber, and magnesium, as indicated by their high negative absolute changes.

### References & Links

1. McGuire M, Beerman KA. (2011) Nutritional sciences: From fundamentals to food. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
2. Whitney E, Rolfes SR. (2011) Understanding nutrition. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
3. [http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/public/heart/hbp/dash/new\\_dash.pdf](http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/public/heart/hbp/dash/new_dash.pdf)

4. Mellen P, Gao S, Vitolins M, Goff D. (2008) Deteriorating dietary habits among adults with hypertension: DASH dietary accordance, NHANES 1988-1994 and 1999-2004. Arch Intern Med 168(3): 308-314.

## Links

Report Questions Reducing Salt Intake Too Dramatically -  
<http://www.usatoday.com/story/news/nation/2013/05/14/salt-diet-sodium-intake/2156143/>

Pour on the Salt? New Research Suggests More Is OK -  
<http://www.nbcnews.com/health/heart-health/pour-salt-new-research-suggests-more-ok-n179941>

For Teenagers, Potassium May Matter More Than Salt -  
<http://well.blogs.nytimes.com/2015/04/27/for-teenagers-potassium-may-matter-more-than-salt/>



This is where you can add appendices or other back matter.

# Creative Commons License

This work is licensed by Dianna Fisher under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-Share Alike 4.0 International License (CC BY-NC-SA)

You are free to:

**Share** – copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format

**Adapt** – remix, transform, and build upon the material

The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

## **Under the following terms:**

**Attribution** – You must give appropriate credit, provide a link to the license, and indicate if changes were made. You may do so in any reasonable manner, but not in any way that suggests the licensor endorses you or your use.

**NonCommercial** – You may not use the material for commercial purposes.

**ShareAlike** – If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

**No additional restrictions** – You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

# Recommended Citations

## APA outline:

Source from website:

- (Full last name, first initial of first name). (Date of publication).  
Title of source. Retrieved  
from <https://www.someaddress.com/full/url/>

Source from print:

- (Full last name, first initial of first name). (Date of publication).  
Title of source. Title of container (larger whole that the source  
is in, i.e. a chapter in a book), volume number, page numbers.

## Examples

If retrieving from a webpage:

- Berndt, T. J. (2002). *Friendship quality and social development*. Retrieved from [insert link](#).

If retrieving from a book:

- Berndt, T. J. (2002). *Friendship quality and social development*. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 11, 7-10.

## MLA outline:

Author (last, first name). Title of source. Title of container (larger

whole that the source is in, i.e. a chapter in a book), Other contributors, Version, Number, Publisher, Publication Date, Location (page numbers).

### Examples

- Bagchi, Alaknanda. "Conflicting Nationalisms: The Voice of the Subaltern in Mahasweta Devi's *Bashai Tudu*." *Tulsa Studies in Women's Literature*, vol. 15, no. 1, 1996, pp. 41–50.
- Said, Edward W. *Culture and Imperialism*. Knopf, 1994.

### **Chicago** outline:

Source from website:

- Lastname, Firstname. "Title of Web Page." Name of Website. Publishing organization, publication or revision date if available. Access date if no other date is available. URL .

Source from print:

- Last name, First name. *Title of Book*. Place of publication: Publisher, Year of publication.

### Examples

- Davidson, Donald, *Essays on Actions and Events*. Oxford: Clarendon, 2001.  
<https://bibliotecamathom.files.wordpress.com/2012/10/essays-on-actions-and-events.pdf>.
- Kerouac, Jack. *The Dharma Bums*. New York: Viking Press, 1958.

# Versioning

This page provides a record of changes made to this guide. Each set of edits is acknowledged with a 0.01 increase in the version number. The exported files for this toolkit reflect the most recent version.

If you find an error in this text, please fill out the form at [bit.ly/33cz3Q1](https://bit.ly/33cz3Q1)

Version	Date	Change Made	Location in text
0.1	MM/DD/YYYY		
0.11	09/09/2020	<b>Links to external sources updated</b>	All